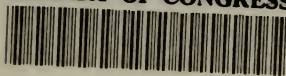


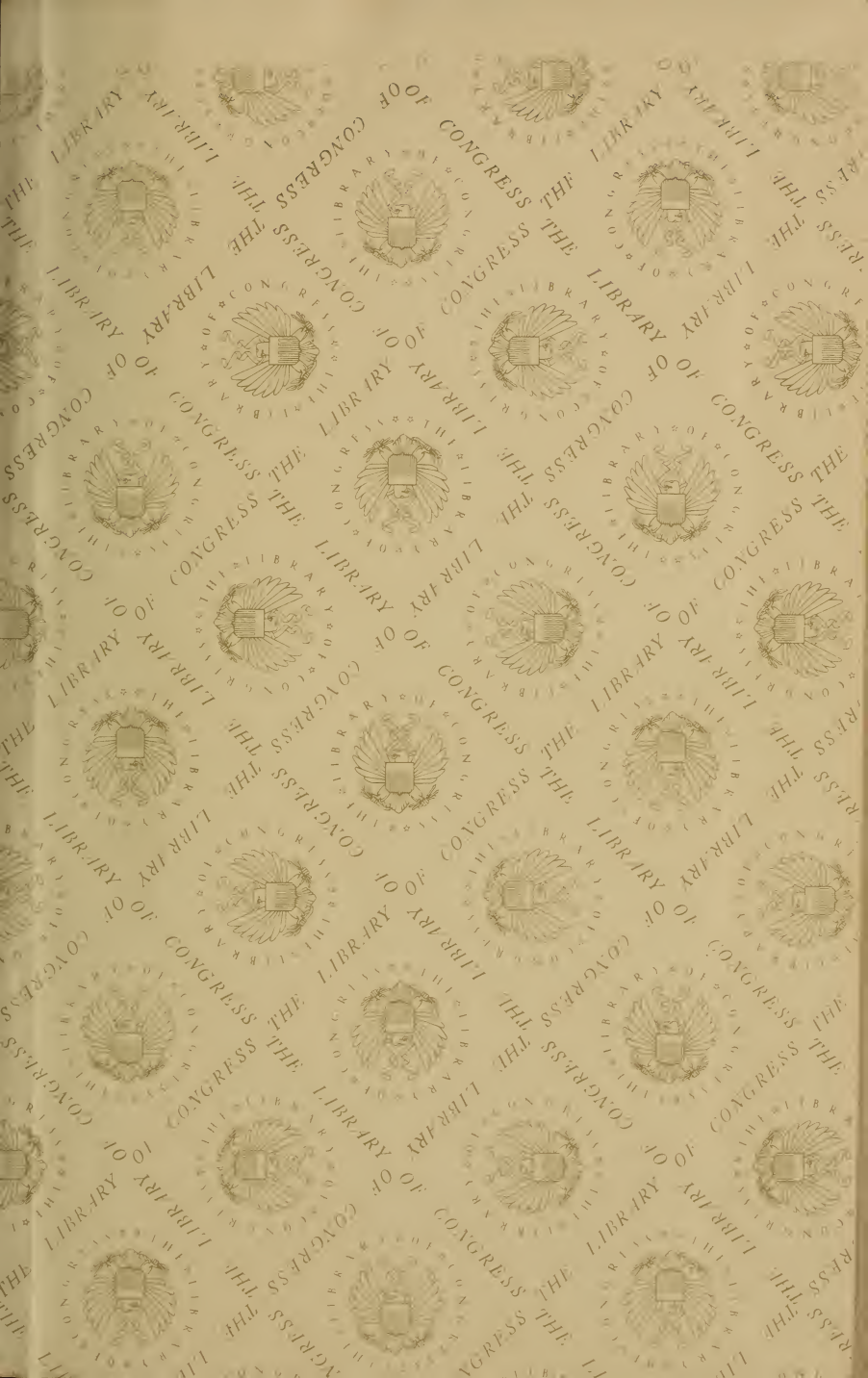
LIBRARY OF CONGRESS

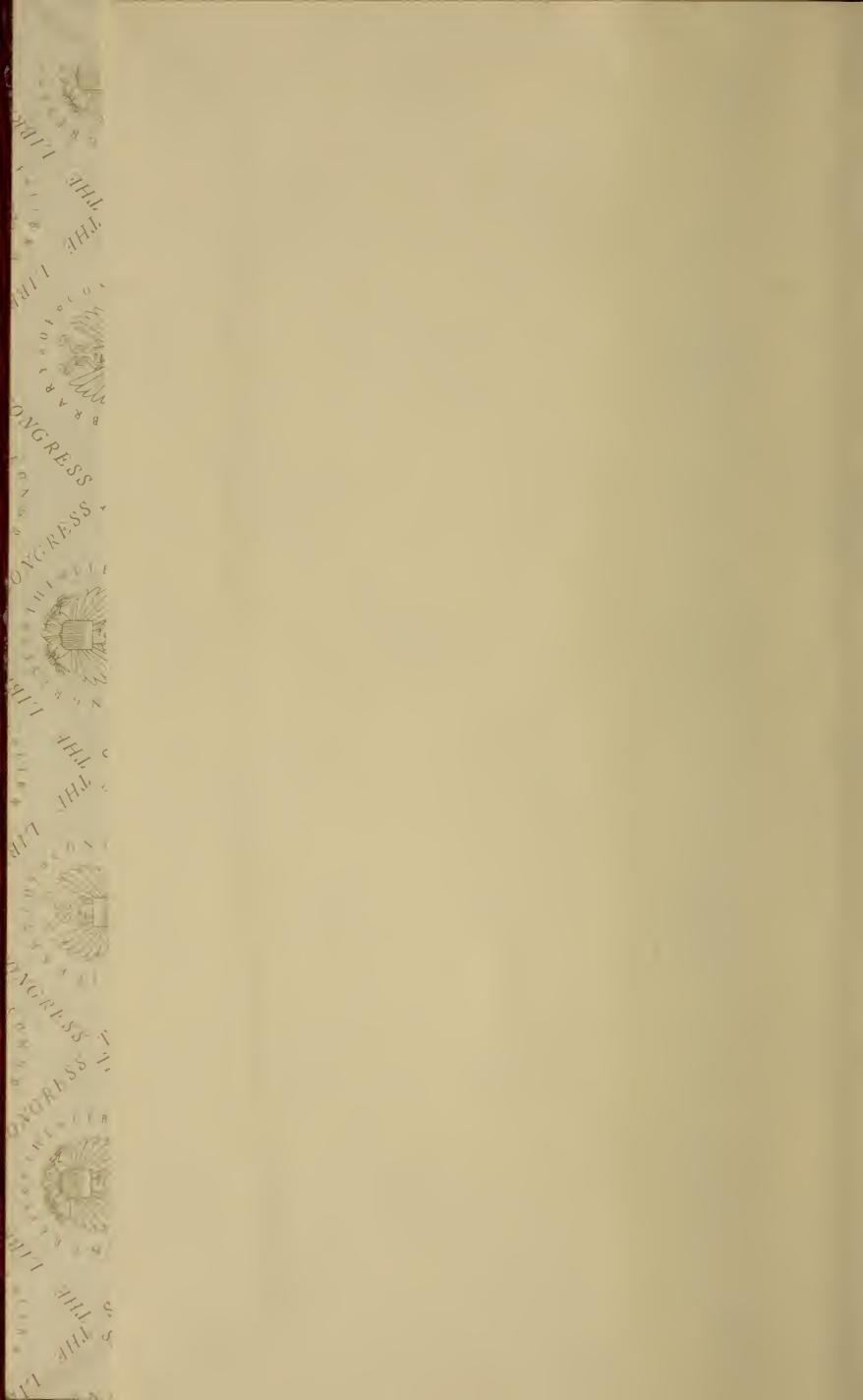


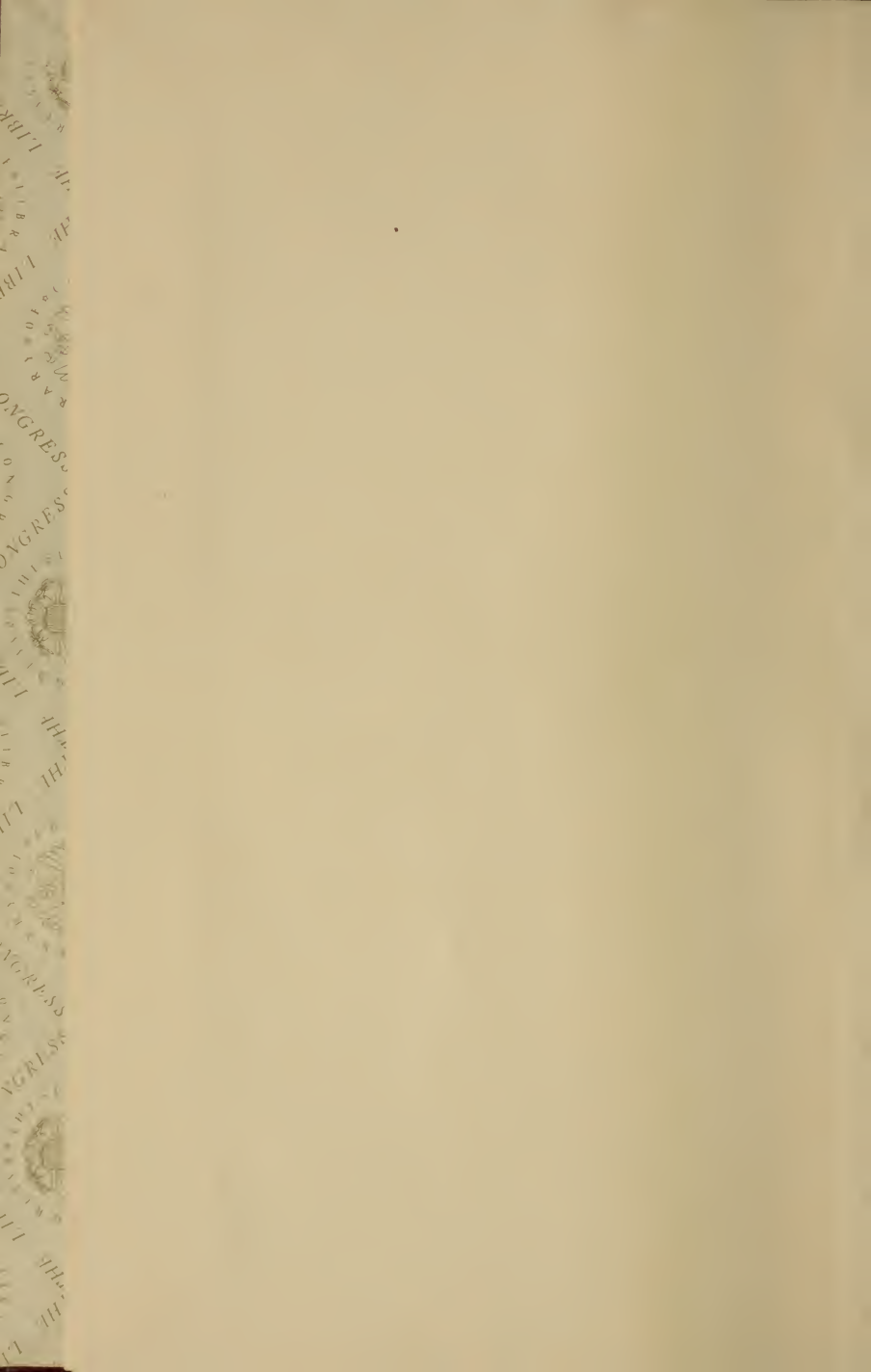
00004535558











LIBRARY
CONGRESS
HILL

✓
KÜHNER'S

L A T I N G R A M M A R ;

WITH

EXERCISES,

LATIN READER AND VOCABULARIES.

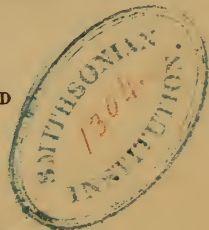
Raphael Kühner

TRANSLATED AND REMODELLED

BY

J. T. CHAMPLIN,

PROFESSOR OF GREEK AND LATIN IN WATERVILLE COLLEGE.



39

BOSTON:

PHILLIPS, SAMPSON AND COMPANY.

1850.

PA 2087
K917
1850

Entered according to Act of Congress, in the year 1850, by
J. T. CHAMPLIN,
in the Clerk's Office of the District Court of Massachusetts.

ANDOVER: JOHN D. FLAGG,
STEREOTYPER AND PRINTER.

P R E F A C E .

XVIII.

THIS is not so much a new edition of Kühner's Elementary Latin Grammar, as a new book, prepared in general accordance with his spirit and plan, and from materials drawn about equally from his Elementary and Larger Latin Grammars, and occasionally from other sources.

The grammatical principles of the smaller Grammar have all along been enlarged and modified from the larger, while the greater part of the syntax is a condensed translation, with but slight omissions and modifications, directly from the larger work. The exercises are mostly from the smaller Grammar, but are very much abridged, especially on the syntax, and besides, have been separated from the grammatical principles and placed in a body after them. It was thought that by thus retaining something of the elementary character in the Etymology, and extending the grammatical principles of the syntax, the book would be adapted to all stages in the progress of the student of Latin; serving him at first as grammar, exercise-book and reader, and afterwards as a manual of reference for explaining the usages of the different authors which he is required to read.

As the elementary character still prevails in the Etymology, I have retained the poetical rules for gender, on the ground of their acknowledged *utility*, whatever may be said of them on the score of taste. A verse may be *useful* which is a mere doggerel, as is proved by many mnemonic verses of this kind in our own language, which we could hardly live without. For instance, that which informs us of the number of days in each month: *Thirty days hath September, etc.* — Besides, in the present case, as an alphabetical list of the excepted words is always given in connection with the poetic rules, no one can complain, since, if he is not fond of poetry he can take to the prose. At the same time, as it was desirable that the book should be kept within moderate limits, the principles in the syntax are expressed as briefly as possible, and are

accompanied by barely sufficient examples to prove their truth and make their meaning plain. As, too, it is designed for a School Grammar, to be studied and committed to memory, and not merely for reference, it has not been thought necessary to increase its size by adding an Index.

The book is constructed upon the principle of putting everything into practice as fast as acquired. Every grammatical form or principle of syntax, as soon as learned, is to be rendered practical and fixed in the mind, by translations first from the Latin into the English, and then from the English into the Latin. To prepare the pupil for these exercises in translation, such forms of the verb as are requisite for constructing the simplest sentences are given at the outset, and a few simple rules of syntax as they are required, while all along in connection with the exercises, lists of Latin words with their definitions are given to be committed to memory, most of which, also, are collected and arranged in alphabetical Vocabularies at the end of the book. As many of the examples for translation as possible, were selected unaltered from the classics, others were slightly altered to suit the cases for which they were employed, and the remainder composed by the author, yet always so as to embody classical ideas and turns of thought. The examples in English may be translated into Latin, either *viva voce* or by writing, at the discretion of the teacher.

With regard to the mode of using the book the intelligent teacher will be the best judge. In some cases it will probably be found best to take the pupil over the first and perhaps the second Course, omitting the English exercises at first, and then return and take them up in connection with a thorough review of the whole. Perhaps, also, a judicious teacher, following out the general principle of the book, of diminishing difficulties by division and distribution, will think best, with very young pupils in particular, to omit some other things the first time over and take them up at subsequent reviews. But whatever course is pursued in teaching the book, a complete mastery of all that it contains should be aimed at from the beginning, and should be actually attained before it is left.

Much labor has been expended in the careful revision of the sheets for the press, in which I have been greatly assisted by Mr. James H. Hanson, Principal of the Waterville Academy.

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

ETYMOLOGY.

FIRST COURSE.

THE SIMPLER PRINCIPLES OF ETYMOLOGY.

CHAPTER I.

OF THE SOUNDS AND LETTERS OF THE LANGUAGE.

Division of the Letters	§ 1
Pronunciation of the Letters	2

CHAPTER II.

OF SYLLABLES.

Of the Measure or Quantity of Syllables	3
Of Accent	4
Of the Division of Syllables	5

CHAPTER III.

PARTS OF SPEECH.—INFLECTION 6

SOME FORMS OF THE VERB	7-11
First Conjugation	8
Second Conjugation	9
Third Conjugation	10
Fourth Conjugation	11

CHAPTER IV.

OF THE SUBSTANTIVE AND ADJECTIVE.

Classification of Substantives	12
Gender of the Substantive	13

Number, Case and Declension	§ 14
Gender and Declension of the Adjective	15
First Declension	16
Second Declension	17
Third Declension	18-21
Paradigms of Adjectives of the Third Declension	22
Fourth Declension	23
Fifth Declension	24
Comparison of Adjectives and Participles	25

CHAPTER V.

OF THE ADVERB.

Classification and Formation of Adverbs	26
Comparison of Adverbs	27

CHAPTER VI.

OF THE PRONOUN.

Personal Pronouns	28
Demonstrative Pronouns	29
Relative and Interrogative Pronouns	30
Indefinite Pronouns	31
Correlative Pronouns	32

CHAPTER VII.

OF THE NUMERALS	33
---------------------------	----

CHAPTER VIII.

TABLE OF THE PREPOSITIONS	34
-------------------------------------	----

SECOND COURSE.

GENDER AND IRREGULAR FORMS OF NOUNS.

Greek Nouns and Peculiar Endings of the First Declension	35
Greek Nouns and Gender of the Second Declension	36

Greek Nouns and Special Case-endings of the Third Declension	§ 37
Of the Gender of the Third Declension	38-40
Masculine	38
Feminine	39
Neuter	40
Of the Gender of the Fourth Declension	41

THIRD COURSE.

REGULAR VERBS.

Classes of Verbs	42
Tenses of the Verb	43
Modes of the Verb	44
Infinitive, Participle, Supine, Gerund and Gerundive	45
Persons and Numbers of the Verb	46
Conjugation	47
Formation of the Tenses	48
Conjugation of the Auxiliary verb <i>sum</i>	49
Active of the Four Regular Conjugations	50
Passive	51
Deponents of the Four Conjugations	52
Periphrastic Conjugation	53

FOURTH COURSE.

IRREGULAR AND IMPERSONAL VERBS.

First Conjugation	54-56
Second Conjugation	57-59
Third Conjugation	60-67
Fourth Conjugation	68
Particular Irregular Verbs	69-75
1) Possum	69
2) Edo	70
3) Fero	71
4) Volo, nolo, malo	72
5) Eo	73
6) Queo, nequeo	74
7) Fio	75
Defective Verbs	76
Impersonal Verbs	77

FIFTH COURSE.

Formation of words by Derivation	§ 78
Formation of words by Composition	79

EXERCISES ON THE ETYMOLOGY.

SYNTAX.

SIXTH COURSE.

SIMPLE SENTENCES.

CHAPTER I.

DEFINITION AND GENERAL TREATMENT OF SIMPLE SENTENCES.

Sentence. Subject. Attribute. Object	80
Agreement	81
Peculiarities in the use of Number	82
Kinds of Verbs	83
Tenses of the Verb	84
Modes of the Verb	85

CHAPTER II.

Of the Attributive Relation in Sentences	86
--	----

CHAPTER III.

Of the Objective Relation in Sentences	87
The Genitive Case	88
The Accusative Case	89
The Dative Case	90
The Ablative Case	91
Construction of the Names of Cities	92
Use of the Prepositions	93

CHAPTER IV.

PRONOUNS, NUMERALS AND PARTICIPLES IN BOTH THE ATTRIBUTIVE AND OBJECTIVE RELATIONS.

Of the use of the Pronoun	94
Of the Numeral	95

The Infinitive	§ 96
The Supine	97
The Gerund	98
The Gerundive	99
The Participle	100

CHAPTER V.

OF THE ADVERB	101
-------------------------	-----

SEVENTH COURSE.

COMPOUND SENTENCES.

CHAPTER I.

A. COÖRDINATE SENTENCES	102
-----------------------------------	-----

CHAPTER II.

B. SUBORDINATE SENTENCES	103
Use of the Modes in Subordinate Sentences	104
Succession of Tenses in Subordinate Sentences	105
I. SUBSTANTIVE SENTENCES	106—109
Accusative with the Infinitive	106
Ut, ne, ut ne, ut non with the Subjunctive	107
Quo, quominus and quin with the Subjunctive	108
Quod, <i>that</i> , with the Indicative	109
II. ADJECTIVE SENTENCES	110
III. ADVERBIAL SENTENCES	111—115
a. Adverbial Sentences of Time	111
b. Causal Adverbial Sentences	112
c. Conditional Adverbial Sentences	113
d. Concessive Adverbial Sentences	114
e. Adverbial Sentences of Comparison	115
INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES	116
DIRECT AND INDIRECT DISCOURSE	117
Special Idiomatic Constructions	118

EXERCISES ON THE SYNTAX.

APPENDIX.

P R O S O D Y .

A. PROSODY	119—122
Quantity of Syllables	119

Hexameter Verse	§ 120
Scansion	121
B. ABBREVIATIONS	122
C. THE ROMAN CALENDAR	123
LATIN READING LESSONS.	
VOCABULARIES.	

INTRODUCTION.

I. ORIGIN OF THE LATIN LANGUAGE.

1. The Latin Language, which had its seat at Rome, and spread thence over Gaul, Spain, Britain, and a part of Africa, like the Greek, is an off-shoot of the Indo-Germanic parent-stock, which, from the interior of Asia, propagated itself east and west over Asia and Europe.

2. The language receives its name from the Latins, the leading people of the mixed inhabitants of Rome, which were chiefly Latins, Sabines and Etruscans. Of these the Latins were of Pelasgian origin, while the other two tribes were of an origin diverse from that of the Greeks.

3. The language possesses great unity of character, with few diversities, except such as arise from different degrees of development, which was greatly influenced by Greek literature.

II. LIST OF THE PRINCIPAL LATIN AUTHORS.

1. Writers in the formative-period of the language :

Ennius (239 — 169 B. C.)	Terence (born 192 B. C.)
Plautus (227 — 184 B. C.)	Lucretius (95 — 52 B. C.)

2. Writers of the Golden Age. — From 81 B. C. to 14 A. D. :

Cicero,	Livy,	Virgil,
Caesar,	Catullus,	Horace,
Cornelius Nepos,	Tibullus,	Ovid.
Sallust,	Propertius,	

3. Writers of the Silver Age. — From 14 to 180 A. D.:

Quintilian,	Suetonius,	Martial,
Velleius,	Florus,	Lucan,
Seneca,	Pomponius Mela,	Silius Italicus,
Pliny,	Curtius,	Valerius Flaccus,
Pliny, the younger,	Juvenal,	Statius,
Tacitus,	Persius,	Manilius.

4. Writers of the Brazen Age. — From 180 to 476 A. D.:

Justinus,	Ammianus Marcellinus,	Ausonius,
Eutropius,	Aulus Gellius,	Claudian.
Aurelius Victor,	Macrobius,	

5. The period subsequent to the fall of the Western Empire, i. e. after A. D. 476, is called the Iron Age. From this time the Latin ceased to be a spoken language in common life, and being employed only as a learned language in writing, speedily declined, and to a great extent even lost its ancient character.

ETYMOLOGY.

FIRST COURSE.

THE SIMPLER PRINCIPLES OF ETYMOLOGY.

CHAPTER I.

Letters and Sounds.

§ 1. *Letters.*

1. THE Latin language has the same vowels (*a, e, i, o, u, y,*) and the same consonants, except *w*, as the English. But the letter *k* is but little used, and *y* and *z* only in Greek words.

REMARK 1.* The ancient Romans used only the capital forms of the letters. The smaller forms began to come into use in the eighth or ninth century after Christ. Now all Latin books are written in the smaller letter, the larger forms being used only at the commencement of sentences, etc., very much as in English. Originally, too, *i* and *v* were used both as vowels, and consonants (in this latter case, being pronounced like *y* and *w*). The forms *j* and *u* have been introduced in modern times.

2. The vowels are either short or long. The sign $\overset{\sim}$ over a vowel indicates that it is short, the sign $\bar{\text{}}$, that it is long, and the sign $\breve{\text{}}$, that it may be either long or short, as : $\breve{\text{a}}$, $\bar{\text{a}}$, $\breve{\text{a}}$, *perplācēs*.

3. There are the following diphthongs, in Latin : *ae, oe, au* ; and occasionally *eu, ei*, as in *ætās, fædus, aurum, eurus, hei*.

* With quite young scholars, the remarks should be omitted the first time going over.

REM. 2. *Æ* and *œ* are always diphthongs, unless separated by *diaeresis*, which is indicated by two points over the second vowel, as: *æër*, *poëta*. In strictly Latin words, *eu* is a diphthong only in *ceu*, *neu*, *seu*; *heu*, *heus*, *eheu*; *neuter* and *neutiquam*; (but in all words introduced from the Greek, as: *Eurōtas*). In other cases *eu* should be separated in pronunciation, as: *deus* (*dē-ūs*). So *ei* is a diphthong only in *hei*, *eia*, and the old forms where *ei* was used for *i*, as *queis* (*quis* = *quibus*), *heic* (*hic*), etc.; (the Greek *ει*, in Latin, becomes *i* before a consonant, and either *e* or *i*, before a vowel).—*Ui* is a diphthong only in *hui*, *huic*, and *cui*; and *yi* only in *Harpysia* (*Harp-yi-a*) and a few other Greek words.

4. The consonants, according to the greater or less influence of the organs of speech in their formation, are divided into:—

- a) Liquids (flowing easily from the mouth): *l, m, n, r*;
- b) Spirants (formed principally by the breath): *h, s, v, j*;
- c) Mutes (sounded by special exertion of the organs of speech): *b, c, d, f, g, k, p, q, t, x, z*.

§ 2. Pronunciation of the Letters.

1. The vowels are usually pronounced as in English; also the diphthongs, the second vowel generally being the most distinctly sounded.

REM. 1. But it is probable that the Romans always pronounced *a* as in *father*, *e* like *a* in *fate*, *i* like *ee* in *feet*. Also some other vowels and diphthongs somewhat differently from the English.

REM. 2. The vowels *i* and *u* seem originally to have been pronounced somewhat alike, and hence we find them interchanged in some words, as: *libet* and *lubet*, etc. So also, *e* and *i*, *e* and *u*, *o* and *e*, *o* and *u* are sometimes interchanged, as: *neglegentia*, and *negligentia*, etc.

2. Of the consonants, the pronunciation of the following should be observed:

C before *e, i, y, æ, œ, eu*, has its soft sound like *s*, (also *j* like *j*), but in other cases like *k*, as: *celsus* (*selsus*), *cicer*, *cymba*, *caecus*, *coelum*, *ceu*; but: *caro* (*karo*), *collum*, *custos*,

clamor. (But the Romans always pronounced *c* hard like *k*; and it is probable, also, *g* as in *gave*.)

Ch is pronounced like *k*, as *charta* (*karta*).

N before *c*, *ch*, *g*, *qu*, *x* has something of a nasal sound, like *ng*, as *mancus* (*mang-cus*), *Anchīses*, *longus*, *relinquo*, *anxius*.

Ph like our *f*, as: *pharētra* (*faretra*).

Qu is always pronounced like *kw*, as: *aqua* (*akwa*); *u* is also pronounced like *w* after *g* and *s*, when followed by another vowel in the same syllable, as: *lingua*, *suasor*; but not when the following vowel is in another syllable, as: *argū-o*, *sū-us*, etc.

Rh as a simple *r*, as: *rhetor* (*retor*).

Sch like *sk*, as: *schola* (*skola*).

Ti before a vowel is pronounced like *shi*, as: *actio* (*acshio*.)

But if the *i* is *long*, the hissing sound disappears, as: *totīus*. Besides, *ti* (with the *i* short) is pronounced without the hissing sound: a) if there is immediately before the *t*, another *t*, an *s*, or an *x*, as: *Attius*, *ostium*, *mixtio*; b) in Greek words, as: *Miltiādes*, *tiāra*; c) in the old infinitive ending *ier*, as *mittier*.

CHAPTER II.

Of Syllables.

§ 3. *Quantity of Syllables.**

1. A syllable is *long* or *short* by nature, according as its vowel is long or short, as *mātēr*, *pātēr*.

2. All syllables are *long* which contain a diphthong, or a single vowel arising from a diphthong, or from the contraction of two separate vowels into one, as: *plaudo*, *explōdo* (instead of *explaudo*); *caedo*, *cecīdi*; *tibīcen* (for *tibīcen*); *jūnior* (for *jūvenior*).

REM. 1. A syllable is said to be of *doubtful* quantity, when it is used indifferently, as long or short, by the poets.

* This and the two following sections should be omitted by the youthful beginner, and verbal explanations of the principles, so far as necessary, be given by the teacher.

3. A syllable having a *long* vowel (also the preposition *prae* in composition) becomes *short by position*, when the following syllable begins with a vowel, as: (dē) *dēambulo*, (prō) *prōavus*, (audīveram) *audīeram, philosophīa*. So also when *h* intervenes, as: *contrāho, advēho*.

REM. 2. In words taken from the Greek, a vowel generally remains long before another vowel, when it is long in the original Greek word, as: *āēr (āīrō)*. There are also a few exceptions to the last rule even in Latin words.

4. A syllable with a short vowel becomes *long by position*, when followed by two or more consonants, or by *x* (= *cs*, or *gs*) *z*, also *j* (except in the compounds of *jugum*, as: *bījugus*), as: *pērdo* (from *pēr*), *judēx* (gen. *judīcis*), *gāza, mājor* (but *māgis*). *H* with a consonant does not make the preceding vowel long, nor, generally, a mute followed by a liquid, (see §§ 1, 4), except in compound words, and when *l, m*, or *n* follows *b, d*, or *g*.

§ 4. *Accent of Syllables.*

1. The Latin, like the Greek, has, properly, three accents: the acute, or rising tone, (´), the grave, or falling tone, (`), and the circumflex, or the rising ending in a falling tone, (ˆ). But no special directions can be given for distinguishing the different *kinds* of accent in practice, other than what is naturally made by the voice in giving the emphasis required by the sense.

REM. 1. The only use which is made of the written accent is that made by some editors, in distinguishing, by the grave accent, certain words when used as adverbs and conjunctions from the same words used in their proper capacity (as: *antè, quò, modò*), and by the circumflex accent, a contracted syllable or a long final vowel, as: *fructùs, poenà*, etc.

2. In dissyllabic words the accent is on the *penult* (last syllable but one,) as: *déa, músă*.

REM. 2. A word can have the *circumflex accent* on the penult only when that syllable is long by nature and the last syllable short.

3. In words of more than two syllables the accent is on the penult *if long* (whether by nature or position), but if not, on the antepenult (last syllable but two). In the last of these two cases the accent is always the acute, but in the first it may be either the acute or the circumflex, according to the quantity of the last syllable, as: *história, Homêrus, Athénæ.*

REM. 3. Vocatives of the second declension ending in *i*, from having lost the final *e*, as: *Virgili* (for *Virgilie*, see § 17, R. 3), *Mercuri*, etc., also genitives ending in *i* instead of *ii*, have the accent as they would if the rejected letters were annexed, i. e. the acute on the penult (although short), as: *Mercúri, tugúri*. Also the compounds of *do* and *facio*, with words of more than two syllables, which are not prepositions, as: *calefácit, venum-dédit, pessum-dédit*.

4. A monosyllable short by nature takes the acute, and one long by nature, the circumflex accent, as: *píx, fáx; dôs, mús.*

REM. 4. When the *enclitics*: *que, ne, ve, ce, met*, etc., are joined on to words with a *short penult*, they draw the accent to the *final syllable* of the word, as: *scélëra sceleráque, hómīnes homínésque*; but when the penult of the word is *long* (and consequently takes the accent), the enclitic draws the accent to the last syllable only when that syllable becomes by the addition of the enclitic, *long by position*, as: *sceléstus scelestúsque, scelésta sceléstäque*, etc.

§ 5. *Division of Words into Syllables.**

1. A single consonant after an *accented antepenult*, having any other vowel than *u*, should generally be joined to that

* These rules are based upon the English analogy, and are such as are generally followed in this country, but there is good reason to believe that the ancient Romans observed the following rule in the distribution of several consonants between two vowels:— When two or more consonants come between two vowels, they should be prefixed to the second, if they are such as may commence a Latin word, viz., any one of the *mutæ* (see §§ 1, 4, c) followed by *l* or *r*; an *s* followed by *c*, *p*, or *t*, (*sc*, *sp*, *st*) alone, or followed by one of these, together with *l* or *r* (*scl* or *scr*, *spl* or *spr*, *stl* or *str*); and finally, *g* followed by *n*, as: *so-brius, a-gri, A-phro-dite, pe-stis; a-stra, a-plu-stre; ma-gnus*. So the double consonant *x* is most naturally prefixed to the following vowel, as: *a-xis*. In all other cases the two consonants are divided one to the one and the other to the other vowel, as: *an-nus, am-nis, mon-tes, scrip-tus*.

syllable, as : *itín-era*, *vólucris*, *ráp-i-dus* ; but, *lú-ridus*, etc. — But if the penult is *e* or *i* before another *vowel*, the preceding consonant is joined to it, as : *ra-dius*, *do-ceo*, *hae-reo*, etc.

2. A single consonant, in most other cases, should be *prefixed* to the vowel which follows it, as : *ma-ter*, *sa-tur*, etc. But *tib-i* and *sib-i* are generally excepted ; by some, also, the consonant following an *accented penult* is joined on to it in all cases where the *vowel* of the penult is *short*, as : *păt-er*, but, *mā-ter*, etc.

3. A mute, followed by a liquid, (except *bl*, *gl*, *tl*, and *gn*), are not generally to be separated in dividing a word into its syllables, but like a single consonant, are to be annexed or prefixed to the vowels which they come between, according to the two preceding rules, as : *a-grestis*, *pa-trius*, *li-bratus* ; but, *Aeg-le*, *Ag-laus*, *At-las*, *At-lantides*, *mag-nus*, *mag-nanimus*, etc. ; also, *pa-tria* (the penult being *i* before a *vowel*), etc.

4. Any two consonants, except a mute and a liquid, coming between two vowels, should generally be separated, one to the preceding and one to the following vowel, as : *cal-lis*, *am-nis*, *cor-pus*, etc.

5. When three consonants come between two vowels, the last two are generally a mute and a liquid, which should be joined to the vowel following, and the other to the preceding, as : *pis-trina*, *fenes-tra*, etc.

REM. Words compounded without change of the component parts, should be divided according to these parts, as : *ab-ăvus*, *ab-eo*, *super-ěro*, *res-publica*. If a letter is inserted in the composition, it is attached to the first word of the compound, as : *prod-esse*.

CHAPTER III.

§ 6. *Parts of Speech. — Inflection.*

1. The Substantive or Noun designates or gives the *name* of an *object* (a person or thing), as : *man*, *woman*, *house*.

2. The Verb expresses an *action* (something which an object *does*), as : *to bloom, to dance, to sleep, to love, to praise*, e. g. the rose *blooms* ; the boy *dances* ; the child *sleeps* ; God *loves* men ; the teacher *praises* the scholars.

3. The Adjective expresses a *property* or *quality*, as : *small, great, beautiful*, e. g. a *small* boy ; a *beautiful* rose ; a *great* house.

4. The Adverb expresses the *way and manner* in which an action takes place, as : *beautifully, sweetly*, e. g. the rose blooms *beautifully* ; the child sleeps *sweetly*.

REM. 1. There are adverbs also, which express the *place where*, and the *time when* the action takes place, as : *here, there, yesterday, to-day*.

5. The Pronoun *points* to an object without expressing the idea of it, as : *I, thou, he, this, that*.

6. The Numeral expresses *number* or *quantity*, as : *one, two, three, many, few*.

7. The Preposition is a word which stands before a noun, and expresses the relations of *place*, of *time* and other relations which an object sustains to an action, as : the boy stands *before* the house ; the child laughs *for* joy. Nearly all the prepositions are used, at times, as *adverbs*.

8. The Conjunction is a word which serves to connect words and sentences, as : *and, but, because*.

REM. 2. Besides, there are other words which are barely *signs of emotion*, and are called Interjections, as : *ecce, behold ! hei, alas !* etc.

9. Inflection is the variation or modification of a word in order to express a particular relation, as : thou *lovest*, he *loves*, the child's *clothes*, the man's *hat*. The inflection of the substantive, adjective, pronoun, and numeral, is called *declension*, that of verbs, *conjugation*. The adverb, also, is *compared*, which is a kind of inflection. The remaining parts of speech do not admit of inflection, and hence do not require to be treated of in etymology.

§ 7. *Some Forms of the Verb.*

All the verbs of the Latin Language are divided into four classes or conjugations, which are distinguished by the termination of the infinitive as follows :

First Conjugation :	—āre	as :	amāre, to love,
Second	"	—ēre	" monēre, to admonish,
Third	"	—ĕre	" regĕre, to govern,
Fourth	"	—īre	" audire, to hear.

§ 8. *First Conjugation : amārĕ, to love.*

PRESENT ACTIVE. Indicative.		PRESENT PASSIVE. Indicative.
1.	amo, <i>I love</i>	amor, <i>I am loved</i>
2.	amās, <i>thou lovest</i>	amāris, <i>thou art loved</i>
3.	amāt, <i>he, she, it loves</i>	amātur, <i>he, she, it is loved</i>
1.	amāmus, <i>we love</i>	amāmur, <i>we are loved</i>
2.	amātis, <i>you love</i>	amāmīni, <i>you are loved</i>
3.	amant, <i>they love.</i>	amantur, <i>they are loved.</i>
Imperative.		
2.	amā, <i>love thou</i>	
2.	amāte, <i>love ye.</i>	

Read Exercise I. (page 108).

§ 9. *Second Conjugation : mōnērĕ, to admonish.*

PRESENT ACTIVE. Indicative.		PRESENT PASSIVE. Indicative.
1.	moneo, <i>I admonish</i>	moneor, <i>I am admonished</i>
2.	monēs, <i>thou admonishest</i>	monēris, <i>thou art admonished</i>
3.	monĕt, <i>he, she, it admonishes</i>	monĕtur, <i>he, she, it is admonished</i>
1.	monēmus, <i>we admonish</i>	monēmur, <i>we are admonished</i>
2.	monētis, <i>you admonish</i>	monēmīni, <i>you are admonished</i>
3.	monent, <i>they admonish.</i>	monentur, <i>they are admonished.</i>
Imperative.		
2.	monē, <i>admonish thou</i>	
2.	monēte, <i>admonish ye.</i>	

Read Exercise II.

§ 10. *Third Conjugation*: *rēgērē, to govern.*

PRESENT ACTIVE. Indicative.		PRESENT PASSIVE. Indicative.
1.	<i>rego, I govern</i>	<i>regor, I am governed</i>
2.	<i>regis, thou governest</i>	<i>regēris, thou art governed</i>
3.	<i>regit, he, she, it governs</i>	<i>regitur, he, she, it is governed</i>
1.	<i>regimus, we govern</i>	<i>regimur, we are governed</i>
2.	<i>regitis, you govern</i>	<i>regimini, you are governed</i>
3.	<i>regunt, they govern.</i>	<i>reguntur, they are governed.</i>
Imperative.		
2.	<i>regē, govern thou</i>	
2.	<i>regite, govern ye.</i>	

Read Exercise III.

§ 11. *Fourth Conjugation*: *audirē, to hear.*

PRESENT ACTIVE. Indicative.		PRESENT PASSIVE. Indicative.
1.	<i>audio, I hear</i>	<i>audior, I am heard</i>
2.	<i>audis, thou hearest</i>	<i>audiris, thou art heard</i>
3.	<i>audit, he, she, it hears</i>	<i>auditur, he, she, it is heard</i>
1.	<i>audimus, we hear</i>	<i>audimur, we are heard</i>
2.	<i>auditis, you hear</i>	<i>audimini, you are heard</i>
3.	<i>audiunt, they hear.</i>	<i>audiuntur, they are heard.</i>
Imperative.		
2.	<i>audī, hear thou</i>	
2.	<i>audite, hear ye.</i>	

Besides, the following forms of the irregular verb *sum* should be noted :

est, he, she, it is, sunt, they are, esse, to be,
erat, he, she, it was, erant, they were.

Read Exercise IV.

CHAPTER IV.

Of the Substantive and Adjective.

§ 12. *Classification of Substantives.*

1. The substantive (§ 6, 1.) is called *concrete*, when it designates a *person* or *thing* which has an *actual* and *independent* existence, as: *man, lion, flower, army*; it is called *abstract*, on the contrary, when it signifies an *action* or *quality* conceived of as independent of a subject, as: *virtue, wisdom*.

2. The Concretes are:

a) Appellative nouns, when they indicate *a whole species*, or an *individual of a class*, as: *man, woman, flower, lion*;

b) Proper nouns, when they designate only *single persons* as things which do not belong to a class, as: *Marius, Rome*;

c) Material nouns, when they indicate the simple *material*, as: *milk, dust, water, gold*;

d) Collective nouns, when they designate a *number* of single persons or things as *one whole*, as: *army, cavalry, fleet, herd*.

§ 13. *Gender of the Substantive.*

The Gender of Substantives, which is three-fold, as in English, is determined partly by their *meaning* and partly by their *endings*. The rules of gender founded upon the endings will be treated of under the particular declensions. With reference to the meaning, we have the following general rules:

1. Of the *masculine* gender, are the names and designations of males, nations, winds, months, most rivers, and mountains.

2. Of the *feminine* gender, are the names and designations of females, of most countries, islands, towns, trees, shrubs, and small plants.

3. Of the *neuter* gender, are the names of most fruits, the letters of the alphabet, the infinitive, all indeclinable words (except the names of persons from foreign languages), and every word used as the mere symbol of a sound, as: *man* is a monosyllable.

4. Of the *common* gender, are the designations of persons which have but one form for the masculine and feminine, as: *dux*, a male or female leader.

1. Nations, males, rivers, winds,
Mounts and months are *masculines*.
2. Females, isles, lands, trees, and town,
These as *feminine* are found.
3. Whatever cannot be declined
This is of the *neuter* kind.
4. *Common* is whatever can
Include a woman and a man.

REM. 1. *Variable* substantives (designations of persons, and the more important animals) are those which *vary* their ending in order to indicate the natural gender, as: *filius*, son, *filia*, daughter, *magister*, *magistra*, teacher (male and female), *leo*, *leaena*, lion, *lioness*, *rex*, *regīna*, king, queen, *cervus*, *cerva*.

REM. 2. *Epicæne* nouns are those (names of most animals) which have but one grammatical gender (mostly masc. except of the first declension) for designating both genders, as: *corvus m.* the crow, whether male or female; *ciconia, f.* the stork, *aquila, f.* the eagle, *vulpes, f.* the fox, *anser, m.* the goose, etc. But when the natural gender is to be distinguished, *mas* or *mascūlus*, *mascūla* or *femīna* are added to the nouns, as: *corvus femīna*, *vulpes mas* or *mascula*; or the gender may be distinguished by the *termination* of an adjective attached to it, as: *anser alba*.

REM. 3. Some nouns have different genders (*Heterogeneous*) in the Sing. and Plur., as: *jocus*, Pl. *joci* and *joca*; *carbāsus*, Pl. *carbasi* and *carbasa*; *coelum*, Pl. *coeli*; *delicium*, Pl. *deliciae*; *rastrum*, Pl. *rastri* and *rastra*;—also in the same number, as: *balteus* and *balteum*, *essedum*, *i*, *esseda*, *ae*.

§ 14. *Number, Case and Declension.*

1. The substantive and adjective, like the verb, have two numbers: the Sing., which denotes a *unity*, and the Plur., which denotes a *plurality*, and six cases in each number, viz.:

1. Nominative, answering the question *who?* or *what?*
2. Genitive, answering the question, *whose?* *of whom?* *of what?*
3. Dative, answering the question, *to* or *for whom* or *what?*
4. Accusative, answering the question, *whom?* or *what?*

5. Vocative, the case of direct address ;

6. Ablative, answering the questions, *whence? wherewith? whereby? when? at what time,* etc.

REM. 1. The Nom. and Voc. are called *casus recti* ; the other cases, *casus obliqui*. Substantives and adjectives of the *neuter* gender have the Nom. Acc. and Voc. alike.

REM. 2. Some nouns are used only in one number (*Defectives in number*), as : *Sing.* most *abstract* and *collective* nouns and *nouns of material* (which are not used in the Plur. except to express different *sorts, instances,* etc.), as well as proper names, e. g. *sua-vitas, sweetness, indōles, natural ability, aurum, gold ; Plur.* *arma, orum, arms, procēres, chiefs, nuptiae, a wedding, habēnae, reins,* etc. — Some nouns are not used in all the cases (*Defectives in case*), as : *fors, chance* (only in the Nom. and Abl. *forte*), etc., and a few (both nouns and adjectives) are *indeclinable, viz.,* names of the letters of the alphabet, *pondo, a pond, fas, permitted ;* Greek words in *i, y, (u)*, as : *hydromeli, asty, astu,* and also *gummi,* etc.

2. The Latin language has *five* declensions, distinguished by the ending of the Gen. Sing. ; 1st Dec. *ae*, 2d *i*, 3d *is*, 4th *us* 5th *ei*.

REM. 3. Some nouns are declined, either wholly or in part, according to different Dec. (*Heteroclites*), as : *vas, G. vasis,* also *vasi* of the second Dec., *laurus, G. i* and *ūs* (after the second and fourth Dec. in Gen. and Abl. Sing. and Nom. and Acc. Plur.), etc.

§ 15. Gender and Declension of the Adjective.

1. The adjective (and participle), in Latin, agrees with its substantive, in gender, number, and case, as : *filia bona, the good daughter, filia est bona, the daughter is good, filius bonus, the good son, filius est bonus, the son is good, bellum malum, the evil war, bellum est malum, the war is evil.*

2. Hence, the adjective (also the participle), like the substantive, has a threefold gender. Still, not all adjectives have separate forms for the three genders, but many have only two distinct endings, viz. one for the Masc. and Fem. and the other for the Neut. ; some, indeed, have only one form for all genders.

3. The *declension* of the adjective (and participle) corresponds with the first three declensions of nouns, the forms ending in the Nom. in *a*, belonging to the first Dec., all in *us* and *um*, and those in *er* which have *a* in the Fem. (i. e. all in *er*, except thirteen,) to the second Dec., and all others to the third.

§ 16. First Declension.

Nouns of the first declension ending in *a* are all feminine.

REM. 1. Exceptions to this rule occur only out of regard to the general rules of gender (§ 13), thus, e. g. *agricōla*, a *husbandman*, is Masc.; so also are most names of rivers of this declension, as: *Matrōna*, the *Marne*, *Trebia*, *Sequāna*, the *Seine*, also *Hadria*, *Adriatic Sea*. But the names of mountains, as: *Aetna*, *Ossa*, remain Feminine.

Case-Endings.

Singular	Nominative	ā*	Plural	Nominative	ae
	Genitive	ae		Genitive	ārūm
	Dative	ae		Dative	is
	Accusative	ām		Accusative	ās
	Vocative	ā		Vocative	ae
	Ablative	ā		Ablative	is

Paradigms.

	Singular.	Plural.
Nominative	<i>mensā, the table</i>	<i>mensae, the tables</i>
Genitive	<i>mensae, of the table</i>	<i>mensārūm, of the tables</i>
Dative	<i>mensae, to the table</i>	<i>mensis, to the tables</i>
Accusative	<i>mensām, the table</i>	<i>mensās, the tables</i>
Vocative	<i>mensā, O table</i>	<i>mensae, O tables</i>
Ablative	<i>mensā, by the table.</i>	<i>mensis, by the tables.</i>

REM. 2. As the Latin language has neither the definite article *the* nor the indefinite article *a* or *an*, *mensa* may signify either in a general sense *table*, or *a table*, or *the table*.

* Let the *quantity* of these endings be thoroughly learned; so also in the paradigms of nouns, adjectives, and verbs.

REM. 3. The dative and ablative plural have the ending *ābūs* (for *is*) in: *dea, a goddess, filia, a daughter*, when they are to be distinguished from corresponding masculine forms, e. g. *filiis et filiābus, to sons and daughters, diis et deābus, to gods and goddesses*; occasionally, also, in a few other nouns.

REM. 4. For Greek nouns of the first Dec. see § 35.

REM. 5. In parsing a form of a noun, let the pupil proceed in the following order, and state, a) the *case*, b) the *number*, c) the *declension*, d) the *gender*, e) the *nominative* and the *oblique cases* till the form is made; e. g. *corporibus* is a noun in the Dat. case, Plur. number, third Dec., neuter gender, from the nominative *corpus*, Gen. *corporis*, etc. (When further advanced he should also be required to give the government.) For the manner of parsing a verb, see § 47, R. 1.

Read Exercise V.

§ 17. Second Declension.

Words of the second declension (substantives and adjectives) end in the Nom. in *us, er*, (in *ir* and *ur* only *vir* with its compounds and *satur*), and *um*, of which those in *us, er*, and *ir* are of the *masculine* and those in *um* of the *neuter* gender; (participles end only in *us, a, um*). For the exceptions see § 36.

Case-Endings.

Singular	Nom.	ūs (ēr, ir), ūm	Plural	Nom.	i;	ā
	Gen.	i		Gen.	ōrūm	
	Dat.	ō		Dat.	is	
	Acc.	ūm		Acc.	ōs;*	ā
	Voc.	ē (ēr, ir); ūm		Voc.	i;	ā
	Abl.	ō		Abl.	is	

REM. 1. Most words in *er* of this Dec. (whether nouns or adjectives) reject the *e* (like *ager*) in all the cases except the Nom. and Voc. Only the following retain the *e*. The nouns: *puer, gener, socer, vesper; libēri, Libēr, Mulcibēr, Celtibēr*; — and the adjectives: *asper, exter, gibber, lacer; liber, miser, prosper, tener; frugifer, corniger*, and the other compounds of *fer* and *ger*. *Dexter* has both formš, but rarely the form with *e*.

* The ending *os*, in Latin, is pronounced like *os* in *host*.

Paradigms.

Singular.

N. hortūs, <i>the garden</i>	puēr, <i>the boy</i>	agēr, <i>the field</i>	vīr, <i>the man</i>
G. hortī, <i>of the garden</i>	puērī, <i>of the boy</i>	agrī, <i>of the field</i>	virī, <i>of the man</i>
D. hortō, <i>to the garden</i>	puērō, <i>to the boy</i>	agrō, <i>to the field</i>	virō, <i>to the man</i>
A. hortūm, <i>the garden</i>	puērūm, <i>the boy</i>	agrūm, <i>the field</i>	virūm, <i>the man</i>
V. hortē, <i>O garden</i>	puēr, <i>O boy</i>	agēr, <i>O field</i>	vīr, <i>O man</i>
A. hortō, <i>by the garden</i>	puērō, <i>by the boy</i>	agrō, <i>by the field</i>	virō, <i>by the man.</i>

Plural.

N. hortī, <i>the gardens</i>	puērī, <i>the boys</i>	agrī, <i>the fields</i>	virī, <i>the men</i>
G. hortōrūm, <i>of the gardens</i>	puērōrūm, <i>of the boys</i>	agrōrūm, <i>of the fields</i>	virōrūm, <i>of the men</i>
D. hortīs, <i>to the gardens</i>	puērīs, <i>to the boys</i>	agrīs, <i>to the fields</i>	virīs, <i>to the men</i>
A. hortōs, <i>the gardens</i>	puērōs, <i>the boys</i>	agrōs, <i>the fields</i>	virōs, <i>the men</i>
V. hortī, <i>O gardens</i>	puērī, <i>O boys</i>	agrī, <i>O fields</i>	virī, <i>O men</i>
A. hortīs, <i>by the gardens.</i>	puērīs, <i>by the boys.</i>	agrīs, <i>by the fields</i>	virīs, <i>by the men.</i>

Singular.

N. bellūm, <i>the war</i>	bonūs, <i>good</i>	bonā, <i>good</i>	bonūm, <i>good</i>
G. bellī, <i>of the war</i>	bonī	bonae	bonī
D. bellō, <i>to the war</i>	bonō	bonae	bonō
A. bellūm, <i>the war</i>	bonūm	bonām	bonūm
V. bellūm, <i>O war</i>	bonē	bonā	bonūm
A. bellō, <i>by the war.</i>	bonō	bonā	bonō

Plural.

N. bellā, <i>the wars</i>	bonī	bonae	bonā
G. bellōrūm, <i>of the wars</i>	bonōrūm	bonārūm	bonōrūm
D. bellīs, <i>to the wars</i>	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
A. bellā, <i>the wars</i>	bonōs	bonās	bonā
V. bellā, <i>O wars</i>	bonī	bonae	bonā
A. bellīs, <i>by the wars.</i>	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs.

Singular.

<i>free</i>	<i>free</i>	<i>free</i>	<i>beautiful</i>	<i>beautiful</i>	<i>beautiful</i>
N. libēr	libērā	libērūm	pulchēr	pulchrā	pulchrūm
G. libērī	libērae	libērī	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchrī
D. libērō	libērae	libērō	pulchrō	pulchrae	pulchrō
A. libērūm	libērām	libērūm	pulchrūm	pulchrām	pulchrūm
V. libēr	libērā	libērūm	pulchēr	pulchrā	pulchrūm
A. libērō	libērā	libērō	pulchrō	pulchrā	pulchrō

Plural.

N. libērī	libērae	libērā	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchrā
G. liberōrūm	liberārūm	liberōrūm	pulchrōrūm	pulchrārūm	pulchrōrūm
D. libērīs	libērīs	libērīs	pulchrīs	pulchrīs	pulchrīs
A. libērōs	libērās	libērā	pulchrōs	pulchrās	pulchrā
V. libērī	libērae	libērā	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchrā
A. libērīs	libērīs	libērīs.	pulchrīs	pulchrīs	pulchrīs.

In like manner the pupil may decline :

Vir bonus, a good man, femina bona, a good woman, exemplum bonum, a good example, hortus pulcher, a beautiful garden, rosa pulchra, a beautiful rose, ovum pulchrum, a beautiful egg, ager fecundus, the productive field, vir liber, a free man, scriba bonus, a good scribe.

REM. 2. The Gen. Sing. of nouns in *ius* and *ium*, had in the classical period, the contracted form *ī* together with *ii*, as: *filius*, G. *fili* and *filiī*. But adjectives always have *ii*, as *egregii* from *egregius*, *excellent*.

REM. 3. The Voc. Sing. of *filius* (a son) is *fili*, and that of *meus* (my) is *mī*, as: *O mī fili* (but, *O mea filia*, *O meum officium*). This Voc. in *ī* also, is found in proper names in *īus*, *aius* and *eius*, hence: *ī* (for *īe*), *aī* (for *aie*), *eī* (for *eie*), as: *Tullius Tullī*, *Virgilius Virgilī*, *Mercūrius Mercūrī*, *Antōnius Antōnī*, *Gaius Gai*, *Pompēius Pompēi*.

REM. 4. The word *deus* (God) is *deus* also in the Voc.; in the plural it is thus declined: N. and V. *dii* (rare *dei*), G. *deorum*, D. and Abl. *diis* (rare *deis*), Acc. *deos*.

REM. 5. The Gen. plural of some nouns, (mostly those designating *measure*, *weight*, and *money*), has the ending *um* (for *orum*), e. g. *nummum* (from *nummus*), *of money*, *talentum* (from *talentūm*), *of talents*, *sestertium* (from *sestertius*), etc.

Read Exercise VI.

§ 18. Third Declension.

1. The third Declension has the following case-endings:

Sing.	Nom.	—	Plur.	Nom.	ēs* Neut. ā (iā)
	Gen.	īs		Gen.	ūm (iūm)
	Dat.	ī		Dat.	ībūs
	Acc.	ēm, Neut. like Nom.		Acc.	ēs ā (iā)
	Voc.	like the Nom.		Voc.	ēs ā (iā)
	Abl.	ē (ī)		Abl.	ībūs

REM. 1. Neuter nouns of this Dec. generally present the pure stem in the Nom., but in masc. and fem. nouns, the pure stem is often changed, for the sake of euphony, by adding an *s* at the end (with an *e* or *i* before it in parissyllables [R. 4.] in *es* and *is*),

* The ending *es*, in Latin, is pronounced like the English word *ease*.

and rejecting *t*, *d*, *n*, or *nt* when they would come before *s*. Also the final *r*, in nouns of all genders, often passes into *s*. But in all cases, the pure stem may be found by removing from the Gen. the ending (*-is*) of that case, as: *rex* (= *reg-s*), G. *reg-is*, *nub-e-s*, G. *nub-is*, *av-i-s*, G. *av-is*, *mos*, G. *mor-is*, *rus*, G. *zur-is*, *corpus*, G. *corpor-is*.

REM. 2. Nouns of all genders often change their final stem-vowels in the Nom. for the sake of euphony, 1) *i* into *e*, in several masculines ending in *s*, and neuters, in *en* and *e*, as: *miles*, G. *milit-is*, *judex*, G. *judic-is*; *nomen*, G. *nomin-is*, *mare*, G. *mar-is* (for *mari-is*); 2) *i* into *u* in *caput*, G. *capit-is*; 3) *i* into *o* in *homo*, G. *homin-is*, and others in *o*; 4) *o* into *u* in *corpus*, G. *corpor-is*, *ebur*, G. *ebor-is*; 5) *e* into *u* in some words in *us*, as: *genus*, G. *gener-is*. — Greek proper names ending in *ont*, reject the *t* in the Nom., as: *Xenophon*, G. *Xenophont-is*. Greek words whose stem ends in *t*, reject the *t* in the Nom., as: *poëma*, G. *poëmat-is*; thus also the neuters, *cor*, G. *cord-is*, *lac*, G. *lact-is*, reject the *t*-sound in the Nom.

REM. 3. For the endings *e* and *i*, *a* and *ia*, *um* and *ium*, see § 37.

2. For the *gender*, we have the following general rules:

1) Of the *masculine* gender are the nouns in *o*, *or*, *os*, *er*, and *imparisyllables*, in *es*.

REM. 4. *Parisyllables* are words with the same number of syllables in the Gen. as in the Nom., as: *nubes*, a *cloud*, G. *nubis*; *imparisyllables*, on the contrary, are words which have more syllables in the Gen. than in the Nom., as: *miles*, *soldier*, G. *militis*.

2) Of the *feminine* gender are nouns in *as*, *is*, *aus*, *us* (Gen. *ūtis* or *udis*), *x*, *s* with a consonant before it, and *parisyllables* in *es*.

3) Of the *neuter* gender are nouns in *a*, *e*, *c*, *l*, *en*, *ar*, *ur*, *ut* and *us* (Gen. *ōris*, *ēris*, *ūris*).

REM. 5. For the exceptions to these rules see §§ 38—40.

§ 19. I. *The Nominative presents the pure stem.*

	<i>colour (m.)</i>	<i>goose (m.)</i>	<i>father (m.)</i>	<i>animal (n.)</i>	<i>spur (n.)</i>
S. N.	colōr	ansēr	pätēr	animāl	calcār
G.	colōrīs	ansēris	patris	animālis	calcāris
D.	colōrī	ansēri	patri	animāli	calcāri
A.	colōrēm	ansērem	patrem	animāl	calcār
V.	colōr	ansēr	pater	animāl	calcār
A.	colōrē	ansēre	patre	animāli	calcāri
P. N.	colōrēs	ansēres	patres	animālīa	calcāria
G.	colōrūm	ansērum	patrum	animālīum	calcārīum
D.	colōrībūs	ansēribus	patrībūs	animālībūs	calcārībūs
A.	colōrēs	ansēres	patres	animālīa	calcāria
V.	colōrēs	ansēres	patres	animālīa	calcāria
A.	colōrībūs	ansēribus	patrībūs	animālībūs	calcārībūs.

REM. Nouns in *ter* and *ber*, as: *pater*, *father*, *mater*, *mother*, *frater*, *brother*, as well as adjectives in *ber* and *cer*, as: *celēber*, *celebrated*, *acer*, *sharp*, reject the *e* in the oblique cases; Exc.: *latēr*, *ērīs*.

§ 20. II. *The Nominative presents the stem changed according to the laws of euphony.*

	<i>name (n.)</i>	<i>lion (m.)</i>	<i>body (n.)</i>	<i>sea (n.)</i>
S. Nom. and Voc.	nomēn	leō	corpūs	mare
Genitive	nomīnis	leōnis	corpōris	maris
Dative	nomīni	leōni	corpōri	mari
Accusative	nomēn	leōnem	corpūs	mare
Ablative	nomīne	leōne	corpōre	mari
P. N. Acc. and V.	nomīna	leōnes	corpōra	marīa
Genitive	nomīnum	leōnum	corpōrum	marīum
Dat. and Abl.	nomīnībūs	leōnībūs	corpōrībūs	marībūs.

REM. *Greek proper names* whose stem ends in *ōn* or *ōn*, in good prose, form their Nom. almost always in *o*, as: *Agamemno*, G. *ōn-is*; *Plato*, *Solo*, *Bito*, G. *ōn-is*; those, on the contrary, whose stem ends in *ont* form their Ncm., in the best writers, in *on*, as: *Xenophon*, G. *ont-is*; but there are variations from both these rules even in *Cicero*.

§ 21. III. *The Nominative adds s to the stem.*

	<i>root (f.)</i>	<i>city (f.)</i>	<i>praise (f.)</i>	<i>cloud (f.)</i>
S. Nom. and Voc.	radix	urbs	laus	nub-e-s
Genitive	radicis	urbis	laudis	nub-is
Dative	radici	urbi	laudi	nubi
Accusative	radicem	urbem	laudem	nubem
Ablative	radice	urbe	laude	nube
P. N. Acc. and V.	radices	urbes	laudes	nub-es
Genitive	radicum	urbium	laudum	nub-ium
Dat. and Abl.	radicibus	urbibus	laudibus	nub-ibus.

REM. There are a few nouns which form their Gen. (and one or two some of the other cases), like none of these paradigms, but these variations are always given in the vocabularies. See especially Vocabulary p. 145.

Read Exercise VII.

§ 22. *Paradigms of Adjectives of the Third Declension.*

The following paradigms present the forms of the three classes of adjectives of the third Dec. with *one*, *two*, and *three* endings. *Adjectives* of one ending terminate in *l*, *r*, *s*, *x*, and *participles* (Present Participles only) in *ns*, G. *ntis*, as: *amans*, *loving*, G. *amantis*. For the irregular adjectives of the second Dec.: *unus*, *ullus*, etc., *duo* and *ambo*, see § 33. For adjectives and participles of the first and second Dec., see §§ 15, 17.

Singular.

	<i>sharp.</i>			<i>delightful.</i>		<i>greater.</i>	
	(m.)	(f.)	(n.)	(m & f.)	(n.)	(m. & f.)	(n.)
N. and V.	acer	acris	acre	suavis	suave	major	majus
Gen.	acris	acris	acris	suavis	suavis	majōris	majōris
Dat.	acri	acri	acri	suavi	suavi	majōri	majōri
Acc.	acrem	acrem	acre	suavem	suave	majōrem	majus
Abl.	acri	acri	acri	suavi	suavi	majōre	majōre

Plural.

N. V. & Ac.	acres	acres	acria	suaves	suavia	majōres	majōra
Genitive	acrium	acrium	acrium	suavium	suavium	majōrum	majōrum
D. & Abl.	acribus	acribus	acribus	suavibus	suavibus	majōribus	majōribus.

Singular.

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom. & Voc.	audax (<i>m. f. n.</i>) bold	audāces (<i>m. f.</i>) audacia (<i>n.</i>)
Genitive	audācis	audacium audacium
Dat. & Abl.	audāci	audacibus audacibus
Acc.	audācem (<i>m. f.</i>), audax (<i>n.</i>)	audāces audacia.

(Thus also present participles.)

In like manner decline :

N. odor acer, <i>sharp odor</i> ,	aqua acris, <i>sharp water</i> ,	acētum acre, <i>sharp vin-</i>
G. odōris acris	aquae acris	acēti acris [egar,
N. campus virīdis, <i>green</i>	silva virīdis, <i>green wood</i> ,	pratunvirīde, <i>green</i>
G. campi virīdis [field,	silvae virīdis	prati virīdis [meadow,
N. vir major, <i>greater man</i> ,	femīna major, <i>greater</i>	corpus majus, <i>greater</i>
G. viri majōris	femīnae majōris [woman	corpōris majōris [body,
N. miles audax, <i>bold sol-</i>	leaena audax, <i>bold lion-</i>	animā audax, <i>bold an-</i>
G. militis audācis [dier,	leaenae audācis [ess,	animālis audācis [imal.

REM. 1. Adjectives in *er* (like *acer*) sometimes have *is* in the Masc. as : *celebris locus* (instead of *celeber l.*) Also several adjectives in *is, e*, sometimes take the form in *us, um*, as : *hilāris, inermis, exanimis*, etc.

REM. 2. For the Abl. Sing. in *i* and *e*, the Nom. Plur. in *ia* and *a*, and the Gen. Plur. in *ium* and *um*, see § 37.

Read Exercise VIII.

§ 23. Fourth Declension.

Nouns of the fourth Dec. have in the Nom. the two endings : *us* and *u*, of these the first is of the *masculine* and the last of the *neuter* gender. For the exceptions, see § 41.

Case-Endings.

Sing.	Nom.	ūs ; <i>Neut.</i>	ū	Plur.	Nom.	ūs ; <i>Neut.</i>	ūā
	Gen.	ūs ; ūs <i>or</i>	ū		Gen.	ūūm	
	Dat.	ūi <i>or</i> ū ;	ū		Dat.	ībūs	
	Acc.	ūm ;	ū		Acc.	ūs ;	ūā
	Voc.	ūs ;	ū		Voc.	ūs ;	ūā
	Abl.	ū			Abl.	ībūs	

Paradigms.

	Singular.		Plural.	
N.	fructūs (<i>m.</i>), <i>fruit.</i>	cornū (<i>n.</i>), <i>horn.</i>	fructūs	cornūā
G.	fructūs (<i>old, uis</i>)	cornūs <i>or</i> ū	fructūūm	cornūūm
D.	fructūi <i>or</i> ū	cornū	fructībūs	cornībūs
A.	fructūm	cornū	fructūs	cornūā
V.	fructūs	cornū	fructūs	cornūā
A.	fructū	cornū	fructībūs	cornībūs.

REM. 1. In some words of this Dec. an associate form in *i* for *us* is found in the Gen. Sing. as: *senati*, instead of the common form: *senatus*. The Gen. Plur. in *um* for *uum*, as: *currum*, is found occasionally in the poets.

REM. 2. *Ficus* (f.) a *fig-tree*, in the Dat. and Abl. Plur. has *ficis* after the second Dec. The following words have their Dat. and Abl. Plur. regularly in *übüs* instead of *ibüs*, viz.:

acus, lacus, specus, arcus, . { (f.) *needle*, (m.) *lake*, (m.) *grotto*,
 (m.) *a bow*,
 tribus, quercus, artus, partus, { (f.) *a tribe*, (f.) *the oak*, (m.) *a*
joint, (m.) *a birth*,
 pecu, veru, { (n.) *cattle*, (as a species), (n.) *a*
spit; —
 sometimes, also, portus, sinus, tonitru, genu.

REM. 3. The word *dömus* (f.) a *house*, is declined as follows:

Sing. N. V.	domüs	Plur. N. V.	domüs
Gen.	domüs	Gen.	domiüm and domörüm
Dat.	domi	Dat.	domibus
Acc.	domüm	Acc.	domös (rarely domüs)
Abl.	domö	Abl.	domibus

The form *domi* (Gen.) is used only in the meaning *at home*, *at the house*; thus: *domi meae*, *domi tuae*, *domi aliënae*, *at my, thy, another's house*. The Dat. *domo* and Abl. *domu* are obsolete.

Read Exercise IX.

§ 24. Fifth Declension.

All nouns of the fifth declension end in the Nom. in *es* and are of the *feminine* gender.

Exceptions: *Masculine* are, *dies*, a *day*, and *meridies*, *mid-day*; yet *dies* in the Sing. is *feminine* when it signifies a *definite day*, a *day fixed upon* or *appointed*, as: *dies dicta*, *dies constituta*, a *day appointed*, also, when it signifies *length of time*, as: *dies perixigua*, a *very short space*; still, in both these meanings it is sometimes used as *masculine*.

Case-Endings and Paradigms.

		<i>affair, thing.</i>		<i>day.</i>	
S. N. ēs	Pl. ēs	S. rēs,	Pl. rēs	diēs,	Pl. diēs
G. ēī	ērūm	rēī	rērūm	diēī	diērūm
D. ēī	ēbūs	rēī	rēbūs	diēī	diēbūs
A. ēm	ēs	rēm	rēs	diēm	diēs
V. ēs	ēs	rēs	rēs	diēs	diēs
A. ē	ēbūs	rē	rēbūs	diē	diēbūs.

REM. 1. The *e* in *ei*, the ending of the Gen. and Dat., is *short* when a consonant stands before it, as: rēī, fidēī; but *long* when a vowel stands before it, as: diēī, faciēī.

REM. 2. Only *res* and *dies* form all the cases of the Sing. and Plur.; all the other nouns of the fifth declension are destitute of the Gen., Dat. and Abl. Plur., these cases being supplied by the corresponding cases of synonymous nouns of the other declensions.

REM. 3. The Gen. and Dat., in early times, was sometimes contracted into *ē* and *ī*, as: *acie*, *die*; and the form *ī* in the phrase *tribunus plebi* (= *plebēī*), and in words whose stem ends in *ie*, as: *pernicii* (for *perniciēī*).

REM. 4. Many words of the *first* Dec. as: *barbaria*, *duritia*, *luxuria*, *mollitia*, etc., have, but generally only in the Nom. Acc. and Abl. Sing., an associate form after the *fifth* Dec., as: *molliti-es*, *-em*, *-e*; still, these forms occur but rarely in the prose writers of the golden age.

Read Exercise X.

§ 25. Comparison of Adjectives and Participles.

1. There are *three degrees* of quality:

1) The *positive*, as: the man is *learned* (*vir est doctus*);

2) The *comparative*, as: the father is *more learned* than the son (*pater est doctior quam filius*);

3) The *superlative*, as: Cicero was the *most learned* of all the Romans (*Cicero erat doctissimus omnium Romanorum*).

2. The superlative, in Latin, is also used to express in general, a *very high* degree of a quality, as: *pater tuus est doctissimus*, thy father is *very learned*.

3. For indicating the comparative and superlative, the Latin language has the following forms :

- a) For the *comparative* : *ior*, Masc. and Fem., *ius*, Neuter ;
- b) For the *superlative* : *issimus*, *issima*, *issimum*.

4. These endings are joined directly to the stem, which may be found in all cases, by removing, in words of the *second* Declension, the Nominative-ending *-us*, and in those of the *third*, the Genitive-ending *-is*, as :

Laet-us, <i>joyful</i>	Comp. laet- <i>ior</i> , <i>ius</i>	Sup. laet- <i>issimus</i> , <i>a, um</i>
doct-us, <i>learned</i>	— doct- <i>ior</i>	— doct- <i>issimus</i>
pudic-us, <i>bashful, modest</i>	— pudic- <i>ior</i>	— pudic- <i>issimus</i>
imbecill-us (later- <i>is</i>), <i>feeble</i>	— imbecill- <i>ior</i>	— imbecill- <i>issimus</i>
lev-is, <i>light</i>	— lev- <i>ior</i>	— lev- <i>issimus</i>
fertil-is, <i>fertile</i>	— fertil- <i>ior</i>	— fertil- <i>issimus</i>
dives (G. divit-is,) <i>rich</i>	— divit- <i>ior</i>	— divit- <i>issimus</i>
prudens (G. prudent- <i>is</i>), <i>prudent</i>	— prudent- <i>ior</i>	— prudent- <i>issimus</i>
amans (G. amant-is), <i>loving</i>	— amant- <i>ior</i>	— amant- <i>issimus</i>
felix (G. felic-is), <i>happy</i>	— felic- <i>ior</i>	— felic- <i>issimus</i> .

5. Adjectives in *er* have the ending *rimus, a, um* in the superlative, as:

miser (G. misēr-i), <i>a, um</i> (<i>unhappy</i>)	celer (G. celēr-is), <i>is, e</i> , (<i>swift</i>)
miser- <i>ior</i> , <i>ius</i>	celer- <i>ior</i> , <i>ius</i>
miser- <i>rimus</i> , <i>a, um</i> ;	celer- <i>rimus</i> , <i>a, um</i> ;
pulcher (G. pulchr-i), <i>a, um</i> (<i>beau-</i>	pauper (G. paupēr-is,) (<i>poor</i>)
<i>tiful</i>)	pauper- <i>ior</i> , <i>ius</i>
pulchr- <i>ior</i> , <i>ius</i>	pauper- <i>rimus</i> , <i>a, um</i> .
pulcher- <i>rimus</i> , <i>a, um</i> .	

So also : *vetus*, G. *vetēr-is*, *old* (Comp. *veterior*, *ius*, is rarely used) Sup. *veter-rimus* ; and *nuper-us*, *a, um*, *recent*, (Comp. *wanting*), Sup. *nuper-rimus*.

6. The six following adjectives in *ilis*, form the superlative by adding *limus* to the stem, viz ; *facilis*, *easy*, *difficilis*, *difficult*, *similis*, *like*, *dissimilis*, *unlike*, *gracilis*, *slim*, *slender*, and *humilis*, *low*, as :

facil-is, <i>e</i>	C. facil- <i>ior</i> , <i>ius</i>	S. facil- <i>limus</i> , <i>a, um</i> .
--------------------	-----------------------------------	---

7. Compound adjectives in *dīcus*, *fīcus* and *vōlus*, form the comparative by adding *entior*, *ius*, and the superlative by adding *entissimus*, *a*, *um* to the root, as :

maledīcus, <i>slanderos</i>	C. maledic-entior	S. maledic-entissimus
magnīfīcus, <i>magnificent</i>	magnific-entior	magnific-entissimus
benevōlus, <i>benevolent</i>	benevol-entior	benevol-entissimus.

But those in *dīcus* (*i* long) are compared regularly, as : *pudīcus*, *bashful*, *modest*, *pudic-ior*, *pudic-issimus*.

8. Besides, the following adjectives of irregular comparison are to be observed :

bonus, <i>good</i>	C. mel-ior, <i>ius</i> , better	S. optīmus, <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> , best
malus, <i>bad</i>	pej-or	peſsīmus
magnus, <i>great</i>	maj-or	maxīmus
parvus, <i>small</i>	min-or	minīmus
multus, <i>much</i>	plus (neutr.) more	plurīmus, most
	plures (m. and f.),	plurīmi, most
	plura (n.) more	
nequam, <i>wicked</i>	nequ-ior	nequissīmus
dives, <i>rich</i>	dit-ior (or reg.)	ditissīmus (or reg.)
senex, <i>old</i>	sen-ior	wanting
juvēnis, <i>young</i>	jun-ior	wanting
extērus, <i>outward</i>	exter-ior,	extrēmus, outermost
infērus, <i>below</i>	infer-ior,	infīmus and imus, lowest
supērus, <i>above</i>	super-ior,	suprēmus, and summus
postērus, <i>hind</i>	poster-ior,	postrēmus, hindermost.

9. Finally, there are several adjectives of which the positive is wanting, e. g. :

(citra, <i>on this side</i>)	citer-ior, ius	citīmus, <i>nearest</i>
(intra, <i>within</i>)	inter-ior, ius	intīmus, <i>inmost</i>
(ultra, <i>beyond</i>)	ulter-ior, ius	ultīmus, <i>last</i>
(prope, <i>near</i>)	prop-ior, ius	proxīmus, <i>next</i> .

REM. 1. Instead of the comparison by terminations, the Latin language often expresses the comparative by the positive with *magis* (more), and the superlative by the positive with *maxime* (most.) This periphrastic form is *necessary* in those adjectives which want the terminational comparative and superlative.

REM. 2. Some adjectives have a superlative but not a comparative form, as : *novus*, *new*, *novissimus* ; *invictus*, *invincible*, *invictissimus* ; *diversus*, *inclitus*, *sacer*. On the contrary, others have a

comparative but not a superlative form, as : diuturnus, *lasting*, diuturnior, *maxime* diuturnus ; proclivis, *sloping, inclined*, proclivior, *maxime* proclivis ; also, agrestis, alacer, propinquus, opimus, etc. ; and nearly all in *ilis, ilis, ālis, bilis*, as : agilis, *nimble*, agilior, *maxime* agilis.

REM. 3. To the adjectives which have not the terminational comparison, belong : a) those which have a vowel before the ending *us*, as : idoneus, *fit, magis* idoneus, *maxime* idoneus ; pius, *pious, affectionate* ; perspicuus, *clear* ; egregius, *excellent* ; necessarius, *necessary* (but those in *quus* and *guis* are excepted) ; — b) nearly all in *icus, imus, inus, ivus, ōrus, andus, bundus*, as : lubricus, *slippery* ; legitimus, *lawful*, matutinus, *early*, fugitivus, *fugitive*, canōrus, *harmonious*, venerandus, *worthy of veneration*, moribundus, *dying* (yet : *festivus, divinius, divinissimus* in Cic.) — c) several of no particular class, as : almus, *nourishing*, canus, *hoary*, cicur, *tame*, claudus, *lame*, compos, *powerful*, impos, *impotent of*, curvus, *bent*, ferus, *wild*, gnarus, *acquainted with*, mediocris, *middling* ; memor, *mindful of*, mirus, *wonderful*, par, *equal*, praeditus, *endowed with*, rudis, *rude*, etc. ; — finally, some, which, on account of their signification, admit of no degrees ; e. g. those which denote a *material* ; those compounded with *per, prae* (except *praeclarus, praestans*) and *sub*, as : aureus, *golden*, permagnus, *very great*, praedives, *very rich*, subdifficilis, *somewhat difficult* ; those having the diminutive form, as : parvulus, *tiny*, vetulus, *oldish*, garrulus, *talkative*.

Read Exercise XI.

CHAPTER V.

Of the Adverb.

§ 26. Classification and Formation of Adverbs.

1. The common endings of adverbs (§ 6, 4.) are *e* and *er* (*iter*) ; those derived from adjectives of the *second* declension, are formed by annexing *ē* to the root of the adjective, as : clarus, clar-*ē*, liber (G. libēr-i), liber-*ē*, pulcher (G. pulchr-i), pulchr-*ē*. Only *benē* (well) from *bonus*, and *malē* (badly,) from *malus*, have a short *e*.

2. Adverbs derived from adjectives of the *third* declension

are formed, by adding *er* to the stem of those in *ans* and *ens*, and *iter* to the stem of all others, as :

clar-us, a, um, <i>clear, renowned</i>	clar- <i>e</i>
liber, a, um (G. libēr-i), <i>free</i>	libēr- <i>e</i>
pulcher, chra, chrum (G. pulchr-i)	pulchr- <i>e</i>
prudens (G. prudent-is), <i>knowing</i>	prudent- <i>er</i>
amans (G. amant-is), <i>loving</i>	amant- <i>er</i>
fortis (G. fort-is), <i>brave</i>	fort- <i>iter</i>

Audax (G. audāc-is), *bold*, has audac-*ter* (for audac-*iter*).

REM. 1. Besides adverbs of the above-named endings, there are a number which have the termination of neuter adjectives in either the *accusative* or *ablative* case, as : multum, *much*, plurimum, *most*, solum and tantum, *only*, facile, *easily*, difficile (and difficulter), *with difficulty*, recens, *recently*; — tuto, *safely*, raro, *rarely*, continuo, *immediately*, crebro, *frequently*, falso, *falsely*, subito, *suddenly*, perpetuo, *continually*.

REM. 2. There are still other adverbial terminations, as : coelitus, *from heaven*, penitus, *deeply, entirely*; sensim, *by degrees*, passim, *everywhere*; catervatim, *troop by troop, by troops*, gregatim, *by flocks*; also a few in -us (-cus), as : extrinsecus, *from without*, cominus, *near by*, eminus, *at a distance*, mordicus, *with the teeth*, etc.

REM. 3. For the *pronominal adverbs*, see under the paradigms of the pronouns, §§ 29—32.

§ 27. Comparison of Adverbs.

Adverbs derived from *adjectives* use for the comparative, the neuter singular of the comparative of the adjectives from which they are derived, and in the superlative change *us* of the superlative of their adjectives into *e*, as :

laet-ē, <i>joyfully</i>	Comp. laet- <i>ius</i>	Sup. laet- <i>issime</i> , most joyfully
doct-ē, <i>learnedly</i>	doct- <i>ius</i>	doct- <i>issime</i>
lev-iter, <i>lightly</i>	lev- <i>ius</i>	lev- <i>issime</i>
felic-iter, <i>happily</i>	felic- <i>ius</i>	felic- <i>issime</i>
magnific-ē, <i>magnificently</i>	magnific- <i>entius</i>	magnific- <i>entissime</i>
simil-iter, <i>alike</i>	simil- <i>ius</i>	simil- <i>ime</i>
egregiē (excellently)	magis egregie	maxime egregie.

REM. We have, besides, the irregular benē (*well*), melius, optime (*best*); malē (*badly*), pejus, pessime; multum (*much*), plus, plurimum; magis (*more, rather*), maxime (*most*).

CHAPTER VI.

Of the Pronoun (Comp. § 6, 5).

§ 28. I. *Personal Pronouns.*a. *Substantive Personal Pronouns.*

Singular.		
Nom. <i>ěgŏ, I</i>	<i>tŭ, thou</i>	wanting
Gen. <i>mei, of me</i>	<i>tui, of thee</i>	<i>sui, of himself, her- self, etc.</i>
Dat. <i>mihĭ, to me</i>	<i>tibi, to thee</i>	<i>sibi, to himself, etc.</i>
Acc. <i>mē, me</i>	<i>tē, thee</i>	<i>sē, himself, etc.</i>
Abl. <i>mē, by me</i>	<i>tē, by thee</i>	<i>sē, by himself, etc.</i>
Plural.		
Nom. <i>nŏs, we</i>	<i>vŏs, you</i>	wanting
Gen. <i>nostrĭ, of us</i>	<i>vestrĭ, of you</i>	<i>sui, of themselves</i>
<i>nostrum, of, among us</i>	<i>vestrum, of, among you</i>	
Dat. <i>nŏbĭs, to us</i>	<i>vŏbĭs, to you</i>	<i>sibĭ, to themselves</i>
Acc. <i>nŏs, us</i>	<i>vŏs, you</i>	<i>sē, themselves</i>
Abl. <i>nŏbĭs, by us.</i>	<i>vŏbĭs, by you.</i>	<i>sē, by themselves.</i>

REM. 1. The Voc. of all the pronouns, if used, is like the Nom. The preposition *cum* (with), which governs the Abl., is joined to *me, te, etc.*, thus: *mecum, tecum, secum, nobiscum, vobiscum, with me, with thee, with one's self, with us, with you.* The Dat. *mihĭ* is often contracted into *mi*, principally in poetry.

REM. 2. In order to give more emphasis to the personal pronouns, the syllable *met* is added to all the forms given in the above table, with the exception of *tu* and the Gen. Plur. of *ego* and *tu*, as: *egŏmet, temet, sibĭmet, nosmet, vosmet*; — to *tu* is added *tē*: *tutē, thou thyself*; — *se* is doubled to render it more emphatic: *sese*. For the difference of meaning between *nostrĭ, vestrĭ* and *nostrum, vestrum*, see § 94, 2.

b. *Adjective-Personal Pronouns, or Possessive Pronouns.*

Adjective-personal pronouns are formed from the Gen. of Substantive-personal pronouns. They are called *possessive*,

because they represent an object as the *possession* of an individual of the first, second, or third person.

From *mei* comes *meus, mea, meum, my.* (For the Voc. *mi* see § 17. Rem. 3.)

— <i>tui</i>	— <i>tuus, tua, tuum, thy, thine.</i>
— <i>sui</i>	— <i>suus, sua, suum, his, her, its.</i>
— <i>nostrī</i>	— <i>noster, nostra, nostrum, our.</i>
— <i>vestri</i>	— <i>vester, vestra, vestrum, your.</i>

REMARK 3. For giving greater force and emphasis, the ending *pte* is joined to the Abl. Sing. of *suus*, as: *suapte manu, with his (own, very) hand, suopte gladio (with his sword).* For the same reason also, *met* (see Rem. 2) is joined to the oblique cases of *suus*, as: *suismet capitibus.*

Read Exercise XII.

§ 29. II. Demonstrative Pronouns.

Singular.	
Nom.	<i>is, eā, id, he, she, it; that</i> <i>i-dem, eā-dem, i-dem, the same</i>
Gen.	<i>ejus, of him, her, it; of that</i> <i>ejus-dem, of the same</i>
Dat.	<i>ei, to him, her, it; to that</i> <i>ei-dem, to the same</i>
Acc.	<i>eum, eam, id, him, her, it; that</i> <i>eun-dem, ean-dem, idem, the same</i>
Abl.	<i>eō, eā, eō, by him, her, it; by that.</i> <i>eō-dem, eā-dem, eō-dem, by the same.</i>
Plural.	
Nom.	<i>ii (ei), eae, eā, they; those.</i> <i>ii-dem eae-dem, eādem, the same</i>
Gen.	<i>eōrum, eārum, eōrum, of them; of those</i> <i>eorun-dem, earun-dem, eorun-dem, of the same</i>
Dat.	<i>iis (eis), to them; to those</i> <i>iis-dem (eis-dem), to the same</i>
Acc.	<i>eos, eas, eā, them; those</i> <i>eos-dem, eas-dem, eā-dem, the same</i>
Abl.	<i>iis (eis), by them; by those.</i> <i>iis-dem (eis-dem), by the same.</i>

REM. 1. The pronoun *is, ea, id* may be translated as follows: 1) *he, she, it* (that just mentioned); 2) Gen. e. g. *filius ejus, his or her son.* Dat., *to him, to her, to it.* Acc. *him, her, it;* Plur. Nom.

they, Gen. e. g. *filius eorum* or *earum*, *their son*, Dat. *to them*, Acc. *them*; — 3) in connection with a noun: *this, that*, eum regem, *this king*; — 4) *he, she, it* (who). In the oblique cases, it is distinguished from *sui* and *suus* in meaning, by not referring back, as they do, to the subject of the sentence.

REM. 2. From *is* is derived the adverbs *indĕ*, 'from this point or time' (just mentioned or to be mentioned), and *ĭbi*, 'in or at this place or time' (just mentioned or to be mentioned); *eō* and *eā* are also used adverbially, in answer to the questions *whither?* and *along what way?* — Also the conjunctions: *ĭtā*, 'so,' 'thus' (as just mentioned, etc.), and *jam*, 'now' (relative to the time just mentioned, etc.), 'already' (sooner or later than expected), 'at last.'

Singular.

Nom.	istĕ, istā, istŭd, <i>this, that</i>	illĕ, illā, illŭd, <i>that</i>
Gen.	istĭus, <i>of this, of that</i>	illĭus, <i>of that</i>
Dat.	istĭ, <i>to this, to that</i>	illĭ, <i>to that</i>
Acc.	istum, istam, istud, <i>this, that</i>	illum, illam, illud, <i>that</i>
Abl.	istō, istā, istō, <i>by this, by that.</i>	illō, illā, illō, <i>by that.</i>

Plural (after the II. Dec.)

N. isti, ae, a; G. istorum, arum, orum; D. and Abl. istis; A. istos, as, a;
N. illi, ae, a; G. illorum, arum, orum; D. and Abl. illis; A. illos, as, a.

Singular.

Nom.	hĭc, haec, hōc, <i>this</i>	ipsĕ, ipsā, ipsum, <i>self</i>
Gen.	hujus, <i>of this</i>	ipsĭus
Dat.	huic, <i>to this</i>	ipsĭ
Acc.	hunc, hanc, hōc, <i>this</i>	ipsum, ipsam, ipsum
Abl.	hōc, hāc, hōc, <i>by this.</i>	ipsō, ipsā, ipsō.

Plural.

N. hi, hae, haec; G. horum, harum, orum; D. and Abl. his; A. hos, has, haec;
N. ipsi, ipsae, ipsa; G. ipsorum, arum, orum; D. and Abl. ipsis; A. ipsos, as, a.

REM. 3. The enclitic *ce* is joined to *hic, haec, hoc* in order to increase its demonstrative power: *hicce, haecce, hocce, this here*; the following forms occur most frequently: *hujusce, hosce, hisce*. From these forms connected with the interrogative particle *ne* we have: *hiccĭne, haeccĭne, hoccĭne, this?* but in general only after a foregoing *c*. Also from the connection of this *ce* with *iste* and *ille* we have the following forms, many of them used adverbially: Sing. N. *istic, istaec, istŭc*; *illic, illaec, illŭc*; Acc. *istunc, istanc, istŭc*; *illunc, illanc, illŭc*; Abl. *istōc, istāc, istōc*; *illōc, illāc, illōc*; Pl. N. and Acc. Neut. *istaec, illaec*; also, the adverb-

ial *illinc*, 'from that place' (yonder). Besides, we have from *hic* a series of adverbs, like those from *is* (see R. 2.), thus: *hīc*, 'here' (near me or the latter), *hūc*, 'hither' (up to near me), *hīnc*, 'hence' (from me), 'from this point of time,' *hāc*, 'along this way' (by me).— From *hic*, also, comes the conjunction *sic* 'thus' (from my point of view).

The student may decline :

idem equus, the same horse, eādem rana, the same frog, idem vitium, the same fault, G. ejusdem equi, ejusdem ranae, ejusdem vitii;

iste vir, this man, ista femīna, this woman, istud nomen, this name, istius viri, istius feminae, istius nomīnis;

hic puer, this boy, haec puella, this girl, hoc praeceptum, this precept, hujus pueri, hujus puellae, hujus praecepti;

ille sensus, that feeling, illa res, that thing, illud cornu, that horn, illius sensūs, illius rei, illius cornūs (ū).

REM. 4. For the distinction between the demonstrative pronouns, see § 98, R. 2.

Read Exercise XIII.

§ 30. III. *Relative Pronouns.* IV. *Interrogative Pronouns.*

		Singular.	
Nom.	quī, quae, quōd, <i>who, which</i>	quis (<i>m. & f.</i>), quid, <i>who? what?</i>	
Gen.	cujus, <i>whose, of whom, of which</i>	cujus, <i>whose? of whom? of what?</i>	
Dat.	cui, <i>to whom, to which</i>	cui, <i>to whom? to what?</i>	
Acc.	quem, quam, quod, <i>whom, which</i>	quem, quam, quid, <i>whom? what?</i>	
Abl.	quō, quā, quō, <i>by whom, by which.</i>	quō, quā, quō, <i>by whom, by what?</i>	
		Plural.	
Nom.	quī, quae, quae, <i>who, which</i>	qui, quae, quae, <i>who? what?</i>	
Gen.	quorum, quarum, quorum, <i>whose, of whom, of which</i>	quorum, quarum, quorum, <i>whose? of whom? of what?</i>	
Dat.	quibus, <i>to whom, to which</i>	quibus, <i>to whom? to what?</i>	
Acc.	quos, quas, quae, <i>whom, which</i>	quos, quas, quae, <i>whom? what?</i>	
Abl.	quibus, <i>by whom, by which.</i>	quibus, <i>by whom? by what?</i>	

REM. 1. There are the following obsolete or antiquated forms of the relative and interrogative pronouns: *quojus, quoi, queis* or *quis*, for *cujus, cui, quibus*; also the Abl. *quī* for *quo*, both of which are often found united with the preposition *cum*, as: *quocum, quicum.*

REM. 2. In *quisquis, (quaequae rare), quicquid* (whoever, what-

ever), both pronouns are declined, as: *quoquo, quibusquibus*, e. g. *quoquo modo res se habet, in whatever way the thing has itself; quicquid id est, whatever it is*. On the contrary, in *quicumque, quaecumque, quodcumque* (whichsoever, whatsoever), *cumque* is barely annexed to the different cases of *qui, quae, quod*, as: G. *cujuscumque*, etc.

REM. 3. *Quis, quid*, are used *substantively* (but *quis* sometimes stands in apposition with a noun), as: *quis scribit? quid scribitur?* So also in the Acc., as: *quid agis?* The remaining forms do not differ from *qui, quae, quod* used interrogatively; but *qui, quae, quod* in this case, is always an *adjective*, e. g. *quem vides? whom do you see?* (from *quis?*), *quem hominem vides? what man do you see?* (from *qui?*). For the purpose of strengthening the interrogation, *nam* is annexed to the above mentioned interrogative pronouns, as: *quisnam clamat? who cries out then? quidnam agis? what do you do then? quinam homo clamat? quaenam mulier venit? quodnam genus est?* and so through all the cases.

REM. 4. From *qui* are derived the adverbs: *undē*, (originally *cundē*, i. e. *quundē*) 'from what place or time' 'whence,' *ūbi* (originally *cubi*, i. e. *quubi*), 'in what place, state, or time,' 'where,' 'when;' *quō* and *quā* are used adverbially in a relative sense, like *eō* and *eā* in a demonstrative sense (§ 29, R. 2).— Also the conjunctions *quum* or *cum*, 'when,' *quando*, 'when,' *quam*, 'how?' *quārē* (i. e. *qua re*), contracted, *quur* or *cur*, 'why,' *ūt* (originally *cut*) or *ūtī*, 'how,' 'that,' 'as,' and *quōd*, 'that,' 'because.'

Read Exercise XIV.

§ 31. V. Indefinite Pronouns.

PRELIMINARY REMARK. The forms inclosed in a parenthesis are used as *adjectives* with a substantive; the forms not in a parenthesis are the *substantive* forms, but are used both substantively and adjectively.

1) *Quis (qui), qua (quae), quid (quod)*, and *aliquis (aliqui)*, *aliqua, aliquid (aliquid)*, 'some one,' 'any one,' 'something,' 'anything,' G. *cujus, alicujus* etc. Plur. *qui, quae, qua; aliqui, aliquae, aliqua* etc. like the relative *qui, quae, quod*. (For their usage see § 95, 10);

2) *Quispiam, quaequam, quidpiam (quodpiam)*, 'some one,' 'any one,' 'something,' 'anything' (emphatic, like *aliquis*,

opposed to 'all,' 'much,' 'none'), G. *cujuspiam* etc.; *aliquispiam* is rare;

3) *Quisquam*, (*quaequam* rare), *quicquam* (*quodquam* rare), 'any,' ('if only one'), used in negative, interrogative, and comparative sentences; G. *cujusquam* etc.

REM. 1. *Quisquam* is almost always used *substantively*, and *ullus* is used *adjectively* in the same meaning. There is the same relation, also, between *nemo* and *nullus*; but the Gen. and Abl. *nemīnis* and *nemīne* not being used, their place is supplied from *nullus*.

- 4) *Ecquis* (*ecqui*), *ecqua* (*ecquae*), *ecquid* (*ecquod*), 'can it be that any one, any thing?' G. *eccujus* etc.;
- 5) *Quidam*, *quaedam*, *quiddam* (*quoddam*), 'some,' 'a certain one' (not defined), *cujusdam* etc.;
- 6) *Quisque*, *quaeque*, *quidque* (*quodque*), 'each one, 'each' (individually), G. *cujusque* etc.;—*unusquisque*, *unaquaeque*, *unumquidque* (*unumquodque*), 'each one,' 'each thing' (emphatically), G. *unūscujusque* etc. (declined like *unus*, § 33, R. 5, and *quisque*);—*quivis*, *quaevis*, *quidvis* (*quodvis*), 'any one, anything you choose,' G. *cujusvis* etc.;—*quilibet*, *quaelibet*, *quidlibet* (*quodlibet*), 'any one, anything you please,' G. *cujuslibet* etc.;
- 7) *Alius*, *alter*, *ullus*, *nullus*, *neuter*, see in § 33, R. 5.

REM. 2. Many adverbs are derived from these, as from the other pronouns, which take their shade of meaning from their respective pronoun, as *alicūbi*, *alicunde* (from *aliquis* compounded with *ubi* and *unde*), etc.; also *ubique*, *ubivis*, etc., the indefinite endings of the above pronouns being added to *ubi* and other relative adverbs.

Read Exercise XV.

§ 32. Correlative Pronouns.

Under *correlative* pronouns are embraced all those pronouns which express a *reciprocal relation* (Correlation) to each other, and exhibit this relation by corresponding forms. Thus e. g.

Interrogative.	Demonstrat.	Indefinite.	Relative.	Indef. Relative
qualis, <i>of what kind?</i>	talis, <i>of such a kind, such</i>		qualis, <i>of what kind, as</i>	qualiscunque, <i>of whatever kind</i>
quantus, <i>how great?</i>	tantus, <i>so great</i>	aliquantus, <i>somewhat great</i>	quantus, <i>as great</i>	quantuscunque, <i>however great</i>
quot,* <i>how many?</i>	tot,* <i>so many</i> totidem,* <i>just so many</i>	aliquot,* <i>some</i>	quot,* <i>as many</i>	quotcunque,* <i>or</i> quotquot,* <i>how ever many.</i>

REM. A corresponding table of pronominal *adverbial* correlatives might be formed also, from the adverbs derived from the interrogative, demonstrative, indefinite, and relative pronouns, as: ubi, *where?* ibi, *there*, alicūbi, *somewhere*, ubi, *where*, ubique, *wherever*. And so, also, starting with unde, *whence?* quo, *whither?* or qua, *in what way?* See the remarks under the paradigms of the different classes of pronouns.

Read Exercise XVI.

CHAPTER VII.

Of the Numeral.

§ 33. Classification and Tabular View of the Numerals.

1. Numerals (§ 6, 6) according to their meaning, may be divided into the following classes:

- a) *Cardinals*, which answer the question, *how many?* quot? as: *one, two*, etc.

REM. 1. The first three cardinal numbers are declined (see R. 5 and 6, following the table); but from 4 to 100 they are indeclinable, while from 200 to 900 they are declined like the plural of adjectives of three endings in *i, ae, a*. For *mille* see R. 4.

* All these words marked thus are *indeclinable*, and used only in the plural, as: quot homines sunt? tot hominum numerus; aliquot hominibus; tot homines, quot video, *so many men as I see*; homines, quotcunque or quotquot video, omnes boni sunt.

- b) *Ordinals*, which answer the question, *which in order? which in a series?* quotus? as: *first, second*, etc. They are all declined like adjectives of three endings in *us, a, um*.
- c) *Distributives*, which answer the question, *how many at a time? how many a-piece?* quotēni? as: *one by one, two by two*, etc.
- d) *Numeral adverbs*, which answer the question, *how many times?* quoties? as, *once, twice*, etc.

REM. 2. The numeral adverbs derived from the *ordinals*; viz.: *primum* (rarely *primo*), *secundo* (for which *it̄rum* is generally used; *secundum* is very rare), *tertium*, *quartum*, etc., answer the question, *what place in order?* as: *in the first place, second place*, etc.

- e) *Multiplicatives*, which answer the question, *how many fold?* quotūplex? They end in *plex* and are declined after the third Dec. as: *duplex* (for all genders), *two fold, double*, G. *dupl̄icis*.
- f) *Proportionals*, which answer the question, *how many times as great?* quotūplus? They end in *plus, pla, plum*, as: *duplus, a, um, twice as great* (as something else taken as a unit of measure).

REM. 3. Besides the numeral signs given in the right-hand column of the following table, it seems necessary to remark, that *Īo* (= 500) becomes a thousand by placing a *c* before it (*cĪo* = 1000), but by annexing *o*'s to it, it is increased, by each, *ten fold* (*Īo* = 500; *Īoo* = 5000, etc.) But *cĪo* (1000) is increased *ten fold* each time, by adding, at the same time, a *c* before and a *o* after it, as: *cĪo* = 1000; *ccĪoo* = 10,000, etc.

2. All these classes of numerals, except the last two, which are but little used in comparison with the others, are exhibited in parallel columns in the following table.

*Remarks.**

1. The compound numbers into which 8 and 9 enter as one of the components, are generally expressed in a *subtractive form*, as : 38 duodequadraginta, duodequadragesimus, 39 undequadraginta, undequadragesimus, 48 duodequingaginta, duodequingagesimus, 59 undesexaginta, undesexagesimus, etc.

2. In the other compound numbers from 13 to 17, the smaller number is generally placed first without *et*, as : sedecim, sextus decimus ; but from 20 to 100, either the smaller number is placed first with *et* following it, or the larger without *et*, as :

23 tres et viginti or viginti tres
tertius et vicesimus or vicesimus tertius.

3. In compounding smaller numbers with hundreds and thousands, the smaller number follows either with or without *et*, as :

103 centum et tres or centum tres,
centesimus et tertius or centesimus tertius.

If, however, such a number contains a *unit* and a *ten*, the *unit* is placed last without *et*, as :

486 quadringenti et octoginta sex or quadringenti octoginta sex,
quadringentesimus et octo-
gesimus sextus or quadringentesimus octo-
gesimus sextus.

4. Mille, a *thousand* (i. e. ¹one thousand) is generally an *indeclinable adjective*, as : dux cum mille militibus ; but the Plur. *milia* (always of more than one thousand), is a neuter noun of the third Dec. and is followed (unless a smaller number comes after *thousands*,) by a noun in the Gen. case, as : tria milia hominum, cum tribus milibus militum.

* These remarks properly belong after the table, but are introduced here that the columns of the table may be printed on opposite pages, so as to be exhibited at one opening.

TABLE OF

	<i>Cardinal</i> (how many?)	<i>Ordinal</i> (what one in order?)
1.	unus, a, um, <i>one</i>	primus, a, um, <i>first</i>
2.	duo, ae, o, <i>two</i>	secundus, <i>second</i>
3.	tres, ia, <i>three</i>	tertius, <i>third</i>
4.	quattuor, <i>four</i>	quartus, <i>fourth</i>
5.	quinque, <i>five</i>	quintus, <i>fifth</i>
6.	sex, <i>six</i>	sextus, <i>sixth</i>
7.	septem, <i>seven</i>	septimus, <i>seventh</i>
8.	octo, <i>eight</i>	octavus, <i>eighth</i>
9.	novem, <i>nine</i>	nonus, <i>ninth</i>
10.	decem, <i>ten</i>	decimus, <i>tenth</i>
11.	undecim, <i>eleven</i>	undecimus, <i>eleventh</i>
12.	duodecim, <i>twelve</i>	duodecimus, <i>twelfth</i>
13.	tredecim, <i>thirteen</i>	tertius (a, um) decimus (a, um)
14.	quattuordecim, <i>fourteen</i>	quartus decimus, <i>fourteenth</i>
15.	quindecim, <i>fifteen</i>	quintus decimus, <i>fifteenth</i>
16.	sedecim, <i>sixteen</i>	sextus decimus, <i>sixteenth</i>
17.	septendecim, <i>seventeen</i>	septimus decimus, <i>seventeenth</i>
18.	duodeviginti, <i>eighteen</i>	duodevicesimus, <i>eighteenth</i>
19.	undeviginti, <i>nineteen</i>	undevicesimus, <i>nineteenth</i>
20.	viginti, <i>twenty</i>	vicesimus, <i>twentieth</i>
21.	unus (a, um) et viginti or v. un.	unus (a, um) et vicesimus (a, um)
22.	duo (ae, o) et viginti or v. d.	alter (a, um) et vicesimus (a, um) ¹
28.	duodetriginta	duodetricesimus
29.	undetriginta	undetricesimus
30.	triginta	tricesimus
40.	quadragesima	quadragesimus
50.	quingagesima	quingagesimus
60.	sexagesima	sexagesimus
70.	septuagesima	septuagesimus
80.	octoginta	octogesimus
90.	nonaginta	nonagesimus
99.	undecentum.	undecentesimus
100.	centum	centesimus [pr.
101.	centum et unus (a, um) or c. un.	c. (a, um) et primus (a, um) or c.
102.	centum et duo (ae, o) or c. d.	c. (a, um) et alter (a, um) or c. alt.
200.	ducenti, ae, a	ducentesimus
300.	trecenti	trecentesimus
400.	quadringenti	quadringentesimus
500.	quingenti	quingentesimus
600.	sexcenti	sexcentesimus
700.	septingenti	septingentesimus
800.	octingenti	octingentesimus
900.	nongenti	nongentesimus
1000.	mille	millesimus
2000.	duo milia; 3000 tria milia, etc.	bis millesimus; 3000 ter m. etc.
100,000.	centum milia	centies millesimus
1,000,000.	decies centum milia	decies centies millesimus
2,000,000.	vicies centum milia.	vicies centies millesimus.

¹ Or vicesimus (a, um) et alter (a, um).

NUMERALS.

<i>Distribu.</i> (how many at a time?)	<i>Adverbial</i> (how many times?)	
<p>singūli, ae, a,² <i>one at a time</i> bini, ae, a, <i>two at a time</i> terni, <i>three at a time</i> quaterni, <i>four at a time</i> quini, <i>five at a time</i> seni, <i>six at a time</i> septēni, <i>seven at a time</i> octōni, <i>eight at a time</i> novēni, <i>nine at a time</i></p>	<p>semel, <i>once</i> bis, <i>twice</i> ter, <i>thrice</i> quater, <i>four times</i> quinq̄ies, <i>five times</i> sexies, <i>six times</i> septies, <i>seven times</i> octies, <i>eight times</i> novies, <i>nine times</i></p>	<p>I. II. III. IV. V. VI. VII. VIII. IX.</p>
<p>deni, <i>ten at a time</i> undēni, <i>eleven at a time</i> duodēni, <i>twelve at a time</i> terni deni, <i>thirteen at a time</i> quaterni deni, <i>fourteen at a time</i> quini deni, <i>fifteen at a time</i> seni deni, <i>sixteen at a time</i> septēni deni, <i>seventeen at a time</i> duodevicēni, <i>eighteen at a time</i> undevicēni, <i>nineteen at a time</i></p>	<p>decies, <i>ten times</i> undecies, <i>eleven times</i> duodecies, <i>twelve times</i> terdecies or tredecies quaterdecies quindecies sedecies septiesdecies duodevicies undevicies</p>	<p>X. XI. XII. XIII. XIV. XV. XVI. XVII. XVIII. XIX.</p>
<p>vicēni, <i>twenty at a time</i> viceni (ae, a) singūli (ae, a) viceni (ae, a) bini (ae, a) duodetricēni undetricēni tricēni quadragēni quingageni sexageni septuageni octogeni nonageni undecentēni</p>	<p>vicies, <i>twenty times</i> vicies semel or semel et vicies vicies bis duodetricies undetricies tricies quadragies quingagies sexagies septuagies octogies nonagies undecenties</p>	<p>XX. XXI. XXII. XXVIII. XXIX. XXX. XL. L. LX. LXX. LXXX. XC. IC.</p>
<p>centēni centeni (ae, a) singūli (ae, a) centeni (ae, a) bini (ae, a) ducēni trecenti quadringēni quingeni sexcenti septingēni octingeni nongeni</p>	<p>centies centies semel centies bis ducenties trecenties quadringenties quingenties sexcenties septingenties octingenties nongenties</p>	<p>C. CI. CII. CC. CCC. CD. D. DC. DCC. DCCC. DCCCC.</p>
<p>singūla milia bina milia ; 3000 terna m., etc. centēna milia decies centena milia vicies centena milia.</p>	<p>millies bis millies ; 3000 ter m., etc. centies millies decies centies millies vicies centies millies.</p>	<p>M. or cIo. IIM; IIIM. cccIooc. ccccIooc.</p>

2) *Singulus, a, um* is not used in the Singular.

5. The nine following numeral adjectives in *us, a, um,* and *er, a, um* form their Gen. Sing. in all three genders in *ius** and their Dat. Sing. in *i* :

unus, ullus, nullus,
solus, totus, alius,
ūter, alter, neuter,

and the compounds of *ūter*, as : *ūterque, alterūter* ;

E. g. *solus, a, um, G. solius, D. soli.*—*Alius* has *aliud* in the neuter and in the Gen. *alius* (for *alius*), in Dat. *aliū*. In the compounds : *uterque, utervis, utercunque, uterlibet, uter* is declined and *que, cunque,* etc. are joined to the different cases, as : *utriusque, utrīvis, utrumcunque utralibet.* In *alterūter* (one of the two), commonly only *uter* is declined and *alter* is placed before it without change ; but sometimes both *alter* and *uter* are declined, thus :

commonly :

alterūter, alterūtra, alterūtrum, G. alterūtrius,

occasionally :

alter ūter, alteră ūtra, altĕrum ūtrum, G. alterius utrius.

<i>Alius, alia, aliud, another.</i>	<i>antotus, a, um, the whole.</i>	<i>uterlibet, utralibet, utrumlibet, who-ever, whichever (you please) of the two.</i>
<i>alter, ĕra, ĕrum, the one or the other of two.</i>	<i>ullus, a, um, any one.</i>	<i>utrumlibet, who-ever, whichever (you please) of the two.</i>
<i>neuter, tra, trum, neither of the two.</i>	<i>unus, a, um, one.</i>	<i>uterque, utraq̄ue, utrumque, each of the two, both.</i>
<i>nullus, a um, no one; no.</i>	<i>ūter, tra, trum, which of the two?</i>	<i>que, utrumcunque, whoever, whichever of the two.</i>
<i>solus, a, um, alone.</i>		

6. The numerals : *duo, two, ambo, both,* and *tres, three,* are declined as follows :

Nom. and V.	<i>duo, two duae, duo</i>	<i>tres, three</i>	N. <i>tria.</i>
Gen.	<i>duōrum, duārum, duōrum</i>		trium
D. and Abl.	<i>duōbus, duābus, duōbus</i>		tribus
Acc.	<i>duo and duos, duas, duo.</i>	<i>tres,</i>	<i>tria</i>
	So : <i>ambo, ae, o, both.</i>	Like <i>tria</i> is declined the Pl. of <i>mille</i> : <i>milia.</i>	

Read Exercise XVII.

* So also *alterius*, not (as is inferred from the poets) *alterius*. (§ 120. h.)

CHAPTER VIII.

§ 34. *Table of the Prepositions.*

1. Prepositions governing the Accusative.

Ad, to, unto, accord- ing to, for, at.	propter, near by, on ac- count of.	ante, before. post, behind, after.
apud, at, by, among. juxta, next to, by.	penes, with (in the pow- er of some one).	secundum, after, along, according to.
prope, near by.	ob, before, on account of.	versus, towards.
adversus and adver- sum, towards, against.	cis, citra, on this side. trans, over, on that side.	extra, beyond, with- out. infra, beneath, below.
contra, contrary to, on the contrary, against.	ultra, beyond, on that side.	supra, over, above. per, through.
erga, towards.	inter, between, among.	praeter, hard by, be- sides.
circa, circum, about, around.	intra, within.	

REM. 1. *Versus* generally stands in connection with the prepositions *ad* or *in*; the Acc. is placed between *ad* (*in*) and *versus*, as: *in Italiam versus, ad Oceānum versus, towards Italy, towards the Ocean.* But with names of cities *ad* and *in* are omitted, as: *Romam versus, towards Rome.*

2. Prepositions governing the Ablative.

A, ab, abs, from, by.	prae, before, by rea- son of.	cum, with. sine, without.
de, down from, away from, of, concern- ing, over.	pro, before, for. coram, before, in the presence of.	clam, without the knowledge of. tenus, up to.
e, ex, out of, from.		

REM. 2. *A* and *e* never stand before a vowel or *h*, while *ab* and *ex* may stand before vowels and most consonants; *abs* is rarely used, most frequently before *t*. — *Tenus* is placed *after* the Abl. For the forms *mecum, tecum, quocum* etc., see § 28. Rem. 1. and § 30. Rem. 1.

3. Prepositions governing the Abl. (in answer to the question *where?*) and the Acc. (in answer to the question *whither?*)

In, c. abl. <i>in, at, by upon</i> ; c. acc. <i>into, upon, against, towards.</i>	super, over, concerning (gener- ally with acc. in answer to both questions).
sub, under.	subter, beneath (generally with acc. in answer to both ques- tions).

Read Exercise XVIII.

SECOND COURSE.

GENDER AND IRREGULAR FORMS OF NOUNS

§ 35. *Greek Nouns and Peculiar Endings of the First Declension.*

Several nouns adopted from the Greek, have in the Nom., the endings, *ē* Fem., *ās* and *ēs* Masc. The declension of these differs from the Latin first Dec., only in the Sing.; in the Plur. they are the same.

Paradigms.

Feminine.		Masculine.	
Sing. N. crambē, cabbage	Aenēās, <i>Æneas</i>	Anchisēs, <i>Anchises</i>	
G. crambēs, of cabbage	Aenēae	Anchisae	
D. crambae, to cabbage	Aenēae	Anchisae	
A. crambēn, cabbage	Aenēam (poet.-ān)	Anchisēn	
V. crambē, O cabbage	Aenēā	Anchisē (poet.-ā)	
A. crambē, by cabbage	Aenēā.	Anchisē.	

REM. 1. Most *appellatives* and many *proper names* (mostly fem.) of this Dec., derived from the Greek, have more commonly the Latin than the Greek endings (i. e. *a* instead of *e*, *as* or *es*), in the strictly classical writers; but there are several which have the Greek endings almost invariably, and, of proper names, especially *Patronymics* (§ 78, II, 9). Most other proper names in *es* follow the third Dec.; but many of them have the Acc. and Voc. according to the first Dec.

REM. 2. The ancient ending of the Gen. Sing. *ās* (contracted from *ais*), is retained in common use in the forms: *pater-*, *mater-*, *filius-*, *filia familias* (with the same termination also in the Plur., as: *patres familias*); yet *pater familiae* is also used. — Instead of *ae*, the poets use also the genitive ending *āi*, as: *aulai* (for *aulae*). — The ending *arum* of the Gen. Plur., in the case of certain Gentile names and Greek *Patronymics* (see § 78, II, 9), and also in compounds with *-cōla* and *-gēna*, was contracted by the poets into *um*, as: *Lapithum*, *Dardanidum*, *agricolum* (for *arum*); in prose this ending occurs rarely except in *amphōra* and *drachma* in connection with a numeral.

Read Exercise XIX.

§ 36. *Greek Nouns* and Gender of the Second Declension.*

RULE FOR THE GENDER.

Us, er and *ir* are *masculine*,
But *um* is of the *neuter* kind.

EXCEPTIONS.

Isles, lands, towns and trees in *us*,
These are *feminine* in use.
Also *alvus, colus, humus*,
*Vannus, periödu*s and *carbäsu*s,
Diphthongus too and *dialectus*.

The *neuter* has but three in *us* :
*Virus, vulgu*s, *pelägu*s.

<i>Alvus, i, f. belly.</i>	<i>periödu</i> s, <i>i, f. period.</i>	<i>virus, i, n. juice, poison.</i>
<i>colus, i, f. distaff.</i>	<i>carbäsu</i> s, <i>i, f. linen.</i>	<i>vulgus, i, n. the common</i>
<i>humus, i, f. ground,</i>	<i>diphthongus, i, f. diph-</i>	<i>people.</i>
<i>earth.</i>	<i>thong.</i>	<i>pelägu</i> s, <i>i, n. (a po-</i>
<i>vannus, i, f. corn-fan.</i>	<i>dialectus, i, f. dialect.</i>	<i>etic word) sea.</i>

Also *arctus, the bear*, is *fem.* and a few others, mostly of Greek origin, and principally in poetry.

REMARK. The following are *masculine* contrary to the general rule (§ 13.) for countries, towns, and trees : Pontus, Hellespontus, Isthmus, Bospörus ; also plurals in *i*, as : Delphi, Delphorum, also names of trees in *er*, and many plants in *us*, as : oleaster, tri, *wild olive tree*, asparägu)s, calämu)s, etc. Besides, all names of countries, cities, and mountains in *um (on)*, G. *i*, and plurals in *a*, G. *orum* are *neuter*, as : Latium, Saguntum, Pelion, Leuctra (*örum*).

Read Exercise XX.

* Some *Greek nouns* of the second Dec., but rarely except in poetry, have the ending *os* (Acc. *on*) *masc.* and *fem.* and *on* for the *neut.*, as : *Ilios, Iliön*. — The Greek Nom. plur. in *ae* (= *oi*) is rare, as : *Canephörae* ; — also the Greek Gen. plur. in *ön* (= *ov*) for *orum* is rare, as : *Georgicön libri*. — Greek words in *eus* (one syllable) are thus declined : N. Orpheus (two syllables), G. Orphēi (contracted *Orphi*), D. and A. Orphēo, Acc. Orphēum ; also, after the third Dec. : D. Orphēi (two syl.), contr. Orphi, and Acc. Orphēä (rare *eä*), and Orphēa. — The Voc. Sing. of Greek names in *ūs* (= *ovς*) ends in *ū*, as : *Panthūs, Panthū* ; — Greek words of the Attic second Dec. in *ως*, generally have in Latin *ōs* (rarely *ūs*, as : *Androgeūs, Tyndarēus*, G. *i*), and are either declined after the Greek Dec., as : *Athōs*, G. *Athō*, Dat and Abl. *Athō*, Acc. *Athōn* and *Athō*, or are declined after the third Dec. in Latin, as : *Athōnem, Athōne*.

§ 37. *Greek Nouns* and Special Case-endings of the Third Declension.*

1. *Gen. Sing.* Proper names in *es* often have in the *Gen.* the termination *i* instead of *is*, as: Ulixi; also, Pericli, Aristotēli, Neōcli, Carneādi, etc. Some Greek nouns in *o* (but only of the *feminine* gender) as: Argo, Sappho, echo, Io, etc. have *ūs* in the genitive as: *echūs* from *echo*, *Argus* from *Argo* (the remaining cases are like the *Nom*); or they have Latin endings, as: Dido, *-ōnis*, *-ōni*, *-ōnem*, *-ōne*.

REM. 1. In the ancient forms of the language, the *Dat. Sing.* sometimes ended in *e* instead of *i*.

2. *Acc. Sing.* The *Acc.* has in the following nouns in *is* *G. is*, the ending *im* (for *em*). First, *invariably* in :

amussis, <i>f. a rule.</i>	ravis, <i>f. hoarseness.</i>	vis, <i>f. force, power,</i>
buris, <i>f. a plough-</i>	sināpis, <i>f. mustard.</i>	abundance, multi-
tail.	sitis, <i>f. thirst.</i>	tude.
cannābis, <i>f. hemp.</i>	tussis, <i>f. a cough.</i>	

Second, *commonly* in :

febris, <i>f. a fever.</i>	puppis, <i>f. the stern of</i>	secūris, <i>f. an axe.</i>
pelvis, <i>f. a basin.</i>	a ship.	turris, <i>f. a tower.</i>
	restis, <i>f. a rope.</i>	

* *Greek nouns*, sometimes, but generally only in poetry, retain their peculiar terminations in Latin, viz., *Gen. os* for *is*; *Acc. a* for *em*, or *in* (*yn*), *en* for *im*, *idem*, *em*; *Voc. i, y* (from *Nom. is, ys*) for *is, ys*; *Abl. i* for *ide* (rare). *Plur. Nom. Neut. ē* (from *Nom. Sing. ōs*); *Gen. ōn* for *um* (rare and only poetic); *Dat. si, sin* for *dibus, tibus, ibus* (rare and only poetic); *Acc. as* for *es*. Thus: *Gen. Sing. Pallād-os* (from *Pallas*), *Pan-os* (from *Pan*), *Thety-os* (from *Thetys*); *Acc. Platōna* (from *Plato*), *Lycōrīda* (from *Lycōris*), *basin* (*basis*), *Parin* (*Paris*), *Thētyn, Thalem* (*en*) or *Thalētem* (from *Thales*); *Voc. Lycōri, Coty*; *Abl. Daphni* for *ide*. *Plur. Nom. Neut. melē, epē* (from *melos epos*); *Gen. Chalybōn* (*Chalybs*); *Dat. Dryāsi* (*Dryas, adis*), *metamorphosesi*; *Acc. Senōnas* (*Senōnes*), *Cyclōpas* (*Cyclops*.) The *Gen. eos*, for *is* from *Nom. is* as: *baseos* for *basis* is not classical and from *Nom. -eus* only poetic, as: *Peleus, Pelēōs* (in prose, *Peleus, Pelēi*). Good prose rejects the Greek genitive-form in *os*; the *Acc. in a, in, yn, en* is very rare in good prose, as: *Pana, aethēra, Zeuxin, poēsīn, Sophōclen*. The *Acc. Plur. in as* is found in prose writers of the golden period of the Latin language, only in barbarous names, as: *Senōnas, Allobrogas*. *Caes.*

Also in the following names of *rivers* and *deities*: *Albis, the Elbe, Athēsis, the Adige, Arāris, the Saone, Liris, the Liris, Tamēsis, the Thames, Tibēris, the Tiber, Tigris, the Tiger, Vurgis, the Weser* (all Masc. according to § 13); *Anūbis, Apis, Osiris, Serāpis*; and finally, in Greek nouns in *is* Gen. *is*, as: *basis, f.* (a pedestal), *basim*, and in several words in *is* G. *idis*, as: *Paris, Parim*, more frequently than the form in *idem*.

3. *Voc. Sing.* The vocative of Greek nouns in *es* commonly drops the *s*, as: O *Pericle* but also *Pericles*, O *Socrāte* also *Socrātes*; sometimes, also, in those in *is* G. *idis*, as: O *Pari* also *Paris*. The same is true of those in *as* G. *antis*, as: *Atlā*; others in *as*, but with a different form of the Gen., have the vocative like the nominative.

4. *Abl. Sing.* The ablative has the ending *e* in most nouns; but in a few it has the ending *i*, and indeed, invariably:

a) In *neuters* in *e*, *āl* G. *ālis*, *ār* G. *āris*, as: *mari, animāli, calcāri, (rete has e or i)*. But those in *ār*, G. *āris* have *e*, as: *nectar (nectar), nectāre*; so also, *fār, farris, masc., sal (salt)*, and names of towns in *e*, as: *Praneste, Caere*; besides, *rus* and *vesper* have *e* or *i*.

b) In nouns in *is* which always have *im* in the Acc. as: *vis, vim, vi*.

5. The following nouns in *is* G. *is* have *i* oftener than *e*, or *i* and *e* together:

<i>Avis, f. bird.</i>	<i>ignis, m. fire.</i>	<i>pelvis, f. a basin.</i>
<i>civis, m. a citizen.</i>	<i>navis, f. a ship.</i>	<i>puppis, f. the stern.</i>
<i>clavis, f. a key.</i>	<i>neptis, f. a grand-</i>	<i>secūris, f. an axe.</i>
<i>febris, f. a fever.</i>	<i>daughter.</i>	<i>turris, f. a tower.</i>
<i>fustis, m. a club.</i>	<i>orbis, m. a circle.</i>	

REM. 2. Also the names of rivers enumerated in No. 2. have in general *i*. Besides, *imber* and *classis* often, and a few others in *is*, but mostly in poetry, occasionally, have *i*.

6. In the *Nom. Acc.* and *Voc. Plur.*, *neuters* in *e*, *āl* G. *ālis*, *ār* G. *āris* have *ia* instead of *a*, as: *maria, animalia, calcaria*.

7. In the *Gen. Plur.* the following have *ium* instead of *um*:

a) *Neuters* in *e*, *āl* G. *ālis*, *ār* G. *āris*, as: *marium, anima-*

lium, calcarium. Lar, lar (lār-is), a household-god, the fire-place, has *Larum* and *Larium* ;

b) *Parisyllables* in *es* and *is*, as : *navis*, *f. ship*, *nubes*, *f. cloud*, and of those in *er* : *imber*, *bris*, *m. rain*, *linter*, *tris*, *f. a boat*, *uter*, *tris*, *m. leather bag*, *venter*, *tris*, *m. the belly* ; but, *canis*, *m. a dog*, *panis*, *m. bread*, *proles*, *f. an offspring*, *strues*, *f. a heap*, *vates*, *m. a prophet*, *juvēnis*, *m. a youth*, and commonly, *apis*, *f. a bee*, *volucris*, *f. a bird*, have *um* ;

c) *Monosyllables* in *s* and *x* with a consonant preceding them, as : *mons*, *m. (mountain)*, *montium*, *arx*, *f. (citadel)*, *arcium* ; (but [*ops*] *opes*, *power*, has *opum*, and *lynx*, *f. lynxum*) ; and the following : [*fauz*] *fauces*, *f. the throat*, *fau-cium*, *glis*, *m. a dormouse*, *glirium*, *lis*, *f. strife*, *litium*, *mus*, *m. a mouse*, *murium*, *nox*, *f. night*, *noctium*, *strix*, *f. a horned owl*, *strigium* ; on the contrary, *dux* a leader has *ducum*, *vox*, the voice has *vocum*, *nux*, a nut has *nucum*, and so of others with a vowel before the *x* ;

d) Words of more than one syllable in *s*, or *x*, with an *r* or *n* preceding it as : *cohors*, *f. a cohort*, *cohortium*, *cliens*, *m. a client*, *clientium*, *quincunx*, *quincuncium* ; commonly also, *parentium* (*parens*), *of parents*, *sapientium* (*sapiens*), *of wise men*, *adolescentium* (*adolescens*), *of the youth* ; finally, always, *compedium* (from *compes*, *f. generally in the plural compēdes*), *of fetters* ; on the contrary, *pes*, *m. foot*, *pedum* ;

e) For the most part *gentile nouns* (national denominations) in *ās* G. *ātis*, *īs* G. *ītis*, as : *Arpinas*, *Arpinatium*, *Samnis*, *Samnitium*. So also *nostras* (native), *optimas* (noble), *penates* (household gods), as : *nostratium* ; finally, *civitas*, a state, *civitatium*.

8. In the *Dat.* and *Abl. Plur.*, Greek neuters in *ma* have *māt-is* more commonly than *mat-ibus*, e. g. *poēmātis*, instead of *poēmatibus*.

9. For the case-endings of *adjectives* of the third Dec., the following rules may be given :

a) The *Abl. Sing.* of all adjectives of this Dec., even when used as nouns, has the ending *i*, as : *acri*, *fācili*, *pari* (from *par*, *equal*), *felīci*, *memōri* (see § 22.) ; *natāli* from *natālis* (*viz.*

dies), *birth-day*, *Aprīli* from *Aprīlis* (*viz. mensis*), *April*, *Decembri* from *December*.

EXCEPTIONS. The Abl. has *e* in the following cases: 1) *Juvenis*, a *young man*, *aedilis*, *edile*, and the adjectives in *is* used as proper names, as: *Martialis*, *Martiale*; also compounds of *as*, as: *centusse*, *semisse*.

2) The following adjectives of one ending:

caelebs, <i>ibis</i> , <i>unmarried</i> .	dives, <i>itis</i> , <i>rich</i> .	princeps, <i>ipis</i> , <i>chief</i> .
cicur, <i>uris</i> , <i>tame</i> .	hospes, <i>itis</i> , <i>foreign</i> , a	pauper, <i>eris</i> , <i>poor</i> .
compos, <i>otis</i> , <i>powerful</i> , <i>possessed of</i> .	pubes, <i>eris</i> , <i>grown up</i> .	sospes, <i>itis</i> , <i>safe</i> , <i>secure</i> .
impos, <i>otis</i> , <i>impotent</i> .	impubes, <i>eris</i> , <i>beardless</i> .	superstes, <i>itis</i> , <i>surviving</i> .
deses, <i>idis</i> , <i>idle</i> .	particeps, <i>ipis</i> , <i>partaking of</i> .	

3) *Comparatives*, as: *major*, *majus* (*greater*), *majore*;

4) Compounds of *corpus*, *color* and *pes*, as: *bicorpor* (*having two bodies*), *bicorpore*, *discolor* (*variegated*), *discolore*, *bipes* (*two-footed*), *bipede*;

5) Adjectives of one ending when used as nouns, as: *sapiens*, a *wise man*, *torrens*, a *torrent*, *infans*, a *child*, *Pertinax*, *Clemens*, *Felix*, etc. Abl. — *e*;

6) Participles in *ns* have as participles *e*, but as adjectives, generally *i*, as: *florente rosā*, *the rose blooming*, in *florenti rosā*, *in a blooming rose*.

7) Generally, also, *vetus*, *old*, *uber*, *rich*, *degener*, *degenerate*, *locuples*, *rich*, and gentile nouns in *as* G. *atis* used adjectively, as *Arpinate* (also *-ti*) *homine* etc.

b) The *Nom. Acc.* and *Voc. Plur. Neut.*, have in adjectives and participles, the ending *ia*, and the *Gen. Plur.* the ending *ium*, as: *acria*, *facilia*, *felicia*, *acrium*, *facilium*, *felicium* (§ 22.), *hebetia*, *ium* (from *hebes*).

REM. 3. In the strictly classical period, all adjectives which have the *Gen. Plur.* in *ium*, had the *Acc. Plur. Masc.* and *Fem.* in *is*, as: *omnis homines*.

EXCEPTIONS. *Vetus*, *old*, has *vetera*, *veterum*, and all comparatives, as: *majora*, *majorum* (but *plus*, *plura* has *plurium*); *complures*, *very many*, *several*, has *complura* and *ia* (*Gen.* always, *complurium*). Besides, the following have *um* in *Gen.*: *celer*,

swift, consors, partaking of, degēner, degenerate, dives, rich, inops, helpless, memor, immemor, supplex, suppliant, uber, rich, vigil, watching. To these may be added compounds in *ceps* and *fex*, as: *anceps, two-fold, double, uncertain, G. Pl. ancipitum, artifex, skilful, artist, artificum*; finally, all which have only *e* in the Abl., as: *pauper, paupĕrum*; so also, generally, *locuples, rich.*

Read Exercise XXI.

Determination of Gender according to the endings.

§ 38. Masculine.

Of the *masculine* gender are the nouns in : *o, or, os, er,* and *imparisyllables* (§ 18. Rem. 4.) in *es*.

EXAMPLES. 1) *O*: *le-o generōsus, the magnanimous lion*; 2) *Or*: *dol-or acerbus, a severe pain*; 3) *Os*: *fl-os pulcher, a beautiful flower*; 4) *Er*: *agg-er altus, a high mound*; 5) *Es* in *imparisyllables*: *pari-es altus, a high wall.*

EXCEPTIONS.

1) *O*:

Feminine are *echo, cāro,*
Also nouns in : *do, go, io*;
But *masculine*: *cardo, harpāgo,*
Margo, cudo, ordo, ligo,
Together with *concretes* in *io*.

1) *O*:

Cardo, ĩnis, m. a hinge.
caro, carnis, f. flesh.
cudo, ōnis, m. a helmet of skin.
echo, echus, f. reverberation,
echo.
harpāgo, ōnis, m. a grappling-
hook.
ligo, ōnis, m. a hoe, mattock.
margo, ĩnis, m. a margin, edge.
ordo, ĩnis, m. order, series, rank.

REM. 1. The *feminines* in *io* are either abstract or collective nouns, as: *actio, an action, legio, ōnis, a legion*; still some have acquired a *concrete* meaning, as: *regio, a region, (originally a directing).* The *concretes* in *io* are common names of things and are all *masculine*, as: *scipio, a staff, papilio, a butterfly, pugio, a dagger.* Also: *udo* and sometimes *cupĭdo* (especially when personified) are *masculine*.

2) Or :

Of the *feminine* gender is,
Barely, *arbor, arbōris* ;
The *neuter* has but four in *or* :
Marmor, aequor, ador, cor.

2) Or :

Ador, ōris n. spelt.
aequor, ōris, n. a level surface,
(especially of the sea).
arbor, ōris, f. a tree.
cor, cordis, n. the heart.
marmor, ōris, n. marble.

3) Os :

Of the *feminine* are in *os*,
These three : *eōs, cōs, and dōs.*
Ōs, a bone, and ōs, the face,
Os in Greek, to the *neuter* place.

3) Os :

Eōs, ōis, f. the east, morning.
Cōs, ōtis, f. a flintstone, whet-
stone.
dōs, ōtis, f. dowry, portion.
ōs, ossis, n. a bone (pl. ossa,
īum).
ōs, ōris, n. the countenance, brow,
mouth.

4) Er :

The *neuter* has many in *er* :
Ver, cadāver, iter, tuber,
Cicer, piper, siser, uber,
Zingiber, papāver, suber,
Acer, siler, verber, spinther.
But only *feminine* is *linter.*

4) Er :

Acer, ěris, n. a maple-tree.
cadāver, ěris, n. a corpse.
cicer, ěris, n. a chick-pea.
iter, itiněris, n. a way, journey,
march. [skiff.
linter, tris, f. (rare, m.) a boat,
papāver, ěris, n. a poppy.
piper, ěris, n. pepper.
siler, ěris, n. the willow.
siser, ěris, n. a carrot (but pl.
siseres, m).
spinther ěris, n. a bracelet.
suber, ěris, n. the cork-tree.
tuber, ěris, n. tumor, hump.
uber, ěris, n. a dug, udder.
ver, ěris, n. the spring.
verber, (commonly plur. ver-
běra,) n. stripes, blows.
zingiber, ěris, n. ginger.

5) Es imparisyllable :

Imparisyllables in *es*,
Give but one as *neuter* : *aes* ;
But as *feminine* we have *mer-*
ces,
Quies, requies, and compes,
Also, *sĕges, tĕges, merges.*

5) Imparisyllables in *es*.

Aes, aeris, n. brass. *merges, ĩtis, f. a* *quiem), f. rest,*
compes, ědis, f. fet- *sheaf.* *relaxation,*
ters. *quies, ětis, f. quiet.* *sĕges, ětis, f. a crop.*
merces, ědis, f. recom- *requies, ětis (acc. re-* *tĕges, ětis, f. a mat.*
pense.

REM. 2. Contrary to the general rule (§ 13.), some names of cities in *o* remain *masculine*, as : Croto, but those out of Italy are mostly *fem.*, as : Carthāgo, etc. ; also, those in *as*, G. *antis*, as : Taras, *antis*, *Tarentum* ; those in *es*, G. *ētis*, as : Tunes, *ētis*, *Tunis*, and those in *us*, G. *untis*, as : Selinus, *untis*.

Read Exercise XXII.

§ 39. Feminine.

Of the *feminine* gender are nouns in : *as*, *is* (*ys*), *aus*, *us* (G. *ūtis* or *udis*), *x*, those in *s* with a consonant before it and *parisyllables* (§ 18. Rem. 4.) in *es*.

EXAMPLES. 1) *As* : *aest-as calīda*, a warm summer ; 2) *Is* : *av-is pulchra*, a beautiful bird ; 3) *Aus* : *l-aus magna*, great praise ; 4) *Us*, G. *ūtis* or *udis* : *juvent-ūs (ūtis) laeta*, joyful youth, *inc-ūs (ūdis) ferrea*, iron anvil, *pal-ūs, (ūdis) alta*, deep pool, *pec-ūs (ūdis)*, single head of cattle, but *pecūs, pecōris* (cattle) ; 5) *X* : *lu-x clara*, clear light ; 6) *S* with a consonant before it : *hie-ms aspēra*, rough winter ; 7) *Es* in *parisyllables* : *nub-es nigra*, black cloud.

EXCEPTIONS.

1) *As* :

Three are *masculine* in *as* :
As, *adāmas* and *elēphas*,
And one is *neuter*, namely, *vas*.

1) *As* :

Adāmas, antis, m. a diamond.
as, assis, m. an *As* (a coin).
elēphas, antis, m. (commonly
elephantus, *i, m.*) elephant.
vas, āsis, n. a vessel, vase.

2) *Is* :

Masculine are these in *is* :
Panis, piscis, crinis, finis,
Ignis, lapis, pulvis, cinis,
Orbis, amnis and *canālis*,
Sanguis, unguis, glis, annālis,
Fascis, axis, funis, ensis,
Fustis, vectis, vermis, mensis,
Postis, follis, cucūnis,
Cassis, callis, collis,
Sentis, caulis, pollis.

2) *Is* :

Amnis, is, m. a river.
axis, is, m. an axletree.
callis, is, m. a foot-path, path.
canālis, is, m. canal, water-course.
cassis, generally plur. casses,
ium, m. hunter's net.
caulis, is, m. a stalk, cabbage-stalk, cabbage.
cinis, ēris, m. ashes.
collis, is, m. a hill.
crinis, is, m. hair.

cucūmis, ěris, <i>m. a cucumber.</i>	glis, iris, <i>m. a mouse.</i>	postis, is, <i>m. a post.</i>
ensis, is, <i>m. a sword.</i>	ignis, is, <i>m. fire.</i>	pulvis, ěris, <i>m. dust.</i>
fascis, is, <i>m. a bundle.</i>	lapis, ědis, <i>m. a stone.</i>	sanguis, ěnis, <i>m. blood.</i>
finis, is, <i>m. the end;</i> plur. <i>borders, territory.</i>	mensis, is, <i>m. a month.</i>	sentis, is, <i>m. a Bramble,</i> generally plur.
follis, is, <i>m. bellows.</i>	orbis, is, <i>m. a circle.</i>	sentis, <i>a thorn bush.</i>
funis, is, <i>m. a rope,</i> <i>cable.</i>	panis, is, <i>m. bread.</i>	unguis, is, <i>m. a nail,</i> <i>claw.</i>
fustis, is, <i>m. a club.</i>	piscis, is, <i>m. a fish.</i>	vectis, is, <i>m. a lever,</i> <i>bolt.</i>
	pollis, ěnis, <i>m. fine flour</i> (Nom. wanting).	vermis, is, <i>m. worm.</i>

Scrobis, is, *a pit*, and torquis (also *torques*), *a neck-chain*, are mostly Masc. but sometimes feminine; also, occasionally, *callis*, *canālis*, *fnis*, *cinis*, are Fem. *Canis*, *tigris*, and other names of animals in *is* are properly *epicene* nouns (§ 13, R. 2.), and generally Masc.

3) X:

Masculine there are in *x*,
Fornix, *onyx*, and *cālix*,
Varix, *calyx*, *coccyx*, *oryx*,
Tradux, *bombyx*, also *sorix*;
Add to these most in *ex*,
Grex, *āpex*, *codex*, and *murex*,
Caudex, *frutex*, *pollex*, *pulex*,
Sorex, *vervex*; and then in *ax*
All Greek nouns, except *climax*.

3) X:

Apex, ěcis, *m. a tuft, summit.*
bombyx, ŷcis, *m. the silk-worm.*
calix, ěcis, *m. a cup.*
calyx, ŷcis, *m. a bud, shell.*
caudex, ěcis, *m. trunk of a tree.*
climax, ācis, *f. a ladder, climax.*
coccyx, ŷgis, *m. a cuckoo.*
codex, ěcis, *m. a book.*
fornix, ěcis, *m. arch, vault.*

frutex, ěcis, <i>m. a shrub,</i> plur. <i>a thicket.</i>	onyx, ŷchis, <i>m. the onyx.</i>	sorix or sourix, ěcis, <i>m. a kind of owl.</i>
grex, ěgis, <i>m. a flock,</i> <i>crowd.</i>	oryx, ŷgis, <i>m. the gazelle.</i>	tradux, ŷcis, <i>m. a vine-branch.</i>
murex, ěcis, <i>m. a purple fish,</i> <i>purple.</i>	pollex, ěcis, <i>m. thumb.</i>	varix, ěcis, <i>m. a varix.</i>
	pulex, ěcis, <i>m. a flea.</i>	vervex, ěcis, <i>m. a wether.</i>
	sorex, ěcis, <i>m. field-mouse.</i>	

REM. 1. Besides the above list we have as Masc.: *phoenix*, *deunx*, *quincunx* etc., *vertex*, *cimex*, and some others in *ex* not much used. — Styx, Stygis, a river in the lower world, contrary to the general rule (§ 13.) is of the *feminine* gender; but names of rivers and mountains in *is* and *ys* are *masc.*

4) *Es parisyllable :*

Masculine parisyllables in *es*,
Are only two: *pālumbes* and
věpres.

4) *Es parisyllable :*

palumbes, is, *m. wood-pigeon*.
vepres, is, *m. a bramble*.

5) *S with a consonant before it.*

Masculine are in *ons* and *ens*,
Fons, *mons*, *pons*, *dens*, *conflū-*
ens,
Bidens, *tridens*, *occīdens*,
Rudens, *torrens*, *oriens* ;
Two in *ops* and *ybs*,
Hydrops and *chālybs*.

5) *S with a consonant before it.*

bidens, *tis*, *m. a hoe, mattock*.
chalybs, *ŷbis*, *m. steel*.
conflūens, *tis*, *m. a confluence*.
dens, *tis*, *m. a tooth*.
fons, *tis*, *m. a fountain*.
hydrops, *ōpis*, *m. dropsy*.

mons, *tis*, *m. a moun-*
tain.

occidens, (sc. sol), *tis*, *pons*, *tis*, *m. a bridge*.

m. sun-set, the west,
western countries.

oriens (sc. sol), *tis*,

m. sun-rise, the east, *torrens* (scil. amnis),
eastern countries. a torrent, impetuous

stream.

rudens (sc. funis), *tridens*, *tis*, *m. a tri-*
tis, m. a rope, cable. dent.

REM. 2. To No. 4) should be added as masc., *acināces*, is. To No. 5) *dodrans*, *quodrans*, *triens*, and the other compounds of *as*. — *Adeps*, *seps*, and *forceps*, fluctuate between the masc. and fem. — A few Greek words in *ps* are masc.: *merops*, *gryps*, etc.

Read Exercise XXIII.

§ 40. *Neuter.*

Of the *neuter* gender are nouns in: *a*, *e*, *c*, *l*, *en*, *ar*, *ur*, *ut*, *us* (G. *ĕris*, *ōris*, *ūris*).

EXAMPLES: 1) *A*: *poēm-a pulchrum*, a beautiful poem; 2) *E*: *mar-e magnum*, a great sea; 3) *C*: only *la-c* (*lact-is*), and *ale-c* (*ĕcis*), end in this letter, as: *lac tepīdum*, warm milk, *alec sapīdum*, salt fish-brine; 4) *L*: *fe-l amārum*, bitter gall; 5) *En*: *nom-en clarum*, a renowned name; 6) *Ar*: *calc-ar acūtum*, a sharp spur; 7) *Ur*: *rob-ur (ōris) magnum*, great strength; 8) *Ut*: *caput humānum*, a human head; 9) *Us*: *gen-us (ĕris) clarum*, a renowned race.

EXCEPTIONS :

From the <i>neuter</i> are rejected,	Furfur, ūris, <i>m. bran.</i>
By the <i>masculine</i> accepted,	lepūs, ōris, <i>m. a hare.</i>
Two in <i>l</i> : <i>sol</i> and <i>sal</i> ,	lien, ēnis, <i>m. (ancient form for</i>
With four in <i>en</i> :	<i>splen)</i> , <i>the spleen.</i>
<i>Rēn, splēn, pectēn, liēn.</i>	mus, uris, <i>m. mouse.</i>
<i>Masculine</i> too are three in <i>ur</i> :	pectēn, ĭnis, <i>m. comb.</i>
<i>Furfur, turtur, and vultur</i> ;	rēn, commonly <i>plur. rēnes, kid-</i>
Add to these two words in <i>us</i> :	<i>ney.</i>
<i>Lepus, lepōris, and mus.</i>	sal, is, <i>m. salt, wit.</i>
But <i>feminine</i> there is in <i>us</i> ,	sol, is, <i>m. sun.</i>
Barely the single word <i>tellūs.</i>	splēn, ēnis, <i>m. spleen.</i>
	tellūs, ūris, <i>f. the earth.</i>
	turtūr, ūris, <i>m. turtle-dove.</i>
	vultur ūris, <i>m. a vulture.</i>

REMARK. The following are also masc.: *attāgēn, lichēn, pae-ān*; *delphīn* (poet. for *delphīnus*); also some Greek nouns in *ōn*, but others are Fem. Besides, *sūs*, G. *suis* and *grūs*, *gruis*, are generally masc. Nouns in *i* and *y* are Greek and of the neuter gender. Contrary to the general rule (§ 13.) the names of cities in *e* remain *neuter*, as: *Praeneste*, and besides, *Anxur, Tibur*; also the mountain *Soracte*, *is*, and *robur, ōris, live-oak.*

Read Exercise XXIV.

§ 41. Gender of the Fourth Declension.

Us of the fourth is *masculine*,
 And *u* is of the *neuter* kind ;
 But *feminine* there are in *us* :
Tribus, acus, porticus,
Domus, idus and *mānus.*

Tribus, ūs, <i>f. tribe,</i>	domus, ūs, <i>f. house,</i>	May, July, and
<i>company.</i>	<i>palace.</i>	Oct., but 13th of
acus, ūs, <i>f. needle.</i>	idus, uum, <i>f. the Ides</i>	the other months).
porticus, ūs, <i>f. portico.</i>	(15th day of March,	manus, ūs, <i>f. hand.</i>

Read Exercise XXV.

THIRD COURSE.

REGULAR VERBS.

§ 42. *Classes of Verbs*, (§ 6, 2.).

a) *Active verbs*, or the form expressing *activity*, as : *laudo*, *floreo* ; those active verbs which take an object in the Acc. are called *transitive*, as : *laudo puerum* ; all other active verbs are called *intransitive*, as : *floreo*, *dormio*, *pareo* (*alicui*), *gaudeo* (*de aliqua re*).

b) *Passive verbs*, or the form expressing a *passive state* or *the receiving of an action*.

c) *Deponent verbs* are such as have the *passive* form but the *active* signification. But some deponents, especially *revertor* and the others from *verto*, take the Perf. in the Act. form, as : *reverti*, etc.

REMARK. The Pres. Act., in Latin, besides the meaning given to it in the paradigms, is also used to express the idea expressed by the English periphrastic Pres., formed from the Pres. Part. and the verb *to be*, as : *I am loving*. So also the Pres. and Imperf. Act. are used to express the ideas expressed in English by these tenses with the forms *do* and *did*, as : *I do love*, *did love*. — The Pass. forms may often be translated by *allow*, as : *exoror* (*I allow myself to be entreated*).

§ 43. *Tenses of the Verb*.

- I. 1) Present, am-o, *I love*,
- 2) Perfect, am-ā-vi, *I have loved, loved* ;
- II. 3) Imperfect, am-ā-bam, *I loved, was loving*,
- 4) Pluperfect, am-ā-vĕram, *I had loved* ;
- III. 5) Future (simple), am-ā-bo, *I shall love*,
- 6) Future Perfect, am-ā-vĕro, *I shall have loved*.

REMARK. The Pres., the Perf., and the two Futures are called *principal tenses*, the others *historical* or *narrative tenses*. — The Perf. in Latin is used in a two-fold way : a) like the English Perf. as : *deus mundum creavit* (*God has created the world*) ;

b) like the English Imperf. in *narrating*, as: Romulus Romam *condidit* (Romulus *built* Rome). In the first case it is called the Perf. *present*, and is considered as belonging to the *principal* tenses, in the last the Perf. *historical*, and belongs to the *historical* tenses.

§ 44. *Modes of the Verb.*

I. The Indicative, which expresses a *fact, phenomenon, reality*, as: the rose *blooms, bloomed, will bloom* ;

II. The Subjunctive, which expresses what is *imagined, supposed, conceived of*, as: *he may come, he might come notwithstanding* ;

III. The Imperative, which is used in *direct expressions of the will*, as: *hear thou, teach thou.*

§ 45. *Infinitive, Participle, Supine, Gerund, and Gerundive.*

Besides the Modes, the verb has the following forms:

- a) The Infinitive, which is of an intermediate nature between the verb and the noun, as: cupio te adspicere, *I desire to see thee* (comp.: cupio adspicere tui, *I desire a sight of thee*) ;
- b) The Participle, which presents the idea of the verb in the form of an adjective, as: puer *scribens* (the boy *writing*) ; filia *amata* (the daughter *beloved*) ;
- c) The Supine in *um* and *u*, which presents the idea of the verb in the form of a noun in either the Acc. or Abl. case, as: canes *venatum* duco, *I take the dogs to hunt* (to hunting), or, res est *jucunda auditu*, *the thing is pleasant to hear* (in the hearing) ;
- d) The Gerund, which also presents the idea of the verb under the form of a noun in all the cases, as: Nom. *scribendum* est, *we (one) must write*, Gen. *ars scribendi*, *the art of writing, or to write*, Dat. *scribendo* aptus est, *fit for writing, or to write*, Acc. with a preposition, *inter scribendum, while writing*, Abl. *scribendo* exerceor, *I am exercised by (in, etc.) writing* ;

- e) The Gerundive (or Part. Fut. Pass.), which presents the idea of the verb in an adjective form, precisely as the Gerund presents it in a substantive form, as : *epistola scribenda est, the letter is to be written*, and so through all the cases.

REM. 1. The Indicative, Subjunctive, and Imperative are called the *finite* or *definite* verb, because they always refer to a definite subject; the Inf. Part. Sup. Ger. and Gerundive, on the contrary, are called the *indefinite* verb, because these forms, on account of their meaning, do not admit of such a reference.

REM. 2. The *active* voice has two participles, the Pres. and Fut., as : *amans, amatūrus, a, um*. The *passive* voice also has two, the Perf. and Fut., as : *amātus, a, um, amandus, a, um*. Finally, *deponents* have three participles, viz. the Pres. Act., as : *hortans*, the Perf. Pass., as : *hortatus, a, um*, and the Fut. Act., as : *hortaturus, a, um*, and when they are *transitive*, the Gerundive, also, as : *hortandus, a, um*. — The Latin language, therefore, has no Perf. Act. Part. except in Deponent verbs, where the Perf. Pass. Part. has the meaning of a Perf. Act. Part.

§ 46. *Persons and Numbers of the Verb.*

The verb has, like the noun, two numbers, Sing. and Plur., and three persons both in the Sing. and in the Plur., as : *I, thou, he (she, it)*, and *we, you, they*, which are expressed by the endings, as : *scrib-imus, we write*.

REMARK. Those verbs which are used only in the third person Sing. are called Impersonal verbs, as : *pluit, it rains, tonat, it thunders*.

§ 47. *Conjugation.*

Conjugation is the inflection of a verb according to its Persons, Numbers, Modes, Tenses, and Voice. The Latin language has *four* Conjugations, which are distinguished according to the ending of the Inf. as follows :

I. Conj.:	—ārĕ, as : am-ārĕ, <i>to love</i> ,	Characteristic: ā
II. “	—ērĕ, “ mon-ērĕ, <i>to admonish</i> ,	“ ē
III. “	—ĕrĕ, “ reg-ĕrĕ, <i>to govern</i> ,	“ ĕ
IV. “	—īrĕ, “ aud-īrĕ, <i>to hear</i> .	“ ī

REM. 1. In parsing a verbal form, the beginner should accustom himself to observe the following order and state : a) *the person*, b) *the number*, c) *the mode*, d) *the tense*, e) *the voice*, f) *from what verb*, g) *the meaning*, h) *the agreement*. E. g. What kind of a verbal form is *amātis*? *Amātis* is Sec. Pers. Plur. of the Indic. Pres. Act. from the verb *amo*, *amāvi*, *amātum*, *amāre*, *to love*, and agrees, etc.

REM. 2. Every verbal form consists of two parts, the *stem* (found in the Infin., by dropping *ere* in the third Conj. and *re* in the others), which is that part of the verb which remains unchanged in all the forms, and the *inflection-endings*, which vary to express the number, person, mode, and tense. The last letter of the stem is called the *characteristic*, and, if a vowel, is generally contracted with, or absorbed by, the first vowel of the inflection-endings. The inflection endings are printed in Italics in the paradigms.

§ 48. Formation of the Tenses.

In every verb there are four forms (which may be called the *principal parts* of the verb) from which, by first rejecting *o*, *i*, *um*, *re* (third Conj. *ere*), and then adding different endings, all the remaining forms are derived, viz. :

1) <i>Ind. Pres. Act.</i>	2) <i>Ind. Perfect Act.</i>	3) <i>Supine.</i>	4) <i>Infinitive Act.</i>
I. amo (for <i>amao</i>)	amāvi	amātum	amāre
II. moneo	monūi	monītum	monēre
III. rego	rexī	rectum	regēre
IV. audio	audīvi	audītum	audīre.

REM. 1. These are called the *regular* conjugations, because most verbs are conjugated according to them. *Monui* is formed by rejecting the characteristic *e* and changing *v* into *u*, as : *monēvi*, *monvī*, *monuī* ; the Sup. *monītum* is formed by introducing *ī* in the place of the rejected characteristic *e*. — In forming the tenses of *regere* and the other regular verbs of the third conjugation (as well as in the composition and derivation of words), the following changes take place, viz. : — *g*, *qu*, *h*, and *v* become *c* before *t*, and before *s* are changed with this letter into *x* (= *cs* or *gs*) ; also, before either of these letters (*t*, *s*), *b* becomes *p*, and *d* and *r* often become *s*, as : *reg-tum* = *rec-tum*, *reg-si* = *rex-i* ; *scrib-tum* = *scrip-tum*, *scrib-si* = *scrip-si* ; *cessi* (for *ced-si*), *us-si* (for *ur-si*) ; — but *t* after *s* becomes *s*, as : *cessum* (for *cestum*).

REM. 2. Perfs. in *āvi*, *ēvi*, *īvi*, and *ōvi*, and the tenses derived from them, as is indicated in the paradigms of the verb, often drop *v*, and frequently *v* with the vowel following it.

A. From the *Indicative Present Active*: *amo*; *moneo*; *rego*, *capio* (I take); *audio*, as the stem, are derived:*

- a) *Indicative Present Passive*: *amor*; *moneor*; *regor*; *capior*; *audior*;
- b) *Subjunctive Present Active*, and from this *Subj. Pres. Pass.*: *amem*; *moneam*; *regam*, *capiam*; *audiam*; — *amer*; *monear*; *regar*, *capiar*; *audiar*;
- c) *Fut. Active and Passive*: *regam* (*es*, *et*, etc.), *capiam*; *audiam*; — *regar* (*ēris* etc.), *capiar*; *audiar*; — *amābo*; *monēbo*; — *amābor*; *monēbor*;
- d) *Indicative Imperfect Active and Passive*: *amābam*; *monēbam*; *regēbam*; *capiēbam*; *audiēbam*; — *amābar*; *monēbar*; *regēbar*, *capiēbar*; *audiēbar*;
- e) *Participle Present Active*: *amans*; *monens*; *regens*, *capiens*; *audiens*;
- f) *Gerundive and Gerund*: *amandus*, *amandum*; *monendus*; *regendus*, *capiendus*; *audiendus*.

REM. 3. There are a few verbs in *io* of the third Conj., like *capio*, which are inflected in the Pres. and the parts derived from it, (also in the Imperat.), like *audio*, except that the *i* is always short, and the second person Sing. Indic. Pass. is *ēris*, instead of *iris*.

B. From the *Infinitive Active*: *amāre*; *monēre*; *regēre*, *capēre*; *audire*, as stem, are derived:

- a) *Imperative Active*: *amā*; *monē*; *regē*, *capē*; *audī*; and *Imperat. Passive*, which agrees in form with the *Infin. Act.*: *amāre*; *monēre*; *regēre*, *capēre*; *audire*;
- b) *Infinitive Present Pass.* of I, II, and IV. Conj.: *amāri*, *monēri*, *audiri*; the III. Conj. adds to the stem the ending *i*: *regi*, *capi*;
- c) *Subjunct. Imperf. Act. and Passive*: *amārem*; *monērem*; *regērem*, *capērem*; *audirem*; — *amārer*; *monērer*; *regērer*; *capērer*; *audirer*.

C. From the *Perfect Active*: *amavi*; *monui*; *rexī*, *cepi*; *audivi*, as a stem, are derived:

- a) *Subjunctive Perfect Active*: *amavērim*; *monuērim*; *rexērī*, *cepērī*; *audivērī*;

* Let the pupil be required to state, not only the tenses derived from each part, but also the changes by which the derivation is effected, as: from Pres. Indic. Act. is derived, the Pres. Indic. Pass., by adding *r*, etc.

TIVE.

Conjugations.

be learned at once but in the order of the exercises which follow.

III. Rego, rexi, rectum, regēre. Characteristic: e short.		IV. Audio, audiui, auditum, audire. Characteristic: i long.	
INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
I. Present.		I. Present.	
rego, I govern	regām, I may govern	audio, I hear	audiām, I may hear
regis, thou govern- est	regās, thou mayest govern	audis, thou hearest	audiās, thou may- est hear
regit, he, she, it governs	regāt, he, she, it may govern	audit, he, she, it hears	audiāt, he, she, it may hear
regimus, we govern	regāmus, we may govern	audimus, we hear	audiāmus, we may hear
regitis, you govern	regātis, you may govern	auditis, you hear	audiātis, you may hear
regunt, they govern	regant, they may govern.	audiunt, they hear	audiant, they may hear.
II. Imperfect.		II. Imperfect.	
regēbam, I govern- ed, was gov.	regērem, I might govern	audiēbam, I heard, was hearing	audiērem, I might hear
regēbas, thou govern- edst, wast g.	regēres, thou might- est govern	audiēbas, thou heard est, wast hearing	audiēres, thou mightest hear
regēbat, he, she, it governed, was g.	regēret, he, she, it might govern	audiēbat, he, she, it heard, was heard	audiēret, he, she, it might hear
regēbāmus, we govern- ed, were gov.	regēremus, we might govern	audiēbāmus, we heard, were heard	audiēremus, we might hear
regēbātis, you govern- ed, were gov.	regērētis, you might govern	audiēbātis, you heard, were heard	audiērētis, you might hear
regēbant, they govern- ed, were gov.	regērent, they might govern.	audiēbant, they heard, were heard	audiērent, they might hear.
III. Future (Indicative). ¹		III. Future (Indicative). ¹	
regām, I shall govern		audiām, I shall hear	
regēs, thou wilt govern		audiēs, thou wilt hear	
regēt, he, she, it will govern		audiēt, he, she, it will hear	
regēmus, we shall govern		audiēmus, we shall hear	
regētis, you will govern		audiētis, you will hear	
regent, they will govern.		audient, they will hear.	
IV. Perfect.		IV. Perfect.	
rexi, I have govern- ed, I governed	rexerim, I may have governed	audiui, (audiī), I have heard, I h.	audi(v)erim, I may have heard
rexisi, thou hast governed, etc.	rexeris, thou may- est have govern.	audi(v)isti, thou hast heard, etc.	audi(v)eris, thou mayest have h.
rexit, he, she, it has governed	rexerit, he, she, it may have gov.	audi(v)it, he, she, it has heard	audi(v)erit, he, she, it may have h.
reximus, we have governed	rexerimus, we may have governed	audi(v)imus, we have heard	audi(v)erimus, we may have heard
rexisi, you have governed	rexeritis, you may have governed	audi(v)istis, you have heard	audi(v)eritis, you may have heard
rexerunt (ēre), they have governed	rexerint, they may have governed.	audi(v)erunt (ēre), they have heard	audi(v)erint, they may have heard.

I. Amo, amāvi, amātum, amāre.
Characteristic: a long.

INDICATIVE. SUBJUNCTIVE.

V. Pluperfect.

amā(vě)rām, I had loved	amā-(vi)ssēm, I might have loved
amā(vě)rās, thou hadst loved	amā-(vi)ssēs, thou mightest have l.
amā-(vē)rāt, he, she, it had loved	amā-(vi)ssēt, he, she, it might have l.
amā-(vē)ramūs, we had loved	amā-(vi)ssēmūs, we might have loved
amā-(vē)rātis, you had loved	amā-(vi)ssētis, you might have loved
amā-(vē)rant, they had loved	amā-(vi)ssent, they might have loved.

VI. Future Perfect.²

amā-(vē)rō, I shall have loved
amā-(vē)rīs, thou wilt have loved
amā-(vē)rīt, he, she, it will have loved
amā-(vē)rīmus, we shall have loved
amā-(vē)rītis, you will have loved
amā-(vē)rint, they will have loved.

Imperative.³

amā, love thou
amā-to, thou shouldest love
amā-to, he, she, it should love
amā-tě, love ye
amā-tōtě, you should love
amā-nto, they should love.

Supine.

- 1) amā-tūm, in order to love
- 2) amā-tū, to love, be loved.

Infinitive.

Pres. amā-rě, to love
Perf. amā-(vi)ssě, to have loved
Fut. amā-tūrūs, a, um, esse, to will love, ⁴ (that one) will love.

Participle.

Pres. ama-ns, loving
Fut. amā-tūrus, a, um, intending, wishing, about to love.

Gerund.

Nom. ama-ndum est, one (we) must love
Gen. ama-ndi, of loving, or to love
Dat. ama-ndo, to loving, or to love
Acc. ama-ndum (e. g. ad), loving
Abl. ama-ndo, by loving.

II. Moneo, monūi, monitum, monēre.
Characteristic: e long.

INDICATIVE. SUBJUNCTIVE.

V. Pluperfect.

monuēram, I had admonished	monuīssēm, I might have admonished
monuēras, thou hadst admonished	monuīssēs, thou mightest have ad.
monuērat, he, she, it had admonished	monuīssēt, he, she, it might have ad.
monuerāmus, we had admonished	monuīssēmūs, we might have ad.
monuerātis, you had admonished	monuīssētis, you might have ad.
monuērant, they had admonished	monuīssent, they might have ad.

VI. Future Perfect.²

monuēro, I shall have admonished
monuēris, thou wilt have admonished
monuērit, he, she, it will have admon.
monuerīmus, we shall have admonished
monuerītis, you will have admonished
monuērint, they will have admonished.

Imperative.

monē, admonish thou
monēto, thou shouldest admonish
monēto, he, she, it should admonish
monēte, admonish ye
monētōtē, you should admonish
monento, they should admonish.

Supine.

- 1) monitum, in order to admonish
- 2) monitu, to admonish, be admon.

Infinitive.

Pres. monēre, to admonish
Perf. monuisse, to have admonished
Fut. moniturus, a, um, esse, to will admonish, (that one) will ad.

Participle.

Pres. monens, admonishing
Fut. moniturus, a, um, intending, wishing, about to admonish.

Gerund.

N. monendum est, one (we) must ad.
G. monendi, of admonishing, or to ad.
D. monendo, to admonishing, or to ad.
A. monendum (e. g. ad), admonishing
A. monendo, by admonishing.

¹) The *Subjunctive Future* is expressed periphrastically: amatūrus, monitūrus, rectūrus, auditūrus (a, um) sim, sis, etc., *I will love, thou wilt love, etc.*, or amaturus, etc., essem, *I would love.* ²) Also the *Future Perfect* has no Sub-

III. *Rego, rexi, rectum, regere.*
Characteristic: *e* short.

INDICATIVE. SUBJUNCTIVE.

V. *Pluperfect.*

<i>rexeram</i> , I had governed	<i>rexissem</i> , I might have governed
<i>rexeras</i> , thou hadst governed	<i>rexisses</i> , thou mightest have governed
<i>rexerat</i> , he, she, it had governed	<i>rexisset</i> , he, she, it might have governed
<i>rexeramus</i> , we had governed	<i>rexissemus</i> , we might have governed
<i>rexeratis</i> , you had governed	<i>rexissetis</i> , you might have governed
<i>rexerant</i> , they had governed	<i>rexissent</i> , they might have governed

VI. *Future Perfect.*²

<i>rexero</i> , I shall have governed
<i>rexeris</i> , thou wilt have governed
<i>rexerit</i> , he, she, it will have governed
<i>rexerimus</i> , we shall have governed
<i>rexeritis</i> , you will have governed
<i>rexerint</i> , they will have governed.

*Imperative.*³

<i>regē</i> , govern thou
<i>regito</i> , thou shouldst govern
<i>regito</i> , he, she, it should govern
<i>regite</i> , govern ye
<i>regitote</i> , you should govern
<i>regunto</i> , they should govern.

Supine.

- 1) *rectum*, in order to govern
- 2) *rectu*, to govern, be governed.

Infinitive.

<i>Pres.</i> <i>regere</i> , to govern
<i>Perf.</i> <i>rexisse</i> , to have governed
<i>Fut.</i> <i>recturus, a, um esse</i> , to will govern, ⁴ (that one) will gov.

Participle.

<i>Pres.</i> <i>regens</i> , governing
<i>Fut.</i> <i>recturus, a, um</i> , intending, wishing, about to govern.

Gerund.

N. <i>regendum est</i> , one (we) must govern.
G. <i>regendi</i> , of governing, or to govern
D. <i>regendo</i> , to governing, or to govern
A. <i>regendum</i> (e. g. <i>ad</i>), governing
A. <i>regendo</i> , by governing.

IV. *Audio, audivi, auditum, audire.*
Characteristic: *i* long.

INDICATIVE. SUBJUNCTIVE.

V. *Pluperfect.*

<i>audiveram</i> , I had heard	<i>audivissem</i> , I might have heard
<i>audiveras</i> , thou hadst heard	<i>audivisses</i> , thou mightest have heard
<i>audiverat</i> , he, she, it had heard	<i>audivisset</i> , he, she, it might have heard
<i>audiveramus</i> , we had heard	<i>audivissemus</i> , we might have heard
<i>audiveratis</i> , you had heard	<i>audivissetis</i> , you might have heard
<i>audiverant</i> , they had heard	<i>audivissent</i> , they might have heard.

VI. *Future Perfect.*²

<i>audivero</i> , I shall have heard
<i>audiveris</i> , thou wilt have heard
<i>audiverit</i> , he, she, it will have heard
<i>audiverimus</i> , we shall have heard
<i>audiveritis</i> , you will have heard
<i>audiverint</i> , they will have heard.

Imperative.

<i>audi</i> , hear thou
<i>audito</i> , thou shouldst hear
<i>audito</i> , he, she, it should hear
<i>audite</i> , hear ye
<i>auditote</i> , you should hear
<i>audiunto</i> , they should hear.

Supine.

- 1) *auditum*, in order to hear
- 2) *auditu*, to hear, be heard.

Infinitive.

<i>Pres.</i> <i>audire</i> , to hear
<i>Perf.</i> <i>audivisse</i> , to have heard
<i>Fut.</i> <i>auditurus, a, um esse</i> , to will hear, ⁴ (that one) will hear.

Participle.

<i>Pres.</i> <i>audiens</i> , hearing
<i>Fut.</i> <i>auditurus, a, um</i> , intending, wishing, about to hear.

Gerund.

N. <i>audiendum est</i> , one (we) must hear
G. <i>audiendi</i> , of hearing, or to hear
D. <i>audiendo</i> , to hearing, or to hear
A. <i>audiendum</i> (e. g. <i>ad</i>), hearing
A. <i>audiendo</i> , by hearing.

junctione. ³) These four imperatives without *e* are to be noted: *dic, duc, fac, fer*, from: *dico, duco, facio, fero*. ⁴) The English language has no Infin. Future (to will love) but uses in its stead the Inf. Present.

§ 51. PAS

I.		IV.	
INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
I. <i>Present.</i>		I. <i>Present.</i>	
amōr, I am loved	amēr, I may be loved	monēor, I am admonished	moneār, I may be admonished
amārīs, thou art loved	amērīs(e), thou mayest be loved	monēris, thou art admonished	moneāris(e), thou mayest be ad.
amātūr, he, she, it is loved	amētūr, he, she, it may be loved	monētur, he, she, it is admonished	moneātur, he, she, it may be ad.
amāmūr, we are loved	amēmūr, we may be loved	monēmur, we are admonished	moneāmur, we may be admonished
amāmīnī, you are loved	amēmīnī, you may be loved	monēmīni, you are admonished	moneāmini, you may be admon.
amantūr, they are loved	amentūr, they may be loved.	monentur, they are admonished	moneantur, they may be admon.
II. <i>Imperfect.</i>		II. <i>Imperfect.</i>	
amābār, I was loved	amārēr, I might be loved	monēbar, I was admonished	monērer, I might be admonished
amābārīs(e), thou wast loved	amārērīs(e) thou mightest be l.	monēbārīs(e), thou wast admonished	monērērīs(e), thou mightest be ad.
amābātūr, he, she, it was loved	amārētūr, he, she, it might be loved.	monēbātūr, he, she, it was admon.	monērētūr, he, she, it might be ad.
amābāmūr, we were loved	amārēmūr, we might be loved	monēbāmur, we were admonished	monērēmur, we might be ad.
amābāmīnī, you were loved	amārēmīnī, you might be loved	monēbāmīni, you were admonished	monērēmīni, you might be ad.
amābantūr, they were loved	amārentūr, they might be loved.	monēbantur, they were admonished	monērentur, they might be ad.
III. <i>Future.</i>		III. <i>Future.</i>	
amābōr, I shall be loved		monēbōr, I shall be admonished	
amābērīs(e), thou wilt be loved		monēbērīs(e), thou wilt be admonished	
amābītūr, he, she, it will be loved		monēbītūr, he, she, it will be admon.	
amābīmūr, we shall be loved		monēbīmūr, we shall be admonished	
amābīmīnī, you will be loved		monēbīmīnī, you will be admonished	
amābuntūr, they will be loved.		monēbuntūr, they will be admonished.	
IV. <i>Perfect.</i>			
a) Indicative.			
amātūs, <i>sūm</i> , I have been loved, was l.		monītūs, <i>sum</i> , I have been admonished	
a, <i>ēs</i> , thou hast been loved, etc.		a, <i>es</i> , thou hast been admonished	
um, <i>est</i> , he, she, it has been loved		um, <i>est</i> , he, she, it has been ad.	
amatī, <i>sūmūs</i> , we have been loved		monītī, <i>sumus</i> , we have been admon.	
ae, <i>estīs</i> , you have been loved		ae, <i>estis</i> , you have been admon.	
a, <i>sunt</i> , they have been loved		a, <i>sunt</i> , they have been admon.	
b) Subjunctive.			
amatus, <i>sīm</i> , I may have been loved		monitus, <i>sim</i> , I may have been admon.	
a, <i>sīs</i> , thou mayest have been l.		a, <i>sis</i> , thou mayest have been ad.	
um, <i>sīt</i> , he, she, it may have been l.		um, <i>sīt</i> , he, she, it may have been a.	
amati, <i>sīmūs</i> , we may have been l.		moniti, <i>simus</i> , we may have been ad.	
ae, <i>sītīs</i> , you may have been loved		ae, <i>sitis</i> , you may have been ad.	
a, <i>sint</i> , they may have been loved.		a, <i>sint</i> , they may have been ad.	

SIVE.

III.

INDICATIVE. SUBJUNCTIVE.

I. Present.

regor, I am govern- ed	regār, I may be governed
regēris, thou art governed	regāris(e), thou mayest be gov.
regitur, he, she, it is governed	regātur, he, she, it may be governed
regimur, we are governed	regāmur, we may be governed
regimīni, you are governed	regāmini, you may be governed
reguntur, they are governed	regantur, they may be governed.

II. Imperfect.

regēbar, I was gov- erned	regērer, I might be governed
regēbāris(e), thou wast governed	regēreris(e), thou mightest be gov.
regēbātur, he, she, it was governed	regēretur, he, she, it might be gov.
regēbāmur, we were governed	regērēmur, we might be gov.
regēbāmīni, you were governēd	regērēmini, you might be gov.
regēbantur, they were governed	regērentur, they might be gov.

III. Future.

regār, I shall be governed
regēris(e), thou wilt be governed
regētūr, he, she, it will be governed
regēmūr, we shall be governed
regēmīni, you will be governed
regentūr, they will be governed.

IV.

INDICATIVE. SUBJUNCTIVE.

I. Present.

audiōr, I am heard	audiār, I may be heard
audīris, thou art heard	audiāris(e) thou mayest be heard
auditur, he, she, it is heard	audiātur, he, she, it may be heard
audimur, we are heard	audiāmur, we may be heard
audimīni, you are heard	audiāmini, you may be heard
audiuntur, they are heard	audiantur, they may be heard.

II. Imperfect.

audiēbar, I was heard	audiērer, I might be heard
audiēbāris(e), thou wast heard	audiērēris(e), thou mightest be heard
audiēbātur, he, she, it was heard	audiēretur, he, she, it might be heard
audiēbāmur, we were heard	audiērēmur, we might be heard
audiēbāmīni, you were heard	audiērēmini, you might be heard
audiēbantur, they were heard	audiērentur, they might be heard.

III. Future.

audiār, I shall be heard
audiēris(e), thou wilt be heard
audiētūr, he, she, it will be heard
audiēmūr, we shall be heard
audiēmīni, you will be heard
audientur, they will be heard.

IV. Perfect.

a) Indicative.

rectus, <i>sum</i> , I have been governed	audītus, <i>sum</i> , I have been heard, was h.
a, <i>es</i> , thou hast been governed	a, <i>es</i> , thou hast been heard, etc.
um <i>est</i> , he, she, it has been governed	um <i>est</i> , he, she, it has been heard
recti, <i>sumus</i> , we have been governed	audīti, <i>sumus</i> , we have been heard
ae, <i>estis</i> , you have been governed	ae, <i>estis</i> , you have been heard
a <i>sunt</i> , they have been governed	a <i>sunt</i> , they have been heard

b) Subjunctive.

rectus, <i>sim</i> , I may have been governed	auditus, <i>sim</i> , I may have been heard
a, <i>sis</i> , thou mayest have been gov.	a, <i>sis</i> , thou mayest have been h.
um <i>sit</i> , he, she, it may have been g.	um <i>sit</i> , he, she, it may have been h.
recti, <i>simus</i> , we may have been gov.	auditi, <i>simus</i> , we may have been heard
ae, <i>sitis</i> , you may have been gov.	ae, <i>sitis</i> , you may have been heard
a <i>sint</i> , they may have been gov.	a <i>sint</i> , they may have been heard.

V. *Pluperfect.*

a) Indicative.

amātus,	ērām, I had been loved	monītus,	eram, I had been admonished
a,	ērās, thou hadst been loved	a,	eras, thou hadst been ad.
um	ērāt, he, she, it had been loved	um	erat, he, she, it had been ad.
amati,	ērāmūs, we had been loved	moniti,	eramus, we had been ad.
ae,	ērātis, you had been loved	ae,	eratis, you had been ad.
a	ērant they had been loved	a	erant, they had been ad.

b) Subjunctive.

amatus,	essēm, I might have been loved	monitus,	essem, I might have been ad.
a,	essēs, thou mightest have been loved	a,	esses, thou mightest have been admonished
um	essēt, he, she, it might have been loved	um	esset, he, she, it might have been admonished
amati,	essēmūs, we might have been loved	moniti,	essemus, we might have been admonished
ae,	essētis, you might have been l.	ae,	essetis, you might have been ad.
a	essent, they might have been l.	a	essent, they might have been ad.

VI. *Future Perfect, (Indicative).*

amatus,	ērō, I shall have been loved	monitus,	ero, I shall have been admonished
a,	ērīs, thou wilt have been loved	a,	eris, thou wilt have been admonished
um	ērīt, he, she, it will have been loved	um	erit, he, she, it will have been admonished
amati,	ērīmūs, we shall have been loved	moniti,	erimus, we shall have been admonished
ae,	ērītis, you will have been loved	ae,	eritis, you will have been admonished
a	erunt, they will have been loved.	a	erunt, they will have been admonished.

Imperative.

amārē, be thou loved
 amātōr, thou shouldst be loved
 amātōr, he, she, it should be loved
 amāmīni, be ye loved
 amāmīnōr, you should be loved
 amantōr, they should be loved.

Infinitive.

Pres. amārī, to be loved
 Perf. amātūs, ā, ūm esse, to have been loved
 Fut. amātum iri,¹ to will be loved, (that one) will be loved.

Participle.

Perf. amātūs, ā, ūm, loved
 Fut. amandūs, ā, ūm, what should be loved.

Imperative.

monēre, be thou admonished
 monētor, thou shouldst be admonished
 monētor, he, she, it should be admon.
 monēmīni, be ye admonished
 monēmīnōr, you should be admonished
 monentor, they should be admonished.

Infinitive.

Pres. monēri, to be admonished
 Perf. monītus, a, um, esse, to have been admonished
 Fut. monītum iri,¹ to will be admonished, (that one) will be admonished.

Participle.

Perf. monītus, a, um, admonished
 Fut. monendus, a, um, what should be admonished.

¹) amātum, monītum, rectum, audītum are Supines and hence cannot be de-

V. *Pluperfect.*

a) Indicative.

rectus,	<i>eram</i> , I had been governed	auditus,	<i>eram</i> , I had been heard
a,	<i>eras</i> , thou hadst been governed	a,	<i>eras</i> , thou hadst been heard
um	<i>erat</i> , he, she, it had been govern.	um	<i>erat</i> , he, she, it had been heard
recti,	<i>eramus</i> , we had been governed	auditi,	<i>eramus</i> , we had been heard
ae,	<i>eratis</i> , you had been governed	ae,	<i>eratis</i> , you had been heard
a	<i>erant</i> they had been governed.	a	<i>erant</i> , they had been heard.

b) Subjunctive.

rectus,	<i>essem</i> , I might have been gov.	auditus,	<i>essem</i> , I might have been heard
a,	<i>esses</i> , thou mightest have been governed	a,	<i>esses</i> , thou mightest have been heard
um	<i>esset</i> , he, she, it might have been governed	um	<i>esset</i> , he, she, it might have been heard
recti,	<i>essemus</i> , we might have been governed	auditi,	<i>essemus</i> , we might have been heard
ae,	<i>essetis</i> , you might have been gov.	ae,	<i>essetis</i> , you might have been h.
a	<i>essent</i> , they might have been gov.	a	<i>essent</i> , they might have been h.

VI. *Future Perfect, (Indicative).*

rectus,	<i>ero</i> , I shall have been governed	auditus,	<i>ero</i> , I shall have been heard
a,	<i>eris</i> , thou wilt have been governed	a,	<i>eris</i> , thou wilt have been heard
um	<i>erit</i> , he, she, it will have been governed	um	<i>erit</i> , he, she, it will have been heard
recti,	<i>erimus</i> , we shall have been governed	auditi,	<i>erimus</i> , we shall have been heard
ae,	<i>eritis</i> , you will have been governed	ae,	<i>eritis</i> , you will have been heard
a	<i>erunt</i> , they will have been governed.	a	<i>erunt</i> , they will have been heard.

Imperative.

regere, be thou governed
regitor, thou shouldst be governed
regitor, he, she, it should be governed
regimini, be ye governed
regimino, you should be governed
reguntor, they should be governed.

Infinitive.

Pres. regi, to be governed
Perf. rectus, a, um, esse, to have been governed
Fut. rectum iri,¹ to will be governed, (that one) will be governed.

Participle.

Perf. rectus, a, um, governed
Fut. regendus, a, um, what should be governed.

Imperative.

audire, be thou heard
auditor, thou shouldst be heard
auditor, he, she, it should be heard
audimini, be ye heard
audimino, you should be heard
auduntor, they should be heard.

Infinitive.

Pres. audiri, to be heard
Perf. auditus, a, um esse, to have been heard
Fut. auditum iri,¹ to will be heard, (that one) will be heard.

Participle.

Perf. auditus, a, um, heard
Fut. audiendus, a, um, what should be heard.

clined. That the English language has no Inf. Fut. has already been stated.

§ 52. DEPO
Of the four

I. Hortor, hortātus sum, hortāri. Characteristic: <i>a</i> long.		II. Vereor, verētus sum, verēri. Characteristic: <i>e</i> long.	
INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
I. Present.		I. Present.	
hortōr, I exhort	hortē-r, I may exhort	verē-or, I reverence	verē-ār, I may reverence
hortā-rīs, thou exhortest	hortē-rīs(e), thou mayest exhort	verē-rīs, thou reverencest	verē-āris(e) thou mayest rev.
hortā-tūr, he, she, it exhorts	hortē-tūr, he, she, it may exhort	verē-tur, he, she, it reverences	verē-ātur, he, she, it may reverence
hortā-mūr, we exhort	hortē-mūr, we may exhort	verē-mur, we reverence	verē-āmur, we may reverence
hortā-mīnī, you exhort	hortē-mīnī, you may exhort	verē-mīni, you reverence	verē-āmīni, you may reverence
hortā-ntūr, they exhort	hortē-ntūr, they may exhort.	verē-ntur, they reverence	verē-antur, they may reverence.
II. Imperfect.		II. Imperfect.	
hortā-bār, I exhorted, was exhorting	hortā-rēr, I might exhort	verē-bar, I revered, was rev.	verē-rer, I might reverence
hortā-bārīs(e), thou exh., wast exh.	hortā-rērīs(e), thou mightest exhort	verē-bārīs(e), thou rev. 'dst. wast r.	verē-rērīs(e) thou mightest rev.
hortā-bātūr, he, she, it exh., was exh.	hortā-rētūr, he, she, it might exhort	verē-bātur, he, she, it rev., was rev.	verē-rētur, he, she, it might rev.
hortā-bāmūr, we exh., were exh.	hortā-rēmūr, we might exhort	verē-bāmūr, we rev., were rev.	verē-rēmūr, we might reverence
hortā-bāmīnī, you exh., were exh.	hortā-rēmīnī, you might exhort	verē-bāmīni, you rev., were rev.	verē-rēmīni, you might reverence
hortā-bantūr, they exh., were exh.	hortā-rentūr, they might exhort.	verē-bantur, they rev., were rev.	verē-rentur, they might reverence.
III. Future (Indicative). ¹		III. Future (Indicative). ¹	
hortā-bōr, I shall exhort		verē-bōr, I shall reverence	
hortā-bērīs(e), thou wilt exhort		verē-bērīs(e), thou wilt reverence	
hortā-bītūr, he, she, it will exhort		verē-bītur, he, she, it will reverence	
hortā-bīmūr, we shall exhort		verē-bīmūr, we shall reverence	
hortā-bīmīnī, you will exhort		verē-bīmīni, you will reverence	
hortā-buntūr, they will exhort.		verē-buntur, they will reverence.	
IV. Perfect.			
a) Indicative.			
hortā-tus, sūm, I have exhorted, exhor.		verī-tus, sum, I have revered, rev.	
a, ēs, thou hast exhorted, etc.		a, es, thou hast revered, etc.	
um est, he, she, it has exhorted		um est, he, she, it has revered	
hortā-ti, sūmūs, we have exhorted		verī-ti, sumus, we have revered	
ae, estis, you have exhorted		ae, estis, you have revered	
a sunt, they have exhorted		a sunt, they have revered	
b) Subjunctive.			
hortā-tus, sīm, I may have exhorted		verī-tus, sim, I may have revered	
a, sis, thou mayest have ex.		a, sis, thou mayest have rev.	
um sīt, he, she, it may have ex.		um sīt, he, she, it may have rev.	
hortā-ti, sīmūs, we may have exhorted		verī-ti, simus, we may have revered	
ae, sītis, you may have exhorted		ae, sītis, you may have revered	
a sint, they may have exhorted.		a sint, they may have revered.	

NENTS

Conjugations.

III. *Fungor, functus sum, fungi.*
Characteristic: *e* short.

IV. *Partior, partitus sum, partiri.*
Characteristic: *i* long.

INDICATIVE. SUBJUNCTIVE.

INDICATIVE. SUBJUNCTIVE.

I. Present.

I. Present.

fung-or, I manage	fung-ār, I may manage
fung-ērīs, thou managest	fung-āris(e), thou mayest manage
fung-itur, he, she, it manages	fung-atur, he, she, it may manage
fung-imur, we manage	fung-āmur, we may manage
fung-imīni, you manage	fung-āmīni, you may manage
fung-untur, they manage	fung-antur, they may manage.

partī-or, I divide	partī-ār, I may divide
partī-ris, thou dividest	partī-āris(e), thou mayest divide
partī-tur, he, she, it divides	partī-atur, he, she, it may divide
partī-mur, we divide	partī-āmur, we may divide
partī-mīni, you divide	partī-āmīni, you may divide
partī-untur, they divide	partī-antur, they may divide.

II. Imperfect.

II. Imperfect.

fung-ēbar, I managed, was m.	fung-ērer, I might manage
fung-ebāris(e), thou managedst, was m.	fung-ērēris(e), thou mightest manage
fung-ebātur, he, she, it m., was m.	fung-ērētur, he, she, it, might manage
fung-ebāmur, we managed, were m.	fung-ērēmur, we might manage
fung-ebāmīni, you managed, were m.	fung-ērēmīni, you might manage
fung-ebantur, they managed, were m.	fung-ērēntur, they might manage.

partī-ēbar, I divided, was dividing	partī-rer, I might divide
partī-ebāris(e), thou dividedst, was d.	partī-rēris(e), thou mightest divide
partī-ebātur, he, she, it divided, was d.	partī-rētur, he, she, it might divide
partī-ebāmur, we divided, were d.	partī-rēmur, we might divide
partī-ebāmīni, you divided, were d.	partī-rēmīni, you might divide
partī-ebantur, they divided, were d.	partī-rentur, they might divide.

III. Future (Indicative).¹

III. Future (Indicative).¹

fung-ār, I shall manage
fung-ērīs(e), thou wilt manage
fung-etur, he, she, it will manage
fung-ēmur, we shall manage
fung-ēmīni, you will manage
fung-entur, they will manage.

partī-ār, I shall divide
partī-ērīs(e), thou wilt divide
partī-etur, he, she, it will divide
partī-ēmur, we shall divide
partī-ēmīni, you will divide
partī-entur, they will divide.

IV. Perfect.

a) Indicative.

func-tus, <i>sum</i> , I have managed, managed
a, <i>es</i> , thou hast managed, etc.
um <i>est</i> , he, she, it has managed
func-ti, <i>sumus</i> , we have managed
ae, <i>estis</i> , you have managed
a <i>sunt</i> , they have managed.

partī-tus, <i>sum</i> , I have divided, divided
a, <i>es</i> , thou hast divided, etc.
um <i>est</i> , he, she, it has divided
partī-ti, <i>sumus</i> , we have divided
ae, <i>estis</i> , you have divided
a <i>sunt</i> , they have divided.

b) Subjunctive.

func-tus, <i>sim</i> , I may have managed
a, <i>sis</i> , thou mayest have m.
um <i>sit</i> , he, she, it may have m.
func-ti, <i>simus</i> , we may have managed
ae, <i>sitis</i> , you may have managed
a <i>sint</i> , they may have managed.

partī-tus, <i>sim</i> , I may have divided
a, <i>sis</i> , thou mayest have divided
um <i>sit</i> , he, she, it may have d.
partī-ti, <i>simus</i> , we may have divided
ae, <i>sitis</i> , you may have divided
a <i>sint</i> , they may have divided.

V. *Pluperfect.*a) *Indicative.*

hortā-tus,	ērām, I had exhorted	verī-tus,	eram, I had revered
a,	ērās, thou hadst exhorted	a,	eras, thou hadst revered
um	ērāt, he, she, it had exhorted	um	erat, he, she, it had revered
hortā-ti,	ērāmūs, we had exhorted	verī-ti,	eramūs, we had revered
ae,	ērātis, you had exhorted	ae,	eratis, you had revered
a	ērant, they had exhorted	a	erant, they had revered

b) *Subjunctive.*

hortā-tus,	essēm, I might have exhorted	verī-tus,	essem, I might have revered
a,	essēs, thou mightest have ex.	a,	esses, thou mightest have rev.
um	essēt, he, she, it might have ex.	um	esset, he, she, it might have rev.
hortā-ti,	essēmūs, we might have ex.	verī-ti,	essemūs, we might have rev.
ae,	essētis, you might have ex.	ae,	essetis, you might have rev.
a	essent, they might have ex.	a	essent, they might have rev.

VI. *Future Perfect (Indicative).¹*

hortā-tus,	ērō, I shall have exhorted	verī-tus,	ero, I shall have revered
a,	erīs, thou wilt have exhorted	a,	eris, thou wilt have revered
um	erit, he, she, it will have ex.	um	erit, he, she, it will have rev.
hortā-ti,	erimūs, we shall have ex.	verī-ti,	erimus, we shall have rev.
ae,	eritis, you will have exhorted	ae,	eritis, you will have rev.
a	erunt, they will have ex.	a	erunt, they will have rev.

Imperative.

hortā-rē, exhort thou
 hortā-tōr, thou shouldst exhort
 hortā-tōr, he, she, it should exhort
 hortā-mīnī, exhort ye
 hortā-mīnōr, you should exhort
 horta-ntōr, they should exhort.

Infinitive.

Pres. hortā-rī, to exhort
Perf. hortā-tūs, ā, ūm esse, to have exhorted
Fut. hortā-tūrūs, ā, ūm esse, to will exhort², (that one) will exhort.

Participle.

Pres. horta-ns, exhorting
Perf. hortā-tūs, ā, ūm, having exhorted
Fut. 1) *Act.* hortā-tūrūs, ā, ūm, intending, wishing, about to exhort
 2) *Pass.* horta-ndūs, ā, ūm, what should be exhorted.

Gerund.

N. horta-ndum est, one (we) must ex.
 G. horta-ndi, of exhorting, to exhort
 D. horta-ndo, to exhorting, to exhort
 A. horta-ndum (e. g. ad), exhorting, to exhort
 A. horta-ndo, by exhorting.

Supine.

Acc. hortā-tūm, in order to exhort
Abl. hortā-tū, to exhort, be exhorted.

Imperative.

verē-re, reverence thou
 verē-tor, thou shouldst reverence
 verē-tor, he, she, it should reverence
 verē-mīnī, reverence ye
 verē-mīnor, you should reverence
 vere-ntor, they should reverence.

Infinitive.

Pres. verē-ri, to reverence
Perf. ver-ītus, a, um esse, to have revered
Fut. verī-tūrūs, a, um esse, to will reverence², (that one) will rev.

Participle.

Pres. vere-ns, reverencing
Perf. verī-tus, a, um, having revered
Fut. 1) *Act.* verī-tūrūs, a, um, intending, wishing, about to reverence
 2) *Pass.* vere-ndus, a, um, what should be revered.

Gerund.

N. vere-ndum est, one (we) must rev.
 G. vere-ndi, of reverencing, to rev.
 D. vere-ndo, to reverencing, to rev.
 A. vere-ndum (e. g. ad), reverencing, to reverence
 A. vere-ndo, by reverencing.

Supine.

Acc. verī-tum, in order to reverence
Abl. verī-tu, to reverence, be revered.

¹) The Subjunctive of both the futures is wanting. See Remark 1) and 2) to § 50. — ²) See

V. *Pluperfect.*

a) Indicative.

func-tus, *eram*, I had managed
 a, *eras*, thou hadst managed
 um *erat*, he, she, it had managed
 func-ti, *eramus*, we had managed
 ae, *eratis*, you had managed
 a *erant*, they had managed.

partī-tus, *eram*, I had divided
 a, *eras*, thou hadst divided
 um *erat*, he, she, it had divided
 partī-ti, *eramus*, we had divided
 ae, *eratis*, you had divided
 a *erant*, they had divided.

b) Subjunctive.

func-tus, *essem*, I might have managed
 a, *esses*, thou mightest have m.
 um *esset*, he, she, it might have m.
 func-ti, *essemus*, we might have m.
 ae, *essetis*, you might have m.
 a *essent*, they might have m.

partī-tus, *essem*, I might have divided
 a, *esses*, thou mightest have d.
 um *esset*, he, she, it might have d.
 partī-ti, *essemus*, we might have d.
 ae, *essetis*, you might have d.
 a *essent*, they might have d.

VI. *Future Perfect (Indicative).*¹

func-tus, *ero*, I shall have managed
 a, *eris*, thou wilt have managed
 um *erit*, he, she, it will have man.
 func-ti, *erimus*, we shall have managed
 ae, *eritis*, you will have managed
 a *erunt*, they will have managed.

partī-tus, *ero*, I shall have divided
 a, *eris*, thou wilt have divided
 um *erit*, he, she, it will have div.
 partī-ti, *erimus*, we shall have divided
 ae, *eritis*, you will have divided
 a *erunt*, they will have divided.

Imperative.

fung-*ĕre*, manage thou
 fung-*ĭtor*, thou shouldst manage
 fung-*ĭtor*, he, she, it should manage
 fung-*ĭmĭni*, manage ye
 fung-*ĭmĭnor*, you should manage
 fung-*untor*, they should manage.

partī-*re*, divide thou
 partī-*tor*, thou shouldst divide
 partī-*tor*, he, she, it should divide
 partī-*mĭni*, divide ye
 partī-*mĭnor*, you should divide
 partī-*untor*, they should divide.

Infinitive.

Pres. fung-*i*, to manage
 Perf. func-tus, a, um *esse*, to have managed
 Fut. func-tūrus, a, um *esse*, to will manage², (that one) will man.

Imperative.

partī-*re*, divide thou
 partī-*tor*, thou shouldst divide
 partī-*tor*, he, she, it should divide
 partī-*mĭni*, divide ye
 partī-*mĭnor*, you should divide
 partī-*untor*, they should divide.

Participle.

Pres. fung-*ens*, managing
 Perf. func-tus, a, um, having managed
 Fut. 1) Act. func-tūrus, a, um, intending, wishing, about to manage
 Fut. 2) Pass. fung-*endus*, a, um, what should be managed.

Participle.

partī-*re*, divide thou
 partī-*tor*, thou shouldst divide
 partī-*tor*, he, she, it should divide
 partī-*mĭni*, divide ye
 partī-*mĭnor*, you should divide
 partī-*untor*, they should divide.

Gerund.

N. fung-*endum* est, one (we) must man.
 G. fung-*endi*, of managing, to manage
 D. fung-*endo*, to managing, to manage
 A. fung-*endum* (e. g. *ad*), managing, to manage
 A. fung-*endo*, by managing.

Gerund.

partī-*re*, divide thou
 partī-*tor*, thou shouldst divide
 partī-*tor*, he, she, it should divide
 partī-*mĭni*, divide ye
 partī-*mĭnor*, you should divide
 partī-*untor*, they should divide.

Supine.

Acc. func-tum, in order to manage
 Abl. func-tu, to manage, be managed.

Supine.

partī-*re*, divide thou
 partī-*tor*, thou shouldst divide
 partī-*tor*, he, she, it should divide
 partī-*mĭni*, divide ye
 partī-*mĭnor*, you should divide
 partī-*untor*, they should divide.

Remark 4) to § 50.

§ 53. *Periphrastic Conjugation.*

By joining the verb *esse* with the participles and with the gerund, a new conjugation is formed, called the *periphrastic conjugation*; under this the following forms are to be noted:

1) *Amatūrus, a, um sum, I wish, intend, am destined, am about to (will) love.*

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
<i>Present.</i>	
amaturus sum, <i>I am about to</i>	amaturus sim, <i>I may be about to</i>
amaturus es, [(will) love.	amaturus sis, [(will) love.
amaturus est,	amaturus sit,
hortaturi sumus, <i>we are about to</i>	hortaturi simus, <i>we may be about</i>
hortaturi estis, [(will) exhort.	hortaturi sitis, [to (will) exhort.
hortaturi sunt.	hortaturi sint.
<i>Imperfect.</i>	
moniturus eram, <i>I would ad-</i>	moniturus essem, <i>I would ad-</i>
[monish.	[monish.
<i>Perfect.</i>	
veriturus fui, <i>I would have rev-</i>	veriturus fuerim, <i>I would have</i>
[erenced.	[reverenced.
<i>Pluperfect.</i>	
recturus fueram, <i>I would have</i>	recturus fuisset, <i>I would have</i>
[governed.	[governed.
<i>Future.</i>	
functurus ero, <i>I shall be about to</i>	wanting.
[manage.	
<i>Future Perfect.</i>	
auditurus fuero, <i>I shall have been</i>	wanting.
partiturus fueris. [about to hear.	
<i>Infinitive.</i>	
<i>Pres.</i> amaturus esse, <i>to be about to (will) love</i>	[loved.
<i>Perf.</i> amaturus fuisse, <i>to have been about to love, would have</i>	
<i>Fut.</i> amaturus fore, <i>to will be about to love, (that one) will be</i>	[ready to love.

2) *Amandus, a, um sum, I must be loved, one must love me :*

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
Pres.	<i>amandus sum, I must be loved, one must love me</i>	<i>amandus sim, I must be loved, one must love me</i>
	<i>amandus es, thou must be loved, one must love thee</i>	<i>amandus sis, thou must be loved, one must love thee</i>
	<i>amandus est, he must be loved, one must love him</i>	<i>amandus sit, he must be loved, one must love him</i>
	<i>hortandi sumus, we must be exhorted, one must exhort us</i>	<i>hortandi simus, we must be exhorted, one must exhort us</i>
	<i>hortandi estis, you must be exhorted, one must exhort you</i>	<i>hortandi sitis, you must be exhorted, one must exhort you</i>
	<i>hortandi sunt, they must be exhorted, one must exhort them.</i>	<i>hortandi sint, they must be exhorted, one must exhort them.</i>
Imperf.	<i>monendus eram, I was to be admonished, one was to admonish me.</i>	<i>monendus essem, I might be to be admonished, one might be to admonish me.</i>
Perf.	<i>verendus fui, I should have been revered, one should have revered me.</i>	<i>verendus fuerim, I may have been to be admonished, one may have been to admonish me.</i>
Plupf.	<i>regendus fueram, I ought to have been governed, one ought to have governed me.</i>	<i>regendus fuissem, I might have been to be admonished, one might have been to admonish me.</i>
Fut.	<i>persequendus ero, I shall be to be pursued, one will be under obligation to pursue me.</i>	wanting.
F. P.	<i>audiendus fuero, I shall have been to be heard, one will have been under obligation to hear me.</i>	wanting.
	<i>metiendus fuëris, thou wilt have been to be measured, one will have been under obligation to measure thee.</i>	
	<i>Infinitive.</i>	
Pres.	<i>amandus esse, to be under obligation to be loved.</i>	
Perf.	<i>amandus fuisse, to have been under obligation to be loved.</i>	
Fut.	<i>amandus fore, to will be under obligation to be loved, (that one) etc.</i>	

- 3) *Amandum est one must love, mihi amandum est, I must love.*
Comp. Synt. § 98.

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>amandum est, one must love</i>	<i>amandum sit, one should love</i>
	<i>mihi amandum est, I must love</i>	<i>mihi amandum sit, I should love</i>
	<i>tibi hortandum est, thou must exhort</i>	<i>tibi hortandum sit, thou shouldst exhort</i>
	<i>illi timendum est, he must fear</i>	<i>illi timendum sit, he should fear</i>
	<i>nobis fatendum est, we must confess</i>	<i>nobis fatendum sit, we should confess</i>
	<i>vobis legendum est, you must read</i>	<i>vobis legendum sit, you should read</i>
	<i>illis loquendum est, they must speak</i>	<i>illis loquendum sit, they should speak</i>
	<i>puero audiendum est, the boy must hear</i>	<i>puero audiendum sit, the boy should hear</i>
	<i>viro experiendum est, the man must try.</i>	<i>viris experiendum sit, men should try.</i>
<i>Imperf.</i>	<i>amandum erat, one was to love.</i>	<i>amandum esset, one might be to love.</i>
	<i>mihi amandum erat, I was to love.</i>	<i>mihi amandum esset, I might be to love.</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>amandum fuit, one should have loved.</i>	<i>amandum fuerit, I may have been to love.</i>
<i>Plupf.</i>	<i>amandum fuerat, one ought to have loved.</i>	<i>amandum fuisset, I might have been to love.</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>amandum erit, one shall be to love.</i>	wanting.
<i>F. P.</i>	<i>amandum fuerit, one shall have been to love.</i>	wanting.

REMARK. So also in Deponents, as: *hortandus sum, I must exhort, hortandum est, one must exhort.* — Also, the Pres. Part. is used with *esse* in order to express a *continuing* action, as: *amans sum, eram* etc.; still this usage is common only when the participle supplies the place of an adjective, as: *amans (= studiosus) sum literarum.* Finally, the Perf. Part., when it signifies a *state or condition*, as: *ornatus, one who is adorned* (in a state of adornment), may be connected with all forms of *esse* and form a periphrastic Conj. as: *ornatus sum, eram, fui, fueram, ero, fuero, I*

am, was etc. *adorned*; also *ornatum fore* (would be adorned), instead of the more common *ornatum iri*.

Patria amanda est, 'one's native country should be loved, one should love his native country;'

patria nobis amanda est, 'we should love our native country;'

hic liber tibi legendus est, 'thou shouldst read this book;'

milites duci adhortandi fuerunt, 'the general should have incited the soldiers.'

Examples for the Gen., Dat., Acc. and Abl. of the Gerundive.
Comp. Synt. § 99.

Ars navis gubernandae, 'the art of governing a ship;'

peritus sum equorum regendorum, 'I am skilful in governing horses;'

asinus idoneus est magnis oneribus portandis, 'the ass is fitted for bearing great loads,' or, 'to bear great loads.'

corporis exercitationes plurimum valent ad valetudinem firmandam, 'exercise of the body avails much for confirming the health.'

litēris tractandis animus excolitur, 'by the pursuit of letters the mind is cultivated.'

FOURTH COURSE.

IRREGULAR AND IMPERSONAL VERBS.*

PRELIMINARY REMARK. Verbs are said to be irregular, either when they vary in the *formation of their tenses* from the great body of the verbs of a language (as those in the following list do from the paradigms given in §§ 50 and 51), or when they vary in their *inflection*, or fail to form some parts which verbs commonly have (as is the case with the *particular irregular verbs* and *defective verbs* which follow this list, §§ 69—76).

* Most of the irregular verbs in the following classes are contained, also, in the Latin Vocabulary at the end of the book, where they may be found in alphabetical order.

— *Impersonal verbs* are those which are used only in the third person Sing.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

§ 54. I. *The Perfect with Reduplication.*

REMARK. The reduplication in *do*, consists in repeating the first consonant of the stem with *e*; but in *sto*, in repeating the first two consonants of the stem with *e*, and then the *s* is dropped from the stem, hence: *steti* for *ste-sti*. Comp. *spondeo*, *sponondi* (§ 58, 7).

1. *Do*, *dēdi*, *dātum*, *dare*, to give. The *a* of the stem-syllable is short throughout, as: *dābam*, *dābo*, *dārem*; except *dās* and *dā*.

So its compounds of which the first part is a word of *two syllables*, as: *circumdo*, *circumdēdi*, *circumdātum*, *circumdāre*, to surround. Its compounds with *monosyllables*, on the contrary, changing *a* into *i* (but into *e* before *r*), have: *-do*, *-dīdi*, *-ditum*, *-dēre*, and follow the third Conj., as: *addo*, *addīdi*, *addītum*, *addēre*, to add.

2. *Sto*, *stēti*, *stātum*, *stāre*, to stand; (c. abl. to be gained at the expense of, cost).

Its compounds with *monosyllabic* prepositions have *stīti* in the Perf., as: *adsto* (I stand by), *adstīti*, but those compounded with *dissyllabic* prepositions retain the *stēti*, as: *circumsto* (I stand around), *circumstēti*. The Sup. of only a few of the compounds is used and is *stātum*; only *praesto* (to stand before, bestow), has both *praestītum* and *praestātum*. The Part. Fut. on the contrary, is always *stātūrus*, as: *praestaturus*, *constaturus*, *obstaturus*, etc.

Read Exercise XXIX.

§ 55. II. *Perfect*:— *ūi*; *Supine*:— *ītum*.

1. *Crēpo*, *crēpui*, *crēpītum*, *crēpāre*, to creak.

So commonly: *incrēpo*, *ūi*, *ītum*, rarely *āvī*, *ātum*; but *dis-crēpo*, without Sup., generally has *āvī* in the Perf.

2. *Cūbo*, *cūbui*, *cūbītum*, *cūbāre*, to recline.

3. *Dōmo, dōm ui, (domavi old poet.), dōmītum, dōmāre,* to tame, curb, subdue.
4. *Mīco, mīc ui, Sup. wanting, mīcāre,* to glitter ;
 So : *emīco, emīc ui, emīcātum, emīcāre,* to gush forth ; but, *dimīco, I fight* (a general battle), has *dimicavi, ātum, āre.*
5. *Plīco, plīcāvi and plīc ui, plīcātum and plīcītum, plīcāre,* to fold. This verb is used only in composition, as : *explīco, āvi and ui, ātum and ĩtum, āre, to explain.* Cicero prefers the regular form :— *avi, atum.* (Those derived from adjectives in *plex* are of the first Conj., as : *supplīco* (from *supplex*), *duplīco* (from *duplex*).
6. *Sōno, sōn ui, sōnītum, sonāre,* to sound, (but Part. Fut. *sonaturus*).
7. *Tōno, tōn ui, (Sup. wanting), tōnāre,* to thunder.
8. *Vēto, vēt ui, vētītum, vētāre,* to forbid.

Read Exercise XXX.

§ 56. III. *Perfect :— ůi ; Supine :— tum.*

1. *Frīco, frīc ui, frīcātum* (rarely *frictum*), *frīcāre,* to rub. *Refrīco* has *refrictum*, but *refricaturus*.
2. *Nēco, āvi, ātum, āre,* to kill ; but *enēco, enēc ui, enectum, enecāre,* to kill by inches, to vex to death, to entirely exhaust.
3. *Sēco, sēc ui, sectum, sēcāre,* to cut, (but Part. Fut. *secaturus*).

IV. *Perfect :— i ; Supine :— tum.*

1. *Jūvo, jūv i, jūtum, jūvāre* (c. acc.), to aid, assist, (Part. Fut. *juvaturus*) But *adjūvo* has Fut. Part. *adjuturus*.
2. *Lāvo, lāvi, lautum, lāvāre,* to wash. The Infin. *lavēre* is mostly poetic, and the Sup. *lōtum*, after the classical period.

Poto, potavi, potum, and *potatum, potare,* to drink.

Read Exercise XXXI.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

§ 57. I. *Perfect*:—*ŭi*; *Supine*:—*tum*.

PRELIMINARY REMARK. Many verbs of the second Conj. have no Sup., viz. those from which adjectives in use, chiefly in *īdus*, are formed, as: *horreo*, *ui*, to *shudder*, *horrīdus*, *hideous*, *paveo*, *pāvi*, to *dread*, *pavidus*, *timid*.

1. *Arceo*, *arcui*, (Sup. wanting), *arcēre*, to keep from.

The Part. *artus* (strait), is used as an adjective. The compounds, in which *a* of the stem passes into *e*, follow *mono*, as: *coērceo*, *ui*, *ītum*, *ēre*, to *keep together*.

2. *Dōcō*, *dōcui*, *doctum*, *dōcēre* (with two acc.), to teach.
3. *Miscō*, *miscui*, *mixtum* and *mīstum*, *miscēre*, to mix.
4. *Tēnō*, *tēnui*, (*tentum* in compos.), *tēnēre*, to hold.

The compounds have:—*tīneo*, as: *contineo*, *continui*, *contentum*, *continēre*.

5. *Torrō*, *torrui*, *tostum*, *torrēre*, to dry, bake.

II. *Perfect*:—*ŭi*; *Supine*:—*um*, only:

Censō, *censui*, *censum*, *censēre*, to rate, judge.

So its compounds, but with the associate form of the Sup. in *ītum*, as: *recenseo*, *recensui*, *recensum* and *recensītum*, to *examine*; except *succensēre* (to be displeased), *percensēre* (to examine accurately, go through), which have no Sup.—Here belongs *frendeo*, *frendui*, *frēsum* (*fressum*), *frendēre*, see its corresponding form, § 61, 18.

REMARK. *Taedet* (it disgusts), has together with *taeduit*, also *taesum est*, but this is not used in the classical language; the compound *pertaedet*, has in the Perf. only *pertaesum est*, e. g. *pertaesum est* (me) *levitatis*, whence by later writers *pertaesus*, *a*, *um* (c. gen. or acc.), *disgusted*.

III. *Perfect*:—*ēvi*; *Supinum*:—*ētum*.

1. *Delō*, *ēvi*, *ētum*, *ēre*, to destroy.
2. *Flēre*, to weep.

3. *Nēre*, to spin.

4. The compounds of the obsolete *plēre* (to fill), as : *complēre*. Here belongs the compound of the obsolete *ōleo* (I grow) :

5. *Abōleo*, *abolēvi*, *abolītum*, *abolēre*, to abolish ; still this verb does not occur till after the Augustan period.

Finally we have in this class :

6. *Ciēo*, *cīvi*, *cītum*, *ciēre*, to rouse, raise, call (by name).

So also the compounds, as : *conciēo*, *ivi*, *ītum*, *iēre*, or regular, according to the fourth Conj. : *conciō*, *ivi*, *ītum*, *iēre*, to excite, *exciēo*, *ivi*, *ītum*, *iēre* or *exciō*, *ivi*, *ītum*, *iēre*, to arouse, *perciēo*, *ivi*, *ītum*, *iēre* or *perciō*, *ivi*, *ītum*, *iēre*, to stir up, raise ; but, *accio*, *accīvi*, *accītum*, *accīre*, to send for, desire to come, is of the fourth Conj. alone and always has the *i* of the Sup. long.

IV. Perfect :— *i* ; Supine :— *tum*.

PRELIMINARY REMARK. The short vowel of the stem is lengthened in the Perf.

1. *Cāveo*, *cāvi*, *cautum*, *cāvēre*, to be on one's guard (ab aliquo, against some one) ; to give security, provide.
2. *Fāveo*, *fāvi*, (*fautum* rare), *fāvēre* (c. dat.), to be favorable, to favor.
3. *Fōveo*, *fōvi*, *fōtum*, *fōvēre*, to warm, nurse, cherish.
4. *Mōveo*, *mōvi*, *mōtum*, *mōvēre*, to move.
5. *Vōveo*, *vōvi*, *vōtum*, *vōvēre*, to vow, offer.

Also the following without a Supine :

6. *Ferveo*, *fervi* (in comp. generally *ferbui*), *fervēre*, to boil.
7. *Pāveo*, *pāvi*, *pavēre*, to dread (commonly *expavescēre*).
8. *Connīveo*, (*-nīvi* and *-nixi*, neither of them used in good prose), *connīvēre*, to close (the eyes), wink.

Read Exercise XXXII.

§ 58. V. *Perfect*:—*i*; *Supine*—*sum*.

(Comp. Prelim. Rem. to § 57. IV.)

1. *Prandeo, prandi, pransum, prandēre*, to breakfast.
2. *Sēdeo, sēdi, sessum, sēdēre*, to sit.

So the compounds with *dissyllabic* prepositions, as: *circumsēdeo, ēdi, essum, ēre*, to sit around, to beset; but those with *monosyllabic* prepositions change the *ē* of the stem-syllable into *ī*, as: *assīdeo, assēdi, assessum, assidēre*, to sit by.

3. *Strīdeo, strīdi, (Sup. wanting), strīdēre*, to whiz (poet. also, *strīdo, ěre*).
4. *Vīdeo, vīdi, vīsum, vīdēre*, to see.

Also the following, whose *Perf.* takes the Reduplication.

5. *Mordeo, momordi, morsum, mordēre*, to bite, afflict.
6. *Pendeo, pependi, (Sup. uncertain), pendēre*, to hang.
7. *Spondeo, sponondi, sponsum, spondēre*, to promise, to become responsible for.
8. *Tondeo, ttondi, tonsum, tondēre*, to shear, cut.

The reduplication in these verbs consists in a repetition of the first consonant of the stem with the first vowel of the stem. Concerning *sponondi*, see § 54. Rem.—The compounds of these verbs follow the simples, but are without the reduplication, as: *admordeo, admordi, admorsum, to bite at*; *praependeo, praependi, to hang before*, *respondeo, respondi, responsum, to answer*; *detondeo, detondi, detonsum, to shave off*.

VI. *Perfect*:—*si*; *Supine*:—*tum*.

1. *Augeo, auxi, auctum, augēre*, to increase.
2. *Indulgeo, indulsi, (indultum rare), indulgēre*, to be indulgent, to give one's self up to.
3. *Lūgeo, luxi, (without Sup.), lūgēre*, to mourn, lament.
4. *Torqueo, torsī, tortum, torquēre*, to twist, torture.

Read Exercise XXXIII.

§ 59. VII. *Perfect*:— *si*; *Supine*:— *sum*.

1. *Mulceo, mulsi, mulsum, mulcēre*, to stroke.
2. *Mulgeo, mulsi, mulsum, mulgēre*, to milk.
3. *Tergeo, tersi, tersum, tergēre*, to wipe.
4. *Ardeo, arsi, arsum, ardēre*, to burn, take fire.
5. *Rīdeo, rīsi, rīsum, rīdēre*, to laugh.
6. *Suādeo, suāsi, suāsum, suādēre*, to advise.
7. *Māneo, mansi, mansum, mănēre*, to remain.
8. *Jūbeo, jussi, jussum, jūbēre*, to bid, command, order.
9. *Haereo, haesi, haesum, haerēre*, to hang, stick.

The following also without a *Supine*:

10. *Algeo, alsi, algēre*, to suffer from cold, freeze.
11. *Fulgeo, fulsi, fulgēre*, to glitter, lighten.
12. *Turgeo, tursi, turgēre*, to swell.
13. *Urgeo, ursi, urgēre*, to press, oppress.
14. *Frīgeo, (frixī rare), frīgēre*, to freeze.
15. *Lūceo, luxi, lūcēre*, to shine.

VIII. *Perfect* with passive form (*Neuter Passives*); without a *Supine*.

1. *Audeo, ausus sum, audēre*, to dare.
2. *Gaudeo, gāvīsus sum, gaudēre*, to rejoice.
3. *Sōleo, solītus sum, sōlēre*, to be accustomed (to do something).

Read Exercise XXXIV.

THIRD CONJUGATION.

§ 60. I. *Perfect*:— *si*; *Supine*:— *sum*;

a) The stem ends in *d* or *t*:

1. *Claudo, clausi, clausum, claudēre*, to close.

In the compounds *au* passes into *ū*, as: *inclūdo, ūsi, ūsum, ūdēre*, to include.

2. *Divīdo, divīsi, divīsum, dividēre*, to divide.
3. *Laedo, laesi, laesum, laedēre*, to hurt.

In the compounds *ae* passes into *i*, as: *illido, isi, isum, idēre*, to strike against.

4. *Lūdo, lūsi, lūsum, lūdēre*, to play.
5. *Plaudo, plausi, plausum, plaudēre*, to clap.

So also *applaudo* (I applaud); in the remaining compounds *au* passes into *ō*, as: *explōdo, ōsi, ōsum, ōdēre*, to clap off, drive off.

6. *Rādo, rāsi, rāsum, rādēre*, to shave, shear.
7. *Rōdo, rōsi, rōsum, rōdēre*, to gnaw, slander.
8. *Trūdo, trūsi, trūsum, trūdēre*, to thrust.
9. *Vādo, vādēre*, to go; without Perf. and Sup.

But the compounds have both, as: *evādo, evāsi, evāsum, evādēre*, to come out, escape.

To these succeed the following:

10. *Cēdo, cessi, cessum, cedēre*, to give way.
11. *Mitto, mīsi, mīssum, mittēre*, to send.
12. *Quātio*, (Perf. wanting,) *quassum, quātēre*, to shake.

The compounds change *qua* into *cū* and form the Perf., as: *decūtio, decussi, decussum, decūtēre*, to shake down.

b) The stem ends in *g, c*, or *ct*:

13. *Mergo, mersi, mersum, mergēre*, to plunge.
14. *Spargo, sparsi, sparsum, spargēre*, to scatter (sow).

In the compounds *a* of the stem passes into *e*, as: *conspargo, ersi, ersum, ergēre*, to besprinkle.

15. *Tergo, tersi, tersum, tergēre*, to wipe, (kindred form of *tergēre* § 59. VII. 3).
16. *Fixo, fixi, fixum, figēre*, to fix.
17. *Flecto, flexi, flexum, flectēre*, to bend.
18. *Necto, nexui* (*nexi* rarely), *nexum, nectēre*, to unite, plait.
19. *Pecto, pexi, pexum, pectēre*, to comb.
20. *Plecto*, (*plexi* rare), *plexum, plectēre*, to plait.

c) Finally the two following belong here.

21. *Prěmo, pressi, pressum, přěměre*, to press.

In the compounds *ě* of the stem before *m* passes into *i*, as :
comprĭmo, essi, essum, ĭměre, to *press together*.

22. *Flūo* (for *fluvo*), *fluxi, (fluxus as adj.), fluěre*, to flow.

Read Exercise XXXV.

§ 61. II. *Perfect* : — *ŭi* ; *Supine* : — *tum, — ĭtum, — sum*.

1. *Alo, alŭi, altum* (later *alĭtum*), *alěre*, to nourish.
2. *Cōlo, colŭi, cultum, cōlěre*, to attend to, cultivate, honor.
3. *Consŭlo, consŭlui, consultum, consŭlěre*, to deliberate; c. acc., to consult some one; c. dat., to consult for some one.
4. *Occŭlo, occŭlui, occultum, occŭlěre*, to conceal.
5. *Răpio, rapui, raptum, răpěre*, to snatch, plunder, carry off.

Compounds : — *ripio, — ripui, — reptum, — ripěre*, as :
arripio, I seize, appropriate to myself.

6. *Sěro, sěrui, sertum, sěrěre*, to join together.
7. *Texo, texui, textum, texěre*, to weave.
8. *Depso, depsui, depstum, depsěre*, to knead.

9. *Cumbo, cŭbui, cŭbitum, cumběre*, to lie.

The simple verb is not used, but its compounds, as : *discumběre, to lie down*.

10. *Elicio* (from Obs. *lacio*), *elĭcui, elĭcĭtum, elĭcěre*, to draw out. But the other compounds are regular, as : *allicio, allexi, allectum, allicěre, to allure*.

11. *Frěmo, frěmui, frěmĭtum, frěměre*, to murmur, grumble.

12. *Gěmo, gěmui, gěmĭtum, gěměre*, to groan, deplore.

13. *Gigno, genui, genĭtum, gigněre*, to beget, produce.

14. *Mōlo, mōhui, mōlitum, mōlère*, to grind.
 15. *Pinso, pinsui, pinsitum* (and *pinsum*), *pinsère*, to bray, pound.
 16. *Pōno, pōsui, pōsitum, pōnère* (in c. abl.), to place, lay.
Pōno arises from *pōšino*, and *pōsui* from *pōsivi*.
 17. *Vōmo, vōmui, vōmitum, vōmère*, to vomit.

18. *Frendo, frendui, frēsūm* or *fressum*, *frendère*, to gnash. (See also § 57. II.)
 19. *Mēto, messui, messum, mētère*, to mow, reap.

REMARK. The following want the Sup.: *sterto, stertui, stertère*, to snore, *strēpo, ui, ère*, to rustle, sound, resound; *trēmo, ui, ère*, to tremble; the compounds of *pesco*, as: *compesco, compescui, compescère*, to restrain; *vōlo, ui, velle*, to wish; and the compounds of *cello* except *percellère*: *excello, antecello, prae-cello* *I excel*, Pf. *cellui*; *excelsus* and *praecelsus* (lofty, distinguished) are used adjectively.

Read Exercise XXXVI.

§ 62. III. Perfect:—*vi*; Supine:—*tum*.

The stem of the Pres. is strengthened by *n* or *r*:

1. *Lī-n-o, lēvi, lītum, līnère*, to besmear, (also *linio, līnīre*, late).
2. *Sī-n-o, sīvi, sītum, sīnère*, to let, permit.
3. *Sē-r-o, sēvi, sātum, sērère*, to sow.

In the compounds, *a* of the Sup. passes into *ī*, as: *consē-ro, consēvi, consitum, consērère*, to seed down, plant.

The following have suffered a transposition of letters in the Perf. and Sup.:

4. *Cer-n-o, (crēvi, crētum, only in comp.), cernère*, to sift, discern.
5. *Sper-n-o, sprēvi, sprētum, spernère*, to spurn.
6. *Ster-n-o, strāvi, strātum, sternère*, to spread.

Finally there belong here the following in *sco* (comp. § 67.)

7. *Cre-s-co, crēvi, crētum, crescēre*, to grow.

So: *accrescēre, to grow to, increase, excrescēre, to grow up, decrescēre, to decrease, recrescēre, to grow again, concrescēre, to grow together*; the remaining compounds want the Sup.

8. *No-sc-o, nōvi, (nōtus as adj.), noscēre*, to be acquainted with.

So: *internoscēre, to distinguish, ignoscēre, to pardon, per-noscēre, to become thoroughly acquainted with, praenoscēre, to become acquainted with before*; but, *cognoscēre, to become acquainted with, agnoscēre* (Part. Fut. Act. *agnoturus*), *to perceive, praecognoscēre, to become acquainted with previously, recognoscēre, to become acquainted with again, to review*, form the Sup. in *itum*, as: *cognitum*.

9. *Pa-sc-o, pāvi, pāstum, pascēre*, to pasture, feed.

10. *Quiē-sc-o, quiēvi, quiētum, quiescēre*, to rest.

11. *Sci-sc-o, scīvi, scītum, sciscēre*, to decide.

12. *Sue-sc-o, suēvi, suētum, suescēre*, to be accustomed.

Read Exercise XXXVII.

§ 63. IV. *Perf.*:—*īvi*; *Supine*:—*ītum* (like the fourth Conj.)

1. *Cūpio, cūpīvi, cūpītum, cūpēre*, to desire, wish.

2. *Pēto, pētīvi, pētītum, pētēre*, to seek, strive after something, to attack something: *ab aliquo*, to request of some one.

3. *Quaero, quaesīvi, quaesītum, quaerēre*, to seek.

In the compounds, *ae* passes into *ī*, as: *exquiro, isīvi, isītum, irēre, to examine, trace out*.

4. *Rūdo, rūdīvi and rūdi, rūdītum, rūdēre*, to roar.

5. *Tēro, trīvi (for terīvi), trītum (for terītum), tērēre*, to rub.

Here belong also *sapio, sapīvi* (Sup. wanting) *sapēre*, to taste; also *desipio* without Perf. or Sup.)

The following also in *esso* :

6. *Arcesso, arcessivi, arcessitum, arcessere*, to bring.
7. *Capesso, ivi, itum, ere*, to seize.
8. *Facesso, ivi, itum, ere*, to make (*negotium facessere*, to make trouble, to vex); to take one's self off.
9. *Incesso, ivi*, (Sup. wanting), *ere*, to attack.
10. *Lacesso, ivi, itum, ere*, to provoke.

Read Exercise XXXVIII.

§ 64. V. Perfect:—*i*; Supine:—*tum*.

a) The stem ends in *b* or *p* :

1. *Cāpio, cēpi, captum, cāpēre*, to take, seize, receive.

Compounds:—*cīpio*,—*cēpi*,—*ceptum*—*cīpēre*, as: *percipio*, *I perceive*, *incipio*, *I begin*; but *antecāpio*,—*cēpi*,—*ceptum*,—*capēre*.

2. *Rumpo, rūpi, ruptum, rumpēre*, to break.

Scābo, scābi, scābēre, to scratch, wants the Supine, and *lambo, lambi, lambēre* has its Sup. in *itum, lambitum*.

b) The stem ends in *c*, *g*, or *qu* :

3. *Ago, ēgi, actum, āgēre*, to lead, drive, do, act, make; of time, to spend.

So: *circumāgēre*, to drive round, *perāgēre*, to carry through; the other compounds on the contrary, have:—*īgo*, *ēgi*, *actum*, *īgēre*, as: *abīgo*, *I drive away*, *exīgo*, *I expel*, (of time) *I pass*, *subīgo*, *I subjugate*; *cōgēre*, to compel (from *cōīgēre*), has *coēgi*, *coactum*.

4. *Fācio, fēcī, factum, fācēre*, to make, do.

Concerning the Pass.: *fio*, *factus sum*, *fieri*, and its compounds, see § 75. The compounds with prepositions have in the Imper.—*fīce*, as *perfīce*; the rest retain *fac*; from *calfacere*, however, we have *calfāce*.

5. *Ico, ici* (anteclassic), *ictum, icĕre*, to strike; of a league, to conclude.

Only the third pers. *icit* is found in the Pres., the other forms being supplied from *ferire*.

6. *Jācio, jĕci, jactum, jăĕre*, to throw.

Compounds:—*jicio, jĕci, jectum, jicĕre*, as: *rejicio, I throw back, reject, subjicio, I throw under, subject*.

7. *Lĕgo, lĕgi, lectum, lĕgere*, to collect, read.

So: *allĕgo, I elect to, perlĕgo, I read through, praelĕgo, I read before, relĕgo, I read again, sublĕgo, I gather from below*; the following, on the contrary, have in the Pres.,—*lĕgo*, as: *collĕgo, I collect, (collĕgi, collectum, colligĕre), delĕgo and elĕgo, I choose, recollĕgo, I collect again, selĕgo, I select*; but, *dilĕgo, I love, intellĕgo, I understand, negligĕgo, I neglect*, have in the Perf. *exi*, as: *dilĕgo, dilexi, dilectum, diligĕre*.

8. *Frango, frĕgi, fractum, frangĕre*, to break.

The compounds:—*fringo, frĕgi, fractum, fringĕre*, as: *perfringo, perfrĕgi, perfractum, perfringĕre, to break through*.

9. *Linq̄uo, liqui, lictum, linquĕre*, to leave.

10. *Vinco, vici, victum, vincĕre*, to conquer, overcome.

Fugio, fugi, fugĕre, to flee, is without Supine, but has *fugiturus*.

c) The stem ends in *m*:

11. *Emo, emi, emtum, ĕmĕre*, to buy.

Compounds:—*ĕmo, ĕmĕre*, as: *exĕmo, exĕmi, exemtum, exĕmĕre, to exempt*; but in *coĕmo, I buy in quantities*, the *ĕ* remains.

d) The stem ends in *u* or *v*:

12. *Acĕo, ĕĕi, ĕcĕtum, ĕĕĕre*, to sharpen.

The compounds want the Supine.

13. *Argĕo, argĕi, (argĕtum), argĕĕre*, to accuse (but Part. Fut. Act. *arguturus*).

Instead of *argūtum*, *argūtus*, *convictum*, *convictus*, are used except by bad or late writers.

14. *Exūo*, *exūi*, *exūtum*, *exūere*, to put off.
15. *Indūo*, etc. I put on, clothe.
16. *Imbūo*, etc. I dip in ; *c. abl.* I imbue with.
17. *Lūo*, *lūi*, (Sup. wanting, but *luiturus*), *lūere*, to wash.
18. *Minūo*, etc. I diminish.
19. *Nūo*, etc. I nod (only in compounds, as : *adnūo*, *I nod to*), without Sup., but has *abnuiturus*.
20. *Rūo*, *rūi*, *rūtum*, *rūere*, to rush, (but Part. Fut. *ruiturus*).
21. *Spūo*, *spūi*, *spūtum*, *spūere*, to spit.
22. *Statūo*, etc. I place firmly.

The compounds change the *a* of the stem into *i*, as : *desituo*, *I desert*.

23. *Sūo*, etc. I sew.
24. *Tribūo*, etc. I give.
25. *Solvo*, *solvi*, *solūtum*, *solvère*, to loose.
26. *Volvo*, *volvi*, *volūtum*, *volvère*, to roll.

REMARK. *Metūere* (ui), *to fear*, *plūere* (plui), *to rain*, *congrūere*, *to agree*, *sternūere* (ui), *to sneeze*, want the Supine.

Read Exercise XXXIX.

§ 65. VI. *Perfect* :—*i* ; *Supine* :—*sum*.

a) The stem ends in *d* or *t* :

1. *Cando* in compounds, as : *accendo*, *accendi*, *accensum*, *accendēre*, to kindle, inflame.
2. *Cūdo*, *cūdi*, *cūsum*, *cūdēre*, to forge.
3. *Edo* (ē), *ēdi*, *ēsuum*, *ēdēre*, to eat.
4. *Fendo* in compounds, as : *defendo*, *defendi*, *defensum*, *defendēre*, to defend.
5. *Fōdio*, *fōdi*, *fōssum*, *fōdēre*, to dig.
6. *Fundo*, *fūdi*, *fūsum*, *fundēre*, to pour.
7. *Mando*, *mandi*, *mansum*, *mandēre*, to chew.

8. *Pando, pandi, pansum* and *passum, pandere*, to spread.
 9. *Prehendo, prehendi, prehensum,prehendere*, to grasp.
 10. *Scando, scandi, scansum, scandere*, to mount.

In the compounds:—scendo,—scendi,—scensum,—scendere, as: *adscendere, to ascend, scale, descendere, to descend.*

11. *Sido, sēdi* (rarely *sīdi*), Sup. wanting, *sidere*, to sit.

In the compounds:—sīdo,—sēdi,—sessum,—sīdere, as: *considere, to sit down.*

12. *Strido, strīdi*, (Sup. wanting), *stridere*, to hiss.
 13. *Verto, verti, versum, vertere*, to turn.

Finally, there belongs here the *neuter passive*:

14. *Fīdo, fīsus sum, fidere*, to trust.

So: *confidere, to confide in*, and *diffidere, to distrust, despair.*

b) The stem ends in *l, r* or *s*:

15. *Vello, velli* (rarely *vulsi*), *vulsum, vellere*, to pluck.

Convello has only *convelli* in the Perf., but *avello* and *evello* have both forms of the Perf., though but rarely that in *vulsi*.

16. *Psallo, psalli*, (Sup. wanting), *psallere*, to play the lyre.
 17. *Sallo*, (no Sup.), *salsum, sallere*, to salt.
 18. *Verro, verri*, (Sup. wanting), *verrere*, to sweep.
 19. *Vīso, vīsi*, (*visum*, from *video*), *visere*, to visit.

REMARK. It is to be noticed, that the stem-vowel of these verbs, when short in the other parts, is long in the Perf. The two following verbs form an apparent exception:

Findo, fīdi, fissum, findere, to split, (so also its compounds).

Scindo, scīdi, scissum, scindere, to cut (so also its compounds). But both these verbs originally took the reduplication. The same is true of the compound: *percello, percūli, percussum, percellere, to strike violently* (from the obsolete *cellere, to impel*). See § 61, c. Rem.

Read Exercise XL.

§ 66. VIII. *Perfect with the Reduplication.*

PRELIMINARY REMARK. The Reduplication consists here, in those verbs of which the first vowel of the stem is *i*, *o*, or *u*, in the repetition of the first consonant of the stem with this vowel, but with the remaining verbs, in the repetition of the first stem-consonant with *e*. The compounds do not take the reduplication, except those from *curro*, *disco*, and *posco*.

1. *Cădo*, *cecidi*, *căsum*, *cădĕre*, to fall, to happen.

Compounds :—*cido*,—*cidi*,—*căsum*,—*cidĕre* ; so : *occido*, *I go to ruin*, *incido*, *I fall upon*, and *recido*, *I fall back* ; the others want the Supine, as : *concido*, *idi*, *idĕre*, to fall together.

2. *caedo*, *cecidi*, *caesum*, *caedĕre*, to fell, kill.

Compounds :—*cido*,—*cidi*,—*cisum*,—*cidĕre*, as : *occido*, *I kill*.

3. *Căno*, *cecini*, *cantum*, *canĕre*, to sing.

Compounds :—*cino*,—*cinui*,—*cinĕre*, as : *concino*, *ui*, *ĕre*.

4. *Curro*, *cucurri*, *cursum*, *currĕre*, to run.

Most of its compounds are found both with and without the reduplication, but oftener without.

5. *Disco*, *didici*, (Sup. wanting), *discĕre*, to learn.

So also its compounds, as : *perdisco*, *perdidici*, *perdiscĕre*, to learn thoroughly.

6. *Fallo*, *fefelli*, *falsum*, *fallĕre*, to deceive.

Fallit me, *it escapes me*.—The Part. *falsus* is commonly used as an adjective, *false*. Compound : *refello*, *refelli*, (Sup. wanting), *refellĕre*, to refute.

7. (*Pango*), *pepigi*, *pactum*, *pangĕre*, to bargain, agree to on condition.

The Pres. in this meaning is always expressed by *paciscor* ; but *pango*, in the meaning, *I strike, fasten*, has *panxi* (rarely *pĕgi*), *panctum* (*pactum*). Compound :—*pingo*,—*pĕgi*,—*pactum*, *pingĕre*, as : *compingo*, to fasten together.

8. *Parco, p e p e r c i* (*parsi* rare), *parsum, parcĕre* (c. dat.), to spare.
9. *Părio, p e p ě r i, partum, parĕre*, to bear (ova *parĕre*, to lay eggs), to acquire. Particip. Fut. *paritūrus* (for *partūrus*).
10. *Pello, p e p ũ l i, pulsum, pellĕre*, to drive, repel.

Compounds :—*pello*,—*pŭli*,—*pulsum*,—*pellĕre*, as : *expello*, *expŭli*, *expulsum*, *expellĕre*, to drive away.

11. *Pendo, p e p e n d i, pensum, pendĕre*, to suspend, weigh, to pay, compensate.

The compounds have no reduplication, as : *appendo*, *appendi*, *appensum*, *appendĕre*, to hang to, append.

12. *Posco, p o p o s c i*, (Sup. wanting), *poscĕre*, to demand.

So also its compounds, as : *exposco*, *expoposci*, *exposcĕre*, to demand of, request of.

13. *Pungo, p u p ũ g i, punctum, pungĕre*, to prick, harass.

The compounds have *punxi* in the Perf., as : *interpungo*, *punxi*, *interpunctum*, to divide.

14. *Tango, t e t ĭ g i, tactum, tangĕre*, to touch.

Compounds :—*tingo*,—*tĭgi*,—*tactum*, *tingĕre*, as : *attingo*, *attĭgi*, *attactum*, *attingĕre*, to touch, reach.

15. *Tendo, t e t e n d i, tentum* and *tensum, tendĕre*, to stretch, spread, extend, (*tendĕre insidias*, to lay snares).

The compounds are without the reduplication and generally have the Sup. :—*tentum*, as : *contendo*, *contendi*, *contentum*, *contendĕre*, to draw together, exert one's self, strive ; yet we find *retentum* and *retensum*, *extentum* and *extensum*, but *detendo* and *ostendo* have only -sum.

16. *Tundo, t u t ũ d i, tunsum, tundĕre*, to beat, stun.

Compounds :—*tundo*,—*tŭdi*,—*tŭsum*,—*tundĕre*, as : *contundo*, *contŭdi*, *contŭsum*, *contundĕre*, to break in pieces, crush.

REM. 1. The two following verbs have the reduplication in the Pres. and retain it in the other tenses :

bībo, bibi, bibītum, bibēre, *to drink* (so also its compounds),
sisto, stitī (in comp.—stētī, from sto, being used for the simple),
stātum, sistēre, *to place, stop*.

REM. 2. The compounds of *dare* with monosyllabic words (comp. § 54, 1.), also belong to this class, as: addo, addīdi, addītum, addēre, *to add*.

Read Exercise XLI.

§ 67. VIII. *Inchoative Verbs.*

All *inchoative* or *inceptive* verbs (in *sco*), i. e. verbs which express a *becoming* or *beginning* of the idea contained in the primitive, follow the third Conj. and coincide in the Perf. and Sup. with their primitives, as:

inveterasco (from *invetērare*), inveterāvi, inveterātum, inveterascēre, *to grow old*;

exardesco (from *ardēre*), exarsi, exarsum, exardescēre, *to become inflamed, to be kindled*;

indolesco (from *dolēre*), indolui, indolītum, indolescēre, *to feel pain*;

revivisco (from *vivēre*), revixi, revictum, reviviscēre, *to come to life again, revive*;

concupisco (from *cupēre*), concupīvi, concupītum, concupiscēre, *to desire* (earnestly);

obdormisco (from *dormire*), obdormīvi, obdormītum, obdormiscēre, *to fall asleep*.

REMARK. The inchoative verbs from the obsolete *olēo, ūi, olēre, to grow*, (§ 57, III. 4.), vary in their formation in the following way:

adolesco, adolēvi, adultum,adolescēre, *to grow up*.

exolesco, exolēvi, exolētum, exolescēre, *to become old*.

inolesco, inolēvi, (Sup. wanting), inolescēre, *to grow into*.

Also, *obsolesco, obsolēvi, obsolētum, obsolescēre, to grow old, obsolete*, varies from its primitive *solēre*. Very many inchoative verbs want the Sup., as: *incalesco, incalui, incalescere, to become warm* (from *calco, ūi, itum, ēre, to be warm*). Some want both Perf. and Sup., as: *augesco, I increase* (from *augeo, xi, ctum, ēre*). Here especially belong the inchoatives which are derived

from substantives and adjectives, as: *repuerascēre*, to become a boy again; only a small number of these form the Perf. which is in *ui*, as: *maturesco*, *maturui*, *maturescēre*, to become mature.

Read Exercise XLII.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

§ 68. I. *Perfect*:—*vi* and—*ui*; *Supine*:—*tum*.

1. *Sep̄lio*, *sep̄li vi*, *sepultum*, *sep̄lire*, to bury.
2. *Sālio*, *salui*, (without Sup.), *sālire*, to leap.

The compounds have:—*silio*,—*silui*,—*sultum*,—*silire*, as: *assilio*, *assilui*, *assultum*, *assilire*, to leap upon.

II. *Perfect*:—*i*; *Supine*:—*tum*.

1. *Comp̄erio*, *comp̄eri*, *compertum*, *comp̄erire*, to ascertain.
2. *Rep̄erio*, *rep̄eri*, *repertum*, *rēp̄erire*, to find, discover.

But: *ap̄erio*, *ruī*, *rtum*, *rire*, to open, uncover, *op̄erio*, and *coverio*, *ruī*, *rtum*, *rire*, to cover.

3. *V̄enio*, *v̄eni*, *ventum*, *v̄enire*, to come.

III. *Perfect*:—*si*; *Supine*:—*tum*.

1. *Am̄icio*, (*am̄ixi* and *amicui*, both rare), *amictum*, *am̄icire*, to clothe.
2. *Farcio*, *farsi*, *fartum* (*farctum*), *farcire*, to stuff.

The compounds have:—*fercio*,—*fersi*,—*fertum*, *fercire*, as: *refercire*, to stuff full, fill up.

3. *Fulcio*, *fulsi*, *fultum*, *fulcire*, to support.
4. *Haurio*, *hausi*, *haustum* (*hausurus* poet.), *haurire*, to draw.
5. *Sancio*, *saxi*, *sancitum* (rare *sanctum*; but *sanc-tus*, *a*, *um*, as adjective, *sacred*), *sancire*, to sanction.
6. *Sarcio*, *sarsi*, *sartum*, *sarcire*, to patch, repair, restore.
7. *Sēpio*, *sepsi*, *septum*, *sēpire*, to hedge around.
8. *Vincio*, *vinxi*, *vinctum*, *vincire*, to bind, confine.

IV. *Perfect*:—*si*; *Supine*:—*sum*.

Sentio, sensi, sensum, sentire, to feel, think, suppose.

REMARK. Of the preceding list of the irregular verbs in the different conjugations, several have some of their parts alike: 1) Those which have their *Perfects* and *Supines* alike: *cioo cioo, cubo cumbo, pendeo pendo, sedeo sideo*. 2) Those which have like perfects: *cerno cresco, deleo delino, frigeo frigo, fulgeo fulcio, luceo lugeo, liqueo linquo, mulceo mulgeo, paveo pasco, sto sisto*. 3) With like *Supines*: *cerno cresco, maneo mando, pando patior, pango paciscor, teneo tendo, video viso, vivo vinco*.—Some words also have the same form in the Present (differing, however, in some cases in *quantity*), but are of different conjugations, as: *fundo* 1 and 3, *edūco* 1 (bring up), *edūco* 3 (lead forth), etc.

Read Exercise XLIII.

PARTICULAR IRREGULAR VERBS.

§ 69. 1) *Pos-sum, pōt-ūi, pos-se*, to be able (can).

PRELIMINARY REMARK. *Possum* is composed of *pot-is, e* (able), and the verb *sum*.

INDICATIVE. SUBJUNCTIVE.		INDICATIVE. SUBJUNCTIVE.	
<i>Present.</i>		<i>Perfect.</i>	
pos-sūm, I am able (can)	pos-sīm, I may be able	pōt-ūi, I have been able	pōt-uērim, I may have been able
pōt-ēs,	pos-sīs,	pōt-uisti,	pōt-uēris,
pōt-est,	pos-sit,	pōt-uit,	pot-uērit,
pos-sūmus,	pos-sīmus,	pōt-ūimus,	pot-uerīmus,
pōt-estis,	pos-sītis,	pōt-uistis,	pot-uerītis,
pos-sunt.	pos-sint.	pōt-uērunt(ēre)	pot-uērint.
<i>Imperfect.</i>		<i>Pluperfect.</i>	
pōt-ērām, I was able (could)	pos-sēm, I might be able	pōt-uēram, I had been able	pōt-uissēm, I m't have been able
pōt-ērās, etc.	pos-sēs, etc.	pōt-uērās, etc.	pōt-uissēs, etc.
<i>Future.</i>		<i>Future Perfect.</i>	
pōt-ēro, I shall be able		pōt-uēro, I shall have been able	
pot-ēris, etc.		pōt-uēris, etc.	
<i>Infinitive.</i>		<i>Participle.</i>	
<i>Pres.</i> pos-se, to be able		pōt-ens (only as adjective), able.	
<i>Perf</i> pōt-uisse, to have been able		The remaining Participles are	
<i>Fut.</i> wanting.		wanting.	
	<i>Imperative</i> wanting.		

REMARK. In the ancient language and in the poets, forms of this verb are often found without any contraction in *potis*, as: *potissum* (i. e. *potis-sum*), etc.

Read Exercise XLIV.

§ 70. 2) *Edo, ēdi, ēsum, ēdēre* and *esse*, to eat.

The whole irregularity of this verb arises from its having forms like those beginning with *es* of the verb *sum*, which are used at the same time with the regular form; but the form *es* from *edo* is long, from *sum* short.

Pres. Indic.	ēdo, ēdis and ēs, ēdit and est, ēdīmus, ēdītis and estis, ēdunt.
Imperf. Subj.	ēdērem and essem, ēdēres and esses, ēdēret and esset. ēderēmus and essēmus, ēderētis and essētis, ēdērent & essent.
Imperative.	Sing. 2. ēde and ēs Plur. 2. ēdīte and este. 3. edunto. 2 & 3. ēdīto and esto. ēdītōte and estōte.

REMARK. So also its compounds, as: *comēdo, I eat, consume, comēdis* and *comēs*, etc. The forms not given in the above table are regular; yet *estur* (for *edītur*), is sometimes found in the poets.

Read Exercise XLV.

§ 71. 3) *Fēro, tūli, lātum, ferre*, to bear, bring.

Present Active.		Present Passive.	
Indic.	fēro, fers, fert, fērīmus, fertis, fērunt.	Ind.	fēror, ferris, fertur, fērīmur, fērīmīni, feruntur.
Infinitive. ferre, to bear.		Infinitive. ferri, to be borne.	
Im- per.	S. 2. fer, fertō Pl. 2. ferte, fertōte 3. fertō. 3. ferunto.	S. 2. ferre, fertor Pl. 2. fērīmīni, 3. fertor. 3. feruntor.	
Imperf. Subj. Active.		Imperf. Subj. Passive.	
ferrem, ferres, ferret, ferrēmus, ferrētis, ferrent.		ferrer, ferrēvis (e), ferrētur, ferrēmur, ferremīni, ferrentur.	

REM. 1. The remaining forms are derived regularly from *fēro, tūli, lātum*: *Subj. Pres.* fēram, as, fērar, āris (e); *Ind. Imperf.* fērēbam, fērēbar; *Fut.* fēram, es, fērar, ēris (e); *Subj. Perf.* tū-

lërim; *Plpf.* tülëram, tülissem; *Inf. Perf.* tülisse; *Inf. Fut.* läturus, a, um esse; *Part. Act.* fërens, ntis, läturus, a, um; *Pass.* lätus, a, um, fërendus, a, um; *Ger.* ferendum.

REM. 2. In the same manner the compounds, as: offëro, obtüli, oblätum, offerre, *to offer*. From the stem of the Perf. (*tuli*) is derived:

tollo, sus-tüli, sub-lätum, tollëre, *to raise, take away, carry off*.

The Perf. and Sup. are from suffëro (i. e. sursum fero, *I carry aloft*), from which, suffëro (*sub. and fero*), sustüli, sufferre, *to bear, endure*, is to be carefully distinguished. Attollo wants both Perf. and Sup.; the Perf. and Sup. of extollo are supplied from effëro.

Read Exercise XLVI.

- § 72. 4) *Völo, völäi, velle, to will, wish.*
nölo, (from ne volo), nöläi nolle, to be unwilling;
malo (from magis volo), mäläi, malle, to choose
(would) rather.

Indicative.			Subjunctive.			
Present.	völo	nölo	mälo	vëlim	nölim	mälim
	vïs	non vïs	mavis	velis	nölis	malis
	vult	non vult	mavult	velit	nölit	malit
	volumus	nolumus	malumus	velimus	nolimus	malimus
	vultis	non vultis	manultis	velitis	nolitis	malitis
	volunt	nolunt	malunt	velint	nolint	malint.
Impf.	volëbam	nölëbam	mälëbam	vellem	nollem	mallem
	volëbas, etc.	nölëbas, etc.	mälëbas, etc.	velles, etc.	nolles, etc.	malles, etc.
Fut.	völam, es, etc.		nölam, es, etc.	mälam, es, etc.		
	<i>Imperative (of volo and malo wanting).</i>					
S. 2. nöläi, noläito; 3. noläito; Pl. 2. noläite, noläitöte; 3. nolunto.						
<i>Participle.</i>						
völens, ntis;		nölens, ntis;		of malo it is wanting.		

REM. 1. The forms derived from the Perf. are regular: volui, nolui, malui; voluerim, noluerim, maluerim; *Inf.* voluisse, noluisse, maluisse; *Plupf.* volueram, nolueram, malueram; voluissem, noluissem, maluissem; *Fut. Perf.* voluero, noluoero, maluero. The remaining forms are wanting.

REM. 2. In the ancient Latin some forms of these verbs are

found less contracted, as : *mavolo, mavelim, mavelle, nevelle*, etc., and sometimes more contracted, as : *nevolt, noltis* (for *non vult, non vultis*). Instead of *si vis* and *si vultis*, we find *sis* and *sultis*.

Read Exercise XLVII.

§ 73. 5) *Eo, ivi, itum, ire, to go.*

Tenses.	Indicative.	Subjunctive.	
Pres.	<i>ĕo, is, it, i-mus, Itis, ĕunt</i>	<i>ĕam, ĕas, ĕat, ĕāmus, ĕātis, ĕant</i>	
Impf.	<i>i-bam, i-bas, i-bat, etc.</i>	<i>i-rem, i-res, i-ret, etc.</i>	
Futur.	<i>i-bo, i-bis, i-bit, etc. i-bunt</i>	<i>i-tūrus, a, um sim, etc.</i>	
Perf.	<i>i-vi, i-visti, i-vit, etc.</i>	<i>i-vĕrim, i-vĕris, i-vĕrit, etc.</i>	
Plupf.	<i>i-vĕram, i-vĕras, i-vĕrat, etc.</i>	<i>i-vissem, i-visses, i-visset, etc.</i>	
F. Perf.	<i>i-vĕro, i-vĕris, i-vĕrit, etc.</i>		
<i>Imperative.</i>		<i>Supine.</i>	<i>Participle.</i>
S. 2. <i>i, i-to</i> , 3. <i>i-to</i>		<i>ĭ-tum,</i>	Pres. <i>ĭ-ens,</i>
P. 2. <i>ite, i-tōte,</i>		<i>ĭ-tu.</i>	Gen. <i>euntis,</i>
3. <i>eunto.</i>			Fut. <i>i-turus, a, um.</i>
			Gerund. <i>eundo, etc.</i>

REM. 1. In the same manner the compounds are declined, as : *exĕo, I go out, go forth*, *abĕo, I go away*, *redĕo, I return*. So also : *ven-ĕo, ven-iĭ*, (see Rem. 2), *ven-ĭtum, ven-ire, to be sold* (Imper. Part. Pres. and Ger. wanting). To *veneo, vendo* (= *venumdo*) serves as Act. ; so also does *facio* to *fo*, and *verbĕro* (I strike), to *vāpulo* (I am struck). The Pass. of *vendo*, with the exception of *vendĭtus* and *vendendus*, and the forms derived from them, is not used. *Ambire, to go around something, surround*, forms an exception, it being entirely regular according to the fourth Conj., as : Pres. *ambio, ambĭam*, Impf. *ambiĕbam, ambirem*, Part. *ambiens*, G. *ambientis*, Perf. *ambĭvi*, Sup. *ambĭtum*, Part. *ambĭtus* (but the substantive is : *ambĭtus, ūs, a going around*), Ger. *ambiendum*.

REM. 2. The compounds generally drop the *v* in the endings of the Perf. and the parts derived from it, and *vi* if an *s* follows it, as : *abii, abisti, abiit, abierim, abisse, abissem, etc., venii, venieram, veniero*.

REM. 3. In the *simple verb* of this class, only the third Pers. Sing. is used of the *passive* forms, as : *itur, one goes, ibātur, one went, itum est, one has gone* ; the Infin. Fut. Pass. of all verbs is formed by the Infin. *iri* joined to their Supines, as : *amatum iri*. But the *compounds* with a *transitive meaning*, form a complete

Pass. like other transitive verbs, as : praeterire, *to pass by before, pass over*, praetereor, *I am passed by*, praeteriris,—itur,—imīni,—euntur; praeteribar, etc.; ambior (*ambiuntur, ambiēbar*) is regular also in the Pass. according to the fourth Conjugation.

Read Exercise XLVIII.

§ 74. 6) *Quēo, quīvi, quītum, quīre*, to be able (can); and *nequēo, nequīvi, nequītum, nequīre*, not to be able (can not).

Both these verbs are inflected throughout like *ēo, ivi, ĭtum, ĭre*, to go. Many of their forms, however, occur but rarely and, indeed, in good prose, not at all. These forms are omitted in the following table.

Indicative.		Subjunctive.	
Pres.	quēo nequēo nequīs nequīt nequīmus nequītis quēunt nequēunt	quēam nequēam quēās nequēās quēāt nequēāt queāmus nequeāmus queātis nequeātis quēant nequēant	
Impf.			nequīrem
Perf.	quīvi nequīvi	quīvērim	nequīvērim
Plpf.	quīvēram nequīvēram	quīvissem	nequissem
F. Perf.	quīvēro nequīvēro	wanting.	
	<i>Infinitive.</i>		<i>Participle.</i>
Perf.	quīvisse nequīvisse		nequīens nequeuntis, etc.
Supine: quītum, quītu, (<i>of nequeo</i> it is wanting).		The remaining forms are wanting, or occur but rarely.	

REMARK. The passive forms: *quitur, queuntur, quitus sum, nequitum est*, are all antiquated except the first, which is occasionally found in good prose.

§ 75. 7) *Fio, factus sum, fīeri*, to become, to happen.

PRELIMINARY REMARK. This verb forms the Pass. of *facio*. (See § 64, 4.)

	<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Subjunctive.</i>	<i>Infinitive.</i>
Pr.	fī-o, fī-s, fī-t, fī-unt	fī-am, fī-as, fī-at fī-āmus, fī-ātis, fī-ant	Pres. fīēri; Pf. factus, a, um esse; Fut. factum iri, or futūrum esse, or fore.
Imp.	fi-ēbam, fi-ēbas, etc.	fī-ērem, fī-ēres, etc.	
Fut.	fī-am, fī-es, fī-et fi-ēmus, fi-ētis, fī-ent	<i>Participle.</i> Pres. wanting.	
Prf.	factus, a, um sum	Perf. factus, a, um	
Plpf.	factus, a, um eram	Fut. faciendus (a, um), <i>what should or must be done.</i>	
Fut.	factus, a, um ero	futūrus (a, um), <i>what will come to pass.</i>	
Prf.		All the remaining forms are wanting or occur but rarely.	

REMARK. The compounds of *facio*, which are formed from *verbs*, retain *facio* in the Act. and *fio* in the Pass. (though all are not used in the Act. and Pass. form), as : calefācio, calefēci, calefactum, calefācere, *to make warm* (calēre), calefio, calefactus sum, calfiēri, *to become warm*; but the compounds with *prepositions* have in the Act.—ficio,—fēci,—fectum,—ficere, and in the Pass.—ficior,—fectus sum,—fici, as : perficio, perfēci, perfectum, perficere, *to accomplish*, perficior, perfectus sum, perfici. Only a few compounds with prepositions form the Pass. with *fio* and these only in particular forms, as : confit (for conficitur), *it is accomplished*, confieri; defit, *it is wanting*, defiet, etc.

Read Exercise XLIX.

§ 76. *Defective Verbs, i. e. verbs of which only a few forms are used.*

1) *Aio*, I say, affirm, say yes, assent.

Pres. Ind. āio, āis, āit and āiunt. *Subj.* āias, āiat and aiunt.

Impf. Ind. āiēbam, bas, bat; bamus, batis, bant. (*Subj.* wholly wanting.)

Part. āiens, āientis (as adjective, *affirming, affirmative*).

REM. 1. Instead of *aisne* (meanest thou?), *ain'* is often used;—we find *ne*, also, contracted thus with some other verbal forms, as : *nostin'*, *vidin'*.—The form *ait* is used also as Perf.—Antiquated forms : *ai* (*Imper.*), *aibant* for aiēbant.

2) *Inquam*, I say.

Pres. inquam, inquis, inquit; inquimus, inquiunt. *Subj.* inquat.

Impf. inquiēbat or inquitat, inquiēbant. (*Subj.* wanting).

Fut. inquires and inquiet. *Perf.* inquisti and inquit. *Imper.* inque, inquito.

REM. 2. Inquam is also used in the sense of the *Perf.* in narrating.—Also *fari* (to speak), and its compounds, are found in but very few forms, and mostly in the poets, as : *fatur, fari* (*Infin.*), *fare* (*Imper.*), *fabor, fatus sum*, etc., *fatu, fanti* (*Pres. Part. Dat.*), *fatus, fandus*, often *fando* (*Ger.*)

- 3) { *Memīni, meminisse* (c. gen. or acc.), to remember.
Perf. { *Odi, ōdisse*, to hate.
Perf. { *Coepi, coepisse*, to have begun.
Perf. { *Nōvi, nōvisse* (*nosse*), to be acquainted with, know.

All four perfects and the forms derived from them are entirely regular.

<i>Perf. Ind.</i>	memīni, <i>I re-</i> ōdi, <i>I hate</i> <i>member</i>	coepi, <i>I have</i> nōvi, <i>I know</i> <i>begun</i>	
Subj.	meminērim, <i>I odērim</i>	coepērim	novērim (nō- rim)
<i>Plpf Ind.</i>	meminēram, <i>I odēram, I ha-</i> <i>remembered</i> <i>ted</i>	coepēram, <i>I</i> novēram (nō- <i>had begun</i> <i>ram</i>), <i>I knew</i>	
Subj.	meminissem odissem	coepissem	novissem (nos- sem)
<i>Fut. Ind.</i>	meminēro, <i>I odēro, I</i> will <i>shall remem-</i> <i>hate</i> <i>will</i> <i>ber</i>	coepēro, <i>I shall</i> novēro (nōro), <i>have begun</i> <i>I shall know</i>	
<i>Imperat.</i>	memento, <i>re-</i> wanting. <i>member thou</i>	wanting.	wanting.
	mementōte, <i>re-</i> <i>member ye</i>		
<i>Inf. Perf.</i>	meminisse	odisse	coepisse
Fut.	wanting.	osurus esse	novisse (<i>nosse</i>) wanting
<i>Particip.</i>	wanting.	osus, exōsus, perōsus, <i>one</i> <i>who hates, or</i> <i>has hated</i> <i>very much.</i>	coepturus, <i>one</i> <i>who will begin</i> coeptus, <i>begun.</i> wanting.

REM. 3. *Novi* is nothing else than the *Perf.* of *nosco* (*I am acquainted with*). Instead of *coepi, coeperam* etc., *coeptus sum, coeptus eram* etc., must be used, when the accompanying *Inf.* is in the *Pass.*, as : *urbs aedificari coepta est, the city has begun to be built.* The same is the case with *desino*.

REM. 4. Besides the defective verbs already introduced, there are still a few others, as : *quaeso, I beseech, quaesāmus, we beseech ;*

salve, ave or *have* (hail, farewell), vale, *farewell* (from valère), salvēto, avēto, valēto, Plur. salvēte, avēte, valēte; Infin. salvēre, avēre, valēre; Fut. salvēbis, valēbis, used instead of *salve, vale*; cedo, *give, tell*, with an obsolete Plur. *cette*.

Read Exercise L.

§ 77. *Impersonal Verbs* (§ 46. REM.)*

1) Verbs which indicate certain appearances of Nature.

fulgūrat, <i>it lightens</i> , (<i>it flashes</i>).	gēlat, <i>it freezes</i> .	ningit, <i>it snows</i> .
fulmīnat, <i>it lightens</i> , <i>thunders</i> .	illucescit, <i>it be-</i> <i>comes light, day</i> .	pluit, <i>it rains</i> .
	grandīnat, <i>it hails</i> .	vesperascit, <i>it be-</i> <i>comes evening</i> .

REM. 1. These verbs are sometimes used personally. They are regularly inflected through all the modes and tenses, as :

tōnat tōnet	tōnuīt tōnuērit	tonāre
tōnābat tōnāret	tōnuērat tōnuisset	tōnuisse.

2) Verbs which express an *ethical* relation.

dēcet, uit (c. acc.), <i>it</i> <i>is becoming</i> .	licet, <i>it is allowed</i> .	pertaesum est, <i>it dis-</i> <i>gusts</i> .
dedēcet, uit (c. acc.), <i>it is not becoming</i> .	(one's) <i>pity</i> .	misēret, uit, <i>it excites</i>
lībet or lūbet, uit, <i>it</i> <i>pleases</i> .	miserētur, ritum est, <i>it excites pity</i> . [<i>ful.</i>]	piget, uit, <i>it irks</i> .
	oportet, uit, <i>it is need-</i>	poenītet, uit, <i>it repents</i> .
	taedet, uit, <i>it disgusts</i> .	pudet, uit, <i>it shames</i> .

3) There are also many personal verbs used as impersonal in a particular meaning, as :

accēdit, esse (<i>ut</i> or quod), <i>it is added</i> (<i>that</i>). [<i>favorably</i>].	stītit, <i>it is known</i> .	escapes (<i>me</i>).
accīdit, <i>it happens</i> (un-	contingit, īgit, <i>it falls</i> to one's lot (favor-	fūgit, fūgit (<i>me</i>), <i>it</i> <i>escapes (me)</i> , <i>it is</i> <i>unknown</i> .
appāret, uit, <i>it is evi-</i> <i>dent</i> .	convēnit, ēnit, <i>it is fit</i> .	interest, fuit, <i>it con-</i> <i>cerns</i> .
attīnet, uit, <i>it pertains</i> <i>to</i> .	evēnit, ēnit, <i>it hap-</i> <i>pens</i> .	jūvat, jūvit, <i>it delights</i> .
condūcit, xit, <i>it is ser-</i> <i>viceable</i> .	expēdit, <i>it is useful</i> .	līquet, quit, <i>it is clear</i> .
	fallit, fefellit (<i>me</i>), <i>it</i>	patet, uit, <i>it is obvious</i> .
		plācet, uit, <i>it pleases</i> .

* This and the following sections on the formation of words may be omitted by the youthful pupil, the first time going over.

praestat, itit, *it is bet-* réfert, rétulit, *it con-* sufficit, écit, *it is suf-*
ter. [escapes (me). cerns. ficient.
 praetērit, iit (me), *it restat, it remains. superest, it remains.*

REM. 2. These impersonals, also, can be inflected in all the modes and tenses.

4) Finally there belong here the third Pers. Sing. Pass. of all verbs, especially of intransitive verbs, through all the modes and tenses, as :

Aratur, *they plough*, aretur, *they may plough* ; arabatur, *they ploughed*, araretur, *they might plough* ; aratum est, *they have ploughed*, aratum sit, *they may have ploughed* ; aratum erat, *they had ploughed*, aratum esset, *they might have ploughed*, aratum erit, *they will have ploughed* ; Inf. in dependent discourse : arari, (that) *they plough*, aratum esse, (that) *they have ploughed* ; aratum iri, (that) *they will plough*.—Ridetur, *they laugh* ; ludebatur, *they played* ; dormietur, *they will sleep* ; itur, *they go* ; ventum est, *they have come*.

FIFTH COURSE.

FORMATION OF WORDS.

§ 78. Derivation.

I. VERBS.

PRELIMINARY REMARK. When the stem of the primitive word ends in a consonant which cannot be joined to the initial consonant of the ending by which the derived word is formed, *i* (rarely *ū*), is introduced as a connecting vowel (as *mon-i-tor*), and often the stem itself is changed.

1. *Frequentatives*, i. e. verbs which express a *repetition* of the action, are formed from other verbs by adding *īto* to the stem of the Pres. (occasionally the Supine), as : ago, *I drive*, ag-īto, *I drive hither and thither*, clam-o, *I cry*, clam-īto, *I cry continually*, vent-īto (vent-um).

2. *Intensives*, i. e. verbs which express a *permanence* or *con-*

tinuance of an action, are formed from other verbs by adding *o* to the stem of the Sup., and end in *to* or *so*, as : *canto, I sing continuously* (from *cant-um*, Sup. of *cano*), *verso, I keep turning* (from *vers-um*, Sup. of *verto*). These and the preceding follow the first Conj.

3. *Desideratives*, i. e. verbs which express a *desire* or *striving* after the thing indicated by their primitives, are formed from other verbs by adding *urio* to the stem of the Sup., as : *es-urio, I desire to eat* (from *edo, edi, esum*), *coenat-urio, I long for supper* (from *coeno, avi, atum*). They follow the fourth Conj. but form neither the Perf. nor Sup.

4. *Inchoatives*, i. e. verbs which express a *becoming* or *beginning* of that which their primitives express, are formed by adding to the last consonant of the Pres. of their verbs, the ending *asco*, if the primitive is of the first Conj., *esco*, if of the second, and *isco* if of the third or fourth, as : *inveter-asco*, (from *inveterare*), *exhorr-esco, I shudder* (from *horreo*), *concup-isco, I desire* (from *cupio*) ; also from nouns and adjectives, as : *repuer-asco, I become a boy again* (from *puer*). They follow the third Conj.

5. *Diminutives*, i. e. verbs which express a *diminution* of the idea expressed by their primitives, add the ending, *illo*, to the stem of the Pres., as : (*canto*) *cant-illo, I chant*.

REMARK. Many verbs, also, are derived from *substantives* and *adjectives*, as : (*judex, icis*), *judicare*, (*finis*) *finire* ; (*levis*) *levare*, (*laetus*) *laetari*, etc.

II. SUBSTANTIVES.

1. Nouns in *tor* (fem. *trix*), are formed from the supines of verbs and designate *persons in active relations* (actors), as : *victor, victrix, a conqueror* (from *vinco, vici, victum*).

2. Those in *io*, are formed from the supines of verbs, and like English substantives in *ing*, express the action of the verbs from which they are formed as *taking place*, as : *laesio, an injuring* (from *laedo, laesi, laesum*), *emendatio, an emending* (from *emendo, avi, atum*).

3. Those in *o, ōnis*, are derived either from verbs or nouns,

and designate persons with an idea of contempt, as : *capīto* (from *caput*), *blockhead*.

4. Those in *us* (Gen. *us*) are derived from supines, and signify mostly *a completed action*, an *effect*, as : *morsus*, *a bite* (from *mordeo*, *momordi*, *morsum*).

5. Those in *ūlus*, *ūla*, *ūlum* ; *ōlus*, *ōla*, *ōlum* ; *ellus*, *ella*, *el-lum* ; *illus*, *illa*, *illum*, indicate an object as *small* (*diminutives*), as : *hortulus*, *a little garden*, *vocula*, *a slight voice* (from *vox*) ; *filio-lus*, *a little son*, *filiola*, *a little daughter*, *assellus*, *an ass colt*.

REM. 1. The gender of diminutives follows the gender of their primitives.

6. Those in *ētum*, signify *a place abounding in that* expressed by their primitives, as : *quercētum*, *an oak-grove*, *dumētum*, *a thorn-thicket* (from *dumus*, *a thorn bush*).

7. Those in *ia* (*itia*), G. *iae* ;—*tās*, G. *tātis* ; *tūs*, G. *tūtis* ; *tūdo*, G. *tudīnis* ; *ēdo* and *īdo*, G. *īnis*, express an *abstract quality*, as : *audacia* (from *audax*), *boldness*, *sapientia* (from *sapiens*), *wisdom* ; *laetitia* (from *laetus*), *joy*, *avaritia* (from *avārus*), *avarice* ;—*bonitas* (from *bonus*), *goodness*, *celeritas* (from *celer*), *swiftness* ;—*servītus* (from *servus*), *servitude* ;—*fortitudo* (from *fortis*), *bravery*, *magnitudo* (from *magnus*), *greatness* ;—*dulcēdo* (from *dulcis*), *sweetness*, *cupīdo* (from *cupīdus*), *desire*.

8. *Gentile Nouns*, i. e. names of *peoples* and *countries*. Names of countries are mostly formed from the names of peoples, with the ending *ia*, as : (Macedō, ō-nis) *Macedōnia* ; (Thrax, ac-is) *Thracia*, etc. On the contrary, names of peoples having the adjective-endings : *īus*, *ānus*, *īnus*, *ēnus*, *ensis* (*iēnsis*), *ās* (G. *ātis*), *īcus*, *īūcus*, *āicus* are formed either from names of countries or cities, as : (Cyprus) *Cyprius* ; (Roma) *Romānus* ; (Venusia) *Venusinus* ; (Pergāmus) *Pergamēnus* ; (Athenae) *Atheniensis* ; (Arpinum) *Arpīnas* ; (Colchis) *Colchicus* ; (Aegyptus) *Aegyptiūcus* ; (Thebae) *Thebāicus*.

9. *Patronymics*, i. e. personal appellations derived from one's *descent*. These have the endings : *īdes*, G. *īdae*, Fem. *is* (from primitives in *us* and *or*) ; *īdes*, F. *ēis* (from primitives in *eus*) ;

ādes or *īādes*, F. *as* (*ias*) (from primitives in *as* or *es* of the first Dec. or in *ius*), as : (Priāmus) *Priamīdes* ; (Agēnor) *Agēnorīdes* ; (Tantālus) F. *Tantālis* ;—(Peleus) *Pelīdes* ; (The-seus) F. *Thesēis* ;—(Aenēas) *Aenēādes* ; (Thestius) *Thestiādes*, F. *Thestias*.

REM. 2. There are several other classes of derived nouns, formed with terminations more or less regular and having something of a definite meaning, but the above seem sufficient for an elementary treatise.

III. ADJECTIVES.

1. Those in *ēus*, *a*, *um*, are adjectives of *material*, as : *ferreus*, *iron*, *ligneus*, *wooden*, *marmoreus*, *of marble*.

2. Those in *īnus*, *a*, *um*, and *nēus*, *a*, *um*, are principally derived from the *names of plants and minerals*, as : *fagīnus*, *beechen*, *of beech*, *quernēus*, *of oak*, *crystallīnus*, *of crystal* ; *eburnēus*, *of ivory*.

3. Those in *nus*, *a*, *um*, *ernus*, *a*, *um*, and *īnus*, *a*, *um*, relate to designations of *time and place*, as : *vernus*, *belonging to spring* ; *externus*, *external* ; *hodiernus*, *of to-day* ; *aeternus*, *eternal* ; *diutīnus*, *of long duration*.

4. Those in *īnus*, *a*, *um*, relate mostly, to the *different kinds of animals*, as ; *leporīnus* (*lepus*, *leporis*, *the hare*), *of the hare*, *caro anserīna*, *goose-meat*.

5. Those in *īlis* and *bilis*, express a *capability or fitness*, as : *ūtilis*, *useful*, *docilis*, *teachable* ; *amābilis*, *amiable*.

6. Those in *bundus*, express the idea of a *present participle*, but with more *intensity*, as : *populabundus*, *ravaging* (stronger than *populans*), *mirabundus*, *full of wonder* ; those in *cundus* express a *permanent quality or habit*, as : *facundus*, *fluent*, *ira-cundus*, *passionate*, *verecundus*, *respectful*.

7. Those in *ōsus*, *tus*, *olentus* or *ūlentus*, *īdus*, express *ful-ness*, *abundance* or *excess*, as : *arenōsus*, *sandy* (abounding in sand), *aurītus*, *long-eared*, *aurātus*, *gilt* (furnished with gold), *onestus*, *loaded down*, *vetustus*, *ancient*, *violentus*, *impetuous*, *turbulentus*, *full of commotion*, *herbīdus*, *covered with grass*.

REMARK. For the derivation of adverbs see § 26.

§ 79. *Composition.*

1. The Latin language compared with the Greek, is barren in compound words. Instead of forming new words by composition, it generally resorts either to derivation by adding new endings, as: *sicarius* (from *sica*), *pedes* (from *pes*), etc., or to the use of two separate words, one of which is a substantive and the other either an adjective or a noun in the Gen., as: *bellum civile*, *civil war*, *patriae amor*, *love of country*.

2. The word which *limits* or *defines* the other (i. e. the adjective, Gen., or other qualifying word), generally forms the first part of the compound, as: *signifer*, ‘*standard-bearer*,’ (bearer of what? *of the standard*).

3. In forming words by composition, one or both of the component words is generally changed. Commonly, the first loses its termination, or stands in the Gen., and the second not unfrequently changes its vowel, or if it begins with a consonant, takes a vowel (commonly *i*) before it as a union letter between the two words, as: *agri-cola*, *ex-pers*, *art-i-fex*.

4. It is very rare that both words remain unchanged, as: *benevolus*. When two nouns are thus compounded with each other in the Nom. without change, they are both declined, as: *respublica*, *jusjurandum*, G. *reipublicae*, *jurisjurandi*. But these words are often written separately, and are not unfrequently separated by small words, as: *que, vero, autem, igitur*, etc.

REM. 1. The final consonant of the prepositions in composition is generally changed before the initial consonant of the word with which they are compounded, viz., *d* into *c* before *qu* (*acquirō*); *m* into *l*, *n*, *r*, respectively, before each of these consonants (*collōquor*, *conniveo*, *corrodo*); *n* into *m* before *b*, *p*, *m* (*impello*); *x* into *f* before *f* (*effero*); *b* in *ob* and *sub* into *c*, *f*, *p*, respectively, before these letters, and *b* in *sub* into *g*, *m*, *r*, before each of these (*occino*, *suffero*, *surrīpio*); *cum* becomes *com* or *con* before a consonant, and *co* before a vowel or *h*.

REM. 2. In the composition of prepositions with verbs there is often a change of vowel in the verb, viz.: 1) *a* into *e*, as: *coerceo* (from *cum* and *arceo*); 2) *a* into *i*, as: *abīgo* (from *ab* and *ago*); 3) *ae* into *ī*, as: *occīdo* (from *ob* and *caedo*); 4) *a* into *u*, as: *con-*

cutio (from *cum* and *quatio*); 5) *e* into *i*, as: *redimo* (from *re—red*—and *emo*); 6) *au* into *e, o, u*, as, *obedio, explōdo, concludo*.

REM. 3. Nearly all the prepositions (often with slight changes in form), are used in composition. Their force in composition will generally be best learned from observation and from considering the ideas (both literal and metaphorical), involved in their proper meaning when standing alone. It will thus be seen that even their most remote meanings in composition, are directly derivable from their fundamental meaning. Thus the meaning of *per* (very), in *perdifficilis*, and other adjectives, arises directly from the general meaning *through, throughout, wholly*; so the meaning of *prae* (very), in *praedives*, etc., comes directly from the meaning *before, preëminent*; so again the meaning of *sub* (slightly), in *subdifficilis, subvideo*, is but a modification of the general meaning *under*, and so in other cases.

REM. 4. Besides the proper prepositions, there are certain prefixes, used only in composition, called *inseparable prepositions*, as: *amb* (*am, an*), 'around,' 'on both sides,' *dis* (*dif, di*), 'asunder,' 'apart,' *rē* (*red* before a vowel), 'again,' 'back,' *se*, 'aside,' 'apart,' *sus*, 'up,' 'upwards,' *in* ('un,' privative), *ne* (negative), as: *amb-ire, am-plector, an-ceps*; *dis-cedo, dif-fido, di-labor*; *re-vertor, red-ire*; *se-pono*; *sus-cipio*; *ig(in)-nōtus* (unknown), *ne-scio*.

EXERCISES.

EXERCISE I.

Words to be learned and Examples for translation.*

Aro 1. <i>I plough.</i>	orno 1. <i>I adorn.</i>	vexo 1. <i>I annoy.</i>
delecto 1. <i>I delight.</i>	pugno 1. <i>I fight.</i>	vigilo 1. <i>I watch.</i>
edūco 1. <i>I bring up.</i>	salto 1. <i>I dance.</i>	vitupĕro 1. <i>I censure.</i>
laudo 1. <i>I praise.</i>	tento 1. <i>I try.</i>	vulnĕro 1. <i>I wound.</i>

Laudo. Vitupĕras. Saltat. Vigilāmus. Pugnātis. Arant.
 Lauda. Pugnāte. Tentat saltāre. Delector. Vulnerāris.
 Vexātur. Laudāmur. Vituperamīni. Ornantur. Laudāris.
 Educamīni. Vituperāmur. Edūcor. Edūcantur. Delectāmur.
 Ornāris. Saltātis. Vulnerantur. Laudamīni. Vigila. Saltāte.

I watch. Thou fightest. He ploughs. We praise. You censure. They dance. Fight thou. Praise ye. They try to fight. I am praised. Thou art censured. He is adorned. We are delighted. You are wounded. They are annoyed. They are praised. Thou art brought up. They are censured. We are brought up. You praise. We are adorned. He is wounded. They praise.

EXERCISE II.

Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Debĕo 2. <i>I must, ought.</i>	gaudĕo 2. <i>I rejoice.</i>	ridĕo 2. <i>I laugh.</i>
docĕo 2. <i>I teach, instruct.</i>	manĕo 2. <i>I remain.</i>	tacĕo 2. <i>I am silent.</i>
exercĕo 2. <i>I exercise.</i>	mordĕo 2. <i>I bite.</i>	terrĕo 2. <i>I frighten.</i>
flĕo 2. <i>I weep.</i>	movĕo 2. <i>I move.</i>	et, and.
florĕo 2. <i>I bloom.</i>	parĕo 2. <i>I obey.</i>	si, if.

Docĕo. Taces. Ridet. Gaudĕmus. Exercĕtis. Flent.

* These lists of words should be so committed by the pupil, that he can give the English for each Latin word, and the Latin for each English word, also, its gender, etc., as asked him by the teacher.

Tace. Manête. Tacêre debes. Terrêor. Exercêris. Movê-
tur. Docêmur. Mordemîni. Docentur. Doces. Tacêmus.
Docêris. Parêre debent. Florent. Exercêmur. Manêtis.
Educâris et docêris. Moventur. Tacent. Parête. Si parêtis,
laudamîni. Si tacêmus, laudâmur. Saltâmus et gaudêmus. Ten-
tâte docêre. Mordentur et vulnerantur.

I rejoice. Thou exercisest. He weeps. We teach. You
are silent. They laugh. Remain thou. Be ye silent. You
must remain. I am bitten. Thou art frightened. He is in-
structed. You teach. I am silent. We are moved. We must
be silent. I exercise myself (=am exercised). Rejoice ye.
You are brought up and instructed. I am instructed. I laugh.
Obey thou. If thou obeyest, thou art praised. You dance and
rejoice. We try to teach. We are bitten and wounded. If
you weep, you are censured.

EXERCISE III.

Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Bibo 3. <i>I drink.</i>	edo 3. <i>I eat.</i>	pungo 3. <i>I prick, sting.</i>
cano 3. <i>I sing.</i>	fallo 3. <i>I deceive.</i>	scribo 3. <i>I write.</i>
cêdo 3. <i>I give away.</i>	laedo 3. <i>I hurt.</i>	vinco 3. <i>I conquer,</i>
defendo 3. <i>I defend.</i>	lêgo 3. <i>I read.</i>	<i>vanquish.</i>
diligô 3. <i>I esteem,</i>	ludo 3. <i>I play.</i>	bene, <i>adv., well.</i>
<i>love.</i>	pingo 3. <i>I paint.</i>	male, <i>adv., ill, badly.</i>

Scribo. Legis. Laedit. Canîmus. Editis. Bibunt. Pin-
ge. Scribite. Scribêre debes. Fallor. Vincêris. Defendi-
tur. Diligîmur. Pungimîni. Laeduntur. Ede et bibe. Lude.
Legîte. Canêre tentat. Pingis. Defendîmur. Diligêris. Vin-
cimîni. Si vincitis, laudamini. Bene scribunt. Laedêris. Edunt.
Si cedis, vincêris. Si male scribis, vituperâris. Si bene pingitis,
laudamîni.

I sing. Thou eatest. He drinks. We write. You read.
They defend. Write thou. Paint ye. You must read. I am
esteemed. Thou art stung. He is hurt. We are deceived.
We are vanquished. You defend. They esteem. Eat ye and
drink. He is conquered. Play ye. They try to read. You
paint. They are defended. You are esteemed. If thou singest
well, thou art praised. He writes well. You are hurt. If you
write well, you are praised. If you give way, you are conquered.
If you write badly, you are censured.

EXERCISE IV.

Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Custōdio 4. <i>I guard.</i>	garrĭo 4. <i>I chatter.</i>	veniō 4. <i>I come.</i>
dormĭo 4. <i>I sleep.</i>	nutriō 4. <i>I nourish.</i>	vestiō 4. <i>I clothe.</i>
erūdĭo 4. <i>I instruct.</i>	puñĭo 4. <i>I punish.</i>	vincĭo 4. <i>I bind, chain.</i>
ferĭo 4. <i>I beat, strike.</i>	reperiō 4. <i>I find.</i>	valde adv. <i>greatly.</i>
fulciō 4. <i>I support.</i>	salĭo 4. <i>I leap.</i>	

Erudĭo. Garris. Dormit. Ferimus. Punĭtis. Salĭunt. Veni. Salite. Tento reperire. Vincĭor. Custodiris. Feritur. Vestimur. Nutrimĭni. Fulciuntur. Audi. Dormĭte. Bene erudimur. Si bene erūdis, laudāris; si male erūdis, vituperāris. Si vincēris, vincĭris. Vestiuntur. Si male scribĭmus, punimur. Bene custodimĭni. Dormĭmus. Salitis. Bene erudiuntur. Audite. Vincĭmus. Vincĭmus. Valde ferimur. Valde vituperamĭni et punimĭni.

I strike. Thou punishest. He leaps. We instruct. You chatter. They sleep. Leap thou. Come ye. They try to instruct. I clothe myself (= am clothed). Thou art nourished. He supports himself (= is supported). We are bound. You are guarded. They are beaten. Hear ye. You are well instructed. He leaps. He is well instructed. If you are vanquished, you are bound. We are well guarded. He clothes himself (= is clothed). They are badly instructed.

I praise, I teach, I give way, I guard. Thou praisest, thou teachest, thou givest way, thou guardest. He praises, he teaches, he gives way, he guards. We censure, we exercise, we read, we sleep. You censure, you exercise, you read, you sleep. They censure, they exercise, they read, they sleep. Adorn thou, obey thou, write thou, punish thou. Adorn ye, obey ye, write ye, punish ye. We must adorn, we must obey, we must write, we must punish. I am annoyed, I am bitten, I am pricked, I am bound. Thou art annoyed, thou art bitten, thou art pricked, thou art bound. He is annoyed, he is bitten, he is pricked, he is bound. We are well brought up, we are greatly frightened, we are greatly esteemed, we are well instructed. You are well brought up, you are greatly frightened, you are greatly esteemed, you are well instructed. They are well brought up, they are greatly frightened, they are greatly esteemed, they are well instructed.

EXERCISE V.

Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Agricōla, husband- aqua, water. [man.	querēla, complaint, a plaintive cry.	gigno 3. I beget, pro- duce. [fully.
ciconia, a stork.	rana, a frog.	pulchre, adv. beauti- qually, how!
copia, abundance, multitude.	terra, the earth.	a, ab (with the abl.), by, (a never stands before a vowel or h).
herba, an herb.	coaxo 1. I croak.	
planta, a plant.	devoro 1. I devour.	
procella, a storm.	turbo 1. I disturb.	
	noceo 2. I injure.	

RULE OF SYNTAX. Every sentence, e. g. *the plant blooms, the meadow is green*, has two parts:

a) The subject, i. e. the person or thing of which something is asserted (the *plant*; the *meadow*);

b) The predicate, i. e. that which is asserted of the subject (*blooms*; *is green*).

The subject is commonly a substantive and stands in the nominative case; the predicate is commonly a verb (e. g. *blooms*), or an adjective in connection with the verb *to be* (e. g. *is green*).

Rana coaxat. Agricōla delectatur querēla ranae. Ciconia nocet ranae. Ciconia devorat ranam. O rana, coaxa! Aqua turbatur a ranā. Plantae florent. Terra vestitur copiā plantarum. Procellae nocent plantis. Terra gignit plantas. O plantae, quam pulchre ornātis terram! Terra vestitur plantis.

The plant blooms. The herb of the plant blooms. The storm injures the plant. I love the plant. O plant, how beautifully thou bloomest! I am delighted with (abl.) the plant. The frogs croak. The plaintive cry of the frogs delights the husbandmen. The storks injure the frogs. The storks devour the frogs. O frogs, croak ye! The water is disturbed by the frogs.

EXERCISE VI.

1. *Words to be learned and Examples for translation.*

Equus, i, m. horse.	molestus, a, um, trou- blesome.	committo 3. I commit to.
frumentum, i, n. grain.	varius, a, um, various.	curro 3. I run.
granum, i, n. a. corn.	vireo 2. I flourish.	hinnio 4. I neigh.
juba, ae, f. mane.	colo 3. I attend to, cultivate, honor, re- vere.	celeriter, adv. swiftly. in (with the abl.), in, upon.
musca, ae, f. fly.		
fecundus, a, um, pro- ductive.		

RULE OF SYNTAX. A noun in the Gen., Dat., or Acc., which is connected with the predicate and limits or defines it more exactly, is called the *object*; e. g. in the sentence: *the man guides the horse*, "man" is the *subject* and "horse" the *object* which limits "guides." When the noun is in the Acc. it is called the *suffering object* (receiving the direct action).

Equus hinnit. Juba equi est pulchra. Muscae sunt molestae equo. Vir regit equum. Eque, celeriter curre. Equo pulchro delector. Agri sunt fecundi. Herbae agrorum sunt variae. Agricola committit agris grana frumenti. Agricola colit agros. Agri, quam pulchre virētis! In agris multae herbae florent.

* The field is productive. The herbs of the field are various. The husbandman commits the corns of grain to the field. The husbandman cultivates the field. O field, how beautifully thou flourishest! Various herbs bloom in the field. The horses neigh. The mane of the horse is beautiful. Flies are troublesome to horses. Men govern horses. O horses, run swiftly. We are delighted with (abl.) beautiful horses.

2. Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Deus, see § 17. Rem. 4.	socer, ěri, m.	father-	praesidium, i, n.	pro-
dea, see § 16. Rem. 4.	in-law.		tection, aid.	
filii, see § 17. Rem. 3.	gener, ěri, m.	son-in-	templum, i, n.	tem-
filia, see § 16. Rem. 4.	law.		ple.	
levir, ěri, m.	brother-	mundus, i, m.	world.	benevolentia, ae, f.
in-law.				benevolence.

* With regard to the *arrangement* of the words in forming a Latin sentence, the teacher must be the principal guide. The rigid laws of arrangement in the English language, allowed of but little being done in the way of imitating the Latin arrangement in the English exercises. Something, however, has been attempted in this way, which, together with a desire to preserve a strictly literal and grammatical expression of the thoughts, will account for the apparently awkward construction of many of the sentences. — It may be suggested, also, that a close study of the position of the words in the Latin exercises, will very often guide the student in translating the English exercises. As to particular rules on this subject, it would not be proper, perhaps, to state more than the following, applicable where no emphasis rests upon any word in the sentence. In this case: 1) The predicate *follows* the subject, as in English, 2) the adjective (except the demonstrative pronoun), or noun in the Genitive, comes *after* its noun, 3) the verb *follows* the case or cases which it governs, and of two cases the Acc. comes last, 4) the Infin. and the adverb *precede* the word which they limit, 5) the negative *non* (also *ne*) stands *before* the word it negatives, 6) a word in apposition with another, *follows* it. But when one or more of these words thus related are emphatic, the order in each case is reversed. For fuller directions on this subject, see Krebs' Guide for writing Latin, §§ 468—514.

carus, a, um, <i>dear.</i>	propitius, a, um, <i>pro-</i>	miser, ěra, ěrum,
imprōbus, a, um,	<i>pitious, favorable.</i>	wretched.
<i>wicked.</i>	meus, a, um, see § 17.	praebĕo 2. <i>I afford.</i>
magnus, a, um, <i>great.</i>	Rem. 3.	exstrūo 3. <i>I build.</i>

Dii mundum regunt. Deos propitiōs colite. Praebe, o deus bone, misĕris praesidium. Dii imprōbos puniunt. Diis et deabus templa exstruuntur. Benevolentia deorum est magna. Filius leviri bene legit. Socĕro est hortus pulcher. Boni viri bonis viris cari sunt. Filia genĕri pulchre pingit.

The gods are propitious to men. Good men are dear to the gods. The wicked are punished by (ab) the gods. The world is governed by (ab) the gods. Afford, O good gods, protection to the wretched. Honor ye the temples of the gods. The gods love the good. O god, punish the wicked. Sons-in-law are dear to fathers-in-law. God is propitious to good sons and good daughters. Write, my son, paint, my daughter. I love the sons of [my] brother-in-law.

EXERCISE VII.

Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Dolor, ōris, <i>m. pain,</i>	tormentum, i, <i>n. tor-</i>	noster, tra, trum, <i>our.</i>
<i>suffering.</i>	<i>ture.</i>	vester, tra, trum,
orātor, ōris, <i>m. orator.</i>	acerbus, a, um, <i>pun-</i>	<i>your.</i>
animus, i, <i>m. soul,</i>	<i>gent.</i>	praedico 1. <i>I extol.</i>
<i>mind, courage.</i>	disertus, a, um, <i>elo-</i>	tolĕro 1. <i>I endure.</i>
eloquentia, ae, <i>f. elo-</i>	<i>quent.</i>	succumbo 3. <i>I sink</i>
<i>quence.</i>	ignāvus, a, um, <i>indo-</i>	<i>under.</i>
facundia, ae, <i>f. flu-</i>	<i>lent, cowardly.</i>	graviter, <i>adv. heavily,</i>
<i>ency of speech.</i>	praeclārus, a, um,	<i>violently.</i>
numĕrus, i, <i>m. num-</i>	<i>noble.</i>	patienter, <i>patiently.</i>
<i>ber, quantity.</i>	tuus, a, um, <i>thy,</i>	ob, <i>on account of.</i>
popŭlus, i, <i>m. people.</i>	<i>thine.</i>	

Orātor est disertus. Eloquentia oratōris movet animos nostros. Oratori paret popŭlus. Oratorem praedicāmus ob facundiam. O orator, quam praeclara est tua eloquentia! Ab oratore populus regitur. Dolōres sunt acerbi. Numĕrus dolorum est magnus. Doloribus succumbitis. Vir patienter tolĕrat dolores. O dolores, quam graviter pungitis! Doloribus vincuntur ignāvi viri.

The pain is pungent. Bear ye the tortures of the pain. Thou

sinkest under the suffering. The man endures the pain patiently. O pain, how violently thou stingest. A cowardly man is vanquished by (abl.) pain. Orators are eloquent. The eloquence of the orator moves our minds. The people obey the orators. Orators are extolled on account of their fluency of speech. O orators, how noble is your eloquence! The world is governed by (ab) the orators.

EXERCISE VIII.

Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Alăcer, cris, cre, <i>live-ly, spirited.</i>	littĕrae, arum, <i>f. literature.</i>	virtus, ūtis, <i>f. virtue.</i>
fortis, e, <i>brave.</i>	discipŭlus, i, <i>m. scholar.</i>	vox, ōcis, <i>f. voice.</i>
gravis, e, <i>severe, serious.</i>	fundamentum, i, <i>n. foundation.</i>	consto 1. <i>I consist in, of.</i>
mortălis, e, <i>mortal.</i>	avis, is, <i>f. bird.</i>	habeo 2. <i>I have.</i>
immortălis, e, <i>immortal.</i>	homo, inis, <i>m. man.</i>	incumbo 3. (with <i>in</i> and the acc.) <i>I apply myself to.</i>
omnis, e, <i>each, the whole; plur. all.</i>	hostis, is, <i>m. enemy.</i>	non, <i>adv. not.</i>
industriă, ae, <i>f. industry.</i>	mos, ōris, <i>m. custom.</i>	ne (with the Imper.), <i>not.</i>
	piĕtas, âtis, <i>f. piety.</i>	

Miles forti animo pugnare debet. Suavi avium voce delectamur. Discipŭli laus constat bonis moribus et acri industriă. Piĕtas est fundamentum omnium virtutum. Viri fortes non vincuntur doloribus gravibus. Ne cedite hostibus audacibus. Puer alăcri animo in littĕras incumbĕre debet. Homĭnes corpŏra mortalia habent, animos immortales.

EXERCISE IX.

1. *Words to be learned and Examples for translation.*

Luctus, ūs, <i>m. grief.</i>	and abl. <i>vi</i>), <i>f. power, force, might.</i>	gratus, a, um, <i>agreeable, grateful.</i>
lusus, ūs, <i>m. sport.</i>	voluptas, âtis, <i>f. pleasure.</i>	praeditus, a, um, (with abl.), <i>endowed with.</i>
sensus, ūs, <i>m. sense, feeling.</i>	genus, ěris, <i>n. gender, kind.</i>	quantus, a, um, <i>how great.</i>
bestĭa, ae, <i>f. animal.</i>	amărus, a, um, <i>bitter.</i>	puerilis, e, <i>childish.</i>
vis (only acc. <i>vim</i>)		

sapiens, tis, *wise*; frango 3. *I break,* *lingly, with de-*
 subst. *a wise man.* break down. light.
 evito 1. *I avoid.* succumbo 3. *I sink* suaviter, *adv. pleas-*
 paro 1. *I provide.* under. antly.
 indulgeo 2. *I give my-* libenter, *adv. wil-* vehementer, *adv. vio-*
 self up to. lently.

Lusus puëris¹ gratus est. Genëra lusûs sunt variã. Puëri libenter indulgent lusui. Vir gravis evitat lusum puerilem. O lusus, quam suaviter anïmos puerõrum delectas! Puëri delectantur lusu.² Sensûs sunt acres. Vis sensuum est magna. Vir fortis non succumbit sensibus³ dolõris. Bestiæ habent sensûs acres. O sensûs, quantas voluptãtes hominibus parãtis! Animalia sunt prædita sensibus.⁴

The feeling of pain is bitter. The power of grief is great. The brave man does not sink under grief. The wise man endures grief patiently. O grief, how violently thou tormentest the minds of men! The wise man is not broken down by (abl.) grief. The sports of children are agreeable. There are various kinds of sport. The boys give themselves up to sports with delight. The serious man avoids childish sports. O sports, how pleasantly you delight the minds of boys! In (abl.) sports the boys are delighted.

2. Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Fremïtus, ùs, *m. noise.* validus, a, um, *strong.* permõveo 2. *I move.*
 genu, ùs or ù, *n. knee.* horribilis, e, *frightful.* antecëdo 3. *I pre-*
 tonïtru, ùs or ù, *n. terribilis, e, terrible.* cede.
 thunder. supplex, icis, *suppli-* extimesco 3. *I fear.*
 vigor, õris, *m. power.* ant; subst. *the sup-* flecto 3. *I bend.*
 fulmen, inis, *n. light-* pliant. procumbo 3. *I fall*
 ning. indico 1. *I indicate.* down.
 robur, õris, *n. strength.* resõno 1. *I resound.* in (with *acc.* and
 multus, a, um, *much,* vacillo 1. *I waver.* abl.), *in, upon.*
 many.

Tonïtru terribile animos hominum permõvet. Fremïtus tonitrûs (tonitru) est horribilis. Fulmen antecëdit tonitru. Multi homïnes extimescunt tonitru. O tonitru, quam horribilis est fremïtus tuus. Domus resõnat tonitru. Genua virorum sunt valida. Vigor genuum indicat robur corpõris. Magna vis est genibus. Supplices procumbunt in genua. O genua, ne vacillate! In genibus est magna vis.

¹ § 90, 1. b).

² § 91, 1.

³ § 90, 1. c).

⁴ § 91, 1. b).

The knee of man is strong. Power of the knee indicates strength of body. The knee has great power (= to the knee there is great power). The suppliant bends the knee. O knee, waver not! In the knee is great power. The thunder is terrible. The noise of the thunder is frightful. Lightnings precede the thunders. Fear thou not the thunder. O thunder, how terrible is thy noise. The house resounds with (abl.) frightful thunders (= thunders).

3. Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Pinus, ūs, <i>f. pine.</i>	continūus, a, um, <i>con-</i>	contorqueo 2. <i>I hurl,</i>
puella, ae, <i>f. girl.</i>	tinuous.	shoot.
sagitta, ae, <i>f. arrow.</i>	perniciōsus, a, um,	sedeo 2. <i>I sit.</i>
aestas, ātis, <i>f. summer.</i>	destructive.	cingo 3. <i>I gird, sur-</i>
frater, tris, <i>m. brother.</i>	timīdus, a, um, <i>timid.</i>	round.
soror, ōris, <i>f. sister.</i>	insignis, e, <i>remark-</i>	contremisco 3. <i>I</i>
imber, bris, <i>m. rain.</i>	able.	tremble, quake.
piscis, is, <i>m. fish.</i>	aedifīco 1. <i>I build.</i>	pingo 3. <i>I paint; acū</i>
rex, regis, <i>m. king.</i>	habito 1. <i>I dwell.</i>	pingo, <i>I embroider.</i>
venātor, ōris, <i>m. hun-</i>	adjāceo 2. (with dat.),	saepe, <i>adv. often.</i>
ter.	<i>I lie by.</i>	sub (with abl.), <i>un-</i>
		der.

Aestāte sub quercūbus et in specūbus libenter sedēmus. Hortus regis¹ ornātur multis pinībus, ficis et lacūbus. Puellae acūbus² pingunt. Oratōres timīdi saepe omnibus artūbus contremiscunt. Venatōres arcūbus sagittas contorquent. Domūs altitudo est insignis. Domui³ nostrae adjācet lacus. Frater aedificat domum. Magnus numērus est domūm (domorum) in urbe. Domibus⁴ perniciōsi sunt imbres continūi. Domōs⁵ regis cingunt multae pinus.

Oaks and pines surround our house. The king dwells in a beautiful house. We dwell in beautiful houses. The height of the houses is remarkable. In the lake are fishes. The king has many and beautiful houses. I tremble in all [my] limbs. A great lake lies by our houses. My sisters embroider. Many houses are built in the city. My brothers sit in the garden under oaks, and my sisters in grottos. Many arrows are shot by bows.

¹ § 88, 13. b). ² § 91, 1. ³ § 90, R. 5. ⁴ § 90, 1. a). ⁵ § 89, 1.

EXERCISE X.

1. Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Spes, ěi, <i>f. hope.</i>	verse ; res adver-	vanus, a, um, <i>vain.</i>
aerumna, ae, <i>f. hard-</i>	sae, <i>adversity.</i>	dulcis, e, <i>sweet.</i>
ship, trouble.	certus, a, um, <i>cer-</i>	felicior, m. and <i>f., fe-</i>
vita, ae, <i>f. life.</i>	tain.	licius, n. ěris, <i>more</i>
solatium, i, <i>n. conso-</i>	incertus, a, um, <i>un-</i>	fortunate.
lation.	certain.	afflicto 1. <i>I overwhelm.</i>
conditio, ěnis, <i>f. con-</i>	dubius, a, um, <i>doubt-</i>	recreo 1. <i>I refresh.</i>
dition, state.	ful.	amitto 3. <i>I lose.</i>
tempus, ěris, <i>n. time.</i>	humānus, a, um, <i>hu-</i>	oppoĉo 3. <i>I oppose.</i>
adversus, a, um, <i>ad-</i>	man.	facile, <i>adv. easily.</i>

Spes incerta et dubia est. Vis spěi est magna in animis hominum. Homines facile indulgent spěi vanae. Spem feliciorum temporum non debemus amittere in aerumnis vitae. O spes, dulci solatio animos miserorum hominum recreas ! Spe vanā saepe fallimur. Res humānae sunt incertae et dubiae. Conditio rerum humanarum est dubia. Rebus adversis opponite virtutem. Ne extimescite res adversas. O res humānae, quam saepe animos hominum fallitis ! Animus sapientis non afflictaur rebus adversis.

2. Words to be learned and Examples for translation.*

Fides, ěi, <i>f. fidelity.</i>	rarus, a, um, <i>rare.</i>	servo 1. <i>I preserve.</i>
amicitia, ae, <i>f. friend-</i>	serenus, a, um, <i>bright.</i>	debeo 2. <i>I owe.</i>
ship.	tutus, a, um, <i>safe.</i>	conquiesco 3. <i>I find</i>
exemplum, i, <i>n. ex-</i>	verus, a, um, <i>true.</i>	satisfaction.
ample.	tristis, e, <i>lowery, sad.</i>	succedo 3. <i>I follow.</i>
salus, ūtis, <i>f. safety,</i>	avolo 1. <i>I fly away,</i>	cito, <i>adv. swiftly.</i>
welfare.	vanish.	cupide, <i>adv. eager-</i>
ver, eris, <i>n. spring.</i>	convoco 1. <i>I call to-</i>	ly.
adventus, ūs, <i>m. arri-</i>	gether.	etiam, <i>conj. also.</i>
val.	expecto 1. <i>I expect,</i>	modo,—modo, <i>now,</i>
portus, ūs, <i>m. haven.</i>	await.	—now.
incorruptus, a, um,		
uncorrupted.		

* Let the teacher here, and so at the end of every ten pages, give out a general review of the preceding vocabularies, and require the pupil to give promiscuously as asked, the Latin of any English word, or the English of any Latin word, which they contain.

The fidelity of friends refreshes our minds in the hardships of life. Examples of true fidelity of friendship are rare. To the fidelity of our friends we owe our safety. The true friend preserves [his] fidelity also in adversity. O fidelity, thou providest for unfortunate men a safe haven! In the fidelity of friends we find satisfaction. The days are now bright, now lowery. The arrival of the bright days of spring is to all men agreeable. Lowery days follow bright days. We eagerly await the bright days of spring. O ye beautiful days of spring, how swiftly you fly away! In (abl.) the bright days of spring we are delighted. Mid-day is bright. On (abl.) a certain day, the soldiers of the city are called together.

EXERCISE XI.

1. Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Beneficentia, ae, <i>f.</i>	liberalitas, atis, <i>f.</i>	garrulus, a, um, <i>chat- tering, loquacious.</i>
<i>beneficence.</i>	<i>erality.</i>	
luna, ae, <i>f.</i>	lux, lucis, <i>f.</i>	munificus, a, um, <i>mu- nificent.</i>
<i>the moon.</i>	<i>light.</i>	
natūra, ae, <i>f.</i>	ratio, onis, <i>f.</i>	
<i>nature.</i>	<i>reason.</i>	
sapientia, ae, <i>f.</i>	simulatio, onis, <i>f.</i>	secundus, a, um, <i>fa- vorable; res secun- dae, prosperity.</i>
<i>wis- dom.</i>	<i>tence.</i>	
odium, i, <i>n.</i>	sol, solis, <i>m.</i>	<i>sonitus, us, m. sound.</i>
<i>hatred.</i>	<i>sun.</i>	<i>amabilis, e, amiable.</i>
amor, oris, <i>m.</i>	sonitus, us, <i>m.</i>	
<i>love.</i>	accommodatus, a, um,	velox, ocis, <i>swift.</i>
hirundo, inis, <i>f.</i>	<i>suited to.</i>	nihil, <i>indecl., nothing.</i>
<i>swal- low.</i>		quam, conj., <i>than.</i>

Nihil est naturae hominis accommodatius, quam beneficentia. Nihil est amabilius, quam virtus. Lux est velocior, quam sonitus. Nihil est melius, quam sapientia. Multi magis garruli sunt, quam hirundines. Pauperes saepe sunt munificentiores, quam divites. In adversis rebus saepe sunt homines prudentiores, quam in secundis. Divitissimorum vita saepe est miserrima. Simulatio amoris pejor est, quam odium. Nihil est melius, quam ratio. Sol major est, quam terra; luna minor est, quam terra.

2. Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Patria, ae, <i>f.</i>	Syracusae, arum, <i>f.</i>	murus, i, <i>m. a wall.</i>
<i>native country.</i>	<i>Syracuse.</i>	Homerus, i, <i>m. Homer.</i>
poeta, ae, <i>m. a poet.</i>	corvus, i, <i>m. a crow.</i>	Lacedaemonius, i, <i>m.</i>
simia, ae, <i>f. an ape.</i>	malum, i, <i>n. evil.</i>	<i>a Lacedemonian.</i>

labor, ōris, <i>m. labor.</i>	virgo, īnis, <i>f. a young woman.</i>	niger, gra, grum, <i>black.</i>
adulatio, ōnis, <i>f. flattery.</i>	crus, uris, <i>n. shin, leg.</i>	celēber, bris, bre, <i>frequented.</i>
similitūdo, īnis, <i>f. similarity.</i>	beātus, a, um, <i>peaceful, happy.</i>	brevis, e, <i>short.</i>
valetūdo, īnis, <i>f. health.</i>	beneficus, a, um, <i>beneficent.</i>	simplex, icis, <i>simple.</i>
affinitas, ātis, <i>f. relationship.</i>	Graecus, a, um, <i>Greek.</i>	valeo 2. <i>I am strong, avail.</i>
	suus, a, um, <i>his, her, its.</i>	contemno 3. <i>I despise.</i>

Omnium beatissimus est sapiens. Homērus omnium Graecorum poëtarum est veterrimus. Adulatio est pessimum malum. Urbs Syracusae maxima et pulcherrima erat omnium Graecarum urbium. Pessimi homines sunt maledicentissimi. In amicitia plus valet similitūdo morum, quam affinitas.

Nothing is better than virtue. God is the greatest, best and wisest of all. The customs of the Lacedemonians were very simple. The horse is very swift. Crows are very black. The haven is very much frequented. The father is very benevolent and very beneficent. The king is building a very magnificent palace (=house). Young women should (=must) be very modest. The ape is very much like man. The leg of the stork is very slender. Nothing is sweeter than friendship. The Lacedemonians were very brave. Light is very swift.

Nothing is worse than the pretence of love. The sun is very great. The life of man is very short. The richest are often the most wretched. The poorest are often the happiest. The labor is very easy. The customs of men are very unlike. The king is very munificent. The worst men are often very fortunate. The best men are often despised by (ab) the worst. The health of my friend is very feeble. The garden of thy father is very beautiful. The labor is very hard. The walls of the city are very low. Most men love their native country.

EXERCISE XII.

1. Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Magister, tri, <i>m. teacher.</i>	praeceptor, ōris, <i>m. teacher.</i>	veritas, ātis, <i>f. truth.</i>
praeceptum, i, <i>n. precept, principle.</i>	tractatio, ōnis, <i>f. handling, pursuit.</i>	gratus, a, um, <i>agreeable.</i> [ed, angry.
		irātus, a, um, <i>offend-</i>

aequālis, e, <i>equal</i> .	imperium, i, <i>n. com-</i>	disco 3. <i>I learn.</i>
salutāris, e, <i>salutary</i> .	mand, <i>dominion.</i>	ludo 3. <i>I play.</i>
canto 1. <i>I sing.</i>	labōro 1. <i>I labor.</i>	attente, <i>adv. atten-</i>
clamo 1. <i>I cry.</i>	narro 1. <i>I relate.</i>	tively.
impēro 1. (with dat.), <i>I command, govern.</i>	voco 1. <i>I call.</i>	inter, <i>praep. (with</i>
	doleo 2. <i>I grieve.</i>	acc.), <i>between,</i>
		<i>among.</i>

RULE OF SYNTAX. The personal pronouns in the Nom., *ego, tu, etc.*, are used only when there is some emphasis to be placed upon them, hence especially in antitheses. The same is true of the possessive pronouns, *meus, tuus, etc.*, e. g. *meus frater diligens est, tuus piger*; but: *frater me amat* (not: *frater meus me amat*).

Ego canto, tu clamas, amicus vocat. Nos narrāmus, vos saltātis, fratres labōrant. Ego fleo, tu rides, frater dolet. Nos, praeceptōres, docēmus; vos, discipūli, discitis. Ego ludo, tu discis, soror acu pingit. Nos scribimus, vos legitis, fratres pingunt. Ego salio, tu feris, puer dormit. Nos, magistri, vos, o discipuli, erudimus; vos, boni discipuli, attente auditis praecepta nostra. Virtutes inter se aequales sunt. Imperāre sibi maximum imperium est. Irātus non est apud se. Tractatio litterarum nobis salutāris est. Veritas semper mihi grata est.

2. Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Modus, i, <i>m. measure,</i>	par, aris, <i>equal.</i>	<i>I creep up, steal</i>
<i>manner.</i>	dimīco 1. <i>I fight.</i>	<i>upon.</i>
vitium, i, <i>n. a fault.</i>	discordo 1. <i>I am at</i>	acriter, <i>adv. spiritedly.</i>
civis, is, <i>m. citizen.</i>	variance with.	per, <i>praep. (with</i>
parentes, ium, <i>m. pa-</i>	porto 1. <i>I bear, carry.</i>	acc.), <i>through.</i>
<i>rents.</i>	faveo 2. <i>I favor.</i>	propter, <i>praep. (with</i>
caput, itis, <i>n. head.</i>	splendeo 2. <i>I shine.</i>	acc.), <i>on account of.</i>
cantus, ūs, <i>m. song.</i>	expēto 3. <i>I strive to</i>	de, <i>praep. (with abl.),</i>
reditus, ūs, <i>m. return.</i>	obtain.	<i>of, concerning, over,</i>
proximus, a, um, <i>next.</i>	obrēpo 3. (with dat.),	<i>at.</i>

Vitia nobis virtutum nomine obrēpunt. Nos favēmus vobis, vos favētis nobis. Tu me amas, ego te amo. Mihi mea vita, tibi, tua cara est. Virtus splendet per se semper. Cantus nos delectat. Parentes a nobis diliguntur. O mi fili, semper mihi¹ pare! Frater me et te amat. Egōmet mihi² sum proximus. Tute tibi³ impēra. Virtus propter sese colitur. Suapte natūra⁴ virtus ex-

¹ § 90, 1. c).

² § 90, 1. d).

³ § 90, 1. c).

⁴ § 91, 4.

petitur. Cives de suis capitibus dimicant. Sapiens omnia sua secum portat. Nos vobiscum de patris reditu guademus. Tu tecum pugnans. Oratio tua tecum pugnat. Deus tecum est. Saepae animus secum discordat. Hostes nobiscum acritur pugnant.

I relate, thou dancest, the brother labors. We sing, you write, the friends call. I, the teacher, teach; thou, the scholar, learnest. We weep, you laugh, the brothers grieve. I write, thou readest, the brother paints. We play, you learn, the sisters embroider. I, the teacher, instruct thee, O scholar; thou, O good scholar, hearest attentively my precepts. The enemies fight spiritedly with you. Angry [men] are not *in their right mind* (=by themselves). God is with us. You rejoice with us at the return of [our] father.

I carry all my [secrets] with myself. O my son and my daughter, always obey me! You love us, we love you. Our life is dear to us, yours to you. Bad men are always at variance with themselves. The pursuit of literature is salutary to me. Truth is always agreeable to us. Our parents love thee and me in (abl.) like (=equal) manner. Men love themselves. Virtue is beautiful in (per) itself. I favor thee, thou favorest me. Our native country is dear to us.

3. Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Cura, ae, f. care, concern.	industrius, a, um, industrious, diligent.	immemor, oris, unmindful of.
ira, ae, f. anger.	mirus, a, um, wonderful, extraordinary.	potens, ntis, powerful, master of.
desiderium, i, n. longing, desire.	perfidus, a, um, faithless.	impotens, ntis, not powerful, not master of.
conservatrix, icis, f. preserver.	absens, ntis, absent.	
judex, icis, m. judge.	insipiens, ntis, unwise.	teneo 2. I hold, possess.
benignus, a, um, kind.	memor, oris, mindful of.	ango 3. I trouble.

Omnis natura est conservatrix sui (preserver of herself). Mirum desiderium urbis, meorum et tui me tenet (longing after the city, etc). Pater vehementer tua sui memoria delectatur (by thy remembrance of him). Ira est impotens sui.¹ Sapiens semper potens sui est. Vestri cura me angit (concern for you). Omnes homines sunt benigni iudices sui. Vehementer grata mihi est

¹ § 88, 7.

memoria nostri tua (thy remembrance of us). Amicus mei et tui est memor. Pater absens magno desiderio tenetur mei, et tui, mi frater, et vestri, o sorores. Amici sunt nostri memores. Multi vestrum mihi placent. Plurimi nostrum te valde diligunt.

The absent father has a great concern *for us* (=of us). The unwise [man] is not master of himself. The faithless friend is unmindful of me. Your remembrance of me is very agreeable. Care *about thee* (=of thee) troubles me. The most of you, my scholars, are diligent. The most of us love [our] native country.

EXERCISE XIII.

1. Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Diligentia, ae, <i>f.</i> diligence, exactness.	auctoritas, atis, <i>f.</i> authority.	mendax, acis, lying, liar.
ignavia, ae, <i>f.</i> indolence.	tarditas, atis, <i>f.</i> slowness, indolence.	hebeto 1. I blunt, enfeeble.
litterae, arum, <i>f.</i> a letter.	dux, ucis, <i>m.</i> leader, general.	firmiter 1. I make firm, strengthen.
memoria, ae, <i>f.</i> memory.	carmen, inis, <i>n.</i> poem.	vito 1. I avoid.
schola, ae, <i>f.</i> a school.	addictus, a, um, devoted to.	placeo 2. I please.
sententia, ae, <i>f.</i> opinion, view.	fidus, a, um, faithful.	displaceo 2. I displease.
Sallustius, ii, <i>m.</i> Sallust.	saevus, a, um, fierce, cruel.	faveo 2. I am favorable to.
scriptor, oris, <i>m.</i> writer.	elegans, ntis, elegant.	credo 3. I believe, trust.
	iners, ertis, awkward, inactive.	

Sallustius est elegantissimus scriptor; ejus libros libenter lego. Amicum fidum habeo; ei¹ addictissimus sum. Fratris carmen valde mihi placet; lege id. Ignavia corpus habet, labor firmat; illam vita, hunc expete. Hae litterae graviter me movent. Haec carmina suavissima sunt. Isti homini² mendaci ne crede. Huic duci milites libenter parent. Illi viro omnes favent. Praeclarum est istud tuum praeceptum. Haec sententia mihi³ placet, illa displicet. Hoc bellum est saevissimum. Hic puer industrius est, ille iners. Memoriam teneo praeclarum illud praeceptum. Iste tuus amicus est vir optimus. Ista vestra auctoritas est maxima. Hujus discipuli diligentiam⁴ laudo, illius tarditatem vitupero; illi schola est gratissima, huic molestissima.

¹ § 90, 1. b).

² § 90, 1. c).

³ § 90, 1. b).

⁴ § 89, 1.

2. Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Fortūna, ac, <i>f. fortune.</i>	opus, ēris, <i>n. work.</i>	obsideo 2. <i>I besiege.</i>
Alexander, dri, <i>m. Alexander.</i>	clarus, a, um, <i>clear, renowned.</i>	studeo 2. <i>I strive.</i>
Pompēius, i, <i>m. Pompey.</i>	Delphicus, a, um, <i>Delphic.</i>	fido 3. <i>I trust.</i>
factum, i, <i>n. deed.</i>	inimicus, a, um, <i>hostile; subst. enemy.</i>	diffido. <i>I distrust.</i>
meritum, i, <i>n. desert.</i>	seditiosus, a, um, <i>seditionous.</i>	nosco 3. <i>I am acquainted with, know.</i>
oraculum, i, <i>n. oracle.</i>	admirabilis, e, <i>wonderful.</i>	agnosco 3. <i>I understand.</i>
Caesar, āris, <i>m. Caesar.</i>	laudabilis, e, <i>praiseworthy.</i>	resisto 3. <i>I resist.</i>
imperator, oris, <i>m. general.</i>	expugno 1. <i>I capture.</i>	sentio 4. <i>I feel, think, judge.</i>
virtus, ūtis, <i>f. bravery.</i>	tracto 1. <i>I pursue.</i>	pro, <i>praep. (with abl.), for.</i>
		quia, <i>conj. because.</i>

Multi homines de iisdem rebus eodem die non eadem sentiunt. Insipiens eidem sententiae modo fidit, modo diffidit. Ipsi imperatori seditiosi milites resistunt. Animus ipse se movet. Virtus est per se ipsa laudabilis. Saepe nihil est homini inimicus, quam sibi ipse. Omne animal se ipsum diligit. Carior nobis esse debet patria, quam nosmet ipsi. Praeclarum est illud praeceptum oraculi Delphici: Nosce te ipsum. Mendax saepe sibi ipsi diffidit.

Sallust is a very elegant writer, I read him with very great delight (libentissime). The brother and his friend are very dear to me. The teacher praises and censures the scholars according to (*pro* with *abl.*) their desert. We perceive God from his works. We honor [our] parents, because their deserts to (*de* with *abl.*) us are very great. The enemies besiege the city and strive to capture it.

This book I read with delight. This poem pleases me, that displeases. I praise the industry of this scholar. The exploits of that great Alexander are extolled by (*ab*) all writers. Caesar and Pompey were very renowned generals; to that, fortune was more favorable than to this; the bravery of this and that [one] was wonderful.

The king himself is leader of the army. Thou dost not always judge the same concerning the same thing. The father and the son pursue the same literary studies (= literature). The virtues are of (*per*) themselves praiseworthy. Man loves himself. [Thy] native country ought to be dearer to thee than thou

thyselves. Understand yourselves. Liars often distrust themselves.

EXERCISE XIV.

1. *Words to be learned and Examples for translation.*

Civitas, ātis, <i>f. state.</i>	probus, a, um, <i>up-</i>	guberno 1. <i>I govern,</i>
lex, egis, <i>f. law.</i>	right. [<i>cred.</i>	rule.
mors, rtis, <i>f. death.</i>	sanctus, a, um, <i>sa-</i>	honōro 1. <i>I honor.</i>
immatūrus, a, um, <i>un-</i>	mitis, e, <i>mild.</i>	gero 3. <i>I carry on.</i>
<i>timely.</i>	curo 1. (with acc.), <i>I</i>	succarro 3. <i>I assist.</i>
justus, a, um, <i>just.</i>	<i>care for, look out</i>	exaudio 4. <i>I listen to.</i>
maleficus, a, um, <i>evil;</i>	<i>for.</i>	ardenter, <i>adv. ardent-</i>
subst. <i>evil-doer.</i>	devasto 1. <i>I lay waste.</i>	<i>ly, eagerly.</i>

Rex, qui civitatem gubernat, civium salutem curare debet. Regi, cujus imperium mite et justum est, omnes cives libenter parent. Regem, cui¹ leges sunt sanctae, cives colunt. Felix est rex, quem omnes cives amant. O rex, qui civitatem nostram gubernas, honora bonos cives, terre maleficos, succurre miseris,² exaudi probos! Acerba et immatura est mors eorum, qui immortale opus parant. Non semper est illud bonum, quod ardentem expetimus. Beati sunt ii, quorum vita virtutis praeceptis³ regitur. Hostis, quocum bellum geritur, terram⁴ nostram devastat.

The kings who govern the states, ought to look out for (acc.) the welfare of the citizens. The kings, whose government is mild and just, all citizens obey with delight. The kings, to whom the laws are sacred, are obeyed by all the citizens. The kings are fortunate, who are loved by all the citizens. O kings, who govern our states, honor the good citizens, frighten the evil, assist the wretched, listen to the upright! The enemies, with whom we carry on war, lay waste our land.

2. *Words to be learned and Examples for translation.*

Luscina, ae, <i>f. night-</i>	falsus, a, um, <i>false.</i>	cogito 1. <i>I think of.</i>
ingale.	[<i>fault.</i>	ingratus, a, um, <i>disa-</i>
peccatum, i, <i>n. sin,</i>	<i>greeable, ungrateful.</i>	exercucio 1. <i>I torment.</i>
opinio, ōnis, <i>f. opinion.</i>	utilis, e, <i>useful.</i>	repugno 1. <i>I am re-</i>
honestus, a, um, <i>vir-</i>	ambula 1. <i>I go to</i>	habeo 2. <i>I have; me</i>
<i>tuous.</i>	<i>walk, take a walk.</i>	habeo, <i>I have myself.</i>

¹ § 90, 1.

² § 90, 1. a).

³ § 91, A. 1.

⁴ § 89, 1.

indulgeo 2. *I am in-* ago 3. *I drive, do,* quaero 3. *I seek.*
dulgent to. *treat.* *cur, why.*
 dico 3. *I say, tell.*

Quis me vocat? Quid agis, mi amice? Quis scribit has lit-
 tēras? Quid cogitas? Quid ago? cur me exerceo? Quae
 amicitia est inter ingrātos? Quod carmen legis? Quis homo
 venit? Quis poēta dulcior est, quam Homērus? Cujus vox
 suavior est, quam vox luscinae? Quibus peccātis facillime in-
 dulgēmus? Quicquid est honestum, idem est utile. Quicquid
 vides, currit cum tempore. Quoquo modo res sese habet, ego
 sententiam meam defendo. Quaecunque opinio veritāti repugnat,
 falsa est.

What sayest thou? Who is that man? Who is that woman?
 With whom does thy friend go to walk? Whom seekest thou?
 What book readest thou? To whom dost thou write this letter?
 In whatever manner the thing has itself, we praise thy view.

EXERCISE XV.

Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Graecia, ae, f. Greece.	dignitas, ātis, f. dig-	impendo 2. I threat-
pecunia, ae, f. money.	nity.	en.
locus, i, m. a place,	mens, tis, f. under-	inhaereo 2. I inhere.
situation.	standing, intellect.	adimo 3. I take away.
augurium, i, n. pres-	jus, ūris, n. what is	tribuo 3. I give.
age.	just.	idcirco, adv. on this
saeculum, i, n. hun-	justitia, ae, f. justice.	account.
dred years, an age.	futūrus, a, um, future.	quasi, adv. as if.
terror, ōris, m. terror.	insitus, a, um, inborn.	

Si mortem timēmus, semper aliqui terror nobis impendet. Si
 cupiam pecuniam fortuna adimit, idcirco miser non est. Graecia
 parvum quendam locum Europae tenet. Inhaeret in mentibus
 nostris quasi quoddam augurium futurorum saeculorum. In uno-
 quoque virorum bonorum habitat deus. Justitia jus unicuique
 tribuit pro dignitate cujusque. Cuique nostrum amor vitae est
 insitus.

EXERCISE XVI.

Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Bonum, i, n. <i>the good.</i>	respublica, reipubli-	pecco 1. <i>I sin, commit</i>
Aristides, is, m. <i>Aris-</i>	ca, the state.	<i>a fault.</i>
<i>tides.</i>	permultus, a, um,	soleo 2. <i>I am accus-</i>
grex, egis, m. <i>a herd.</i>	<i>very much, many.</i>	<i>tomed.</i>
imitator, oris, m. <i>imi-</i>	fragilis, e, <i>perishable.</i>	exsisto 3. <i>I exist, am.</i>
<i>tator.</i>	princeps, ipis, m.	quod, conj. <i>because,</i>
oratio, onis, f. <i>speech.</i>	<i>first, prince.</i>	<i>that.</i>

Quot sunt homines, tot sunt sententiae. Non tantum malum est hoc, quod peccant principes, quantum illud, quod permulti imitatores principum existunt. Quot genera orationum sunt, totidem oratorum genera reperiuntur. Quales sunt duces, tales sunt milites. Qualis est rex, talis est grex. Quales in republica sunt principes, tales solent esse cives. Ne contemne homines miseros, qualescunque sunt. Corporis et fortunae bona, quantacunque sunt, incerta ac fragilia sunt. Quotquot homines sunt, omnes vitam amant. Quotcunque sunt scriptores, omnes Aristidis justitiam praedicant.

EXERCISE XVII.

1. *Words to be learned and Examples for translation.*

Hora, ae, f. <i>hour.</i>	mensis, is, m. <i>month.</i>	pono 3. <i>I place, ar-</i>
summa, ae, f. <i>sum.</i>	hebdomas, adis, f.	<i>range.</i>
annus, i, m. <i>year.</i>	<i>week.</i>	sepono 3. <i>I lay aside.</i>
calculus, i, m. <i>a pebble.</i>	nux, ucis, f. <i>nut.</i>	jam, adv. <i>already,</i>
Carolus, i, m. <i>Charles.</i>	in promptu esse, to be	<i>now.</i>
codicilli, orum, m.	<i>in readiness.</i>	memoriter, adv. <i>from</i>
<i>writing tablet.</i>	expecto 1. <i>I wait,</i>	<i>memory.</i>
thalerus, i, m. <i>dollar.</i>	await.	paulisper, adv. <i>a lit-</i>
acerasum, i, n. <i>cherry.</i>	respondeo 2. <i>I an-</i>	<i>tle.</i>
malum, i, n. <i>apple.</i>	<i>swer.</i>	recte, adv. <i>correctly.</i>
pirum, i, n. <i>pear.</i>	responsio, onis, f. <i>an-</i>	deinde, adv. <i>then,</i>
prunum, i, n. <i>plum.</i>	<i>swer.</i>	thereupon.
exemplum, i, n. <i>ex-</i>	addo 3. <i>I add to.</i>	denique, adv. <i>finally.</i>
<i>ample.</i>	attendo 3. <i>I give at-</i>	porro, adv. <i>besides.</i>
	<i>tention.</i>	tum, adv. <i>then.</i>

Pater. Attende, mi fili! Scribe in codicillos tuos hoc exemplum: Si habes decem mala, tria pruna, unum pirum, sex cerasa;

et his adduntur duo mala, quattuor pruna, septem pira, octo cerāsa; deinde quinque mala, novem pruna, sedēcim pira, undēcim cerāsa; tum duodēcim mala, quindēcim pruna, tredēcim pira, quatuordēcim cerāsa; porro viginti mala, undeviginti pruna, duodeviginti pira, septendēcim cerāsa; denique quattuor et viginti mala, unum et viginti pruna, duo et viginti pira, tria et viginti cerāsa: quot sunt mala? quot pruna? quot pira? quot cerāsa? *Carōlus*. Exspecta paulisper, mi pater! Jam responsio est in promptu. Sunt tria et septuaginta mala; unum et septuaginta pruna; septem et septuaginta pira; novem et septuaginta cerāsa. *P*. Recte, mi Carōle! Jam sepōne codicillos et memoriter mihi responde: Quot menses habet unus annus? *C*. Duodēcim. *P*. Quot hebdomādes habet unus mensis? *C*. Quattuor. *P*. Quot dies habet unus annus? *C*. Trecentos sexaginta quinque. *P*. Quot horas habet unus dies? *C*. Quattuor et viginti. *P*. Quot dies habent tres anni? *C*. Mille nonaginta quinque. *P*. Quot horas habet unus annus? *C*. Octo milia septingentas sexaginta. *P*. Si tres nuces quater ponis, quanta summa existit? *C*. Duodecim. *P*. Si quinque calcūlos ter millies sexcenties quinquagies septies ponis? *C*. Duodeviginti milia ducenti octoginta quinque. *P*. Si septingenta quadraginta tria milia trecentos quinquaginta duo thalēros bis ponis? *C*. Decies centum milia quadringenta octoginta sex milia septingenti quattuor.

Father. Give attention, my son! write upon your writing-tablet the following (= this) example: If thou hast 20 apples, 6 plums, 2 pears, 12 cherries, and to these are added 4 apples, 8 plums, 14 pears, 16 cherries; then 10 apples, 18 plums, 32 pears, 22 cherries; then 24 apples, 30 plums, 26 pears, 28 cherries; besides, 40 apples, 38 plums, 36 pears, 34 cherries; finally, 48 apples, 42 plums, 44 pears, 46 cherries: how many apples are [there]? how many plums? how many pears? how many cherries? — *Charles*. Wait a little, my father! already is the answer in readiness. There are 146 apples, 142 plums, 154 pears, 158 cherries. — *Father*. Correctly, my Charles!

2. Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Incōla, ae, <i>m.</i> inhabi- tant.	moderātor, ōris, <i>m.</i> sociētas, ātis, <i>f.</i> alli- [tory. governor. ance. [army.
victoria, ae, <i>f.</i> vic- pretium, i, <i>n.</i> value.	eques, itis, <i>m.</i> horse- man. exercitus, ūs, <i>m.</i>
vitium, i, <i>n.</i> fault.	natus, ūs, <i>m.</i> birth; pedes, itis, <i>m.</i> foot- man. major (natu) old- er, minor (natu)
assentātor, ōris, <i>m.</i> flatterer.	pars, tis, <i>f.</i> part, side. younger.

fides, ei, <i>f. fidelity;</i>	tum, <i>after the birth</i>	nunc, <i>adv. now.</i>
fidem habeo, <i>I have</i>	of Christ.	vix, <i>adv. scarcely.</i>
confidence in.	quotus, a, um, <i>what</i>	de (with abl.), <i>of,</i>
cognitus, a, um,	one? what?	concerning.
known.	ago 3. <i>I drive, pass;</i>	ex (with abl.), <i>from.</i>
infidus, a, um, <i>un-</i>	annum ago, <i>I am</i>	post (with acc.), <i>after.</i>
<i>faithful.</i>	in the year.	et — et, <i>both — and.</i>
natus, a, um, <i>born;</i>	irrumpo 3. <i>I make an</i>	neque, <i>and not;</i>
post Christum na-	irruption.	neque — neque,
		<i>neither — nor.</i>

Quota hora est? Decima. Annus, quo nunc vivimus, est millesimus octingentesimus quadragesimus tertius post Christum natum. Pater meus agit annum quartum et sexagesimum (or sexagesimum quartum); mater duodequingagesimum; frater major natu¹ tertium et tricesimum (or tricesimum tertium); frater minor natu alterum et tricesimum (or tricesimum alterum); soror major duodetricesimum; soror minor vicesimum. In urbe sunt mille milites. Duo milia hostium urbem obsident.

The enemy makes an irruption into our country (= land), with 10,000 soldiers. A thousand soldiers defend the city. 28,000 footmen and 13,000 horsemen defend the country.

My father is in his seventy-fifth year (= is passing his seventy-fifth year); my mother in her sixty-second; my older brother in his forty-first; my younger brother in his thirty-ninth; my older sister in her thirty-fourth and my younger sister in her twenty-sixth. What hour is it? the eleventh hour. How old art thou? (= what year art thou passing?), fifty-eight years old (= I am passing the fifty-eighth year).

Aliud alii placet (one thing pleases one and another another),² aliud alii displicet. Milites utriusque exercitus sunt fortissimi. Utrumque est vitium: et omnibus credere, et nulli. Perfidus homo vix ulli fidem habet. Unius fidi hominis amicitia habet plus pretii (has more value),³ quam multorum infidorum societas. Soli sapienti⁴ vera vis virtutis est cognita. Incolae totius urbis de victoria exercitus laeti erant. Nullius hominis vita ex (in) omni parte beata est. Habeo duo amicos; ambo valde diligo. Amicus meus habet duo filios et duas filias.

We trust to neither of the two, neither to the wicked [man] nor the flatterer. The life of no man is more peaceful than the life of the wise [man]. God is the governor of the whole world.

¹ § 91, 2. c).² § 94, 15.³ § 88, 13. c).⁴ § 90, 1.

The father goes to walk with [his] two sons and [his] two daughters. Two faithful friends are as it were (quasi) one soul in two bodies. Two thousand soldiers (gen.) defend the city.

EXERCISE XVIII.

Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Ripa, ae, <i>f. bank.</i>	libertas, ātis, <i>f. free-</i>	effundo 3. <i>I pour out,</i>
via, ae, <i>f. way.</i>	dom.	discharge.
castra, orum, <i>n. camp.</i>	altus, a, um, <i>high,</i>	fugio 3. <i>I flee.</i>
agger, ēris, <i>m. mound.</i>	deep.	pello 3. <i>I drive, repel.</i>
pes, edis, <i>m. foot.</i>	video 2. <i>I see.</i>	munio 4. <i>I fortify.</i>
	duco 3. <i>I lead.</i>	

Exercises on the Prepositions with Nouns of all the Declensions.

Frogs live in the water and upon (in) the land. The soldiers fight spiritedly against (in) the enemy. The enemies make an irruption into our borders. In the fields bloom various herbs. In (abl.) summer we sit with delight under oaks. The enemies flee within (= among) the walls. Parents are loved by (ab) good sons and daughters. Orators we extol on *account of* (ob) fluency of speech. The earth moves (= is moved) around the sun. Repel cares from [your] minds. Suppliants fall down upon the knees. Eloquence adorns those with (penes) whom it is. Live thou according to nature. The soldiers fight before (pro) the camp. The river is discharged over the banks. Virtue has all [things] beneath (subter) itself. Who is peaceful without virtue? Above the city is a very high oak. Below our garden a very magnificent house is built.

The army marches (iter facit) towards Rome. The general leads the soldiers against the city. Near by the walls of the city, the enemies fortify the camp. The enemies build a high mound around the city. Our soldiers fight with the enemies very spiritedly. The citizens fight spiritedly for the freedom of their native country. The enemies flee over the river. On account of virtue men are esteemed. The enemies within the walls of the city fortify a camp. The love of parents towards [their] children is very great. Many men act contrary to (contra) the precepts of virtue. On this side of the city a camp is fortified by (ab) the enemies. Frogs live within and without the water. All the citizens were joyful concerning (de) the victory of our soldiers.

The way, which leads from (ab) the city up to our garden, is very beautiful. Avoid the man, who by reason of (prae) anger is not in his right mind (= with himself). Before (ante) our house are many pines, behind the same, is a very beautiful garden. Often do we not see that which is before (ante) our feet. Between the city and our garden are very beautiful fields. The enemies flee through the city. Who is peaceful besides the wise [man]?

EXERCISE XIX.

Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Alöë, ës, <i>f. the aloe.</i>	planētes, ac, <i>m. planet.</i>	tener, ěra, ěrum, <i>tender.</i>
Circe, ës, <i>f. Circe.</i>	Borēas, Epaminondas, Gorgias, Pythagoras, Orestes, Pylades, ae, <i>m. are</i>	abstineo 2. (with abl.) <i>I abstain from.</i>
astutia, ae, <i>f. cunning.</i>	[cook.]	strideo 2. <i>I whistle.</i>
coqua, ae, <i>f. (female)</i>	proper names and	antepōno 3. <i>I prefer.</i>
culina, ae, <i>f. kitchen.</i>	remain as in Latin.	coquo 3. <i>I cook.</i>
gloria, ae, <i>f. renown.</i>	crinitus, a, um, <i>with long hair.</i>	pie, <i>adv. tenderly, peacefully.</i>
historia, ae, <i>f. history</i>	erraticus, a, um, <i>wandering.</i>	
stella, ae, <i>f. star.</i>		
nauta, ae, <i>m. sailor.</i>		
comētes, ae, <i>m. comet.</i>		

Alöë est amāra. Aloës herba est amāra. Crambae est tenēra herba. Cramben coqua in culina coquit. O Circe, quanta erat astutia tua! Crambe tenērā delectāmur. Borēas vexat nautas. Boreae procellae nautis perniciosae sunt. Boream fugiunt nautae. O Borea, quam vehementer strides! A Borea vexantur nautae. Planētes est stella erraticā. Comētes est stella crinita. Oresten et Pylāden ob amicitiam praedicāmus. O Epaminonda, quanta est tua gloria! Anchises pie amātur ab Aenēa. Pythagōrae sapientia praedicātur. O Anchise, quam pie amāris ab Aenēa! Epaminondam et Pelopīdam omnes scriptores celēbrant.

Cabbage is tender. The herb of cabbage is tender. The aloe is a bitter herb. We prefer the tender cabbage to the bitter aloe. O Circe, how by (abl.) thy cunning thou deceivest the minds of men! We abstain from the bitter aloe. Gorgias had (erat with dat.) great eloquence. The cunning of Circe was great. Aeneas loves Anchises tenderly. Pythagoras we extol on account of [his] wisdom. O Orestes and Pylades, how great was your friendship! Concerning (de) Orestes and Pylades, concerning Epaminondas and Pelopidas history relates.

EXERCISE XX.

Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Lingua, ae, <i>f. tongue</i> .	pirus, i, <i>pear-tree</i> .	ignāvus, a, um, <i>indolent, lazy, cowardly</i> .
<i>language.</i>	prunus, i, <i>plum-tree</i> .	lignēus, a, um, <i>wood-en, of wood</i> .
silva, ae, <i>f. a wood</i> .	ulmus, i, <i>an elm</i> .	longus, a, um, <i>long</i> .
cibus, i, <i>m. food</i> .	avidus, a, um, (<i>with gen.</i>), <i>greedy</i> .	matūrus, a, um, <i>ripe, early</i> .
Aegyptus, i, <i>Egypt</i> .	frugifer, ēra, ērum, <i>fruitful</i> .	procērus, a, um, <i>slim</i> .
Delus, i, <i>Delos (island)</i> .	compositus, a, um, <i>composed</i> .	rotundus, a, um, <i>round</i> .
Rhodus, i, <i>Rhodes (an island)</i> .	fecundus, a, um, <i>productive</i> .	stultus, a, um, <i>foolish</i> .
pōpūlus, i, <i>a poplar</i> .	humidus, a, um, <i>moist</i> .	compesco 3. <i>I check, curb</i> .
cerāsus, i, <i>cherry-tree</i> .		
fagus, i, <i>beech-tree</i> .		
mālus, i, <i>apple-tree</i> .		

Vulgus est stultum. Diphthongus est longa. Periōdus bene composita est. Pōpūli sunt procērae. Ignāvi pōpūli facile vincuntur. In silvis sunt ulmi et fagi altae. Vanni sunt lignēae. In horto nostro magnus est numērus frugiferarum cerasorum, malorum, pirorum et prunorum.

In our garden are many cherry-trees, many apple-trees, many plum-trees, and many pear-trees. The foolish people (vulgus) are easily deceived. Diphthongs are long. The periods are well composed. The poplar is slim. A cowardly people (populus) is easily conquered. In our gardens are many slim poplars. The corn-fan is of wood.

Matūra cerāsa, māla, pira, pruna sunt dulcīa. Virus est perniciosum. Humus humīda variās plantas gignit. Alvus est ciborum avida. Delus est clara. Coli sunt rotundae. Dialecti sunt variae. Carbāsus est tenēra.

Avoid the pernicious poison. One language has many dialects. The linen is beautiful. Egypt is productive. These apples, cherries, plums, and pears are beautiful. See those high elms and slim poplars. Rhodes was renowned. The distaff is round. The earth (humus) is productive. Check the greedy appetite (= belly).

EXERCISE XXI.

1. Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

The words introduced in § 37 are omitted here.

Fama, ac, <i>f. report.</i>	fundamentum, i, <i>n.</i>	exascio 1. <i>I hew</i>
renown.	foundation.	(roughly).
statua, ae, <i>f. statue.</i>	lignum, i, <i>n. wood.</i>	levo 1. <i>I lighten.</i>
carpentarius, i, <i>m. a</i>	cos, otis, <i>f. whet-stone.</i>	mitigo 1. <i>I soften,</i>
wheel-wright.	quies, etis, <i>f. quiet.</i>	mitigate.
funambulus, i, <i>m.</i>	durus, a, um, <i>hard.</i>	navigo 1. <i>I navigate.</i>
rope-dancer.	argenteus, a, um, <i>of</i>	oppugno 1. <i>I assault.</i>
laurus, i, <i>f. laurel.</i>	silver, silver.	acuo 3. <i>I sharpen.</i>
faber, bri, <i>m. artisan.</i>	ferrus, a, um, <i>of</i>	expello 3. <i>I expel.</i>
faber lignarius, car-	iron, iron.	incedo 3. <i>I walk upon.</i>
penter.	dono 1. <i>I present.</i>	peto 3. <i>I seek.</i>
folium, i, <i>n. leaf.</i>	edolo 1. <i>I hew prop-</i>	sero 3. <i>I sow.</i>
	erly, fashion.	

Echus vox saepe homines fallit. *Argus* navis fama est magna. *Vis vim* expellit. *Sitim* tolerare difficile est. *Faber lignarius* ad *amussim* lignum exasciat. *Hi pueri* ad *ravim* clamant. *Carpentarius burim* e dura ulmo edolat. *Agricola burim* regit. *Agricola cannabim* serit. *Folia lauri tussim* levant. *Febrim* quiete mitigamus. *Pater matri pelvim* argenteam donat. *Funambuli* per *restim* incedunt. Per *Albim*, *Tamesim*, *Visurgim*, *Tigrim* multae naves navigant. *Milites* oppugnant *altam turrim*. *Securim* ferream cote acuumus. *Fundamentum* statuarum vocamus *basim*. *Apes* petunt *sinapim*.

The poems of Sappho were very delightful. The wanderings (error, oris) of Io are related by (ab) many poets. By (abl.) the echo we are often deceived. Against (contra) hoarseness, cough and fever, thou must apply (adhibeo 2.) fitting (aptus, a, um) remedies (remedium, i, n.). The soldiers defend spiritedly the high tower. The statue has a solid pedestal. The wood (plur.) is hewed by (ab) the carpenter according to (ad) rule. The carpenter handles (tracto 1.) the sharp axe with a skilful hand. Soldiers must endure hunger (fames, is) and thirst patiently.

2. Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Porta, ae, <i>f. gate.</i>	humerus, i, <i>m. shoul-</i>	vigil, ilis, <i>m. watch-</i>
tragoedia, ae, <i>f. tra-</i>	der.	[<i>pilot. man.</i>
gedy.	gubernator, oris, <i>m.</i>	sal, alis, <i>m. salt.</i>

admiratio, ōnis, <i>f. admiration.</i>	abl.) <i>worthy, deserving of.</i>	<i>I suffer</i> (from something).
onus, ěris, <i>n. load.</i>	frigidus, a, um, <i>cold.</i>	prospecto 1. <i>I look forth, behold.</i>
nectar, ěris, <i>n. nectar</i> (drink for the gods).	summus, a, um, <i>highest.</i>	abigo 3. <i>I drive away.</i>
acutus, a, um, <i>sharp.</i>	mordax, ěcis, <i>biting.</i>	claudio 3. <i>I close.</i>
dignus, a, um, (with labōre 1. (with abl.)	incito 1. <i>I urge on.</i>	occludo 3. <i>I lock.</i>
		conspergo 3. <i>I sprinkle.</i>

O Socrāte, quam salutāris erat genēri humano tua sapientia! O Sophōcle, tragoediāe tuae summa admiratione¹ dignae sunt. O Atla, quantum onus humēris² tuis portas! Calcāri incitamus equos. Nectāre delectantur dii. Sale conspergimus cibos. Hostes vi in urbem irrumpunt. Clavi porta clauditur. Febrī³ laborat frater. Fusti abigimus canes mordāces. Igni coquimus cibos. A bono civi patria amatur. Ex alta turri vigiles prospectant. In puppi sedet gubernator. Acūta secūri faber lignarius lignum exasciat.

Force expels force by (abl.) force. The customs of men are oftener improved by admonition and example than by force. When (quum) thou art suffering (=sufferest) from (abl.) a fever, abstain from cold water. O Themistocles, O Pericles, O Socrates, your deserts *relative to* (de) the city of the Athenians were very great. The pilot, who sits upon the stern, governs the ship. With (abl.) a sharp axe we split (diffindo 3.) the wood (plur.) In a civil war (bellum civile) citizen fights against citizen. With (abl.) an iron key we lock the gate. The enemies lay waste the country with (abl.) fire and sword.

3. Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Satira, ae, <i>f. satire.</i>	aetas, ātis, <i>f. age.</i>	procuro 1. <i>I furnish.</i>
ludus, i, <i>m. sport.</i>	hiems, ěmis, <i>f. winter.</i>	perago 3. <i>I carry through, perform.</i>
Romānus, i, <i>m. a Roman.</i>	longinquus, a, um, <i>distant.</i>	perstringo 3. <i>I graze, satirize.</i>
ingenium, i, <i>n. genius, intellect.</i>	publicus, a, um, <i>public.</i>	veho 3. <i>I carry, bring.</i>
merx, cis, <i>f. wares.</i>	docilis, e, <i>teachable.</i>	sperno 3. <i>I spurn.</i>
mercator, ōris, <i>m. trader, merchant.</i>	aestimo 1. <i>I value, esteem.</i>	sed, conj., <i>but.</i>

Avus cum nepti ambulat. Mercator navi merces in longinquas

¹ § 91, 3, c).

² § 91, 1.

³ § 91, 4, b).

terras vehit. Discipuli in schola non genere,¹ sed bonis moribus, docili ingenio, et acri industria aestimantur. Hostes celēri pede fugiunt.

4. Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Autumnus, i, m. autumn.	oblectamentum, i, n. delight.	insipiens, ntis, unwise.
coelum, i, n. the sky.	nepos, ōtis, m. grand-son.	juventus, ūtis, f. youth.
initium, i, n. beginning.	parentes, ium, m. parents.	juvenilis, e, youthful.
gaudium, i, n. joy.	mensis, is, m. a month.	senilis, e, advanced, age.
monumentum, i, n. monument.	munus, ēris, n. service, vice, office, present.	aetas senilis, old age.
negotium, i, n. business.	gelidus, a, um, cold.	exhilāro 1. I exhilarate, delight.
		saevio 4. I rage.

Mense Martio initium est veris, mense Junio aestātis, mense Septembri autumni, mense Decembri hiēmis. Boni regis natāli omnis civitas laeta est. Mense Aprili coelum modo serēnum est, modo triste. Mense Novembri gelidae procellae saeviunt. Juvenili aetate alacriore animo difficilia negotia peragimus, quam senili. A Juvenāle, satirarum scriptore, Romanorum vitia perstringuntur. Ab aedile ludi publici procurantur. A juvēne saepe virorum praecepta spernuntur.

5. Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Culpa, ae, f. blame, guilt.	acceptus, a, um, received. [humblest.]	destitute of, without.
immodestia, ae, f. immodesty.	infimus, a, um, lowest, clemens, tis, mild.	pertinax, ācis, obstinate.
beneficium, i, n. kindness, favor.	consors, tis (c.* gen.), sharing in.	dispar, āris, unequal, different.
consilium, i, n. counsel.	exsors, tis (c. gen.), destitute of, without.	domo 1. I tame.
studium, i, n. effort, study, zeal.	expers, tis (c. gen.),	tracto 1. I treat.
		atque, and; 2) as.

A sapiente bona praecepta discimus. Quicquid agis, sapienti consilio age. A Felice felici fortunā bellum geritur. A Clemente clementi animo infimi homines tractantur. A Pertināce pertināci studio urbs defenditur.

* c. in such cases stands for cum (with).

¹ § 91, 2. a).

The grandfather is delighted by (ab) the little grand-son and the neat grand-daughter. A good boy, on (abl.) his birth day, is delighted by (abl.) presents from (ab) his parents. When the state is ruled by (ab) a wise king, it is happy. By (ab) a wise man virtue is loved.

Virtus amātur ab homīne ratiōnis *participē*, contemnītur ab homīne ratiōnis *expertī*. A viro virtūtis *compōte* deus pie colitur. Praeceptor a discipūlo beneficii accepti *memōri* colitur. Abstīne amico beneficiōrum acceptōrum *immemōri*. Gaudēmus amico omnis culpae *exsorti* et labōrum nostrōrum *consorti*. Virtus *pari* studio a *prīncipe* et *divite*, atque ab *humili* et *paupere* colitur. Discipūli *dispāri* studio littēras tractant. Magni viri digni sunt gloriā vitae suae *superstite*. De *sospite* amico gaudēmus. Hospes ab *hospite* colitur. Et in *impubere*, et in *pubere* aetate displicet immodestia.

6. Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Penna, ae, <i>f. feather.</i>	amnis, is, <i>m. stream,</i>	praeceps, cipitis, <i>inclined, steep.</i>
campus, i, <i>m. plain.</i>	river.	
detrimentum, i, <i>n. injury, disadvantage.</i>	rupes, is, <i>f. rock.</i>	praecox, ōcis, <i>premature.</i>
emolumentum, i, <i>n. use, advantage.</i>	agmen, inis, <i>n. band, flock.</i>	occūpo 1. <i>I take possession of.</i>
horrēum, i, <i>n. granary.</i>	exāmen, inis, <i>n. swarm.</i>	redundo 1. <i>I redound.</i>
jugum, i, <i>n. yoke, top, ridge (of mountain).</i>	rete, is, <i>n. net, toil.</i>	volito 1. <i>I fly around.</i>
saxum, i, <i>n. rock.</i>	discolor, ōris, <i>party-colored, variegated.</i>	abhorreo 2. (ab), <i>I have an aversion to.</i>
vinum, i, <i>n. wine.</i>	hebes, ētis, <i>obtuse, dull.</i>	provideo 2. <i>I foresee.</i>
venātor, ōris, <i>m. hunter.</i>	locuples, ētis (c. abl.), <i>wealthy, rich.</i>	alo 3. <i>I nourish, support (keep).</i>
	petūlans, ntis, <i>licentious, wayward.</i>	tendo 3. <i>I stretch, extend.</i>

Venator *retia* tendit. *Hebetia* ingenia a litterarum studio abhorrent. Saxa sunt *praecipitia*. Onera sunt *gravia*. Horrera frumentis *locupletia* sunt. Pira *praecocia* non sunt *dulcia*. Cervus et equus sunt *celeris animalia*. *Disparia* sunt hominum studia. Haec vina sunt *vetera*. *Majora* emolumenta, quam detrimenta, a bestiis ad homines redundant. Cui *plura* beneficia debemus, quam diis? *Complura (compluria)* sunt genera avium.

Good scholars keep the precepts of [their] teachers with (abl.) thoughtful (memor) minds. By (ab) rational (rationis particeps) men, irrational (rationis experts) animals are tamed. The virtues

of great men are adorned by (abl.) a renown surviving their life. The way leads over (per) steep rocks (saxum). The ancient (vetus) monuments of the Greeks and Romans are worthy of admiration. In the blooming age of youth *very many* (complures) delights are afforded us. The life of good and wise men has more and greater joys than the life of the wicked and unwise.

Plurimarum avium pennae sunt discolorēs. Rupium juga hostis occūpat. Venatōres magnum canum numērum alunt. Multōrum juvēnum animi sunt petulantes. Vatūm anīni futūra provident. Nubes magnam imbrīum vim effundunt. Lintrium magnus in amne numērus est. Multa apum examīna per campos volitant. Multa agmīna volūcrum in silvis sunt.

7. Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Gallia, ae, <i>f. Gaul.</i>	inscius, a, um (c. gen.), ignorant of,	peritus, a, um (c. gen.), versed in,
tenēbrae, arum, <i>f. darkness.</i>	unacquainted with.	skilful.
ars, artis, <i>f. art.</i>	consultus, a, um (c. gen.), acquainted with.	plenus, a, um (c. gen.), full.
fruges, um, <i>f. fruit.</i>		
gens, gentis, <i>f. people.</i>	cupīdus, a, um (c. gen.), zealous;	studiōsus, a, um (c. gen.), studious
improbitas, ātis, <i>f. wickedness.</i>	' gen.), desirous.	sum (c. gen.),
pax, acis, <i>f. peace.</i>	gnarus, a, um (c. gen.), acquainted with.	I pursue earnestly.
regio, ōnis, <i>f. region.</i>		fertilis, e (c. gen.), productive.
via, ae, <i>f. way.</i>	ignārus, a, um (c. gen.), unacquainted with.	rudis, e (c. gen.), rude, ignorant of.
viātor, ōris, <i>m. traveler.</i>		remēo 1. I return.
conscius, a, um (c. gen.), conscious of.	infirmus, a, um, weak.	que (always attached to a word), and.
	pauci, ae, a, a few.	

Ingrati nobis sunt homines, qui litium¹ sunt cupīdi. Divītes majōrum opum¹ avidi sunt. Haec regio faucium² plena est. Bonus discipulus literarum artiumque est studiōsus. Gallia frugum² hominumque fertilis est. Sapientium et bonorum hominum animi nullius improbitatis³ sunt conscii. Samnitium gens belli³ perita erat. Nostratium pauci litterarum³ ignari sunt. Civitatum fundamenta infirma sunt, si cives belli pacisque artium³ rudes sunt. Arpinatium cives erant Marius et Cicero; Marius belli artium, Cicero pacis artium gnarus erat. Optimatum in civitate auctoritas magna est, si juris atque eloquentiae consulti sunt. Noctium tenēbrae viatoribus viae inscis perniciosae sunt.

¹ § 88, 2.

² § 88, 7.

³ § 88, 3.

There are many (complures) kinds of (gen.) dogs. In (abl.) the month [of] November great flocks of *birds of passage* (volūcris adventūtia) return from our regions to warmer. Upon (in) the Thames, the Weser and the Elbe there is a great number of great ships and small boats. The people of the Samnites were very brave. Boys of a lively genius and happy memory apply themselves zealously to (in) the study of literature and the arts. The fame of Marius and Cicero, *citizens of Arpinum* (Arpinas), was different.

8. Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Capra, ae, <i>f. goat.</i>	Achilles, is, <i>m. Achil-</i>	obscūrus, a, um, <i>ob-</i>
custodia, ae, <i>f. guar-</i>	les.	scure.
dianship.	aedes, ium, <i>f. house.</i>	Romānus, a, um, <i>Ro-</i>
miseriordia, ae, <i>f.</i>	celeritas, ātis, <i>f. swift-</i>	man.
pity.	ness.	ingens, ntis, <i>very</i>
nundinae, arum, <i>f.</i>	consuetūdo, īnis, <i>f.</i>	great, immense.
market, fair.	practice, intercourse.	prudens, ntis, <i>wise,</i>
libēri, orum, <i>m. chil-</i>	cacūmen, īnis, <i>n. top.</i>	intelligent; c. gen.
dren (in relation to	culmen, īnis, <i>n. top.</i>	versed in.
their parents).	fortitūdo, īnis, <i>f. bra-</i>	frequento 1. <i>I fre-</i>
consilium, i, <i>n. mea-</i>	very. [rents.	quent. [nest.
sure.	parentes, ium, <i>m. pa-</i>	nidifico 1. <i>I make a</i>
fatum, i, <i>n. fate, for-</i>	idonēus, a, um, <i>fit-</i>	tego 3. <i>I cover.</i>
tune.	ted.	minus, <i>adv. less.</i>

Caprae montium cacumina petunt. Multi corvi nidificant in altarium arcium culminibus. Vocum multa genera sunt. Glirium magnus est numerus. Ingens murium numerus in horreis est. Strigium vox ingrata est. Romanarum cohortium fortitudo ab omnibus scriptoribus praedicatur. Parentium in liberos amor est magnus. Compedium ferrearum onus grave est. Pedum celeritate¹ Achilles insignis erat. Penatum custodiae aedes committuntur.

Hominum juris prudentium consiliis civitas regitur. Alacrium discipulorum ingenia ad litterarum studia sunt idonea. Celebrium urbium nundinae a multis hominibus frequentantur. Celorum equorum crura sunt tenera. Amicorum laboris nostri consortium consuetudine delectamur. Hominum omnis amicorum consuetudinis² exsortum* fortuna misera est. Degenrum filiorum patres misericordia³ nostra digni sunt. Supplicum preces exaudi. Urbs plena est locupletum hominum. Hominum artificum opera laudantur.

* Or exsortium is doubtful.

¹ § 31, 4. b).

² § 33, 6.

³ § 91, 4. c).

mus. *Praecipitum* montium juga nubibus teguntur. *Ancipitum* fatōrum via est obscura.

The captives are pressed by (abl.) the load of hard fetters. On (ad) the banks of the Rhine (Rhenus, i) is a great number of ancient (vetustus) castles (arx). The works of the ancient (vetus) artists are worthy of admiration. Human life is full of (gen.) uncertain (anceps) fortunes. The way leads over (per) the ridge of steep rocks. The friendship of men sharing in (consors) all our toils is a very great good. Great presents from (gen.) the rich often delight our minds less than small presents from (gen.) the poor.

9. *Words to be learned and Examples for translation.*

Divitiae, arum, <i>f.</i> certāmen, ĩnis, <i>n.</i> con-	riches.	<i>test, fight.</i>	moderātus, a, um, <i>tem-</i>
			<i>perate.</i>
Centaurus, i, <i>m.</i> cen-	levitas, ātis, <i>f.</i> levity.	immoderātus, a, um,	
taur.	pavo, ōnis, <i>m.</i> pea-	intemperate.	
donum, i, <i>n.</i> gift, pre-	cock.	optabliis, e, <i>desirable.</i>	
sent.	sors, rtis, <i>f.</i> lot.	vigeo 2. <i>I am strong,</i>	
oraculum, i, <i>n.</i> oracle, Delphicus, a, um, <i>Del-</i>	phic.	active, vigorous.	
announcement.		ut, as, even as,—ita,	
		so, thus.	

Cicūrum elephantōrum ars magna est. *Bicorpōrum* Centauro-
rum multa a poētis narrantur certamina. *Discolōrum* pavōnum
pennae pulchrae sunt. Homīnum virtūtis *compōtum* vita laudabī-
lis est. Puerōrum *impubērum* levitas a praeceptōre coercetur. Ut
homīnum ratiōnis *participum* vita moderāta est, ita homīnum ratiō-
nis *expertium* immoderāta est. Homīnum gloriā suae *superstitum*
sors non est optabilis. *Pubērum* et corpōra et animi vigent. *Pru-*
dentiorum homīnum consilio parēre debemus. *Plurium* homīnum
animi divitias magis, quam virtūtem expētunt. *Complurium* dis-
cipulorum ingenia a litterārum studio abhorrent. *Poēmātis* de-
lectāmur. Oracula Delphica similia sunt obscuris *aenigmātis*.

Who is not delighted by (abl.) the poems of Horace? The number of men surviving their fame is very great. Obey, O boys, the precepts of wise and virtuous (= possessed of virtue, *compos*) men! Many of the tame elephants walk upon (per) a rope. As we pronounce (praedico) happy the life of those sharing in friendship, so we deplore the life of those destitute of friendship. The announcements of the ancient prophets were often ambiguous (anceps) and like enigmas.

EXERCISE XXII.

1. Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Assyrīa, ae, <i>f. Assyria.</i>	aeternus, a, um, <i>eternal.</i>	superbus, a, um, <i>proud, magnificent.</i>
senātor, ōris, <i>m. senator.</i>	amoenus, a, um, <i>pleasant.</i>	existīmo 1. <i>I judge, regard as.</i>
scipīo, ōnis, <i>m. a staff.</i>	eburnēus, a, um, <i>of ivory, ivory.</i>	judico 1. <i>I judge, regard as.</i>
legiō, ōnis, <i>f. a legion.</i>	regiūs, a, um, <i>royal.</i>	nomīno 1. <i>I call.</i>
imāgo, īnis, <i>f. image.</i>	resōnus, a, um, <i>reverberating.</i>	habeo 2. <i>I have, regard as.</i>
insigne, is, <i>n. badge.</i>		maneo 2. <i>I remain.</i>
caput, itis, <i>n. head, chief city.</i>		

(Compare §§ 81, 2, 89, 7. a.)

Pavo vocatur superbus. Echo resōna ab Horatio vocis imāgo vocatur. Hirundinem vocamus garrūlam. Legiōnum Romanarum glōriā manet aeterna. Babylon, caput Assyriae, nominatur superba. Mala consuetūdo saepe hominibus existit perniciosā. Scipīo eburnēus insigne regium habētur. Regiōnes montium plenas iudicamus amoenas. Senatorum ordo existimatur sanctus.

The peacock we call proud. Horace calls the reverberating echo the image of the voice. Swallows are called loquacious. Babylon, the chief city of Assyria, writers call proud. The citizens regard the order of senators as sacred. The ivory staff we regard as a royal badge. Avoid, O boys, a bad practice! The bravery of the Roman legions is extolled by (ab) writers. This region is very pleasant.

2. Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Pugna navālis, <i>naval battle.</i>	natio, ōnis, <i>f. nation.</i>	extrēmus, a, um, <i>outermost, last.</i>
vacca, ae, <i>f. cow.</i>	origo, īnis, <i>f. origin.</i>	firmus, a, um, <i>firm.</i>
fluvius, i, <i>m. river.</i>	papilio, ōnis, <i>m. butterfly.</i>	modestus, a, um, <i>modest.</i>
vitūlus, i, <i>m. calf.</i>	Carthāgo, īnis, <i>f. Carthage.</i>	opulentus, a, um, <i>powerful, rich.</i>
vitulinus, a, um, <i>of a calf.</i>	Croto, ōnis, <i>m. Croton.</i>	pallidus, a, um, <i>pale, livid.</i>
agger, ēris, <i>m. a rampart.</i>	amplus, a, um, <i>spacious, extended, liberal.</i>	sapidus, a, um, <i>sapid.</i>
honor, ōris, <i>m. honor, post of honor.</i>		ruber, bra, brum, <i>red.</i>
procēs, um, <i>m. chief men.</i>	conspiciūs, a, um, <i>conspicuous.</i>	hostilis, e, <i>hostile.</i>
		effundo, <i>I pour forth.</i>

Croto erat clarus Carthâgo opulenta erat. Caro vitulina tenëra est. Multarum nationum ac gentium origo obscûra est. A deo omnia originem suam ducunt. Fluvius super extrêmum marginem effunditur. Portae cardines sunt firmi. Harpagone ferreo in pugna navali hostiles naves petuntur. Discolores papiliones sunt pulchri.

Milo (Milo, ònis) was a citizen of the renowned Croton. Writers call Carthage powerful. The origin of the Roman nation is obscure. Upon (in) the remotest margin of the river there are many trees. The hinges of the door are iron. The variegated butterfly is beautiful. The grappling hooks are of iron.

Multae procerae arbores in silva sunt. Procères honörum dignitate conspicui sunt. Sorores fratribus carae sunt. Marmor est splendidum. Corda rubra sunt. Camporum aequor amplum est. Ador matürum est. Mores hominum varii sunt. Dura cöte acümus secürim ferrëam. Filia a parentibus amplä dote donatur. Durum est òs. Juvënis òs modestum esse debet. Ver nobis gratum est. Multae lintres in fluvio sunt. Mater libëris cara est. Garruli sunt ansëres. Hostes circa urbem aggërem altum extrüunt. Cadavëra sunt pallida. Zingiber est sapidum. Vacca vitulo turgida ubëra praebet.

High trees surround the house of my father. The udder of the cow is swollen. The corpse is pale. A high mound is built by (ab) the enemies around the city. The heart is red. The bones are hard. The countenances of men are various. The goose is cackling (= loquacious). The good customs of men are praised, the bad are censured. With delight we take a walk in (abl.) the spring over (per) the extended surface of the pleasant plains. Splendid marble adorns the palace (= house) of the king. Whetstones are hard. The parents present the daughter a liberal dowry. The pleasant spring exhilarates our minds. On (in) the pond in (gen.) our garden, are many and beautiful boats.

3. Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Camelus, i, m. camel.	domesticus, a, um, domestic.	pretiosus, a, um, precious, costly.
condimentum, i, n. seasoning.	mestic, private.	
membrum, i, n. member.	fessus, a, um, wearied.	crudelis, e, cruel.
paries, etis, m. wall (of a house).	honestus, a, um, honorable.	excölo 3. I cultivate.
	nocturnus, a, um, nocturnal.	infligo 3. (with dat.), I inflict upon.
celebritas, atis, f. course, multitude.	pilosus, a, um, covered with hair, hairy.	

Sorōres meae spinthēra aurēa habent. Iter est longum. Siser est dulce. Silēra sunt utilia. Camēlus habet tubēra pilōsa. Subēra sunt dura. Piper est acre. Papavēra rubra sunt pulchra. Cicēra parva sunt. Acēra sunt dura. Crudēlis homo equo dura verbēra fusti infligit. Orator non intra domesticos pariētes excolitur, sed in luce vitae et hominum celebritāte. Aera varia sunt. Campi segēte laetā ornantur. Compēdes durae sunt. Labōrum requies grata est. Quiēte nocturnā hominū fessa membra recreantur. Merces labōrum honesta existimatur.

The sharp pepper and sapid ginger are regarded as the seasonings of food (plur.) The walls of this house are high. The brass is splendid. The carrot is sweet. The cork tree is hard. Chick-peas are round. The ass endures hard blows patiently. Maple trees are hard. My sister has a golden bracelet. Long is the way through precepts, short and effectual through examples. The red poppy is beautiful. The willow is useful. Recompense for (gen.) labor (pl.) we regard as honorable. Nocturnal rest refreshes the wearied limbs of men. Iron fetters press tender feet. Sleep is an agreeable (gratus, a, um) relaxation from (gen.) cares. The hump of the camel is hairy. Joyful crops adorn the plains of the extended country. The willow is useful.

EXERCISE XXIII.

1. *Words to be learned and Examples for translation.*

Nummus, i, <i>m. money.</i>	angustus, a, um, <i>narrow, contracted.</i>	sordidus, a, um, <i>foul.</i>
aurum, i, <i>n. gold.</i>	flavus, a, um, <i>yellow,</i>	sacer, cra, crum, <i>sacred.</i>
Albis, is, <i>m. Elbe.</i>	flaxen.	gesto 1. <i>I carry, bear.</i>
Tibēris, is, <i>m. Tiber.</i>	latus, a, um, <i>broad.</i>	cresco 3. <i>I grow.</i>
anas, ātis, <i>f. a duck.</i>	limpīdus, a, um, <i>clear.</i>	volvo 3. <i>I roll; revolve, I am rolled,</i>
cassis, īdis, <i>f. helmet.</i>	occultus, a, um, <i>concealed.</i>	roll.
Venus, ēris, <i>f. Venus.</i>		

Anas timida est. Veritas auro digna est. Albis latus habet ripas fecundas. Tibēris est flavus. Aprilis sacer est Venēri. As Romanus parvus est nummus. Adāmas durissimus est. Vās est aurēum. Imperātor aurēam cassidem gestat. Multae aves pulchre canunt. Venātor in alto colle occultos casses tendit. In patris horto multi cucumēres crescunt. Amnis est limpīdus. Amnis altus multos alit pisces. Callis est angustus. Multi parvi

vermes in sordīdo pulvĕre volvuntur. Valīdi sunt portārum postes. Vectis est ferrĕus.

The Elbe is broad. The worm is small. These paths are very narrow. Many fish are in that clear river. That gate has strong posts. The ducks are timid. The general wears (= bears) a golden neck-chain. This river is broad and deep. The cucumbers in the garden of my father, are ripe. Diamonds are very hard. The rivers are clear. These cucumbers are ripe. These hills are very high. Upon that high hill concealed nets are spread by the hunter. The helmet of the general is *of gold* (= golden). These vases are very beautiful. In this wood are many birds. These bolts are *of iron* (= iron). Old age is strong, youth weak. Anvils are *of iron* (= iron). These pools are very deep.

2. Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Bibliothēca, ae, <i>f.</i> <i>library.</i>	Juno, ōnis, <i>f.</i> <i>Juno.</i> ovis, is, <i>f.</i> <i>sheep.</i>	universus, a, um, <i>the</i> <i>whole.</i>
chorda, ae, <i>f.</i> <i>chord.</i>	densus, a, um, <i>dense.</i>	asper, ĕra, ĕrum, <i>rough.</i>
columba, ae, <i>f.</i> <i>dove.</i>	excelsus, a, um, <i>lofty.</i>	
ecclesia, ae, <i>f.</i> <i>church.</i>	ferus, a, um, <i>wild.</i>	collustro 1. <i>I illumi-</i> <i>nate.</i>
India, ae, <i>f.</i> <i>India.</i>	frondōsus, a, um, <i>leafy.</i>	dilacĕro 1. <i>I tear in</i> <i>pieces.</i>
rosa, ae, <i>f.</i> <i>rose.</i>	ignĕus, a, um, <i>fiery.</i>	excĕto 1. <i>I excite,</i> <i>raise.</i>
musicus, i, <i>m.</i> <i>musi-</i> <i>cian.</i>	lapidĕus, a, um, <i>of</i> <i>stone.</i>	converto 3. <i>I turn</i> <i>around.</i>
Vesuvius, i, <i>m.</i> <i>Vesu-</i> <i>vius.</i>	opĭmus, a, um, <i>fat.</i>	evōmo 3. <i>I emit, belch</i> <i>forth.</i>
sarmentum, i, <i>n.</i> <i>twig,</i> <i>branch.</i>	rapĭdus, a, um, <i>rapid.</i>	tango 3. <i>I touch.</i>
solum, i, <i>n.</i> <i>the ground.</i>	tortus, a, um, <i>twisted.</i>	
Apollo, ĭnis, <i>m.</i> <i>Apollo.</i>	triticĕus, a, um, <i>of</i> <i>wheat, wheaten.</i>	

Leo tenĕram ovem ungue acūto dilacĕrat. Sanguis ruber est. Miles ensem ferrĕum gestat. Torquis est aurĕus. Sentes aspĕri sunt. Scrobis est altus. Panis triticĕus est dulcis. Universus terrārum orbis sole collustratur. Mensis Junius a Junōne nomen habet. Occultus est canālis. Lapĭdes sunt duri. Ignis magnus in monte alto excitatur. Follis est plenus venti. Fustis est durus. Funis tortus est. Hostes in fines nostros irrumpunt. Mors omnium malorum certus finis est. E silvis multi sarmentōrum fascēs portantur. Poĕtae Apollĭni flavos crines tribūunt. Vesuvius ignĕos cinĕres evōmit. Caules tenĕri sunt. Terra circum axem suum summā celeritāte convertitur.

The teeth of the lion are sharp. The tender sheep are torn in

pieces by (ab) the lions. Man has red blood. Axle-trees are round. The sword is sharp. This cabbage is tender. From Vesuvius, fiery ashes are belched forth. Avoid ye the rough thorn-bushes. The end of life is uncertain. The soldiers defend our borders against (contra) the enemies. Flaxen hair (plur.) is given to Apollo by (ab) the poets. This bread is good, that bad. The ropes are twisted. The sun illuminates the whole circle of the world. The clubs are hard. The month [of] June is very pleasant. The bellows are full of wind (gen.). The enemies raise a great fire in the city. The canals are concealed. High stones surround that way. Bundles [of twigs] *bound with laurel* (laureatus, a, um), with the Romans, were a badge of a victorious (victor, ōris) general.

Nox est nigra. Leges sunt justae. In excelso montis apice est turris alta. Pulcres molesti vexant columbam. Magnus avium grex petit frutices frondosos. Vervēces opimi sunt. Timidos sorices petunt avidi sorices. In India sunt multi bombyses. Traduces tenēros solo insērimus. Murex est pretiosus. Varices sanguinis pleni sunt. Musicus docto pollice tangit chordas. Oryges sunt velocissimi. Onyx est pulcherrimus. Alti sunt ecclesiae fornices. In bibliothēca regis magnus optimorum codicum numerus est. Rosae calyx pulcher est. Calyx est plenus vini.

The cups are full of wine (gen.). The nights are dark (= black). Just laws are salutary to the state. My father has many books. On (in) the plains are many flocks of (gen.) sheep. The shrubs are leafy. In the church are high arches. Onyxes are very beautiful. Silk-worms are very useful. The varix is full of blood (gen.). Vine-branches are tender. Purple-fishes are very costly. Field-mice are very timid. Husband-men have many wethers. The depressed (pressus, a, um) thumb was a sign of favor (favor, ōris) to the Romans. The trunks of trees are *full of branches* (= branchy, ramōsus, a, um). The gazelle is very swift. The wealthy husbandmen nourish many flocks of (gen.) sheep.

Nubes sunt nigrae. Palumbes sunt timidi. Vepres sunt densi. Hiems est aspēra. Limpidus fons in alto monte est. Super rapidum torrentem pons lapideus ducit. Omnes ferae bestiae duros et acutos dentes habent. Durus est chalybs. Multi nautae ab extrēmo oriente ad extrēmum occidentem navigant. Rudentes torti sunt. Neptūnus magnum tridentem gestat.

The cloud is black. The wood-pigeon is timid. The cable is twisted. Dense brambles surround the clear fountain. This bridge is of stone. Many wares are carried (vehēre) by (ab)

the traders, from the remotest east to (ad) the remotest west, and from the remotest west to the remotest east. The teeth of wild beasts are hard and sharp. Torrents are rapid. The rough winter is disagreeable. Clear fountains are upon that high mountain. Steel is very hard.

EXERCISE XXIV.

Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Liber, bri, <i>m. book.</i>	Atticus, a, um, <i>Attic.</i>	pavidus, a, um, <i>shy.</i>
lector, oris, <i>m. reader.</i>	dentatus, a, um,	rutilus, a, um, <i>fiery</i>
lepor, oris, <i>m. pleas-</i>	toothed.	red.
antry, jest.	festivus, a, um, <i>deli-</i>	mollis, e, <i>soft.</i>
Hannibal, alis, <i>m.</i>	cate.	perrodo 3. <i>I gnaw</i>
Hannibal. [ning.	jocosus, a, um, <i>face-</i>	through.
fulgur, uris, <i>n. light-</i>	tious.	

Calcaria sunt acuta. Sol igneus est. Sal est sapius. Sales Plauti, poetae comici Romanorum, sunt valde jocos. Splen tener est. Renes humidi sunt. Pecten est dentatus. Fulgur est rutilum. Hannibalis nomen est clarum. Furfur triticus est mollissimus. Vultures saevi unguibus dilacerant turtures pavidos. Juvenum corpora sunt valida. Timidos lepores venator quaerit in silvis, festivos lepores lector in libris. Mures parvi saepe validos muros perrodunt.

The sapid salt serves (= is) for many dishes (= foods) for seasoning. Attic wit (plur.) is extolled by writers. Vultures are destructive to turtle-doves. Mice are very small. Turtle-doves and wood-pigeons are very shy. Hares are very swift. The warm sun illuminates the whole circle of the earth. Combs are toothed.

EXERCISE XXV.

1. *Words to be learned and Examples for translation.*

Anus, us, <i>old woman.</i>	marmorus, a, um, <i>of</i>	urbanus, a, um, <i>of the</i>
nurus, us, <i>daughter-</i>	marble, marble.	city.
in-law.	rusticus, a, um, <i>of the</i>	certo 1. <i>I contend.</i>
socrus, us, <i>mother-in-</i>	country.	aut, or ; aut — aut,
law.		either — or.

Magnificam regis domum amplae et marmoræe ornant porticus. Tribus sunt aut urbanae, aut rusticae. In silva sunt multae vestustae et altae quercus. Anus sunt garrulae. Socribus carae sunt nurus bonae. Puella acutam acum perita manu regit. Cum rusticis tribubus certant urbanae.

The magnificent palace of the king is adorned with (abl.) spacious and marble porticos. The royal palaces are surrounded by (abl.) high pines. The portico of the royal palace is very magnificent. Dogs guard our houses. The king is building (= builds) a very magnificent palace. The Ides divide the month.

PROMISCUOUS EXAMPLES FROM ALL THE DECLENSIONS.

2. Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Anio, ēnis, <i>m. the</i>	jēcūr, jecōris or jeci-	vis, <i>f. power, force,</i>
Anio (a river).	nōris, <i>n. liver.</i>	quantity, (forms
aquila, ae, <i>f. eagle.</i>	Jupiter, Jovis, <i>m. Ju-</i>	only acc. vim and
insidiae, arum, <i>f. am-</i>	puter (abl. Jove).	abl. vi; pl. vires,
bush, snares.	nix, nīvis, <i>f. snow</i>	powers, virium,
petulantia, ae, <i>f. li-</i>	(abl. e).	etc.).
centiousness, way-	pectus, ōris, <i>n. breast.</i>	clausus, a, um, <i>shut</i>
wardness.	Mars, tis, <i>m. Mars.</i>	up.
Mercurius, i, <i>m. Mer-</i>	sedes, is, <i>f. a seat.</i>	contentus, a, um, (c.
cury.	sēnex, sēnis, <i>old, old</i>	abl.), <i>contented.</i>
rusticus, i, <i>m. farmer,</i>	man, (abl. sēne; pl. sēnes, sēnum,	promptus, a, um,
rustic.	etc.).	ready.
pratium, i, <i>n. meadow.</i>	supellex, ectilis, <i>f.</i>	viridis, e, <i>green.</i>
bilis, is, <i>f. bile.</i>	household-furniture,	compleo 2. <i>I fill.</i>
bos, bōvis, <i>c. ox, cow;</i>	utensils (abl. -e.	tumeo 2. <i>I swell.</i>
pl. bōves, boum,	gen. pl. -ium).	pasco 3. <i>I pasture.</i>
bobus or bubus.		

Sapiens parvā supellectile est contentus. Divites magnam habent copiam supellectilium. Juvenilis aetas viget corpōris viribus. In sene valde displicet petulantia. Hieme terra nivibus completur. A Jove coelum, terrae et maria reguntur. Jecinōra saepe tument bile amārā. Rustici multos boum greges alunt. Agricolae bobus agros arant. Multi homines aliud clausum in pectore habent, aliud promptum in lingua. Primus hebdomadis dies appellatur dies Lunae, alter dies Martis, tertius dies Mercurii, quartus dies Jovis, quintus dies Venēris, septimus dies Solis. Aniēnis ripae sunt fecundae.

The powers of the lion are great. To Jupiter the eagle is

sacred There are various kinds of house-furniture (pl.). Keep, O boys, in (abl.) memory, the precepts of wise old men. Modest manners (= customs) please in the boy, the young man and the old man. In the months November and December the clouds discharge a great quantity (vis) of (gen.) rain (plur.) and snow. In the liver is the seat of anger. Lions prepare snares for cows. Upon (in) the green meadows are pastured a great herd of (gen.) cows.

2. *Words to be learned and Examples for translation.*

Praemium, i, n. re-ward.	vitiositas, ātis, f. vice.	appello 1. I call.
principium, i, n. beginning.	casus, ūs, m. fall, calamity, chance.	lavo 1. I wash.
vinculum, i, n. bond, chain.	consensus, ūs, m. agreement.	immineo 2 I threaten.
hebdōmas, ādis, f. week.	ardūus, a, um, difficult.	eligo 3. I choose.
		quotidie, adv. daily.
		autem, conj. but.
		an (in questions), or.

Certus amicus in re incerta cernitur. Manus manum lavat. Honos praemium virtutis est. Mors propter incertos casus quotidie nobis imminet. Omnium rerum a deo immortalī principia ducuntur. Nullum est certius amicitiae vinculum, quam consensus et societas consiliorum et voluntatum. Duae sunt vitae viae: virtutis et vitiositatis; alterātram eligere debes, o puer!

Firm (= certain) friends are seen in an uncertain thing. There are two ways of life, of virtue and of vice; the way of the one (alter) is troublesome and difficult, but leads to a peaceful life; the way of the other (alter) is easy and agreeable, but leads to a wretched life; which way (utra via = which of the two ways) dost thou choose, [that] of virtue, or (an) [that] of vice?

EXERCISE XXVI.

1. *Words to be learned and Examples for translation.*

Absum, abfui, abesse, I am absent, removed from.	dat.), to be in, present at (something).	prosum, profui, prod-esse, I am useful, benefit, (see Rem. 1).
adsum, affui, adesse, I am present.	praesum, fui, esse, I am before, preside over, attend to.	concilio 1. I unite.
intersum, fui, esse, (c.		fera, ac, f. wild beast.

pugna, ae, <i>f.</i> fight, battle.	magistrate, magis- tracy.	quamdiu, <i>adv.</i> and <i>conj.</i> how long; so (as) long as.
arma, orum, <i>n.</i> arms.	foris, <i>adv.</i> without.	
oratio, ōnis, <i>f.</i> speech, discourse.	heri, <i>adv.</i> yesterday.	ubi, <i>adv.</i> where.
magistratus, ūs, <i>m.</i>	longe, <i>adv.</i> far.	dum, <i>conj.</i> while.
	perēgre, <i>adv.</i> abroad.	nisi, <i>conj.</i> unless.
		quum, <i>conj.</i> when, as.

Deus omnibus locis adest. Parvi pretii sunt foris arma, nisi est consilium domi. Contemnuntur ii, qui nec sibi, nec alteri prosunt. Ut magistratibus¹ leges, ita populo praesunt magistratus. Ratio et oratio conciliant inter se homines, neque ulla re longius absumus a natura ferarum. Ego lactus sum, tu tristris es. Si sorte vestra contenti estis, beati estis.

Dum ego, tu et amicus in schola eramus, sorores nostrae in horto erant. Quum tu et Carolus heri domi nostrae eratis, ego peregre eram. Quamdiu tu et frater tuus domi² nostrae eratis, tu laetus eras, sed frater tuus tristis erat. Quamdiu tu et pater aberatis, ego et frater tristes eramus.

Cur heri in schola non fuisti? Quia cum patre peregre fui. Quamdiu tu et pater tuus domo² abfuistis? Sex menses³ abfuimus. Cur milites nostri pugnae non interfuerunt? Quia longius abfu-erunt. Ubi heri fueras, quum domi tuae eram?

I am useful to thee, and thou to me. Wherefore are you sad? We are joyful. If thou art contented with thy lot, thou art happy. While I was in the school, my sister was in the garden. As yesterday thou wast at home, I was abroad. Why were (perf.) you not in the school yesterday? Because we were (perf.) abroad. How long hast thou been absent from (abl.) home? Ten months (acc.) have I been absent. Where had you been yesterday, as we were in your house? While we and you were in the school, our sisters were in the garden. While you and Charles were in our house yesterday, we were abroad.

2. Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Desum, defui, deesse, I am wanting.	periculum, i, <i>n.</i> danger.	actas, atis, <i>f.</i> age, generation.
obsum, fui, esse, I am against, injure.	praedium, i, <i>n.</i> farm.	nemo (inis), no-body,
occupo 1. I take possession of, seize.	adolescens, tis, <i>m.</i> young man, youth.	no one.
		aegratus, a, um, sick.

¹ § 90, R. 5.

² § 92, R. 3.

³ § 89, 5.

avārus, a, um, *avaricious*. postēa, *adv. afterwards*. propterēa, *adv. for this reason*.
 [cible. wards.
 invictus, a, um, *invincible*. nuper, *adv. lately*. quo—eo (with comparative), *the—so much the*.
 atroc, ōcis, *terrible*, repente, *adv. suddenly*.
 bloody. ly.
 antēa, *adv. before*.

Quandīū felix eris, multi tibi¹ erunt amici. Tota civitas in summa lactitia fuērat, quum repente ingens terror omnium animos occūpat. Pugna fuit atrocissima, propterēa quod utriusque exercitus milites fortissimi fuērant. Ante belli initium in urbe fuerāmus. Demosthēnis aetāte multi oratōres magni et clari fuērunt, et antēa fuērant, nec postēa defuērunt. Ante tres annos apud amicum fui, in cuius praedio nuper per duo menses fuerātis. Haec res non profuit nobis,² sed obfuit. Quo minus honōris apud Romanos erat poētis, eo minōra studia fuērunt. Si quis virtūtis compos erit, semper beātus erit. Quandīū sorte mea contentus ero, felix ero. Qualis in alios fuēris, tales hi in te erunt. Si in hac vita semper virtutis studiosi fuerimus, etiam post mortem beati erimus.

So long as you shall be fortunate, you will not want friends. The upright always benefit the upright. My enemies (*inimicus*) have not injured but benefited me, If men will be virtuous, they will be happy. So long as we shall be contented with our lot, we shall be happy. If men always shall have been virtuous, the reward of virtue will not be wanting to them.

RULE OF SYNTAX. In questions, to which the asker expects an answer by *yes* or *no*, the interrogative particle *ne* is attached to the word upon which the emphasis of the question is placed, as: *Fuistine heri in schola? wast thou in school yesterday?*

Erasne in schola, quum heri domi tuae eram? Eram. Miserne sapiens erit, quum pauper erit? Non erit. Lactusne, an tristis es? Unusne, an plures sunt mundi? Cur heri in schola non fuisti? Aegrōtusne fuisti? Non, sed quia cum patre peregre eram. Fuerasne nuper in horto nostro? Deeritne tibi hominum laus, si semper probus fuēris?

Were you in school, as* we were at your house yesterday?

* It seemed convenient to retain *as* in these exercises, somewhat in a German sense, in order to indicate a *definite past action* expressed either by the Imperf. or Pluperf., and also, in order to secure a meaning for *quum*, with these tenses, distinct from that of *dum* and *postquam*. See § 111.

¹ § 90, 1. b).

² § 90, 1. a).

Yes (= we were). Will the wise be unhappy, when they shall be poor? No (= they will not be). No one of (gen.) us is the very same in old-age, which he was (perf.) [as] a young man. Pelopidas was in (perf.) all dangers. Aristides was in (perf.) *the battle of Salamis* (pugna Salaminia). Poets not merely delight, but also benefit us.

Yesterday I was (perf.) at thy house, but thou wast abroad. The avaricious, in the abundance of all things, will be very poor. Thou, thy father and thy mother have benefited us much (multum). We, you and your sister were very joyful yesterday, as we were at your house. Were you yesterday abroad, as I was at your house? Yes (= we were). While my brother was in the garden, I was in the school. Were our soldiers in the battle? No (= they were not in it). We were (perf.) not at home yesterday, but abroad.

Our soul after death will be immortal. So long as we shall be contented with our fortune, we shall be happy. Where had you been yesterday, as I was at your house? We had been abroad. So long as thou hadst been fortunate, *thou hadst had* (= there had been to thee) many friends. The more modest thou shalt be, so much the more agreeable thou wilt be to men. If I shall benefit others, they [also] will benefit me.

As (qualis) I shall have been to (*in* with acc.) others, so (talis) they will be to me. If we shall have benefited others, they [also] will benefit us. If thou, in this life, shalt have zealously pursued virtue, thou shalt also, after death, be happy.

3. Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Cogito 1. <i>I think, reflect upon.</i>	nescius, a, um, ignorant; non sum nescius, <i>I know perfectly well.</i>	attentus, a, um, attentive.
dubito 1. <i>I doubt.</i>		praeteritus, a, um, past.
pondéro 1. <i>I weigh, consider.</i>	fectly well.	
provideo 2. <i>I foresee;</i>	parsimonia, ae, f. frugality.	cras, adv. to-morrow.
c. Dat. <i>look out for.</i>	mens, tis, f. state of mind.	parum, adv. too little.
intelligo 3. <i>I understand.</i>	vectigal, alis, n. tax, income.	prius, adv. previously.
repeto 3. <i>I run over.</i>	victor, oris, m. conqueror.	plane, adv. wholly.
scio 4. <i>I know.</i>		ne—quidem, not indeed, not even.
nescio 4. <i>I do not know.</i>		tum, then.
		non solum—sed etiam, not merely, but also.

RULE OF SYNTAX. In questions which depend upon a fore-

going sentence (*indirect* questions), the *subjunctive** is always used, as: *Narra mihi, ubi fuëris, relate to me, where thou hast been.*—In indirect questions the enclitic *ne* is translated by *whether*, as: *Dubïto, laetusne sis, I doubt, whether thou art joyful.*—For the succession of the tenses in interrogative and other subordinate sentences, see § 105.

Non sum nescius, qua mente tu et prius in nos fuëris, et nunc sis, et semper futurus sis. Non eram nescius, qua mente tu et prius in nos fuisses, et tum esses, et semper futurus esses. Qualis sit animus, ipse animus nescit. Deus non est nescius, qua mente quisque sit. Cogita, quantum nobis exempla bona prosint. Prae gaudio, ubi sim, nescio. Non intelligunt homines, quam magnum vectigal sit parsimonia. Non, quantum quisque prosit, sed quanti pretii quisque sit, pondëra. Quo quisque animo futurus sit, nescio. Incertus eram, profuturusne tibi essem. Saepe ne utile quidem est scire, quid futurum sit. Pecunia, honöres, valetudo quamdiu affutura sint, incertum est. Incertus eram, et ubi essëtis, et ubi fuissetis. Narro tibi, et ubi heri fuerimus, et ubi cras futuri simus. Dubitamus, fuerintne milites nostri in pugna laude digni. Dubium erat, civesne nostri, an hostes in illa pugna victöres fuissent. Dubium erat, profuissetne Alcibiädes patriae suae, an obfuisset.

What to-day is and yesterday was (*perf.*), we know; but what will be to-morrow, we know not. How long we shall be in this life, is uncertain. I knew perfectly well, both of what state of mind towards us you then were, and had been previously, and always would be (= were about to be). I rejoice, when I think, how much you have benefited the state, both now and before, and still will benefit [it]. It was uncertain, where the enemies were and had been, and where they would be.

Adestöte omnes animis,¹ qui adestis corporibus! Attenti este, discipuli! Homines mortis² memöres sunto. Contenti estöte sorte³ vesträ! Parum provident multi tempöri futüro, sed plane in diem vivunt. Vir prudens non solum praesentia curat, sed etiam praeterita mente repëtit et futüra ex praeteritis providet.

Scholars not merely with (*abl.*) the body (*plur.*), but also with the mind (*plur.*), should be in the school. Man should be mindful of death.

In school, you should be attentive, O scholars! Thou should-

* As the subjunctive form is not so extensively used in English as in Latin, the Subj. must often be translated into English by the forms of the Indic., as will be seen in the following examples.

¹ § 91, 6.

² § 88, 3.

³ § 91, 4. b).

est be contented with (abl.) thy lot! Men should always be mindful of the precepts of virtue.

EXERCISE XXVII.

1. Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Decerto 1. <i>I contend.</i>	ram navo (c. dat.),	interitus, ūs, m.	de-
elabōro 1. (in c. abl.),	I occupy myself with.	struction.	
<i>I labor (zealously).</i>	numēro 1. <i>I number.</i>	aptus, a, um, fitted.	
flo 1. <i>I blow, wave.</i>	opēra, ae, f. toil, labor.	placidus, a, um, gen-	
intro 1. (c. acc.), <i>I</i>	somnus, i, m. sleep.	tle.	
<i>go into, enter.</i>	ventus, i, m. wind.	vehemens, tis, violent.	
liber, ēra, ērum, free.	timor, ōris, m. fear.	potissimum, adv. es-	
libēro 1. <i>I deliver.</i>	cupīditas, ātis, f. de-	pecially.	
navo 1. <i>I pursue some-</i>	sire, passion.	quomōdo, in what	
<i>thing ardently; opē-</i>		manner, how.	

A) ACTIVE OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

Quum milites urbem intrabant, omnes cives timoris pleni erant. Quum in silva ambulabamus, vehemens ventus per altas quercus flabat. Quamdū tu in horto ambulabas, ego domi litteris operam navabam. Dum nos placidus somnus recreabat, vos vigilabatis. Quomodo is libero imperabit, qui non suis cupiditatibus imperat? Ad quas res aptissimi erimus, in iis potissimum elaborabimus. Quamdū eris felix, multos amicos numerabis. Bonos semper laudabo, improbos semper vituperabo. Si acriter armis decertabitis, o milites, patriam ab interitu liberabitis. Si virtutem amabitis, omnes boni te amabunt.

2. Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Compāro 1. <i>I pre-</i>	philosophia, ae, f. phi-	adhuc, adv. still.
<i>pare, acquire.</i>	losophy.	perpetuo, adv. contin-
conjūgo 1. <i>I join to-</i>	carcer, ēris, m. prison.	ually.
<i>gether, unite.</i>	narratio, ōnis, f. nar-	tanquam, as if, as.
devōco 1. <i>I call down.</i>	rative.	num (an interroga-
migro 1. <i>I migrate.</i>	rus, ruris, n. country;	tive word used
emigro 1. <i>I move out.</i>	ruri, in the country,	when a negative
evōlo 1. <i>I fly out</i>	rure, from the coun-	answer is expect-
<i>from, escape.</i>	try, acc. rus, into	ed), is it possible
interrōgo 1. <i>I ask.</i>	the country.	that?
observo 1. <i>I observe.</i>	jucundus, a, um, plea-	
	sant, agreeable.	

Ea est jucundissima amicitia, quam similitudo morum conjugavit. Vivunt ii, qui ex corporum vinculis, tanquam carcere, evolverunt. Socrâtes primus philosophiam devocavit e coelo. Quia semper virtutis praecepta observastis, magnam vobis¹ laudem comparastis. Cur per totam noctem vigilasti? Praeceptores meos semper amavi. Acrîter contra hostes pugnâvimus. Quum milites urbem intravêrant, ingens terror omnium civium animos occupabat. Narratio, quam mihi nuper narravêras, vehementer me delectavêrat. Quum exercitus hostilis urbem oppugnâverat, nos jam emigraverâmus. Si animum virtutibus² ornavêris, semper beatus eris. Ut alios homines tractaverîmus, ita hi nos tractabunt. Si quis te interrogavêrit, qualis sit animus, num dubia erit responsio? Si perpetuo in hac vita virtutem servaverîtis, etiam in altera vita beati eritis. Quum hostes agros devastavêrint, urbem ipsam oppugnâbunt. Quum ego rus³ migravêro, tu adhuc in urbe eris.

3. Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Recito 1. <i>I read to.</i>	Germânus, i, m. a	ostentatio, ônis, f. os-
revêco 1. <i>I recall.</i>	German.	tentation.
caussa, ae, f. <i>cause;</i>	supplicium, i, n. <i>capit-</i>	scelus, êris, n. <i>offence,</i>
abl. <i>caussâ</i> with	<i>tal punishment,</i> 2)	<i>crime.</i>
gen., <i>on account of.</i>	(any severe) <i>pun-</i>	quaestus, ûs, m. <i>gain.</i>
sophista, ae, m.	<i>ishment.</i>	diligenter, <i>adv. dili-</i>
<i>sophist.</i>	Atheniensis, is, m. <i>an</i>	<i>gently, carefully.</i>
Francogallus, i, m.	<i>Athenian.</i>	fortiter, <i>adv. bravely.</i>
<i>Frenchman.</i>	approbatio, ônis, f.	studiôse, <i>adv. zealous-</i>
	<i>approbation.</i>	<i>ly.</i>

How many has the fear of the divine punishment reclaimed (= recalled) from crimes! The Germans have fought bravely against the French (= Frenchmen). So long as we frequented school, we pursued literature diligently. The Athenians called those sophists, who for the sake of ostentation or gain pursued philosophy. To-morrow we will celebrate the birth-day of our father. So long as you shall be fortunate, you will number many friends. The more any one (quis) shall love virtue, so much the more peaceful he will be. The more zealously thou shalt occupy thyself with literature, so much the more agreeable wilt thou be to thy teachers. When [their] native country shall be in danger, the citizens will fight spiritedly against the enemies.

As thou shalt have treated others, so will they treat thee. We have always loved our teachers. Because thou hast always kept

¹ § 90, R. 1.

² § 91, 1. b).

³ § 92, R. 3.

the precepts of virtue, thou hast acquired for thyself great praise. As the hostile army were entering the city, all the citizens were full of (gen.) fear. You have fought spiritedly against the enemies. When we shall have migrated into the country, you will still be in the city. When the hostile army shall have laid waste the fields, it will assault the city itself. If you shall have adorned [your] souls with virtues, you will always be happy.

As the enemies had assaulted the city, a great part of the citizens had already moved out. While thou wast watching, me gentle sleep refreshed. While we were taking a walk in the garden, you occupied yourselves with literature. The whole day I have eagerly expected my friend. When the enemies shall have assaulted the city, the condition of the citizens will be very wretched. If I shall have carefully observed the precepts of virtue, the approbation of the good will never be wanting to me. Scarcely hadst thou read to me the letter of the friend, as he entered (perf.) my house (acc.). If thou shalt pursue literature diligently, I shall praise thee.

4. Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Opto 1. <i>I wish.</i>	rae mihi est, <i>I am</i>	utilitas, âtis, <i>f. advance.</i>
persâno 1. <i>I cure perfectly.</i>	anxious.	tage.
postûlo 1. <i>I demand.</i>	fabûla, ae, <i>f. fable.</i>	statio, ônis, <i>f. post.</i>
redâmo 1. <i>I love in return.</i>	opera, ae, <i>f. pains ;</i>	anîmal, âlis, <i>n. living being.</i>
rogo 1. <i>I entreat, ask.</i>	opĕram do, <i>I take pains, occupy myself with.</i>	rectus, a, um, <i>right ;</i>
supĕro 1. <i>I surpass, overcome.</i>	condiscipûlus, i, <i>m. fellow-student.</i>	conscientia recta, <i>a good conscience.</i>
evĕnit 4. <i>it happens.</i>	medicus, i, <i>m. physician.</i>	persaepe, <i>adv. very often.</i>
conscientia, ae, <i>f. consciousness, conscience.</i>	cian. [<i>ledge.</i>	ut (with Subj.), <i>that in order that. See Synt. § 107.</i>
cura, ae, <i>f. care ;</i>	cognitio, ônis, <i>f. knowledge.</i>	
	honestas, âtis, <i>f. uprightness.</i>	

(For the Mode of the verb with *ut* and *ne*, see Synt. § 107, 1.)

Persaepe evĕnit, ut utilitas cum honestâte certet. Vide, ne pecces contra virtutis praecepta. Omnes parentes optant, ut filii littĕris diligenter opĕram navent. Ita vivĕre debĕmus, ut in omni re rectam conscientiam servĕmus. Omnibus viribus elaborâte, ut littĕras diligenter tractĕtis. Medicus omnem curam adhĭbet, ut aegrôtum persânet. Nihil magis mihi curae est, quam ut animum virtutibus ornem. Amo te, ut me redâmes. Cura, ut condiscipûlos bonis moribus et diligentîâ supĕres. Dux imperâvit, ut mili-

tes stationes suas servarent. Quamdū scholam frequentabāmus, nihil magis nobis curae erat, quam ut animos bonarum rerum cognitiōne ornarēmus. Heri ambulābam, ut tristem animum exhilarārem. Exercitus noster acerrime pugnābat, ut urbem ab interitu servāret.

Every living being *looks to this* (id agit), that it may preserve itself. You ought to take pains, that you acquire for yourselves the praise of the good. You love us, in order that we may love you in return. I labored (perf.) with all [my] powers, in order that my teachers might praise me. The laws of this state demand, that the citizens obey them (sibi). I entreat thee, that thou wouldst relate to me the fable. I pursue literature very zealously, in order that I may delight my parents. We ought always so to live, that we may observe the precepts of virtue.

We fought very spiritedly, in order that we might save our native country from destruction. You were more anxious for nothing, than that you might adorn [your] souls with virtues. The general commanded (perf.), that the army might enter the city (acc.). So long as I frequented the school, I labored with all [my] powers, that I might adorn [my] mind with (abl.) the knowledge of literature.

5. Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Accelēro 1. <i>I hasten.</i>	gusto 1. <i>I taste, relish.</i>	tioscholastica, scho-
advento 1. <i>I approach,</i>	perturbo 1. <i>I throw</i>	lastic instruction.
arrive.	into confusion.	multitudo, ōnis, f.
castigo 1. <i>I reprove,</i>	specto 1. <i>I behold, con-</i>	multitude.
punish.	template.	oppugnatio, ōnis, f.
colloco 1. (in aliqua	vasto 1. <i>I lay waste.</i>	attacking.
re), <i>I place, bestow</i>	mitto 3. <i>I send, des-</i>	ortus, ūs, m. rising.
(upon something).	patch.	risus, ūs, m. laugh.
congrēgo 1. <i>I assem-</i>	uva, ae, f. <i>grape.</i>	praepropere, adv. pre-
ble.	argumentum, i, n. con-	cipitately.
delibēro 1. <i>I delibe-</i>	argumentum, i, n. con-	religiōse, adv. scrupu-
rate.	auxilium, i, n. <i>aid.</i>	lously.
explico 1. <i>I explain.</i>	institutio, ōnis, f. <i>in-</i>	ubi, where; when, so
	struction; institu-	(as) soon as.

RULE OF SYNTAX. The conjunction *quin*, with the meaning *that*, takes the *subjunctive* after: non dubito, *I do not doubt*, nemo dubitat, *nobody doubts*, dubium non est, *it is not doubtful*, and quis dubitat? *who doubts?* See Syntax § 108, 3.

Non est dubium, quin cives, ubi patria in pericūlo futūra sit,

fortiter pugnātūrī sint. Quis dubitat, quin e scholasticā institutione pulcherrimus ad puēros redundatūrus sit fructus? Dubium non est, quin bonorum animi post mortem in sedem beatorum migrātūrī sint. Non dubito, quin milites nostri hostes superavērīnt. Non dubitābam, quin vos patriam a servitūte liberātūrī essētis. Cui dubium erat, quin exercitus noster omnes labōres et aerumnas facile toleratūrus esset? Quis dubitat, quin Hannibal contra Romanos fortissime pugnāvērīt? Non dubitabitis, quin ego vos semper amavērīm. Quis dubitat, quin bonos semper laudaverimus, malos semper vituperaverimus? Non est dubium, quin in omni vitæ conditione fidem servaritis. Non dubite, quin littēris maximam opēram navāris. Nemo dubitābat, quin hostes urbem expugnāvissent. Nemīni civium dubium erat, quin pro patriae libertate acerrime pugnāvissētis. Nemo dubitābat, quin omnem opēram in eo collocavissēmus, ut hostes superarēmus. Quum hostes urbem oppugnābant, non erat dubium, quin ingens terror omnium civium animos occupavisset. Nemo dubitābat, quin tu risum illum excitasses. Nemīni eorum qui adērant, dubium erat, quin recte de illius libri argumento judicavissē.

It is doubtful to no one of those who are present, that concerning (de) the character of that man, thou hast judged correctly. Nobody doubts, that the enemies have taken the city. It is not doubtful, that from scholastic instruction the fairest advantages (= fruits) redound to the young. Who doubts, that we shall deliver the land from servitude? Nobody doubted, that all citizens, so soon as their native country should be in danger, would fight bravely. Who doubts, that you have raised a laugh? Nobody doubts, that our army will endure all the toils and hardships of war patiently. It is not doubtful, that the attacking of the city, has thrown all the citizens into confusion. No one of (gen.) us doubted, that our soldiers had overcome the enemies. No one of the Romans doubted, that Hannibal had fought very bravely against them (se). Who doubts, that we have bestowed all pains upon this (in eo), that we might overcome the enemy? Who doubts, that I have always loved thee? Nobody doubted, that we had always praised the good, [but] had always censured the bad. Who doubts, that I have kept my word (= fidelity)? Nobody doubted, that thou hadst occupied thyself earnestly with literature. To no one was it doubtful, that you had always kept the precepts of virtue.

Diligenter cura, mi amice, valetudinem tuam! Ne praepropere de rebus judicāte, o pueri! Ne dubita de animorum immortalitate! Perpetuo servato, mi filii, conscientiam rectam! Discipulus

amāto praeceptōres. Laudatōte probos homines, castigatōte im-
prōbos! Omnes homines amanto deum.

Look out carefully, friends, for your health! Judge not precipitately concerning men and things, O boy! Doubt ye not concerning the immortality of the soul (plur.)! Scholars should love their teachers. Thou shouldest praise the upright, [but] reprove the wicked. You should always, my sons, preserve a good conscience.

(Comp. Synt. § 97.)

Parentes mei in urbem migravērunt habitātam. Legāti in urbem nostram acceleravērunt auxilium postulātum. Hannibālem invictum cives sui ex Italia revocavērunt patriam ab hostibus liberātum. Hostes pacem postulātum legātos ad nos mittunt. Exercitus hostilis adventāvit agros nostros vastātum. Ingens hominum multitūdo in urbem congregātur ludos publicos spectātum. Uva immatūra est peracerba gustātu. Multa sunt dura tolerātu. Quaestio de animi natūra difficillima est explicātu. Sitis non facilis est tolerātu. Pira dulcia sunt gustātu.

The soldiers hastened (perf.), in order to relieve the city from the siege of the enemies. The ambassadors assembled themselves (= were assembled), in order to deliberate concerning the peace. The hostile army approached, in order to assault the city. Tomorrow my parents will go (= migrate) into (acc.) the country, in order to dwell [there] through the summer. A ripe grape is sweet to taste. The rising of the sun is beautiful to behold. This thing is easy to explain.

6. Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Duro 1. <i>I endure,</i> <i>continue.</i>	avaritia, ae, <i>f. avarice.</i>	ornātus, ūs, <i>m. orna-</i> <i>momentum, i, n. cir-</i> <i>ment.</i>
exprōbro 1. <i>I re-</i> <i>proach (one) for.</i>	cumstance, particu-	aliēnus, a, um, <i>for-</i> <i>eign.</i>
investigo 1. <i>I trace</i> <i>out, investigate.</i>	officium, i, <i>n. duty,</i> <i>service.</i>	exigūus, a, um, <i>little.</i> odiōsus, a, um, <i>odious.</i>
mico 1. <i>I glitter.</i>	calamitas, ātis, <i>f. loss,</i>	teter, tra, trum, <i>foul.</i>
obtempĕro 1. <i>I obey.</i>	misfortune.	coelestis, e, <i>heaven-</i>
sudo 1. <i>I sweat.</i>	actio, ōnis, <i>f. action.</i>	ly.
supplico 1. <i>I im-</i> <i>plore.</i>	potio, ōnis, <i>f. drink-</i> <i>ing, drink.</i>	praesertim, <i>adv. espe-</i> <i>cially.</i>

[For the manner of translating the Part. see Synt. § 100, 2. b),c), d).]

Luscinia cantans animos nostros delectat. Coelum plenum est

stellarum micantium. Nullum vitium tetrius est, quam avaritia, praesertim in principibus rem publicam gubernantibus. Cogitantes coelestia, haec nostra ut exigua et minima contemnimus. Odiösus est genus hominum officia exprobantium. Ex (after) laböre sudanti frigidae aquae potio perniciosissima est. Vir bonus viro bono non supplicanti succurrit. Rei veritatem investigatüri omnia ejus momenta ponderare debemus. Sapiens bona sibi comparare studet perpetuo duratūra. Ciconiae, in alienas terras migratūrae, in unum locum congregantur. Ingens hominum multitudo, in urbem congregatur ludos publicos spectatūra.

How great is the wisdom of God *who governs* (= governing) the whole world! The larks sing *as they fly* (= flying). Man does not love God, *when he does not observe* (= not observing) the precepts of virtue. The power of virtue is very great, *since it adorns* (= adorning) the souls of men with the fairest ornaments. How great are the benefits of the sun, *since it illuminates* (= illuminating) the whole earth! The citizens fought spiritedly with the enemies, *who were assaulting* (= assaulting) the city. The hostile army came up *in order to assault* (= intending to assault) the city. The invincible Hannibal, his fellow-citizens (= citizens) recalled from Italy, *that he might deliver* (= about to deliver) his native country from the enemies.

RULE OF SYNTAX. The Gerund takes the same case as its verb. In the Nom. with *est* and the Dat. of the *agent*, it should be translated by: *I (thou, he) must, ought, should, we (you, they) must, ought, should, etc.*; but *without* the Dat. of the *agent* by: *one (we) must, ought, should* (comp. Synt. § 98).

De animorum immortalitate nobis non est dubitandum. Obtemperandum est virtutis praeceptis. Propter belli calamitates multis civibus e patria in aliēnas terras migrandum est. Si beati esse studemus, diligenter nobis est elaborandum, ut in omni actione virtutis praecepta observemus. Quis dubitat, quin nobis pro patriae libertate pugnandum sit.

7. Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Avöco 1. <i>I call away.</i>	fortem), <i>I show</i>	ocasio, önis, f. occasio.
dijudico 1. <i>I distinguish.</i>	<i>myself</i> (brave).	
nato 1. <i>I swim.</i>	teneo 2. <i>I hold, understand.</i>	planities, ei, f. plain.
praebeo 2. <i>I afford</i> ;	derstand.	idonëus, a, um, suited.
praeleo me (e. g.	lectics.	prudenter, adv. wisely

RULE OF SYNTAX. The oblique cases of the Gerund form the cases of the Infinitive; the Acc., however, can be used only in connection with a preposition. Comp. Synt. § 98, 3.

Nom. *Natāre* est utile, *swimming is useful.*

Gen. *Natandi* sum peritus, *I am skilful in swimming, or to swim; natandi ars utilis est, the art of swimming or to swim is useful. Ars civitatem gubernandi difficilis est, the art of governing a state is difficult.*

Dat. *Natando* homo aptus est, *man is fitted to swimming, or to swim.*

Acc. *Natāre* disco, *I learn swimming or to swim, but: ad natandum homo aptus est, man is fitted for swimming or to swim.*

Abl. *Natando* corpōris vires exercentur, *by swimming the powers of the body are exercised.*

Navigāre utillissimum est, sed ars navigandi est difficilissima. Boni discipuli cupīdi sunt littēras diligenter tractandi.¹ Princīpes civitatis periti esse debent civitatem gubernandi. Dialectica est ars vera ac falsa dijucandi. Haec planities apta est pugnando.¹ Ego fratrem tuum natāre doceo, gaudeoque, quod tam aptum se praebet ad natandum. Pauci homines idonei sunt ad aliis imperandum. Virtus homines avōcat a peccando. Acrīter pugnando milites urbem ab interītu liberavērunt.

To govern a state, is very difficult; [only] a few understand the art of governing a state wisely. Avoid thou every occasion of sinning. Thy brother is very skilful in (gen.) riding. The human intellect is nourished by (abl.) thinking.

8. Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Crucio 1. <i>I torment.</i>	of thing), <i>I de-</i>	effusus, a, um, unre-
cruciatus, ūs, m. tor-	prive of.	strained.
ture.	poena, ae, f. punish-	piger, gra, grum, in-
emendo 1. <i>I improve.</i>	ment.	dolent, slothful.
nuntio 1. <i>I announce.</i>	morbis, i, m. disease.	benevōle, adv. kindly,
obscurō 1. <i>I obscure.</i>	incendium, i, n. con-	benevolently.
probo 1. <i>I approve;</i>	flagration.	hodie, adv. to-day.
probor (c. dat.) <i>I</i>	oblivio, ōnis, f. obliv-	misere, adv. wretch-
please.	ion.	edly, in a wretched
spolio 1. (with acc. decus, ōris, n. honor.		way.
of person and abl.		

¹ § 98, 3.

B.) PASSIVE OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

Quum urbs ab hostibus oppugnabatur, omnium civium animi ingenti terrōre occupabantur. Dum ego cantando delectabar, tu saltando¹ delectabare (delectabaris). Quum pugna atrocissima erat, sol nubibus obscurabatur. Quamdiu virtus decore² et dignitate sua non spoliabitur, tandiu homines virtutis compotes etiam in summis cruciatibus beati erunt. Malefici post mortem iustis poenis castigabuntur. Ut alios tractaveritis, ita ab iis tractabimini. Si litteris diligenter operam navaverimus, a parentibus nostris pulchris muneribus³ donabimur. Quo religiosius virtutis praecepta servabo, eo magis deo probabor. Quum urbs ab hostibus expugnata erat, omnes cives acerbissimo dolore cruciabantur. Si liberi vestri bene a vobis educati erunt, magna ad vos laus redundabit.

As yesterday thou wast with me, I was tormented by (abl.) violent pains, but to-day I am delivered from them. If thou lovest (= shalt love) men, thou wilt be loved by them. The remembrance of renowned men is obscured by (abl.) no oblivion. The wise will even then be happy, when they shall be tormented by the severest (acerbus) pains. While we delighted ourselves (= were delighted) in (abl.) song (Gerund), you delighted yourselves in the dance (Gerund). The more scrupulously you shall observe the precepts of virtue, so much the more will you please God. As the victory of our army was announced, unrestrained joy prevailed (agitari) through the whole city. As the city had been taken possession of by the enemy, at (abl.) the same time three conflagrations were raised. Rejoice, boys, to-morrow Christmas (= the birth day of Christ) will be celebrated, and by your good parents you will be presented with (abl.) beautiful presents. If thou shalt please (fut. perf.) all good men, thou wilt also please God. The more kindly I shall have treated others, so much the more kindly shall I also be treated by them. As thou enteredst the house (acc.) thou wast delighted by (abl.) the arrival of thy father.

9. Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Conformo 1. *I form.* reporto 1. *I bear off.* expleo 2. *I fulfil.*
 obsto 1. *I oppose, am a hindrance.* sollicito 1. *I disturb.* prohibeo 2. *I prevent.*
 sollicitus, a, um, dis- metuo 3. *I apprehend, fear.*
 praeparo 1. *I prepare.* turbatus, apprehensus, *turbated, apprehended, fear.*
 sive.

¹ § 98, 3.² § 91, 9. b).³ § 91, 1. b).

metus, ūs, <i>m. apprehension, fear.</i>	imento est, <i>it is a hindrance.</i>	timiditas, ātis, <i>f. timidity.</i>
officio 3. <i>I hinder, stand in the way.</i>	constantia, ae, <i>f. firmness.</i>	divinus, a, um, <i>divine.</i>
pergo 3. <i>I go on, continue.</i>	ignavia, ae, <i>f. cowardice.</i>	innānis, e, <i>cruel.</i>
impedio 4. <i>I prevent.</i>	otium, i, <i>n. ease.</i>	terrestris, e, <i>earthly.</i>
impedimentum, i, <i>n. hindrance; imped-</i>	infirmitas, ātis, <i>f. weakness.</i>	temere, <i>adv. inconsiderately, without reason.</i>

RULE OF SYNTAX. The conjunction *quom̄inus* (that the less, that not) with the Subj. stands after the verbs and phrases which signify a *hindrance*, and may often be translated into English by *that*, or the prepositions *of, from, to*, with a corresponding modification of the words which stand in connection with it. (Comp. Synt. § 108, 2).

Levitas animi multis puēris impedimento est, quom̄inus eorum mores emendentur et ingenia litterarum studio¹ conformentur. Militum ignavia obstabat, quom̄inus hostilis exercitus superaretur. Unius ducis constantia obstabat, quom̄inus cives ab immanibus militibus misere vexarentur. Terrestrium rerum cura saepe prohibet, quom̄inus res divinae a nobis² curentur. Infirmitas vocis et timiditas animi saepe oratori³ officiant, quom̄inus laude dignus judicetur. Senectus non impedit, quom̄inus litterarum studia studiose a nobis tractentur. Timiditas saepe impedit, quom̄inus animus noster contra pericula, quae nobis imminent, praeparetur.

Weakness of voice stood in the way of your being accounted (= hindered you, that you should be accounted) a great orator. The firmness of the general alone prevents the citizens from being annoyed by the cruel soldiers. Already has levity been an hindrance to many boys, that their manners should be improved and their minds be formed by the study of literature. The cowardice of the soldiers hindered, that the hostile army should be overcome.

RULE OF SYNTAX. After the words and phrases which express *fear* or *apprehension*, *ne* with the Subj. is to be translated by *that*, and *ut* with the Subj. by *that not*. (Comp. Synt. § 107, 3.)

Piger discipulus semper metuit, ne a praeceptoribus castigetur. Metuo, ne a te vituperer. Timeo, ut victoria ab exercitu nostro

¹ § 91, 1. b).

² § 91, R. 2.

³ § 90, 1. d).

de hostibus reportētur. Si tam fortiter contra hostem dimicāre pergimus, non est pericūlum, ne ab iis superēmur. Si officia vestra semper religiōse explētis; ne metuite, ut omnibus probemini. In metu eramus, ut morbo liberaremīni. Vehēmens cura animos nostros sollicitabat, ne ab hostibus vexarēmur. Sollicitus eram, ne in otio turbārer.

I was in apprehension that I should be censured by thee. I apprehended, that I should be disturbed in my ease. The soldiers were in apprehension that victory over the enemy would not be borne off. A violent apprehension (= care) disturbs our minds, that we may be annoyed by the enemies. Why did they apprehend, that they should not be delivered from sickness? If thou hast always fulfilled thy duties, do not fear that thou mayest not please (probor) all. If our army continues to fight so bravely against the enemies, there is no (= not) fear, that it may be overcome by them. Indolent scholars always fear, that they shall be punished by [their] teachers. We were in apprehension, that we should be accounted ungrateful by you. Not without reason so oppressive an apprehension seized you, that you would be annoyed by the enemies.

10. *Words to be learned and Examples for translation.*

Contamīno 1. <i>I contaminate.</i>	repāro 1. <i>I repair.</i>	<i>ship, right of citizenship.</i>
exōro 1. <i>I prevail upon by entreaty.</i>	ignominia, ae, <i>f. ignominy.</i>	aequus, a, um, <i>equal;</i>
migro 1. <i>c. acc. I transgress.</i>	flagitium, i, <i>n. foul deed.</i>	aequus animus, <i>equanimity.</i> [<i>ed.</i>
multo 1. <i>I punish.</i>	proditor, ōris, <i>m. traitor.</i>	sceleratus, a, um, <i>wickedly, adv. sacredly.</i>
noto 1. <i>I mark, brand.</i>	splendor, ōris, <i>m. splendor.</i>	sanctitas, ātis, <i>f. sacredness.</i>
occo 1. <i>I harrow.</i>	civitas, ātis, <i>f. citizen-</i>	<i>sin, conj. but if.</i>

Si industrius es, laudātor; sin piger, vituperator! Si leges civitātis migraveritis, multamīnor! Ager justo tempore arātor et occātor! Proditōres patriae civitate spoliātor! Vos, o scelerāti cives, ignominiā notamīnor! Leges divinae ab hominibus sancte observātor! Si quid peccaveris, aequo animo vituperāre! Exoramīni, o mei parentes! O mi puer, delectāre litterarum studio! Precibus nostris exorāre, o iudex! Ne flagitiis contamīnamīnor!

Be prevailed upon by entreaty, my father! O my boys, delight yourselves (= be delighted) in (abl.) the study of literature. If you have committed a fault (fut. perf.) *allow yourselves to be* (=

be ye) censured with equanimity! Thou shouldest not be contaminated with foul deeds. If you are diligent, you will be praised; but if you are indolent, you will be censured. Virtue should always be sacredly observed. The fields, at the right time, should be ploughed and harrowed. If thou transgresses (fut. perf.) the laws of the state, thou shouldst be punished. Thou, O wicked citizen, shouldst be branded with ignominy!

11. *Words to be learned and Examples for translation.*

Adaequo 1. <i>I level.</i>	spero 1. <i>I hope.</i>	solum, i, n. <i>the ground.</i>
appropinquo 1. <i>I approach.</i>	violo 1. <i>I violate.</i>	humanitas, atis, f. <i>humanity.</i>
extirpo 1. <i>I extirpate.</i>	succenseo 2. <i>I am offended.</i>	pernicies, ei, f. <i>destruction.</i>
extermino 1. <i>I expel.</i>	accido 3. <i>I happen.</i>	eximius, a, um, <i>dis-tinguished, excel- lent.</i>
fundo 1. <i>I found.</i>	dimitto 3. <i>I dismiss.</i>	jam pridem, <i>adv. long since.</i>
labefacto 1. <i>I shake.</i>	effloresco 3. <i>I flourish.</i>	interdiu, <i>adv. by day.</i>
muto 1. <i>I change, exchange.</i>	ruo 3. <i>I rush.</i>	
regno 1. <i>I rule, reign.</i>	pueritia, ae, f. <i>boyhood.</i>	

Melior est certa pax, quam sperata victoria. Terra mutata non mutat mores. Multa in hac vita accidunt non expectata. Omnes dolores patienter tolerati minus acerbi sunt. Dux dimittit milites ob eximiam virtutem laudatos. Multi juvenes, in prima pueritia a parentibus male educati, in perniciem ruunt.

The friendship formed (= united) between good and wise [men] is disturbed by (abl.) nothing (= no thing). Dangers, which were not expected (= not expected) by us, discompose our minds more (magis) than dangers which were long since expected. When thou art censured (= having been censured) on account of a fault, be not offended at the censor (= the one censoring). After the walls had been levelled (= the walls having been levelled) to the ground by the enemies, they are repaired by the citizens. By day we do not see the stars, because they are obscured (= they having been obscured) by the splendor of the sun.

(Concerning the *Ablative absolute* Comp. Synt. 100, 4. b.)

Regnante Xerxe,¹ Graeci de Persis splendidissimam victoriam reportaverunt. Inter bonos viros et deum amicitia est, conciliante

¹ While Xerxes reigned, or: under the reign of Xerxes.

naturā.¹ Appropinquante hiēme,² multae aves mitiores regiones petunt.

Recuperāta pace,³ artes efflorescunt. Regibus exterminātis,⁴ Romani libēram rempublicam fundavērunt. Terrā mutātā,⁵ mores hominum non mutantur. Legibus divinis sancte observātis,⁶ vita nostra beāta erit.

While Numa Pompilius reigned, the Romans were very prosperous. While the larks sing, we go to walk over (per) the plains. While Augustus reigned, the splendor of the empire was the greatest. When a just king administers the state, the laws also are just. When the swallows migrate into milder regions, winter approaches.

After the plains were laid waste, the enemies assaulted (perf.) the city. When the sacredness of the laws is violated, the foundation of the state is shaken. When the city had been taken, an immense conflagration was raised.

12. Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Coërceo, ūi, itum 2.	detēgo xi, ctum 3.	to	ocūlus, i, m. eye.
<i>I restrain.</i>	<i>detect.</i>		incendium, i, n. con-
delēo, ēvi, etum 2.	I excello, ui 3.	to be	flagration.
<i>destroy.</i>	<i>distinguished.</i>		conjuratio, ōnis, f.
parēo, ūi 2.	I obey, instrūo, uxi, uctum		conspiracy.
<i>am obedient, fol-</i>	3. to furnish, to		aditus, ūs, m. ap-
<i>low.</i>	<i>arrange.</i>		proach.
patēo, ūi 2.	I stand scribo, psi, ptum 3.	acies, ēi, f. 1) edge ;	
<i>open.</i>	<i>to write.</i>	2) line-of-battle.	
valēo, ūi, itum 2.	I esuriō 4.	I hunger.	tenūis, e, thin.
<i>am strong, well.</i>	sitiō 4.	I thirst.	quoad, conj. so long
absūmo, sumpsi, sump-	corōna, ae, f.	gar-	as.
tum 3.	<i>to consume.</i>	land.	fere, adv. almost.
cingo, nxi, nctum 3.	membrāna, ae, f.		probe, adv. excellently,
<i>to surround.</i>	<i>membrane.</i>		<i>properly.</i>

C) PARALLEL EXERCISES FOR ALL THE CONJUGATIONS.

a) *Indicative Present, Imperfect, and Future Active of all the Conjugations.*

Laudo, exercēo, duco, erudio. Laudas, exerces, ducis, erūdis.

¹ Since nature forms (it). ² When the winter approaches, or: on the approach of winter. ³ After peace is restored, or: on the restoration of peace. ⁴ After the kings had been expelled, or: after the expulsion of the kings. ⁵ When the country has been exchanged, or: after an exchange of countries. ⁶ When the divine laws are sacredly observed.

Laudat, exercet, ducit, erūdit. Laudābam, exercēbam, ducēbam, erudiēbam. Laudābas, exercēbas, ducēbas, erudiēbas. Laudābat, exercēbat, ducēbat, erudiēbat. Laudābo, exercēbo, ducam, erudjā. Laudābis, exercēbis, duces, erudies. Laudābit, exercēbit, ducet, erudiet.

Gaudēbam, quod tu et pater tuus valebātis. Dum ego pingēbam, tu scribēbas, et frater legēbat. Milites nostri castra muniēbant. Hostes aciem instruēbant. Praeceptor gaudēbat, quod vos ejus praeceptis parebātis. Dum nos legebāmus, vos scribebātis et sorores acubus pingēbant. Quum hostes urbem nostram obsidione cingēbant, cives eam custodiēbant. Tibi placēbas, aliis displicēbas. Dum tu dormiēbas, ego te custodiēbam. Omnes boni legibus divinis semper parēbunt. Quoad vives, bene vives. Dum tu dormies, ego te custodiam. Virtutis honorem nulla oblivio delēbit. Si virtutem colētis, aditus in coelum vobis patēbit.

We praise, we exercise, we lead, we instruct. You praise, you exercise, you lead, you instruct. They praise, they exercise, they lead, they instruct. We praised, we exercised, we led, we instructed. You praised, you exercised, you led, you instructed. They praised, they exercised, they led, they instructed. We will praise, we will exercise, we will lead, we will instruct. You will praise, you will exercise, you will lead, you will instruct. They will praise, they will exercise, they will lead, they will instruct. We rejoiced, that (quod) thou wast well. While we wrote, you read, and the brothers painted.

While the enemies were arranging the line-of-battle, our soldiers fortified the camp. The teachers rejoiced, that (quod) the scholars obeyed their (eorum) precepts. While I was singing, thou wast learning, and the sister embroidering. While the enemy surrounded our city with a blockade, we guarded it. You pleased yourselves, others you displeased. While you slept, we guarded you. So long as you shall live, you will live well. While you shall sleep, we will guard you.

b) *Indicative Perfect Active of all the Conjugations.*

Laudavi, exercui, duxi, erudivi. Lauda(vi)sti, exercuisti, duxisti, erudi(vi)sti. Laudavit, exercuit, duxit, erudivit. Graecia omnibus artibus floruit. Hostes aciem instruxerunt. Milites per totum diem sitiēerunt et esuriēerunt. Laudo vos, quod mentes vestras in litterarum studio probe exercuistis. Multas littēras hodie scripsimus. Natūra oculos tenuissimis membrānis vestivit. Duces cupiditātes milītum coēreuerunt. Bellum atrocissimum gessimus. Cur domūs vestrae pariētes coronis ornavistis et vestivistis? Cur tacuistis? Bellum urbis nostrae opes absumpsit. Cicero conju-

rationem Catilinae detexit. Incendium totam fere urbem absumpsit.

We have praised, we havē exercised, we have led, we have instructed. You have praised, you have exercised, you have led, you have instructed. They have praised, they have exercised, they have led, they have instructed. The general has arranged the line of battle before (ante) the city. The Greeks were (perf.) distinguished by (abl.) the glory of [their] arts and literature. I praise thee, that (quod) thou hast exercised thy mind properly in the study of literature. I had written the letter. The general has restrained the passions of the soldiers. We have carried on a very bloody war. Wherefore hast thou adorned and hung (= clothed) the walls of thy house with garlands? Why hast thou been silent? The wars have consumed our resources.

13. Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Convōlo 1. <i>I fly together, hasten together.</i>	edūco, xi, ctum 3. <i>to lead out.</i>	obēdio 4. <i>I obey.</i>
specto 1. <i>I behold, have in view.</i>	excōlo, olūi, ultum 3. <i>to cultivate.</i>	temeritas, ātis, f. <i>inconsiderateness, rashness.</i>
cavēo, cāvi, cautum 2. <i>to be on one's guard.</i>	metūo, ūi 3. <i>to fear.</i>	dīu, adv. <i>long time.</i>
contemno, mpsi, mptum 3. <i>to despise.</i>	neglīgo, exi, ectum 3. <i>to neglect.</i>	vix, adv. <i>scarcely.</i>
	expedio 4. <i>I disentangle, get ready.</i>	priusquam (or prius, quam) conj. <i>sooner . . . than.</i>
	finio 4. <i>I end, conclude.</i>	simulatque, conj. <i>so (as) soon as</i>

c) Indicative Pluperfect Active of all the Conjugations.

Lauda(vē)ram, exercuēram, duxēram, erudi(v)ēram. Lauda(vē)ras, exercuēras, duxēras, erudi(v)ēras. Lauda(vē)rat, exercuērat, duxērat erudi(v)ērat. Haec civitas diu floruērat, quia semper legibus paruērat. Vix Caesar aciem instruxērat, quum hostes in unum locum convolavērunt. Praeceptoribus vestris placuerātis, quia semper eorum praeceptis obedierātis. Tu nobis valde nocuēras, quia temeritatem tuam non coercuēras. Incendium totam fere urbem absumpsērat. Vix milites nostri castra muniverant, quum Caesar aciem instruxit.

We had praised, we had exercised, we had led, we had instructed. You had praised, you had exercised, you had led, you had instructed. They had praised, they had exercised, they had led, they had instructed. Why hadst thou been silent? Scarcely

had the enemies arranged the line of battle, as Caesar led out (perf.) the soldiers from the camp. The war had consumed the resources of our state. Thou hadst pleased thy teacher, because thou hadst always obeyed his precepts. You had injured that [man] greatly, because you had not restrained your rashness.

d) *Indicative Future Perfect Active of all the Conjugations.*

Lauda(vě)ro, exercuěro, duxěro, erudi(v)ěro. Lauda(vě)ris, exercuěris, duxěris, erudi(v)ěris. Lauda(vě)rit, exercuěrit, duxěrit, erudi(v)ěrit. Nisi virtutis praeceptis parueritis, aditus in coelum vobis non patēbit. Divites eritis, si divitias contempseritis. Non prius dormiēmus, quam negotia nostra finierimus. Si cupiditātes vestras coërcueritis, beati eritis. Simulatque littēras scripserimus, ambulabimus. Quum milites castra muniverint, ad pugnam se expedient.

We shall have praised, we shall have exercised, we shall have led, we shall have instructed. You will have praised, you will have exercised, you will have led, you will have instructed. They will have praised, they will have exercised, they will have led, they will have instructed. If thou shalt have obeyed (parēre) the precepts of virtue, thou wilt be loved by all. Thou wilt be rich, if thou shalt have despised riches. Not sooner shall I sleep, than I shall have concluded my business (plur.) If thou shalt have restrained thy passions, thou wilt be peaceful. So soon as I shall have written the letter, I will go to walk. So soon as the soldiers shall have got ready for battle, the general will lead them out of the camp.

e) *Subjunctive Present and Imperfect Active of all the Conjugations.*

Curo, ut puēri mores emendem, corpus exercēam, animū excōlam, mentem erudiā. Curo, ut pueri mores emendes, corpus exerceas, animū excōlas, mentem erudias. Curo, ut praeceptor pueri mores emendet, corpus exerceat, animū excōlat, mentem erudiat. Curābam, ut pueri mores emendārem, corpus exercērem, animū excōlērem, mentem erudirem. Curābam, ut pueri mores emendares, corpus exerceeres, animū excōlēres, mentem erudires. Curābam, ut praeceptor pueri mores emendaret, corpus exercēret, animū excōlēret, mentem erudiret.

Non dubitamus, quin nobis fidem habeātis. Moneo vos, ne parentium praecepta negligātis. Cavēte, pueri, ne garriātis! Lacedaemoniorum leges id spectant, ut laboribus erudiant juventutem. Metuēbam, ne vobis displicērem. Timēbam, ne inimicus

mihī nocēret. Metuēbam, ne tacēres. Cur metuis, ne taceam?
Hostes timent, ne dux milites e castris edūcat.

We look out, that we may improve the manners of the boys, exercise [their] bodies, cultivate [their] minds, instruct [their] intellects. We look out, that you may improve the manners of the boys, exercise [their] bodies, cultivate [their] minds, instruct [their] intellects. We look out, that the teachers may improve the manners of the boys, exercise [their] bodies, cultivate [their] minds, instruct [their] intellects. We looked out, that we might improve the manners of the boys, exercise [their] bodies, cultivate [their] minds, instruct [their] intellects. We looked out, that you might improve the manners of the boys, exercise [their] bodies, cultivate [their] minds, instruct [their] intellects. We looked out, that the teachers might improve the manners of the boys, exercise [their] bodies, cultivate [their] minds, instruct [their] intellects.

I doubt not, that thou hast confidence in me. I admonish thee, that thou shouldest *not* (ne) neglect the precepts of thy parents. Be on your guard, boy, how (ne) thou chatterest. The laws of the Lacedemonians had this in view, that they might instruct youth in labors. We feared, that (ne) we might displease you. We feared, that (ne) the enemies might injure us. We feared, that (ne) you might be silent. Why did you fear, that (ne) we might be silent? The enemies feared, that (ne) the general might lead out the soldiers from the camp. I fear, that (ne) I may displease you. Why dost thou fear, (ne) that thou mayest displease us?

14. Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Constat 1. <i>it is known.</i>	corrigo, exi, ectum 3. <i>to correct, improve.</i>	longinquitas, ātis, <i>f. length, distance.</i>
puto 1. <i>I believe, think.</i>	lenio 4. <i>I soothe.</i>	aeger, gra, grum, <i>sick (of the</i>
adspicio, spexi, spectum 3. <i>to look at.</i>	mollio 4. <i>I render pliant, abate.</i>	gnaviter, <i>adv. zealously.</i>
comburo, ussi, ustum 3. <i>to burn up.</i>	nuntius, i, <i>m. news.</i>	unde, <i>adv. whence.</i>
	consolatio, ōnis, <i>f. consolation.</i>	

f) *Subjunctive Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Active of all the Conjugations.*

Nemo dubitat, quin ego puerum semper bene educā(vē)rim, benevōle monuērim, diligenter correxērim, gnaviter custodi(v)ē-

rim. Nemo dubitat, quin puerum semper bene educâ(vè)ris, benevole monuëris, diligenter correxëris, gnaviter custodi(v)ëris. Nemo dubitat, quin pater puerum semper bene educâ(vè)rit, benevole monuërit, diligenter correxërit, gnaviter custodi(v)ërit. Nemo dubitâbat, quin puerum semper bene educa(vi)ssem, benevole monuissem, diligenter correxissem, gnaviter custodi(vi)ssem. Nemo dubitabat, quin puerum semper bene educa(vi)sses, benevole monuisses, diligenter correxisses, gnaviter custodi(vi)sses. Nemo dubitabat, quin pater puerum semper bene educa(vi)ssset, benevole monuisset, diligenter correxisset, gnaviter custodi(vi)ssset.

Nescio, cur tacueritis. Metuimus, ne hostes urbem combussërint. Narrate mihi, qua consolatiône aegrum amici animum leniveritis. Non dubito, quin dux temeritatem militum coërcuerit. Nescio, cur puërum puniveritis. Narrate nobis, quid parentes scripsërint. Nescimus, unde amici hunc nuntium audiverint. Non dubito, quin pueri praecepta mea memoriâ custodiërint. Hostes timent, ne dux milites e castris eduxërit. Nesciëbam, cur tacuissetis. Metuebâmus, ne hostes urbem obsidiône cinxissent. Non dubitâbam, quin praecepta mea memoriâ custodivissëtis. Non dubito, quin puerum bene educâturus sis. Non dubito, quin dux temeritatem militum coërcitûrus sit. Nemo dubitat, quin hostes urbem obsidione cincturi sint. Non dubitabam, quin longinquitas tempõris dolorem tuum mollitura esset. Non dubitâbam, quin praecepta mea memoriâ servaturus esses.

Nobody doubts, that we have always brought up the boys well, have kindly admonished them, have carefully corrected them, have zealously guarded them. Nobody doubts, that you have always brought up the boys well, have kindly admonished them, have carefully corrected them, have zealously guarded them. Nobody doubts, that the teachers have always brought up the boys well, have kindly admonished them, have carefully corrected them, have zealously guarded them. Nobody doubted, that we had always brought up the boys well, had kindly admonished them, had carefully corrected them, had zealously guarded them. Nobody doubted, that you had always brought up the boys well, had kindly admonished them, had carefully corrected them, had zealously guarded them. Nobody doubted, that the parents had always brought up the boys well, had kindly admonished them, had carefully corrected them, had zealously guarded them.

We know not, why thou hast been silent. I feared, that (ne) the enemy had burned the city. Relate to me, by (abl.) what consolation thou hast relieved the sick mind of thy friend. I doubted not, that the general had restrained the rashness of the soldiers. We know not, why thou hast punished the boy. Relate

to me what the father has written. I know not, whence the enemies have heard the news. I doubt not, that the boy has kept my precepts in (abl.) remembrance. The enemies feared, that the general had led out the soldiers from the camp. We knew not, why thou hadst been silent. We feared, that the enemies had surrounded the city with (abl.) a blockade. I doubted not, that thou wouldst bring up the boy well. I doubted not, that the general would restrain the rashness of the soldiers. We doubted not, that the enemies would surround the city with a blockade. I doubt not, that length of time will abate thy suffering.

g) *Imperative and Supine Active of all the Conjugations.*

Lauda, exerce, scribe, obēdi. Laudāto, exercēto, scribitō, obedito. Praeceptor puerorum mores emendāto, corpora exercēto, animos excolito, mentes erudito! Tacēte, pueri! Disce, puer! Ne garrite, pueri! Liberi parentibus obediuntō. Coelestia semper spectāto, humanā contemnito! Cupiditates coërcitōte! Puer, ne contemnito praecepta magistrorum tuorum! Dic, quid pater scripserit. Educ nos, O dux, contra hostes! Venio te rogātum, ut mecum ambūles. Uva matura dulcis est gustātu. Cupiditātes difficīles sunt coërcitū. Haec regio pulchra est adspectu. Vox lusciniāe est suavis auditu.

Praise ye, exercise, write, obey. You should praise, exercise, write, obey. Teachers should improve the manners of the boys, should exercise [their] bodies, should cultivate [their] minds, should instruct [their] intellects. Be silent, boy! Learn, O boys! Do not chatter, boy! The boy should obey the precepts of [his] teachers. You should always regard heavenly, [but] despise human [things]. Thou shouldst restrain the passions. Say, what thou hast written. Lead, O general, the soldiers against the enemies. We come, in order (Supine) to ask you, that you would go to walk with us. An unripe grape is pungent to taste. The rashness of the soldiers was difficult to restrain. These regions are beautiful to look at. The city is difficult to guard.

h) *Participle, Gerund, and Infinitive Active of all the Conjugations.*

Exercitus pugnans urbem intravit. Animus, se non videns, alia cernit. Miles, se fortiter contra hostes defendens, laudatur. Hostes, urbem oppugnaturi, castra muniverunt. Sapiens bona semper placitūra laudat. Hostes veniunt, urbem obsidione cincturi. Venio auditorus, quid pater scripserit. Ars navigandi utilissima est. Sensus videndi acerrimus est. Sapientia est ars

vivendi. Obediendum est praeceptis virtutis. Hostes urbem nostram expugnare student. Cupiditâtes coërcere debemus. Libëri parentes suos colere debent. Milites urbem custodire debent.

The soldiers fighting entered the city. Souls, not seeing themselves, see other [things]. The soldiers, *who defend* (= defending) themselves bravely against the enemies, are praised. Boys, *who chatter* (= chattering) in school, are troublesome. The enemies come wishing to assault the city. Strive, O boys, to obtain goods ever about to please. The enemies came wishing to assault the city. We come wishing to hear what the friend has written thee. The art of writing is very difficult. By thinking and learning, the intellect (mens) is nourished. The opportunity to *hear* (= of hearing) is rarer than the opportunity to see (= of seeing).

(Concerning the Acc. with the Infin., comp. Synt. § 106.)

Scimus, deum mundum gubernare (we know that God governs the world). Credo, meum consilium tibi placere (I believe that my plan pleases thee). Credo, fratrem pingere. Audimus, hostes ante urbem castra munire. Audivi, milites nostros acerrime pugnasse. Quis nescit, Socrâtem semper virtutis praeceptis paruisse? Constat, Ciceronem conjurationem Catilinae detexisse. Credo, te dormisse. Spero, vos consilium meum probaturos esse. Credimus, ducem temeritatem militum coërciturum esse. Puto, patrem cras scripturum esse. Omnes cives sperant, milites urbem custodituros esse.

I believe, that thou approvest my plan. I know, that you obey me. I believe, that the father writes. I believe, that the boy sleeps. The brother relates to me, that thou hast approved my plan. We hear, that the general has restrained the rashness of the soldiers. We believe, that the father has written. We have heard, that the enemies have fortified a camp before the city. I believe, that the soldiers will fight spiritedly. I hope, that the plan will please thee. All Romans hoped, that Cicero would detect the conspiracy of Catiline. I hope, that I shall soon hear this news.

15. *Words to be learned and Examples for translation.*

Despëro 1. <i>I despair.</i>	deterreo 2. <i>I frighten from.</i>	conspicio, exi, ectum 3. <i>to discover.</i>
augeo, xi, ctum 2. <i>to increase, enrich.</i>	oppleo, ëvi, ëtum 2. <i>to fill.</i>	jungo, nxi, nctum 3. <i>to join, connect.</i>

vivo, xi, etum 3. to subitus, a, um, sud- strenue, adv. vigor-
live. [pose. den. ously.
propositum, i, n. pur- naturalis, e, natural. postquam, conj. after
difficultas, atis, f. extemplo, adv. imme- that.
difficulty. diately.

i) *Indicative Present, Imperfect, and Future Passive of all the Conjugations.*

Laudor, exercëor, ducor, erudior. Laudāris, exercēris, ducēris, erudiris. Laudātur, exercētur, ducitur, eruditur. Laudābar, exercēbar, ducēbar, erudiēbar. Laudabāre, exercebāre, ducebāre, erudiebāre. Laudabātur, exercebātur, ducebātur, erudiebātur. Laudābor, exercēbor, ducar, erudiār. Laudabēre, exercebēre, ducēre, erudiēre. Laudabītur, exercebītur, ducētur, erudiētur.

We are praised, we are exercised, we are led, we are instructed. You are, praised, you are exercised, you are led, you are instructed. They are praised, they are exercised, they are led, they are instructed. We were praised, we were exercised, we were led, we were instructed. You were praised, you were exercised, you were led, you were instructed. They were praised, they were exercised, they were led, they were instructed. We shall be praised, we shall be exercised, we shall be led, we shall be instructed. You will be praised, you will be exercised, you will be led, you will be instructed. They will be praised, they will be exercised, they will be led, they will be instructed.

Quum in littēris exercēmur, animi nostri multarum rerum utilium cognitione augentur. Quum subīto pericūlo terrēmur, non debēmus extemplo de salute nostra desperare. Quoad littēris honos suus erit, Graeci et Latini scriptores in scholis legentur. Si semper bene vixeris, ab omnibus diligere. Virtūtis honos nulla oblivione delebitur. Quum urbs ab hostibus oppugnabātur, a civibus acriter defendebātur.

When you are exercised in literature, your souls are enriched by (abl.) the knowledge of many useful things. When thou art frightened by (abl.) a sudden fear, thou shouldest not immediately despair of thy safety. The Greek and Latin writers are read in the schools. If you shall always have lived well, you will be esteemed by all. The city which was assaulted by the enemies, was defended spiritedly by the citizens.

k) *Subjunctive Present and Imperfect Passive of all the Conjugations.*

Pater curat, ut ego bene edūcer, strenūe exercēar, probe excōlar, diligenter erudiār. Curo, ut bene educēre, strenue exercēare, probe excolāre, diligenter erudiāre. Curo, ut puer bene educētur, strenue exercēātur, probe excolātur, diligenter erudiātur. Pater curabat, ut ego benē educārer, strenue exercērer, probe excolērer, diligenter erudirer. Curabam, ut bene educarēre, strenue exercerēre, probe excolerēre, diligenter erudirēre. Curabam, ut filius tuus bene educarētur, strenue exercerētur, probe excolerētur, diligenter erudirētur.

Our father looks out, that we may be well brought up, vigorously exercised, properly cultivated, carefully instructed. Your father looks out, that you may be well brought up, vigorously exercised, properly cultivated, carefully instructed. Parents look out, that the manners of [their] children (libēri) may be improved, [their] bodies vigorously exercised, [their] minds properly cultivated, [their] understandings carefully instructed. Our father looked out, that we might be well brought up, vigorously exercised, properly cultivated, carefully instructed. Your father looked out, that you might be well brought up, vigorously exercised, properly cultivated, carefully instructed. The parents looked out, that the manners of [their] children might be improved, [their] bodies exercised, [their] minds cultivated, [their] understandings instructed.

Quis nescit, quam praeclaris fructibus animi nostri in litterarum studiis augeantur? Timēmus, ne exercitus noster ab hostibus vincatur. Omnes cives metuebant, ne urbs ab hostibus obsidiōne cingeretur. Lacedaemoniorum leges id spectabant, ut laboribus erudireretur juvenus. Curae mihi est, ut a te diligar. Cives metuunt, ne castra ab hostibus ante urbem muniantur.

I doubt not, that the soul may be enriched with (abl.) excellent fruit in the study of literature. We feared, that our army might be conquered by the enemies. All citizens fear, that the city may be surrounded by the enemies with (abl.) a blockade. We look out, that the youth may be instructed in (abl.) labors. We are anxious, that we may be esteemed by you. The citizens apprehended, that a camp might be fortified by the enemies before the city.

1) *Indicative and Subjunctive Perfect, Pluperfect and Future Perfect Passive of all the Conjugations.*

Milites ob fortitudinem a duce laudati sunt. Pueri in litterarum studiis gnaviter exerciti sunt. Conjuratio Catilinae a Cicerone detecta est. Oculi tenuissimis membranis a natura vestiti sunt. Cupiditates militum a duce fortissimo coercitae sunt. Tria bella atrocissima gesta sunt inter Romanos et Carthaginienses. Quum rex urbem intrabat, omnium civium domus coronis et floribus vestitae et ornatae erant. Maximo incendio tota fere urbs absumpta erat. Vix acies a Caesare instructa erat, quum hostes in unum locum convolaverunt. Non eris dives, nisi divitiae a te contemptae erunt.

Non prius dormiemus, quam negotia vestra finita erunt. Beati non eritis, nisi cupiditates vestrae a vobis coercitae erunt. Simulacra castra munita erunt, milites se ad pugnam expedient. Labor voluptasque naturali quadam societate inter se juncta sunt. Multae urbes ab hostibus combustae sunt. Vix hostes conspecti erant, quum milites a duce e castris in aciem educti sunt. Metuebamus, ne urbs ab hostibus obsidione cincta esset. Dic mihi, quid tibi a sorore scriptum sit. Dic nobis, qua consolatione aeger amici animus lenitus sit. Dic, cur puer punitus sit. Metuo, ne milites subito periculo territi sint.

I have been tormented by (abl.) the most pungent pains. The enemies have been frightened by (abl.) sudden fear. The upright man has been loved and esteemed by all. The sick mind of the friend has been soothed by (abl.) our consolation. I doubt not, that the passions of the soldiers have been restrained by the bravest general. The soldiers have been led out of the camp by the general. I know not, why the boys have been (subj.) punished by you. We apprehend, that (ne) the soldiers had been frightened by (abl.) the sudden danger.

I know not what may have been written you by the sister. We fear, that (ne) the city may be encompassed by (abl.) a blockade. The enemies were discovered (perf.) before (ante) the gates of the city. After my business (plur.) shall be concluded, I will go to walk. So soon as the enemies shall be seen, we will get ready for battle. I doubt not, that riches have been despised by thee. We feared, that, by the conflagration, many houses had been consumed. We fear, that many cities have been burned up by the enemies.

m) *Imperative, Infinitive, and Participle Passive of all the Conjugations.*

O puer, bene educâre, strenue exercêre, probe excolêre, diligenter erudîre! O puer, bene educâtor, strenue exercêtor, probe excolîtor, diligenter erudîtor! Puer bene educâtor, strenue exercêtor, probe excolîtor, diligenter erudîtor. Si quid peccavêris, aequo animo castigâre. Ne rerum difficultatibus a proposito deteremîni! Deus pie colîtor! Ne vincimîni cupiditatibus. Leges divinae ne contemnunt. Imprôbi puniuntor. Temeritas ratione coêrcêtor. O puer, strenue exercere in litterarum studiis! Bonus discipûlus studet laudâri. Boni discipuli student exercêri in litterarum studiis. Sapientes semper ratione regi student.

Bonus discipulus litterarum cognitiône erudiri studet. Puer, bene educâtus, omnibus placet. Hostes terrîti in castris manent. Urbs, obsidione cincta, multis malis vexatur. Homo eruditus non solum sibi, sed etiam aliis prodest. Pueri bene educandi, strenue exercendi, probe excolendi, diligenter erudiendi sunt.

Scimus, mundum a deo gubernari. Audimus, castra ab hostibus ante urbem muniri. Constat, conjurationem Catilinae a Cicerone detectam esse. Speramus, vos rerum difficultatibus a proposito deterritum non iri.

O boys, be ye well brought up, vigorously exercised, properly cultivated, carefully instructed! O boys, you should be well brought up, vigorously exercised, properly cultivated, carefully instructed! Boys should be well brought up, vigorously exercised, properly cultivated, carefully instructed. If you shall have committed a fault in anything (quid), be reprovèd with equanimity. Be thou not frightened from thy purpose by (abl.) the difficulty of the thing. Be ye guided by (abl.) reason. Be thou not overcome by the passions. The divine law should not be despised. The impious [man] should be punished. The passions should be restrained by (abl.) reason.

O boys, *exercise yourselves* (= be ye exercised) vigorously in the study of literature! Good scholars seek to be praised. The good scholar seeks to *exercise himself* (= to be exercised) in the study of literature. The wise [man] seeks, always to be governed by (abl.) reason. Good scholars seek to be instructed in (abl.) the knowledge of literature. Well-brought-up boys please all. The frightened enemy remains in the camp. Cities encompassed by (abl.) a blockade are annoyed by (abl.) many evils. Instructed men benefit not merely themselves, but others also. The boy is to be brought up well, to be vigorously exercised, to be properly cultivated, to be carefully instructed.

We hear that a camp is fortified by the enemies before the city. We hope that the conspiracy will be detected. We believe that we have not been frightened from our purpose.

EXERCISE XXVIII.

PART FIRST.

1. *Words to be learned and Examples for translation.*

Admiror 1. <i>I admire.</i>	conor 1. <i>I attempt,</i>	somnium, i, n. <i>dream.</i>
aspornor 1. <i>I spurn.</i>	venture.	pulchritudo, inis, f.
comitor 1. <i>I accom-</i>	interpretor 1. <i>I in-</i>	beauty.
pany.	terpret.	demum, adv. <i>first, at</i>
contemplor 1. <i>I con-</i>	consigno 1. <i>I point</i>	length.
template, consider.	out.	

Quis non admirētur splendorem pulchritudinemque virtutis? Dux milites hortatus est, ut hostium aciem perturbare conarentur. Jam hostes urbem oppugnare conati erant, quum repente a civibus propulsati sunt. Tum demum beatus eris, quum aspernatus eris voluptatem. Contemplamini praeclara virtutis exempla, quae in historia consignata sunt! Venio te comitatum in hortum. Somnia difficilia sunt interpretatu.

We admire the splendor and the beauty of virtue. The general exhorted the soldiers, that they should attempt to throw the line-of-battle of the enemies into confusion. I have accompanied the brother into the garden. The enemies have ventured to assault the city. Thou shouldst contemplate the noble examples of virtue, which are pointed out in history. The citizens apprehended, that the enemies might assault the city. I doubt not, that thou hast interpreted the dream rightly. Tell me, why thou hast not accompanied the father into the garden.

2. *Words to be learned and Examples for translation.*

Fateor, fassus sum,	misereor, misertus or	adipiscor, adeptus
fateri 2. <i>to acknowl-</i>	ritus sum, misereri	sum 3. <i>to obtain.</i>
edge, admit.	2. (c. gen.), <i>to pity.</i>	aggrēdiōr, gressus,
tueor 2. <i>I keep, pro-</i>	polliceor 2. <i>I promise.</i>	grēdi 3. <i>to attack.</i>
tect.	abūtor, ūsus sum,	expergiscor, perrec-
intueor 2. <i>I look upon,</i>	ūti 3. (c. abl.), <i>to</i>	tus sum 3. <i>to</i>
contemplate.	abuse.	awake.

fruor, fructus or frui-	irascor, iratus sum 3.	die (part. fut. mo-
tus sum, frui 3.	to be angry.	riturus).
(c. abl.), to enjoy	labor, lapsus sum, labi	sēquor, secūtus sum,
(part. fut. fruitu-	3 to glide, fall.	sequi 3. (c. acc.),
rus).	lōquor, locūtus sum,	to follow.
fungor, functus sum,	loqui 3. to speak.	inops, ōpis, destitute.
fungi 3. (c. abl.), to	morior, mortuus sum,	audacter, adv. boldly,
administer.	sum, mori 3. to	confidently.

Artes se ipsae tuentur. Semper miserorum hominum miserebimur. Veremini, o pueri, senectutem! Fatetor, o puer, verum! Miseremini inopum! Discipuli verentor praeceptores. Non dubito, quin tuum praesidium mihi polliciturus sis. Cum magna voluptate intuemur praeclara virtutis exempla, quae in historia consignata sunt.

Quis nescit, quam multi eloquentiam abutantur? Per multos annos pace fructi sumus. Omnes cives metuunt, ne hostes urbem aggrediantur. Simulatque¹ experrecti sumus, ad negotia nostra accedimus. Cives, libertatem adepti, summam laetitiam fruuntur. Succurre lapsis. Tam audacter cum amico loquere, quam tecum. Ne irascimur iis, quos amare debetis! Si virtutis viam semper sequemur, aditus in coelum aliquando nobis patebit. Munere tuo bene fungere. Metuo, ne amicus moriatur.

The arts themselves will always protect themselves. I doubt not, that thou wilt always pity the poor. Reverence, O boy, old age! The rich should pity the destitute. You should acknowledge the truth (= what is true,) O boys! A good scholar will always reverence his teacher. I doubt not, that thou hast promised thy protection to the destitute friend. Contemplate ye the noble examples of virtue, which are pointed out in history. Many have abused eloquence. We desire (opto), that we may enjoy peace. All the citizens apprehended, that the enemies might attack the city. You are fallen. You should speak with a friend as confidently, as with yourselves. Thou shouldst not be angry with those, whom thou oughtest to love. I doubt not, that thou wilt always follow the way of virtue. All know, how well thou hast always managed thy office.

3. Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Dilabor, lapsus sum, obliviscor, litus sum, obsēquor, secūtus sum,	labi 3. to go to	livisci 3. (c. gen.	sēqui 3. to comply
ruin.	or acc.) to forget.	with, obey.	

¹ § 101, 2).

proficiscor, factus sum, ficisci 3. to depart, proceed, march.	experior, pertus sum 4. to try.	2. (c. acc. pers.), it is fit.
assentior, sensus sum 4. to assent to.	largior 4. I give freely, bestow.	modestia, ae, f. modesty.
blandior 4. I flatter.	mentior 4. I lie.	umbra, ae, f. shade.
	metior, mensus sum, metiri 4. to measure.	commendatio, ōnis, f. commendation.

Quum¹ aegrōtus es, obsēqui debes praeceptis medicī. Stulti aliorum vitia cernunt, obliviscuntur suōrum. Prima pueri commendatio proficiscitur a modestia. Concordiā res parvae crescunt, discordiā maxīmae dilabuntur. Gloria virtūtem tanquam umbra sequitur.

Ne blandire malis hominibus! Puer, ne mentitor! Natūra hominibus multa bona largita est. Magnos homines virtute metimur, non fortunā. Voluptas blanditur sensibus nostris. Postquam² orator orationem finivit, omnes ejus sententiae assensi sunt. Omnia prius experiri verbis, quam armis, sapientem decet.

I doubt not, that thou wilt obey me. We shall never forget thee. Tell me, why thy father has proceeded to (in) Italy. We feared, that by (abl.) discord the resources (opes) of the citizens might go to ruin. Boys, you should not lie! Who does not know, how often the discourse of men deceives (= lies)! Measure men according to (abl.) virtue, not according to fortune. Always follow the way of virtue.

PART SECOND.

a) DEONENTS OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

4. Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Adūlor 1. (c. dat. or acc.), I flatter.	opitūlor 1. I lend aid.	libido, īnis, f. unrestrained desire, caprice.
arbitror 1. I think.	recordor 1. (generally with acc.), I remember.	eventus, ūs, m. event.
auspīcor 1. I commence.	innocentia, ae, f. innocence.	libens, tis, delighted.
auxilior 1. I aid.	angor, ōris, m. vexation.	aliquando, adv. sometime.
domīnor 1. I reign.		aliter, adv. otherwise.
modēror 1. c. dat. moderate; c. acc. govern.		rite, adv. properly.

¹ § 111, 1).² § 111, 2).

Boni viri non voluptate, sed officio consilia moderantur. Homo impröbus aliquando cum dolöre flagitia sua recordabitur. Socrätes totius mundi se incölam et civem arbitrabätur. Disce libens: quid dulcius est, quam discere multa? Discentem comitantur opes, comitantur honöres. Ubi¹ libido dominätur, innocentiae leve praesidium est. Eventus fallit, quum aliter accidit, atque homines arbiträti sunt. Atticus potenti Antonio non est adulätus. Nihil rite sine dei immortalis ope, consilio, honöre auspica-bere.

5. *Words to be learned and Examples for translation.*

Aemülör 1. (c. acc.), <i>I emulate.</i>	imitor 1. (c. acc.), <i>imitate.</i>	<i>I occulto 1. I conceal.</i> rivulus, i, m. stream.
augurör 1. <i>I divine,</i> <i>foretell.</i>	jocör 1. <i>I jest.</i> laetör 1. (c. abl.), <i>I</i>	majöres, um, <i>ances-</i> <i>tors.</i>
aversör 1. <i>I turn from,</i> <i>shun.</i>	<i>rejoice.</i> precör 1. <i>I entreat.</i>	mediöcris, e, <i>mode-</i> <i>rate.</i>
consector 1. <i>I pursue.</i>	venörör 1. <i>I revere.</i>	quotidie, <i>adv. daily.</i>
cunctor 1. <i>I delay.</i>	venör 1. <i>I hunt.</i>	

Veneräre deum, veneräre parentes. Virtutes majorum aemulamini, vitia eorum aversamini! In silvis venätör venätur lepöres; in scholis, pueri, venamini lepöres! Ubi res bona tractanda est, ne cunctätör! Discipuli bonos condiscipulos imitantör, malos aversantör. Quotidie, puer, precätör a deo immortalis, ut servet tibi² tuos parentes! Tardi ingenii³ est, rivulos consecrari, fontes rerum non videre. Nulla re tam laetari soleo, quam meorum officiorum conscientia. In ira moderari animo et orationi, non mediöcris ingenii³ est. Nescisne, Socrätäm in carcere paucis diebus⁴ ante mortem jocatum esse? Quis speret, se auguratum esse ea, quae menti humanae a deo sunt occultata.

6. *Words to be learned and Examples for translation.*

Adhortör 1. <i>I encourage, exhort.</i>	[age. or de with abl.), <i>I</i>	indignör 1. (with acc. praeccludo 3. <i>I close.</i>
cohortör 1. <i>I encourage,</i>	<i>am dissatisfied with</i>	temperantia, ae, <i>f.</i>
exhortör 1. <i>I encourage, exhort.</i>	<i>something.</i>	temperance, <i>moderation.</i>
consölor 1. <i>I console.</i>	insidiör 1. <i>I lie in wait for.</i>	aper, pri, m. <i>wild boar.</i>
conspicör 1. <i>I discover, see.</i>	suspicör 1. <i>I suspect, conjecture.</i>	legätus, i, m. <i>ambassador.</i>
gratülör 1. <i>I congratulate.</i>	vagör 1. <i>I wander.</i>	facetus, a, um, <i>delicate, witty.</i>

¹ § 111, 2).

² § 90, R. 1.

³ § 88, 8.

⁴ § 91, 11.

immodestus, a, um, profusus, a, um, un-	admodum, adv. very.
immodest.	restrained.
ingenuus, a, um, no-	aperte, adv. openly.
ble-born, dignified.	nemo non, every one.
excors, cordis, sense-	nequicquam, adv. in
less.	vain, to no effect.

Aperte adulantem nemo non vidit, nisi qui admōdum est excors. Menti nihil est tam inimicum, quam voluptas; nec enim, libidine dominante, temperantiae locus est. Caesar, cohortātus milites, ut acriter contra hostes dimicarent, urbem oppugnāvit. Aliorum miseriam consolātūri exempla laudare debemus virorum fortium, qui in acerbissimis fortunae tormentis non sunt indignāti sortem suam. Genus jocandi non profusum, nec immodestum, sed ingenūm et facētum esse debet. A venatore insidiandum est apris. Multi legati congregāti sunt in urbem ad gratulandum nobis de recuperāta libertate. Quem neque gloria, neque pericūla excitant, nequicquam hortēre: timor animi aures praeclūdit. Narra, ubi per tam longum tempus vagātus sis. Non dubitābam, quin hujus hominis consuetudinē aversātus esses. Non dubito, quin, istum adolescentem conspicātus, continūo de ejus ingenio praeclārum quiddam suspicāturus sis.

We rejoice at (abl.) the joy of friends *in like manner* (aeque) as (ac) at our own (= ours), and grieve in like manner at [their] grief (= vexations). Be convinced that thou art dear to me, but that thou wilt be much (multo) dearer, if thou wilt rejoice in good principles. The example of the leader encouraged (perf.) the soldiers, that they might imitate him. I doubt not, that thou wilt ever assist the good, [but] wilt shun the bad. I doubted not, that he would sometime remember his foul deeds (acc.) with pain. Flatter thou not a powerful [man]! Be convinced that you will commence nothing properly without the aid, counsel [and] honor of God. I exhort thee, that thou shouldst imitate good men, [but] shun the bad. Relate to me, why thou hast been dissatisfied with thy fortune. I doubted not that the enemies had lain in wait for thee.

When thou pursuest history, O boy, thou shouldst contemplate both the examples of virtue and of vice, and emulate those, [but] shun these. In a good thing, thou shouldst not delay. The rich should lend aid to the destitute. The soldiers hasten, *in order to lend aid* (Sup.) to us against the enemies. *When evil desires reign* (abl. abs.), there is no (= not) place for (dat.) virtue.

b) DEPONENTS OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

7. Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Confiteor, fessus sum	reor, rätus sum, reri,	venia, ae, f. pardon.
2. to confess.	2. to think.	exemplar, äris, n. pat-
profiteor, fessus sum	dubito 1. c. inf. I hes-	tern, model.
2. to acknowledge	itate, entertain scru-	cunctus, a, um, all
freely, promise.	ples.	(combined), whole.
medeor (without	impetro 1. I obtain.	inänis, e, empty, vain.
perf.), c dat. to	imploro 1. I implore.	cito, adv. quickly; ci-
cure, remedy.	informo 1. I instruct.	tius, more quickly,
mereor, itus sum 2.	nego 1. I deny.	more easily.
to deserve; de ali-	trado, dedi, ditum 3.	liberaliter, adv. freely.
qua re, to deserve	to deliver up, give	nondum, adv. not yet.
of something.	up to.	[ness. penitus, adv. thor-
	malitia, ae, f. wicked-	oughly, wholly.

Vix peccätum tuum fassus eras, quum pater tui misertus est. Jam te errasse confessus eras, quum denuo negasti. Nondum vestrum auxilium imploraverämus, quum jam id nobis professi estis. Vix inopiam nostram fassi eramus, quum liberalissime vestrum praesidium nobis polliciti estis.

Magna est vis philosophiae, quum medetur animis, inännes sollicitudines deträhit, cupiditatibus liberat. Artes magnum nobis praebent praesidium, quum se ipsae per se tuentur singulae. Praeclare de patria merentur praeceptores, quum juventutem bonarum litterarum studiis informant.

RULE OF SYNTAX. When the conjunction *quum* expresses a *conceived* or *assumed ground* or *reason*, and may be translated by the causal *since* (seeing that), or *although*, it is connected with the *subjunctive*. (Comp. Synt. 111, 1.)

Quum philosophia animis *medeatur*, totos nos penitusque ei tradere debemus. Omnes miserebantur vestri, *quum* non propter malitiam, sed propter fortunam in miseriis *essetis*. *Quum* milites pericula *vererentur*, non auderent cum hostibus configere. *Quum* is, qui verum amicum *intuetur*, tanquam exemplar aliquod *intueatur* sui; talem amicum aeque ac nosmet ipsos amare debemus. Avärus, *quum* in omnium rerum affluentia *sit*, fatebitur ne, se esse satiätum? *Quum*, virtutem satis in se praesidii¹ habere ad vitam beatam, *fateare*; etiam confitebere, sapientem in cruciatibus bea-

¹ § 88, 13. c). 4).

tum esse. Id si confessus eris, non dubito, quin professorus sis, sapientem in omni vitae conditione beatum esse.

When we freely acknowledge our guilt, we more easily obtain pardon. Since you have acknowledged, that virtue may have in itself sufficient of (gen.) protection for a happy life, you will also confess, that the wise [man] may be happy under (in) tortures; and when you shall have confessed this, I doubt not, that you will freely acknowledge, that the wise [man] is happy in every condition of life. Scarcely had I acknowledged my fault to thee, as I obtained (perf.) pardon from thee. Thou hast acquired for thyself great praise, *inasmuch as* (quum) thou hast pitied the destitute citizens.

Miserere nostri! Medemīnor, O cives, inopiae¹ nostrae! Suum quisque tuētor munus. Nemo, cunctam intūens terram, de divina providentia dubitabit. Cives, hostes urbem oppugnatūros esse, rati, eos acriter propulsare studuerunt. Venio meum praesidium tibi pollicīturus. Omnibus modis a vobis inopiae civium medendum est. Adolescentis officium est, majōres natu verēri. Quis nescit, te praelāre de republica meritum esse? Spero, te mei² misertūrum esse.

Reverence, O boy, old age! Pity ye me! Thou shouldst cure the want of others. The scholar should reverence his teacher. Shall we, *when we contemplate* (=contemplating) the whole earth, doubt *as to* (de) the foresight of God? Thinking (part. perf. of *reor*), that thou hast promised me thy protection, I have not hesitated to undertake (accedere) the business. Believe me, *who will freely acknowledge* (part. fut.) what is true. Thou must remedy (Ger.) the want of thy friend. I hope, that thou wilt promise to me thy protection. It is beautiful, to remedy the want of others. Who does not know, that Cicero deserved nobly of the Roman state?

c) DEONENTS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

8. Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Complector, plexus congrēdiōr, gressus nascor, natus sum,
sum, plecti 3. to sum, grēdi 3. to nasci 3. to be born,
embrace. engage. to spring from,

¹ § 90, 2.

² § 83, 1.

(part. fut. nasciturus).	ti, part. reversus,	gratia, ae, f. thank.
innascor 3. to be in-born, implanted.	inf. reverti 3. to return.	angŭlus, i, m. corner.
nitor, nixus or nisus sum, niti 3. (c. abl.), to rest upon; 2) ad aliquid, to strive after something.	ulciscor, ultus sum, ulcisci 3. (c. acc.), to avenge one's self on one.	philosŏphus, i, m. philosopher.
adnitor 3. I endeavor, exert myself.	cumŭlo 1. I heap, load.	pestis, is, f. pest, destruction.
paciscor, pactus sum, pacisci 3. to make an agreement.	persevero 1. I continue.	semen, inis, n. seed.
revertor, pf. rever-	discedo, cessi, cessum 3. to go away, depart.	visum, i, n. appearance.
	reddo, didi, ditum 3. to restore; 2) to make.	detestabilis, e, detestable.
		superior, us, superior; conqueror.
		quotiescunque, conj., as often as.

Salus hominum non veritate solum, sed etiam famā nititur. Cives, cum hostibus pacti, pace fructi sunt. Deum et divinum animum cogitatione complectimur. Lacte, carne multisque aliis rebus vescimur. Ne ulciscimini inimicos vestros! Romani Numidius polliciti sunt, si perseverarent bello urgere Carthaginenses, se adnissuros esse, ut bene cumulātam gratiam redderent. Nemo parum diu vixit, qui virtutis perfectae perfecto functus est munere. Simulatque experrecti sumus, visa in somnio contemnimus. Aristoteles, Theophrastus, Zeno, innumerabiles alii philosophi, e patria profecti, nunquam domum revertērunt. Nulla tam detestabilis est pestis, quae non homini ab homine nascatur. Non sum uni angulo natus: patria mea totus hic est mundus. Sunt ingeniis nostris semina innata virtutum. Hannibal, quotiescunque cum Romanis congressus est in Italia, semper discessit superior.

9. Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Defetiscor, sum, fetisci 3. to be weary, tired out.	fessus tendo, tetendi, tentum 3. to stretch out; ad aliquid, to strive after something.	nefas (indecl.), n. wrong.
elabor, lapsus sum, labi 3. to glide away.	stultitia, ae, f. folly.	proprius, a, um, (c. gen.), one's own, peculiar.
enitor, nisus or nixus sum, niti 3. to exert one's self.	dominus, i, m. lord, master. [counter. proelium, i, n. encounter.]	quo, adv. whither.
pator, passus sum, pati 3. to suffer.	diuturnitas, atis, f. long continuance.	ubicunque, adv. wherever; ubicunque gentium, wherever in the world.
excedo, cessi, cessum 3. (c. abl.), to retire.	viciuitas, atis, f. neighborhood.	

Optimi cujusque animus maxime ad immortalē gloriam nititur. Hostes, diuturnitate pugnae defessi, proelio excedēbant. Qui virtutem adeptus erit, ubicunque erit gentium, a nobis diligētur. Avida est pericūli virtus, et, quo tendat, non quid passūra sit, cogitat. Augustus dominum se appellari non est passus. Anima alia sunt rationis expertia, alia ratione utentia. Animo elapso, corpus nihil valet. Valet apud nos clarorum hominum memoria, etiam mortuorum. Regia res est, succurrere lapsis. Proprium est stultitiae, aliorum vitia cernere, oblivisci suorum. Ut plurimis prosimus, enī debemus. Irasci iis nefas est, quos amare debemus. Amicitiae, consuetudines, vicinitates quid habeant voluptatis, carendo magis intelligimus, quam fruendo. Juvēni parandum, seni utendum est. Suo cuique iudicio utendum est.

10. *Words to be learned and Examples for translation.*

Ingridior,	gressus	accūso	1. I complain	usitātus, a, um, usual,
sum,	grēdi	3. (c. of, accuse.	common.	
acc.), I go into, enter, enter upon.	deflāgro	1. I burn up	diu, adv. long time ;	
	(intrans.)		diutius, longer.	
perfungor,	functus	vices, plur. (gen. not used), f. vicissitudes.	intemperanter, adv. intemperately, without moderation.	
sum, fungi	3. (c. abl.), to pass through.	perexigūus, a, um,		
persēquor, cūsus sum,	sequi	3. to pursue.	plerumque, adv. generally.	

All wish, that they may reach (adipisci) old age, but when they have reached (= having reached), they complain of it. The soldiers tired out by the long march, gave themselves up to rest. Boys, you should follow the example of the good. We have enjoyed a long-continued peace. Common things escape easily from the memory, remarkable and new things remain longer. Many abuse without moderation leisure and literature. Those appear to me to have lived happily, to whom it has been permitted to enjoy the praise of wisdom. We favor those, who have entered upon the same dangers which we have passed through. All strive after joy, but many do not know, whence they may obtain permanent (stabilis, e) and great joy. Alexander pursued (perf.) the enemies eagerly. Fortune is not merely blind itself, but it generally makes those blind also, whom it embraces. Man is not born for himself alone, but for his country and for his [friends], so that (ut) a very small part is left to himself. The condition of mortals has such (is) vicissitudes, that adversity (res adversae) springs from prosperity (res secundae), and prosperity from adversity. He lives the best, who obeys the laws

not on account of fear, but follows them, because he thinks that this may be most salutary. In (abl.) the same night in which Alexander was born, the temple of the Ephesian (Ephesius, a, um) Diana burned up.

d) DEPONENTS OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

11. Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Potior 4. (c. abl.), <i>I possess myself of.</i>	throughout the fourth Conj.	calor, ōris, <i>m. heat.</i>
opperior, pertus sum, periri 4. <i>to await.</i>	coorior 4. <i>I arise, break out, break forth.</i>	frons, tis, <i>f. forehead.</i>
ordior or exordior, orsus sum, ordiri 4. <i>to begin.</i>	exorior 4. <i>I appear, spring from, arise.</i>	praeparatio, ōnis, <i>f. preparation.</i>
orior, ortus sum, oriri 4. <i>to spring, rise from; part. fut. oriturus (not orturus); the Indic. Pres. follows the third Conj.; orēris, oritur, orimur; so its compounds except adorior (I attack, attempt), which follows</i>	demolior 4. <i>I demolish.</i>	vultus, ūs, <i>m. expression, countenance.</i>
	eblandior 4. <i>I obtain by flattery.</i>	privātus, a, um, <i>private.</i>
	praelōquor, locūtus sum, lōqui 3. <i>to promise.</i>	ferox, ōcis, <i>fierce.</i>
	animadverto, ti, sum 3. <i>to observe, perceive.</i>	necesse est (c. subjunctive or c. acc. et inf.), <i>it is necessary.</i>
	praeda, ae, <i>f. booty.</i>	eo, <i>adv. thither, so far.</i>
	tergum, i, <i>n. back.</i>	grate, <i>adv. gratefully.</i>
		tamen, <i>conj. yet.</i>
		vero (after the first word of its clause) <i>conj. but.</i>

Frons, oecūli, vultus persaepe mentiuntur, oratio vero saepissime. Quicquid oritur, qualecunque est, caussam habeat a natura necesse est. Sol universis eandem lucem eundemque calorem largitur. Quam multi indigni luce sunt! et tamen dies oritur. Unde tandem tam repente nobis exorēris? Milites, si ferōci impētū in hostem coorimur, victoria in manibus nostris est! Dum urbem oppugnāre adorimur, hostes a tergo nos aggressi sunt. Suo quisque metu pericūla metitur. Sapiens et praeterita grate recordatur, et praesentibus ita potitur, ut animadvertat, quanta sint ea quamque jucunda.

Cave, ne honōres eblandiāre! Oratōres, priusquam exordiantur, quaedam praeloquuntur. In omnibus negotiis, priusquam ordiāmur, adhibenda nobis est praeparatio diligēns. Omnes cives domos suas floribus et corōnis ornavērunt et vestivērunt, quia regem opperiebantur. Dum exercitus hostilis urbis domos privatas publicasque demoliebātur, cives maximo moerōre opplebantur.

Quum hostes praedam inter se partiebantur, nos vehementissimo impetu eos adoriebāmur. Dux milites cohortatus est, ut omnia experirentur, quibus urbem obsidiōne liberarent. Quum saeva tempestas coarirētur, ingens pavor omnes nautas occupavit.

12. *Words to be learned and Examples for translation.*

Ementior 4. <i>I state</i>	conservo 1. <i>I pre-</i>	prodigiōsus, a, um,
<i>falsely.</i>	<i>serve.</i>	<i>wonderful.</i>
emetior, mensus sum,	commoditas, ātis, <i>f.</i>	ridiculus, a, um, <i>ridi-</i>
metiri 4. <i>I measure</i>	<i>convenience.</i>	<i>culous.</i>
<i>off, travel through.</i>	ubertas, ātis, <i>f.</i>	tantus, a, um, <i>so great.</i>
molior 4. <i>to move, ex-</i>	<i>tiffulness.</i>	consulto, <i>adv. design-</i>
<i>cite, attempt.</i>	adspectus, ūs, <i>m. sight.</i>	<i>edly.</i>
advolo 1. <i>I fly up,</i>	usus, ūs, <i>m. use, want.</i>	fortuito, <i>adv. by</i>
<i>hasten up.</i>		<i>chance.</i>

Ridiculi sunt, qui, quod ipsi experti non sunt, id docent cetēros. Omne animal se ipsum diligit ac, simulatque ortum est, id agit, ut se conservet. Ad hominum commoditates et usus tantam rerum ubertatem natura largita est, ut ea, quae gignuntur, donata consulto nobis, non fortuito nata videantur. Herodotus, multas terras *emensus*, multas quidem res prodigiōsas narravit, sed eas non ipse *ementitus* est, sed alii, ex quibus audivit. Jam per tres menses opperti erāmus amicū, quum nobis ejus mors nuntiata est. Repente Romanis Sulla *exortus* et atrocissimum bellum civile *exorsus* est.

Sapiens nunquam malis hominibus¹ blandiētur, nunquam aliquid falsi ementiētur, nunquam fortunam experiētur, nunquam aliis calamitatem moliētur. Si celeriter hostem adoriēmur, non est dubium, quin brevi tempore urbe² potituri simus. Simulatque sol ortus erit, proficiscēmur. Ne blandire malis hominibus. Ne opperimini fortunam! Hostes advolaverunt urbe potitum. Numerus aequalis facilis est partitu.³ Sole oriente, profecti sumus. Coorta saeva tempestate, omnes nautas ingens pavor occupavit. Solem *oriturum* cum maxima voluptate spectamus.

The sun does not always rise and set in the same place. Scarcely had the enemy been discovered, as we arose (perf.) and attacked (perf.) them spiritedly. Men measure the year by (abl.) the return of the sun.

Nothing prevented you, that you should begin your business. *Three days long* (= through three days) have we awaited the arri-

¹ § 90, 1. b).

² § 91, 1. g).

³ § 97, 2. a).

val of the friend. Every living being, as soon as it is born (= sprung), loves (diligo) both itself and all its parts. Many having travelled through many countries, have stated falsely many wonderful things. History relates, that Sulla arose (perf.) suddenly against (dat.) the Romans and began (perf.) the civil war. Tell me, why thou hast not assented to my opinion. Hast thou heard that the enemies have tried all [means], *in order to possess themselves of* (= *ad* with gerund) the city?

We will not begin a new business, before that the previous [business] shall have been completed. When the camp shall be fortified, the soldiers will attack the enemy. If thou shalt lie, nobody will trust thee, *even if* (etiamsi) thou speakest (subj.) the truth. Our soldiers did not doubt, that, if they attacked (subj.) the enemy quickly, they might in (abl.) a short time possess themselves of the city. Await thou not fortune! Flatter ye not bad men! *As the sun rose* (abl. abs.), the soldiers marched against the enemies. The sun, *on the point of rising* (= about to rise), presents a splendid sight. I hope, that thou wilt never lie. All believed, that a storm would arise.

EXERCISE XXIX.

Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Circumdo, dēdi, dā-	praesto, īti, ītum and	classis, is, <i>f.</i> fleet.
tum, dāre (c. dat.	ātum 1. to stand be-	vestis, is, <i>f.</i> garment.
et acc., or c. acc.	fore, be distinguish-	conservatio, ōnis, <i>f.</i>
et abl.), to place	ed; c. dat. to sur-	preservation.
(something around	pass, to make good,	invitus, a, um, <i>unwil-</i>
something), to sur-	pay; se praestāre	ling.
round (something	(e. g. fortem) to	inspērans, tis, <i>not hop-</i>
with something).	show one's self	ing, contrary to ex-
consto, īti, ātum 1.	(brave).	pectation.
(c. abl.), to consist	forum, i, <i>n.</i> market.	uber, ēris, <i>c.</i> rich, val-
of, to be gained at	stipendium, i, <i>n.</i> wages.	uable.
the expense of, cost.	interfactor, ōris, <i>m.</i>	certo, <i>adv.</i> certainly.
persto, īti, ātum 1. to	murderer.	extrinsēcus, <i>adv.</i> from
persist.	propugnator, ōris, <i>m.</i>	without, without.
	champion.	

Deus nobis dedit animum, quō¹ nihil est praestantius. Multo sanguine nobis victoria stetit. Mater omnium bonarum artium

¹ than which (soul).

sapientia est: qua¹ nihil a deo immortalī uberius, nihil praestabilius hominum vitae datum est. Deus corpus, ut quandam vestem, animo circumdedit et vestivit extrinsēcus. Quorum patres, aut majores aliquā gloriā praestiterunt, ii student plerumque eodem in genere laudis excellere. Parentes carissimos habere debemus, quod ab iis nobis vita tradita est. Non dedit beneficium, qui invitus profuit. Quinam magis sunt tui, quam [ii] quibus tu salutem iusperantibus reddidisti?

The Athenians gave (perf.) to Miltiades a fleet of (gen.) 70 ships. No pest has cost the human race (= race of men) more (pluris) than anger. Darius promised, that he would give 1000 talents to the murderer of Alexander. What of (gen.) time is given to each one for living, with (abl.) this he should be contented. Who does not know, that Socrates surpassed (perf.) all the philosophers of antiquity in (abl.) wisdom? I fear, that the victory will cost us much blood. The body, as a garment, has been placed by God around (dat.) the soul.

EXERCISE XXX.

Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Incrēpāre, <i>to reproach.</i>	<i>to apply one's self</i>	evolvo, volvi, volū-
percēpāre, <i>to resound.</i>	(to something).	tum 3. <i>to unfold.</i>
accūbāre, <i>to recline</i>	complicāre, <i>to fold to-</i>	verecundia, ae, <i>f. re-</i>
<i>by; to sit at table.</i>	<i>gether; complicā-</i>	<i>spect.</i>
excūbāre, <i>to keep</i>	tus, <i>complicated, ob-</i>	notio, ōrīs, <i>f. notion.</i>
<i>watch.</i>	<i>scure.</i>	scaturigo, inis, <i>f.</i>
perdōmāre, <i>curb, sub-</i>	replicāre, <i>to roll back,</i>	<i>spring.</i>
<i>due.</i>	<i>recall.</i>	gemītus, ūs, <i>m. groān.</i>
applicāre, <i>to lean up-</i>	cremo 1. <i>I burn up.</i>	nutus, ūs, <i>m. nod, com-</i>
<i>on; se applic., to</i>	adūro, ussi, ustum 3.	<i>mand.</i>
<i>approach, to attach</i>	<i>to set on fire, to</i>	plorātus, ūs, <i>m. cry.</i>
<i>one's self' (to one),</i>	<i>burn up.</i>	passim, <i>adv. far and</i>
		<i>wide.</i>

Quis venit? Fores crepuerunt. Dux milites vehementer increpuit. Tota urbs vocibus civium de victoria ex hostibus reportata exsultantium perccepit. Age, cubitum discedamus! Romani multas gentes ac nationes armis perdomuerunt. Docemur auctoritate nutaque legum, domitas habere libidines, coercere omnes cupiditates. Ex hoc fonte ingentes scaturigines aquae emi-

¹ than which (wisdom), § 91, 2. b).

cuērunt. Indorum sapientes, quum ad flammam se *applicaverunt*, sine gemitu aduruntur. Cicero Rhodi¹ ad Molōnem philosophum se *applicavit*. Sapiens studet animi sui *complicatam* notionem evolvēre. Quum memoriam temporum *replicaveris*, et virtutum et vitiorum multa exempla reperies. Quum urbs expugnata esset, omnia passim mulierum puerorumque ploratibus sonuerunt. Terremur, quum serena tempestate tonuit. Nitimur in vetitum. Augustus carmina Virgilio cremari contra testamenti ejus verecundiam vetuit.

I have forbidden thee to go to walk, but *precisely because* (ob id ipsum, quod) I have forbidden [it], thou hast striven against (in) what has been forbidden (= the forbidden). The question concerning (de) the immortality of the soul (plur.), is nobly explained by Cicero in the first book of the Tusculan Disputations. Cicero applied (perf.) himself with [his] whole soul to the study of eloquence. Three hundred soldiers kept watch before the camp. Who does not know, that many nations and peoples were subdued by the Romans? If thou shalt have curbed thy passions (libido) and restrained (teneo) thy desires, thou wilt live happily. Already we were sitting (pluperf.) at the table, when suddenly a flame gushed forth (perf. of *emico*) from the roof. Scarcely had we retired (discedere) to sleep (= in order to recline, *Sup.*), when the whole city resounded (perf. of *persono*) with discordant cries. Thy brother related to me, that it thundered (perf.) yesterday in (abl.) clear weather. As the doors had creaked (subj.), I doubted not (perf.) that thou wast coming (subj.).

EXERCISE XXXI.

Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Adjūvāre (c. acc.), to aid, assist, support.	attingo, tīgi, tactum 3. to touch.	purus, a, um, pure.
desēcāre, to cut off.	peto, īvi, itum 3. to seek, fetch.	solūtus, a, um, unbound.
resēcāre, to cut off, remove.	olēum, i, n. oil.	summus, a, um, highest; summa aqua, surface of the water.
perfricāre, to rub thoroughly. [renew.	principium, i, n. beginning; principio, in the beginning.	vivus, a, um, living, fresh.
refricāre, to rub again,	garrulitas, ātis, f. loquacity.	lo-frustra, adv. in vain.
alligo 1. I bind.		
coeno 1. I sup.		

¹ at Rhodes. See Synt. § 92.

Verëor, ne refricuërim meis littëris desiderium ac dolërem tuum. Dubium non est, quin tuis sceleribus reipublicae practerita fata refricatùrus sis. Tantälus summam aquam attingens, enectus siti fingitur a poëtis. Nescisne, quantopëre garrülus iste homo me garriendo enecuërit? Caius Marius quum secarëtur, principio vetuit se alligari, nec quisquam ante Marium solütus dicitur esse sectus. Agricölae frumenta desecta in horrea congërunr. Nisi libidines resecuëris, frustra studëbis beäte vivëre. Quis nescit, quantopëre Cicero patriam suam juvërit? Non solum fortuna, sed etiam tua industria te in negotio tuo adjüvit. Si quid fortuna milites nostros adjuvërit, non dubitamus, quin splendidam de hostibus reportaturi simus victoriam. Exercitus maximis itineribus profectus est, cives obsidione cinctos adjütum. Ne prius coëna, quam manus lavëris. Corpus lavatùrus aquam puram e vivo flumine pete.

Boys, rise *right early* (bene mane), wash yourselves, and, when you have washed (fut. perf.), proceed immediately to your business. This (iste) man has vexed me to death by his loquacity. After the soldiers had marched (perf.) the whole day, they were (perf.) entirely exhausted by hunger and thirst. It is known, that the gladiators of the Romans and Greeks, rubbed (perf.) their bodies thoroughly with oil. If we shall be assisted (fut. perf.) by fortune, we shall bear off a splendid victory over (de) the enemy. It is known, that Cicero assisted (perf.) his native country *very much* (permultum). By (abl.) the war carried on between Caesar and Pompey, the recollection of the horrid (foedus, a, um) war of Marius and Sulla was (perf.) renewed. The farmers have already cut the grain. Unless the passions and desires are removed, we strive in vain to live happily.

EXERCISE XXXII.

Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Admiscëre, to inter- mingle.	respiro 1. <i>I breathe.</i>	vigiliae, arum, <i>f. watch-</i> <i>es, night watches.</i>
distinëre, to hold apart, occupy.	sedo 1. <i>I quiet.</i>	
sustinëre, to bear.	amplexor 1. <i>I em-</i> <i>brace.</i>	pullus, i, m. <i>the young</i> <i>(of animals), chick-</i> <i>en.</i>
removëre, to remove.	deprehendo, di, sum 3. <i>to seize, take.</i>	clades, is, <i>f. defeat.</i>
dedico 1. <i>I conse-</i> <i>crate.</i>	excludo, si, sum 3. <i>to</i> <i>exclude, hatch.</i>	gravitas, ätis, <i>f. grav-</i> <i>ity, dignity.</i>
implico 1. <i>I involve.</i>	gallina, ae, <i>f. a hen.</i>	testis, is, <i>c. witness.</i>

ascensus, ūs, *m. as-* horno, *adv. this year.* *state, at the expense*
cent. *publice, adv. publicly,* *of the state.*
 anxie, *adv. anxiously.* *on the part of the*

Cicerōnem Minerva omnes artes edocuit. Gravitas modestiae¹ mista maxime admirabilis est. Tot tantisque negotiis distentus sum, ut mihi non liceat libere respirare. Nescisne, quot labores, quot pericula, quot miseras milites in itinere sustinuerint? Si virtus te a malis cupiditatibus arcuerit, vita tua beata erit. Cicero, per legatos cuncta edoctus, praetoribus imperat, ut in ponte Allobroges deprehendant. Quo² minus animi se admiscuerint atque implicaverint hominum vitiis atque erroribus, eo³ facilius illis ascensus in coelum erit. Simplex animi natura est, nec habet in se quicquam admixtum.

Duae urbes potentissimae, Carthago et Numantia, a Scipione sunt delatae. Graecorum Romanorumque gloriam nulla unquam oblivio delavit, nec unquam delabit. Deus bonis omnibus mundum implavit, mali nihil admiscuit. Dum abest dux, milites seditionem civerunt. Nuntiata clades majorem, quam res erat, terrorem in urbe excivit. Catilina neque vigiliis, neque quietibus sedabatur: ita conscientia mentem excitam vastabat.

Cautum est legibus, ut mortui post tertium diem sepelirentur. Non dubito, quin semper ab hominum impurorum consuetudine caveris. Non ignoro, te mihi meisque semper favisse. Pulli a matribus exclusi frotique anxie custodiuntur. Dubitabisne, quin summum semper in te fovirim amorem? Me sic amplexati estis, sic in manibus habuistis, sic fovistis, ut nunquam illius diei obliviscerer.

Cicero was instructed (perf.) by Minerva in (acc.) all literature. Tell me, who has taught thee (acc.) grammar. If thou shalt have joined (= mixed) dignity with modesty, thou wilt please all. If thou hadst abstained from the intercourse of bad men, thou wouldst now be contented with thy lot. If virtue had restrained thee from bad passions, thou wouldst now be happy.

All the senators judged (perf.), that they should (Gerund) lend aid to the citizens of the city destroyed by the enemies. It is known, that Scipio destroyed (perf.) two very powerful cities, Carthage and Numantia. Tell me, why thou hast wept. The death of the good king has been lamented (= wept) by all the citizens. When I shall have spun two hours, I will take a walk. The world is filled (complere) by God with all good [things], nothing of evil is intermixed.

When I shall have sent for (accio) you, you will not delay to

¹ § 90, R. 6.

² § 115, 3.

³ § 91, 3. a.)

come. My brother, sent for by a letter, will come to-morrow. Philip, king of the Macedonians (Macēdo, ōnis), sent for (perf.) Aristotle [as] teacher for his son Alexander. The laws have established, that (ut) the dead should be buried after the third day. I know, that thou hast always been on thy guard against the intercourse of bad men. It was established (perf.) by the will of the king, that grain should be distributed to the citizens on his birth-day. I rejoice, that (quod) thou hast always favored me and my studies. I know that thou hast always cherished great love for (*in c. acc.*) me. The hen anxiously guards the chickens which she has hatched and nursed.

EXERCISE XXXIII.

Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Extorquere, to wrest from.	lacrima, ae, f. tear.	occāsus, ūs, m. setting.
pervidēre, to contem- plate, examine.	sica, ae, f. dagger.	rabies, ēi, f. madness.
residēre, to remain behind.	sicarius, i, m. assassin.	rabiōsus, a, um, mad.
locuplētō 1. I enrich.	collum, i, n. neck.	extērus, a, um, exter- nal, foreign.
barba, ae, f. beard.	tonsor, ōris, m. barber.	ancillāris, e, of a maid,
epistōla, ae, f. letter.	tonstricūla, ae, f. a female barber.	servile.
	probitas, ātis, f. up- rightness.	acūte, adv. sharply, acutely.

Postquam prandēro, ambulābo. Audistīne, nos cras in horto pransūros esse? Quoad ullā spes in animo meo resēdit, pro patriae libertate dimicavi. Jam tres menses obsederunt hostes nostram urbem. Non ego sum ille ferrēus, qui (= ut ego) non movēar horum omnium lacrimis, a quibus me circumsessum vidētis. Multi putant, se beneficos in suos amicos visum iri, si locuplētent eos quacunque ratione. Ne prius de re aliqua judica, quam eam diligenter pervidēris. Epistōlae tuae valde me momorderunt. Si quis a cane rabiōso morsus est, rabies eum occupat. Quoad tu locutus es, puer ab ore tuo pependit. Spondistīne pro amico? Spondi. Multa a Laelio et in senatu et in foro vel provisā prudenter, vel acute responsa sunt. Callisthēnem Alexander non tantum necāvit, sed etiam torsit. Romanae reipublicae magnitudo atque amplitudo bellis cum extēris gentibus ac nationibus gestis mirum in modum aucta est. Sicario sica de manibus est extorta. Quo magis indulseris dolōri, eo intolerabilior erit. Occāsum atque interitum reipublicae Romanae optimi quique maxime luxerunt.

Come to me to-day, in order to breakfast (Sup.). When we shall have breakfasted, we will take a walk. Our city has already been beset three months by the enemies. The enemies have beset the whole city. Hast thou already seen the friend? no, but I hope that I shall see him to-morrow. I grieve, that my letter has afflicted thee. I fear that the dog will bite me. So long as thou hast been absent, we *have felt anxiety for thee* (pendere animis de te). History relates, that Callisthenes was (perf.) not only killed by Alexander, but before also was tortured. The soldiers wrested (perf.) a dagger from the hands of the assassin. Catiline emboldened (= increased) [his] fierce mind and [his] consciousness of foul deeds by wicked arts. By the discourse of the generals, the courage of the soldiers was increased (perf.). I rejoice, that thou hast not been indulgent towards (dat.) the faults of thy son. Thou knowest, how very much we have lamented the death of our friend.

EXERCISE XXXIV.

Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Abstergere, to wipe off, dispel, remove.	permulcere, to stroke, charm, soothe.	perpetior, pessus sum, peti 3. to endure.
detergere, to wipe off.	remanere, to remain behind, remain.	scintilla, ae, f. a spark.
affulgere, to shine upon.	oblecto 1. I delight.	exsilium, i, n. banishment.
deridere, to deride.	convivor 1. I eat in common.	caducus, a, um, destined to fall, falling.
dissuadere, to dissuade.	lateo, ui 2. I remain concealed.	confectio, onis, f. making, composition.
elucere, to shine forth.		

Dux mitibus verbis excitos militum animos permulsit. Legendo Virgilit carmina animus meus mirifice oblectatus et permulsus est. Ita jucunda mihi hujus libri confectio fuit, ut omnes absterserit senectutis molestias. Non prius ad te veniam, quam luctum omnem abstersero. Detersane jam est tabula? Quadraginta milia librorum Alexandriae¹ arsuerunt. Non dubito, quin brevi tota Germania bello arsura sit. Quis est, cui semper arriserit fortuna? Nescio, cur a te derisus sim. Sic mihi persuasi, sic sentio, non esse animos nostros mortales. Quis credat, cives pacem dissuasuros esse? Milites in itineribus multos labores perpessi sunt, sudaverunt et alsuerunt. Superatis hostibus, nova spes salutis civitati affulsit. Pater litteris me ursit, ut primo quoque tempore

¹ at Alexandria. See Synt. § 92.

litteras ad se darem. Quomodo in viro latebit scintilla ingenii, quae jam in puero eluxit! Tu me tantis beneficiis auxisti, quanta nunquam ausus sum optare. De amici tui comitate valde gavisus sum. Athēnis¹ optimo cuique accidere solitum est, ut in exsilium pelleretur.

The poems of Virgil have delighted and charmed my mind wonderfully. The orator hoped, that he should soothe the excited minds of the citizens by mild words. Hast thou wiped off the table? it has already been wiped off. I give (ago) thee very great thanks, that thou hast removed from me all pain by thy consolation. *Under the reign* (*imperare*, abl. abs.) of Napoleon (Napolēo, ōnis) nearly all Europe burned (perf.) with war. I hope, that all citizens, will burn with a desire, *to fight* (gen. of gerund) for the safety of [their] country. Who knows, *whether* fortune will always smile upon *him* (sibine). I know not, why you have derided me. I have not dissuaded the peace, and have been convinced, that neither will you dissuade it.

The hunters have sweated and frozen. After it has lightened, it thunders. The soldiers have pressed the enemies very much. From the countenance of the man, shone (perf.) dignity and moderation. I have rejoiced, that (quod) thou hast dared to speak thy opinion freely. The Carthaginians were accustomed (perf.) formerly to use elephants in war.

EXERCISE XXXV.

1. *Words to be learned and Examples for translation.*

Committēre, <i>to commit.</i>	elidēre, <i>to dash, break.</i>	spectātor, ōnis, <i>m. spectator.</i>
concedēre, <i>to concede, allow.</i>	copulāre, <i>to join.</i>	cachinnatio, ōnis, <i>f. an unrestrained laugh.</i>
connectēre, <i>to join together, connect.</i>	locāre (in c. abl.), <i>to place, set.</i>	libra, ae, <i>f. a pound.</i>
corrādēre, <i>to scrape together.</i>	modius, i, <i>m. a bushel.</i>	histrio, ōnis, <i>m. actor.</i>
delūdēre, <i>to deceive.</i>	regnum, i, <i>n. reign, kingdom.</i>	perpetuitas, ātis, <i>f. stability, perpetuity.</i>
elūdēre, <i>to mock.</i>	praecordia, orum, <i>n. diaphragm.</i>	imprūdēns, tis, <i>un- wares.</i>
disclūdēre, <i>to separate.</i>		viritim, <i>adv. man by man.</i>

Templum Jani bis post Numae regnum clausum est. Si ridere

¹ at Athens. See Synt. § 92.

concessum sit, vituperatur tamen cachinnatio. Si concesseris, esse deum; confitendum tibi est, ejus consilio mundum administrari. In omnium animis dei notionem impressit ipsa natura. Magna vis est conscientiae, et magna in utramque partem, ut neque timeant [ii], qui nihil commisierint, et poenam semper ante oculos versari putent [ii], qui peccarint. Virtutes ita copulatae connexaeque sunt, ut omnes omnium participes sint. Caesar populo praeter frumenti denos modios ac totidem olei libras trecentos quoque nummos viritum divisit. Qui diffidit perpetuitati bonorum suorum, timeat necesse est, ne aliquando, amissis illis, sit miser.

2. Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Concludere, to include.	emergere, to rise up, work one's self out.	exanimare, to kill.
confluere, to flow together, assemble.	detrudere, to thrust down.	exsibilare, to hiss off.
diffuere, to flow asunder, run into.	extrudere, to thrust from.	fugare, to put to flight.
defigere, to fix, render firm, to turn upon something.	discutere, to drive away, dispel.	hasta, ae, f. spear.
transfigere, to transfix.	dispergere, to disperse.	nebula, ae, f. a mist.
deflectere, to deviate.	dispicio, spexi, spectum 3. to open the eyes.	clipeus, i, m. a shield.
demergere, to plunge under, sink, suppress.	exagitare, to disquiet.	stimulus, i, m. goad.
		caligo, inis, f. darkness.
		salvus, a, um, safe.
		mobilis, e, changeable.
		quondam, adv. formerly.

Te in tantum luctum et laborem detrusum esse, graviter doleo. Cur aedibus istum extrusisti? Spero, amicum aegrotum e morbo evasurum esse. Si animus e corpore evaserit, tum demum vivet et vigebit. Sole orto, caligo discussa est. Omnia pericula, quae urbi impendebant, ducis fortitudo et consilium discussit. Marius senile corpus paludibus demersum occultavit. Animus coelestis ex altissimo domicilio depressus et in terram quasi demersus est. Leges, per longum tempus hostium vi demersae, tandem emerserunt. Deus immortalis sparsit animos in corpora humana. Omnia, quae nunc artibus conclusa sunt, quondam dispersa et dissipata fuerunt.

The Romans closed (perf.) the temple of Janus twice after the reign of Numa. If it is conceded to me by thee, that there is a God, thou must confess that the world is managed by his counsel. What thou hast promised, thou must hold to (*tenere*, gerundive). The idea (= notion) of God, is impressed upon (abl.)

the souls of all men by nature herself. Men, by whom crimes have been committed, are disquieted by the goads of conscience. God has connected all parts of the world together (*inter se*). Hast thou heard, that grain has been distributed to (*dat.*) the poor by the king?

Immortal souls have been placed (= sown) by God, in mortal bodies. Our soldiers attacked (*perf.*) the enemies dispersed, and put them to flight. All the cares and thoughts of Cicero were turned upon the welfare of the republic. I know, that thou wilt never deviate from the path of virtue through wickedness. For (*dat.*) whom is this crown plaited? I believe there is a great multitude of men assembled in the city, in order to behold (*Sup.*) the public games. It is known, that the Romans of later (*posterior*) times, ran into (*diffluere*) luxury.

EXERCISE XXXVI.

Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Arripere, to seize upon.	depugnare, to fight	sepulcrum, i, n. grave,
diripere, to plunder.	(for life or death).	burial.
conserrere, to join together, to be hand to hand.	jurare, to swear.	tegumentum, i, n. covering.
demetere, to cut down.	suo, sui, sutum 3. to sew.	commutatio, onis, f change.
demittere, to let down, let fall.	progredior, gressus sum, gredi 3. to step forth, proceed.	migratio, onis, f. migration.
disserrere, to discuss, speak.	caerimonia, ae, f. sanctity, religious ceremony.	recordatio, onis, f. recordation.
ingignere, to implant.	praetorium, i, n. general's tent.	mutus, a, um, dumb.
praepondere, to place before.		supremus, a, um, last.
		matere, adv. speedily.

In omnibus negotiis, priusquam aggrediare, consulto opus est¹; ubi autem consuleris, matere rem ipsam aggredere. Socraes supremo vitae die multa de immortalitate animorum disserunt. Manibus consertis, milites nostri fortitudine excelluerunt. Animus moderatur et movet id corpus, cui praepositus est. Zeno in una virtute beatam vitam posuit. Natura ingenitum homini cupiditatem verum inveniendi. Omnibus animalibus a natura ingenita est conservandi sui custodia. Alexander, victor tot regum

¹ there is need of one's deliberating. See § 91, 1. f).

atque populorum, irae succubūt. Spero, te semper maximo studio in littēras incubitūrum esse. Caerimonias sepulcrorum homines, maximis ingeniis praediti, non tantā curā coluissent, nisi haereret in eorum mentibus, mortem non interitum esse omnia delentem, sed quandam quasi migrationem commutationemque vitae, quae in claris viris et femīnis dux in coelum soleret esse. Si ingenium tuum artibus litterisque excultum erit, et tibi et aliis utilis eris. Dux, ne milites animum demitterent, vulnera sibi inflicta occulūt. Ne crede, ullum peccātum deo occultum manere.

I rejoice, that thou hast applied thyself with so great zeal to literature. I doubt not, that the wise [man] will never sink under the pains of the body. If thou shalt have cultivated thy genius by arts and literature, thou wilt be useful both to thyself and to [thy] native land. I hope, that thou wilt always honor thy parents. Why hast thou concealed thy faults from me? didst thou think, that thou wouldst always conceal them from me? The enemies, *after they had taken the city* (abl. abs.), killed (perf.) the citizens and plundered their goods. The wise [man] will be happy, even when all the gifts of fortune may be snatched from him. Gratefully we remember the place (acc.) where we were nourished and brought up.

EXERCISE XXXVII.

1. *Words to be learned and Examples for translation.*

Decernere, to determine, to discern.	under, place under, to subject.	obtrectatio, ōnis, f. detraction, grudge.
secernere, to sever, separate.	importare, to import.	venustas, ātis, f. love-liness.
insere, to sow in, implant.	conciōnari, to harangue the people.	corporēus, a, um, corporeal.
oblinere, to besmear, daub.	invidia, ae, f. envy, hatred.	communis, e, common, known by all.
prosternere, to prostrate.	butyrum, i, n. butter.	ibi, adv. there.
consternere, to strow.	comitia, orum, n. assembly of the people.	opportune, adv. opportunely.
substernere, to spread	mensis, is, f. crop.	subito, adv. suddenly.

Insita est nobis corpōris nostri caritas. Ibi messis non est, ubi satum non est. Omne, quod erat concrētum atque corporēum, deus substrāvit animo. Vitā tuā malevolorum obtrectationes et invidias prostravisti. Probus, imperātor, Aurēum montem apud

Moesian superiorem vinēis cōsēvit. Proelio commisso, omnia longe latēque telis, armis, cadaveribus constrāta erant. Scelerātum hōminem conscientia spretae virtutis exagitat. Die, cur consilium meum sprevēris. Audi, puer! Mater te rogat, cur panem butyro *oblitum oblitus* sis edere.

2. *Words to be learned and Examples for translation.*

Adsciscere, to adopt.	depōnere, to lay aside.	luxuries, ei, f. extravagancies.
assuescere (c. dat.), to accustom one's self, to be accustomed (to something).	sacra, ōrum, n. sacred rites.	agance.
consuescere, to accustom one's self, to be accustomed.	auctor, ōris, m. author, adviser; me auctore, on my advice.	alienigena, ae, foreign, from another country.
approbare, to approve.	religio, ōnis, f. religion, scrupulousness.	assiduus, a, um, unremitting, constant.
levare (c. abl.), to relieve, free.	superstitio, ōnis, f. superstition.	dilucidus, a, um, clear.
privare (c. abl.), to deprive.	suavitas, ātis, f. amiableness, amiable disposition.	quotidianus, a, um, daily.
		futiles, e, frivolous.
		paululum, adv. a little.

Multi homines, labori assiduo et quotidiano assueti, quum tempestatis causa prodire prohibentur, ludis delectantur. Demosthenes summa voce versus multos uno spiritu pronuntiare consuevit. Numam Pompilius, regem alienigenam, patribus auctoribus, sibi ipse populus adsevit. Cereris sacra populus Romanus a Graecis adscita maximam religione coluit. Ubi animus paululum e negotiis requieverit, ad te advolabo, in cuius amore et suavitate spero me inquieturum omnesque curas doloresque depositurum esse. Si amici mei mores pernoveris, spero, te ejus innocentiam *agniturum* eique *ignoturum* esse. Si luxuriam orationis tuae depaveris, magni oratoris laudem tuebere.

It is certain, that the rivers which have decreased in winter, will increase in the spring. I am accustomed (perf. act. of *consuesco*), to read something from (gen.) Homer daily. Numa Pompilius was adopted (perf.) by the Roman people [as] king. It is known, that the Roman people adopted (perf.) the sacred rites of Ceres from the Greeks. Cicero, deprived of public offices, found satisfaction in the study of literature. When thou shalt have become intimately acquainted with my brother, I doubt not, that thou wilt perceive his preeminence. The sheep have eaten down the herbs of the field. The shepherd drives (*agere*) the sheep to pasture (= in order to pasture, *Sup.*).

EXERCISE XXXVIII.

Saepe homines res, quas vehementer cupivērunt, adepti fastidiunt. Audistine, ut leones rudivērint? Bellum ita suscipiatur, ut nihil aliud, nisi pax quaesita videatur. Quum omnem antiquitatem memoriā repetivēris, tria vix amicorum paria invenies, qui alter pro altēro vitam deponere parati erant. Ne judica de re prius, quam eam accurāte exquisivēris! Erechthēi filiae cupide mortem expetivērunt pro vita civium. Omnis Romanorum philosophiā repetita est a Graecis. Socrātes totam vitam atque aetatem contrivit in emendandis aliorum moribus. Praecepta virtutis, quamvis contrita sint et communia, tamen a paucis observantur.

History relates, that death was sought by the daughters of Erechtheus for the life of the citizens. We read, that the consuls were brought from the plough by the Romans. It is known that the Romans have brought many sacred rites from foreign nations. As soon as the enemies attacked (perf.) our soldiers, they seized their arms and fought. I have taken myself so hastily from the city, because troublesome men vexed (perf.) me daily. I fear, that thou hast provoked the friend by thy licentious jests. It is known, that the power (opes) of Italy was (perf.) formerly wasted by Hannibal.

EXERCISE XXXIX.

1. *Words to be learned and Examples for translation.*

Afficere, to affect;	transigere, to spend	foedus, ěris, n. league.
affectus, affected.	(time).	potestas, ātis, f. pow-
delinquere, to do some-	excerpere, to make	er.
thing wrong, to be	extracts from.	furiōsus, a, um, mad,
delinquent.	benefactum, i, n. fa-	insane.
disjicere, to throw	vor.	[sway. modo, adv. only, just.
asunder, scatter.	dominatio, ōnis, f.	

Quid est tam furiōsum, quam verborum vel optimorum atque ornatissimorum sonitus inānis, nullā subjectā sententiā? Pecuniam si cuiquam fortuna adēmit, tamen, dum existimatio est intēgra, facile consolatur honestas egestātem. Milites, captis armis, impetum fecerunt in hostes; hi autem propere fugam cepērunt. Hostes, foedere, quod modo icērant, rupto, subito in castra nostra irrupērunt. Si quid philosophus in ratione vitae deliquērit, eo turpior est, quod artem vitae profitetur. Plinius nullum librum

legit, quem non excerp̄eret. Cives, ab hostibus subacti, omni libertatis recuperandae spe ademptā, miseram transeḡerunt vitam. Milites hostium aciem perfreḡerunt et disjec̄erunt. Foed̄era icta ab hostibus fracta sunt.

2. *Words to be learned and Examples for translation.*

Destituere, to desert.	resp̄uere, to reject.	pallium, i, n. cloak.
leave behind.	gloriarī, to glory.	discrimen, inis, n. distinction.
instituere, to instruct.	indulgentia, ae, f. indulgence.	prosperitas, atis, f. prosperity.
effugere (c. acc.), to escape.	tunica, ae, f. under garment.	contrarius, a, um, opposite.
exacuere, to sharpen.	annulus, i, m. ring.	liberalis, e, liberal.
involvere, to involve, envelope.	soccus, i, m. sock, shoe.	ingenue, adv. nobly, respectably.
redarguere, to disprove.	obsequium, i, n. obdience.	

Quis, honesta in familia institutus et educatus ingenue, non ipsa turpitudine, etiamsi eum laesura non sit, offenditur? Carthago diruta est, quum stetisset annos sexcentos sexaginta septem. Pacis nomine bellum involutum reformido. Philosophi involutam multarum rerum naturam evolverunt. Num tibi unquam placebit, quod omnium mentes aspernatae sunt et respuerunt? Milites in ipso discrimine periculi cives inermes destituerunt. Quum animus, cognitis perceptisque virtutibus, a corporis obsequio indulgentiaque discesserit, voluptatemque oppresserit, omnemque mortis dolorisque timorem effugerit, cultumque dei et puram religionem susceperit, et exacerit ingenii aciem ad bona deligenda et rejicienda contraria: tum vita nobis erit beatissima. Num credis, improborum prosperitates redarguisse dei bonitatem? Dejanira Hereuli sanguine Centauri tinctam tunicam induit.

3. *Words to be learned and Examples for translation.*

Deficere, to fail.	dissolvere, to relax.	designare, to designate.
praeficere, to set over.	persolvere, to pay.	extenuare, to extenuate, lessen.
deminuere, to diminish.	eruere, to dig up.	severitas, atis, f. severity.
diluere, to dilute, weaken.	obruere, to cover up.	

Homines metalla terrā obruta eruunt. Milites in expugnatae urbis cives ita saviunt, ut omnem humanitatem exuisse videntur. Divina lex non scripta est, sed nata: qua non instituti, sed imbuti sumus. Nemo est tam immānis, cujus mentem non imbu-

erit deorum opinio. Puëri animum tenërum virtutis præceptis imbuimus. Cogitatio, omnes res humânas fragiles et caducas esse, omnes meas molestias extenuavit et diluit. Quae observata sunt in usu ac tractatione dicendi, haec ab hominibus doctis verbis designata et partibus distributa sunt. Divitiae, quae ab extëris nationibus Romam confluxerunt, morum disciplinam severitatemque dissolverunt. Stipendiis, quae dux militibus promisërat, non persolutis, seditio concitata est.

The passions ought to be subjected to the reason. If thou shalt have spent thy life according to (ex) the precepts of virtue, the entrance to heaven will stand open to thee. It is hard to retain (tenëre) friendship, when thou shalt have fallen from virtue. God has set the soul over the body. Some doubt, *whether* the world may be made by *chance* (ne, *whether*, attached to *casu*) or (an) by the divine reason. It was uncertain, whether the Romans had (subj.) conquered, or had been conquered. Then (tum) first (demum) will the soul enjoy a happy life, when it shall have deserted the body. The enemies have broken (rumpere) the concluded league.

The soldiers fled, because they feared (perf. of *metuo*) that they should be conquered by the enemies. The metals, which nature has hid in (abl.) the earth, are dug up by man. Who is not imbued with the belief in (gen.) God? Parents, who have imbued the minds of their children with the principles of virtue and have instructed them in literature, deserve well, not only of (de) their children, but also of the state. We have weakened the wine by (abl.) water. I hope that this reflection will weaken all thy troubles. Already the powers of our soldiers were diminished, when the enemies made (perf.) an attack.

EXERCISE XL.

1. *Words to be learned and Examples for translation.*

Comprehendere,	to offundere,	to flow	lacerare, to lacerate,
embrace.	against,	diffuse,	tear.
confodere, to stab.	spread over.	digerere, to dispose,	
effodere, to dig out.	exedere, to consume,	digest.	
diffundere, to diffuse,	corrode.	inscribere (c. dat.), to	
disperse.	incendere, to enkindle,	inscribe, write upon.	
effundere, to pour	inflame.	liquefacere, to make	
forth; 2) throw off	procudere, to forge;	liquid.	
(the rider).	(of money) to coin.	proficere, to benefit.	

pervēhi, <i>to bear through, convey.</i>	velum, <i>i, n. sail.</i>	conspicuum, <i>ūs, m. sight.</i>
colonia, <i>ae, f. colony.</i>	furor, <i>ōris, m. madness.</i>	antiquitas, <i>adv. anciently, formerly.</i>
	vetustas, <i>ātis, f. age.</i>	

Constat, Tyrionum colonias paene toto orbe¹ terrarum diffusas fuisse. In morte portum nobis paratum [esse] et per fugium putamus. Quo utinam velis passis pervēhi liceat! Hannibal patriam defensum ex Italia revocatus est. Nihil proficiunt praecepta, quamdiu menti² error offusus est. Beate vivendi cupiditate incensi omnes sumus. Ingens nummorum numerus hoc anno³ profusus est. Aegritudo animum meum laceravit, exēdit planēque confecit. Epigrammatis, monumento inscripti, litterae vetustate exēsae erant. Milites urbem, ab hostibus oppugnātam, acerrime defendērunt.

2. Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Convellere, <i>to tear away, convulse.</i>	rescindere, <i>to tear, to break down.</i>	motus, <i>ūs, m. motion.</i>
desidere, <i>to sink down.</i>	transgrēdi, <i>to pass over.</i>	motus terrae, <i>earthquake.</i>
diffindere, <i>to split.</i>	mora, <i>ae, f. delay.</i>	quocunque, <i>adv. whithersoever.</i>
discindere, <i>to tear in pieces.</i>	nodus, <i>i, m. a knot.</i>	scilicet, <i>adv. namely, doubtless.</i>
	scrupulus, <i>i, m. anxiety.</i>	

Quocunque te vel oculis, vel animo convertēris, divinae bonitatis plena esse omnia, intelliges. Alexander, rex Macedōnum, Gordii nodum ense *diffidit*, scilicet *diffisus*, eum a se solutum iri. Quum Hannibal Alpes transgrederetur, multa ingentis magnitudinis saxa *diffissa* sunt. Quis tibi vestem discidit? Quid? discissane est? Pompēii terrae motu desederunt. Quis nescit, apud Romanos eloquentiam ad summum honorem adscendisse? Caesar, militum virtuti confisus, sine mora hostilem exercitum adortus est. Litterae tuae omnem scrupulum mihi ex animo evellerunt. Est boni regis officium, quum rempublicam labefactam convulsamque videt, opitulari patriae.

The goodness of God is diffused through (abl.) the whole world. The sails are spread. Superstition has spread (offundere) darkness over (dat.) the souls of men. The king has coined a great quantity of money this year. My mind is torn and consumed by grief (aegritudo). When we shall have eaten, we will take a walk. The city, which was assaulted by the ene-

¹ § 91, 9.

² § 90, R. 5.

³ § 91, 10.

my, was (perf.) very bravely defended by the citizens. Anciently, the Spaniards (Hispanus, i) dug up much gold and silver (= much of gold and silver). By thy bravery, thou hast turned all eyes and minds upon (in) thee. How often has the faculty of speaking (gen. of Ger.) been turned to (ad) the destruction of men! The enemies have broken down the bridges. Mountains and cities have been sunk down by earthquakes. We had already descended from the mountain, as we heard (perf.) that you were ascending (subj.) it. All anxiety has been removed (evellere) from my mind by thy letter. Who does not know, that the long war has shaken the state violently? Caesar by a few words inflamed the soldiers for the battle.

EXERCISE XLI.

1. Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Concinere, to sing together, sound together.	evertere, to overthrow, demolish.	proverbium, i, m. proverb.
excidere, to cut off, destroy.	inspicere, to look upon, view.	fides, is, f. string; fidibus canere, to play with a stringed instrument.
obtingere, to fall to one's lot.	recedere, to go back, retire.	frigus, oris, n. cold.
confirmare, to render permanent.	restituere, to restore.	innocent, a, um, innocent.
devolare, to fly away.	emollire, to soften.	noctu, adv. by night.
populari, to lay waste.	epulae, arum, f. a meal, feast.	praesto, adv. present.

Et discas oportet, et, quod didicisti, agendo confirmes. Male parta male dilabuntur. Ut hirundines aestivo tempore praesto sunt, frigore pulsae recedunt; ita falsi amici sereno vitae tempore praesto sunt; simulatque hiemem fortunae viderint, devolant omnes. Quid casurum sit, incertum est. Quod cuique obtigit, id quisque tenet. Clitum amicum senem et innocium a se occisum esse, Alexander dolerat. Ingenuas didicisse fideliter artes, emollit mores, nec sinit esse ferus (eos). Non tam utilitas, parta per amicum, quam amici amor ipse delectat. Hannibalem non fecellit, ferocius, quam consultius rem hostes gesturos esse. Ex quo (sc. tempore) pecunia in honore fuit, verus rerum honor occidit. Silva vetus cecidit, ferro quam nemo cecidit.

Cleomenes, Lacedaemonius, quum triginta dierum essent cum hoste pactae indutiae, noctu populabatur agros, quod dierum essent pactae, non noctium indutiae. Dux, quum urbem cepisset, aedi-

ficiis omnibus, publicis et privatis, sacris et profanis, sic pepercit, quasi ad ea defendenda, non expugnanda cum exercitu, urbem intrasset. Urbe expugnata, milites, furore capti, juraverunt se non aetate confectis, non mulieribus, non infantibus parsuros esse. Ovorum inter se similitudo est in proverbio; tamen Deli¹ fuerunt complures, qui, permultas gallinas alentes, quum ovum inspexerant, quae id gallina peperisset, dicere solabant. Mihi crede, te tua virtute maximam laudem tibi pariturum esse.

2. Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Compungere, to prick, mark.	conclamare, to cry out together.	adversarius, i, m. ad- versary.
condere, to found, preserve.	stimulare, to goad.	doliarium, i, n. cellar.
distinguere, to distin- guish.	sustentare, to pre- serve, sustain.	festivitas, atis, f. agreeableness.
percurrere, to run through.	erumpere, to break forth.	loquacitas, atis, f. lo- quacity.
perdere, to destroy, ruin.	nota, ae, f. sign, mark.	potus, us, m. drink. spurius, a, um, spuri- ous.

Conclamabant omnes Carthaginienses, satis suppliciorum a se pro temeritate unius hominis, Hannibalis, pensum esse. Milites, urbem ingressi, non cibum, aut potum poposcerunt, non armorum onus deposuerunt. Tu ex animo scrupulum evellisti, qui me dies noctesque stimulavit ac pupugit. Philosophia, si paupertas momordit, si ignominia pupugit, si quid tenebrarum offudit exsilium, singularum rerum proprias consolationes adhibet. Festivitatem habet narratio, distincta personis et interpuncta sermonibus. Aristarchus, grammaticus, eos Homeri versus, qui spurii ei videbantur, notis quibusdam compunxit. Omnes cives, belli calamitatibus confecti, pacem expoposcerunt. Romani in dolariis condita habebant vina, pipere et melle condita. Graeciae civitates, dum imperare singulae cupiunt, imperium omnes perdidērunt. Perditis rebus omni- bus, ipsa virtus se sustentat.

The Gauls (Gallus, i,) have learned from the Greeks, to surround [their] cities with walls. If any one has acquired (fut. perf.) riches in a bad way (male), he will also lose them in a bad way. The thing has turned out otherwise than (atque) I had expected. Alexander, seized (capere) by anger, killed (perf.) [his] friend Clitus, an old man. Thy friendship has always afforded me the greatest pleasure. The faithless friend has de-

¹ at Delos. See Synt. § 92.

ceived me. After my sister had sung (perf.) alone (solus), we all sang together (perf.).

The citizens of the city hoped, that Caesar, who had already spared other captured cities, would also spare theirs. It is not to be doubted, that our army, which *under the conduct of a bad general* (duce malo imperatore) has acquired for itself great praise by its bravery, under the conduct of a good general, will acquire for itself still (etiam) greater praise. A victory gained by treachery, redounds (= is) to (dat.) the conqueror not for praise but for disgrace. The rashness of Catiline was crushed by the prudence of Cicero. The dart will be discharged (emittere) so much the more violently, the more (magis) the bow has been drawn together (contendere) and drawn up (adducere).

The firmness of the general and the bravery of the soldiers, have weakened the attack of the forth-breaking enemies. Scarcely had I reached the house, when it was (perf.) struck (= touched) *by lightning* (de coelo). Our soldiers repulsed the enemies at (abl.) the first attack. The whole book has been run through by me [in] reading (abl. of gerund). The traitor has paid just punishment for his offence. As soon as the horns sounded (perf. of canere), all the soldiers ran (perf.) together. Virtue sustains itself, even if (etiamsi) it may have lost all.

EXERCISE XLII.

Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Coalesco, lui, litum	illucesco, luxi 3.	to advertere, to turn
3. to grow together,	become light, dawn.	(hither).
coalesce.	recrudescio, dui 3.	to auditor, oris, m. hear-
consanesco, nui 3. to	break out afresh.	er.
become well.	rescisco, ivi or ii, itum	viscus, eris, n. bowels.
consenesco, nui 3. to	3. to ascertain.	adulterinus, a, um,
grow old.	condemnare, to con-	adulterated, coun-
convalesco, lui 3. to	demn; capitis, to	terfeit.
become better, re-	death.	contra, adv. on the
cover.	permānare, to flow	contrary, other side.
defervesco, vi 3. to	through, flow along.	quando, adv. when.
burn out, subside.		

Crede, omnem diem tibi illuxisse suprēmum. Socrātis responso sic iudices exarsērunt, ut capitis hominem innocentissimum condemnarent. Ratio, quum adolēvit atque perfecta est, nominatur rite sapientia. Quacritur, si sapiens adulterinos nummos accepērit

imprūdens pro bonis, quum id rescierit, soluturusne sit eos pro bonis. Incredibile memorātu est, quam facile Romani et Aborigines coaluērint. Quum est concupīta pecunia, nec adhibīta continēo ratio, quae sanet eam cupiditatem: permānat in venas et inhaeret in visceribus illud malum. Endymio, nescio quando, in Latmo, Carīae monte, obdormiuit, necdum est experrectus. Oratori abstinendum est verbis, quae propter vetustatem obsoleuerunt. Conualuistine tandem ex morbo, quo tamdiu laborasti? Illius oratoris ardor animi, qui prius omnium auditōrum animos ad se advertebat rapiebatque, jam plane defervit. Vulnus meum, quod jam consanuisse videbatur, nunc recrudit.

Scarcely had the day dawned, when I commenced (*perf.* of *aggrēdi*) my journey. A bloody war broke out (= was kindled) between (*inter*) the Romans and Carthaginians. Catiline addressed (*perf.*) his associates with these words: Our (= to us) age is vigorous (*vigēre*), the soul is strong (*valēre*); on the other side, all is grown old by years and riches. As soon as Caesar ascertained (*perf.*) that the enemies were approaching, he led out (*perf.*) the soldiers from the camp. In a short time, the minds of all had coalesced into (*abl.*) so great (*tantus*) friendship, that every distinction of rank (*ordo et locus*) was forgotten. I have perceived with great pleasure from thy letter, that thou hast recovered from thy long continued sickness. The sedition of the soldiers, which had been quieted by the wisdom (*consilium*) of the general, broke out afresh (*perf.*) *during his absence* (*eo absente*).

EXERCISE XLIII.

Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Consentire, to agree	munificentia, ae, f.	rector, ōris, m.	gov- ernor.
with.	munificence.		
dissentire, to disagree	documentum, i, n.	coetus, ūs, m.	assem- bly.
dissent.	proof.		
desilire, to leap down.	dumētum, i, n.	thicket.	affluenter, adv. plenti- fully.
transilire, to leap over.	ludibrium, i, n.	sport.	
exhaustire, to exhaust.	parricidium, i, n.	par- ricide.	immortaliter, adv. im- mortally.
indāgare, to search out.	curatio, ōnis, f.	cure.	rursus, adv. again.
dispellere, to drive asunder, disperse.	explorātor, ōris, m.	a spy.	undique, adv. from all sides.
catēna, ae, f.	chain.		

Regis sepulcro haec verba inscripta sunt: Probe *vixit*, imprōbos *vixit*, hostes *vicit*. Hostes *victi* et catēnis *vincti* in servitūtem abducti sunt. Imperium justis legibus fultum esse debet. Rex, pace compositā, rempublicam labefactatam sua virtute fulsit. Virtus difficilis inventu est: rectōrem ducemque desidērat. Artes innumerabiles repertae sunt, docente naturā. Vita, si undīque referta bonis est, beata dicitur. Homines urbes moenibus sepsērunt. Occultae inimicitiae magis timendae sunt, quam apertae. Quis est tam miser, ut non dei munificentiam sensērit? Dii, indūti specie humānā, fabūlas pōētis suppeditavērunt, hominum autem vitam superstitione omni refēsērunt. Continūis bellis reipublicae opes exhaustae sunt. Quo quis affluentius voluptates undique hausērit, eo gravius ardentiusque sitiet. Caesar, ubi per exploratōres *compērit*, hostes adventāre, protinus milites e castris eduxit. Nebūla, horā quartā sole dispulsa, *aperūit* diem. Plato Athēnis¹ in Academiā sepultus est. Eodem loco nostrā memoriā sepultus est Carōlus Odofrēdus Müllērus, professor Gottingensis, vir praesantissimus et de antiquitatis disciplina immortaliter meritus.

The state shaken by the war, has been supported by the virtue of the king. Trajan alone of (gen.) all the citizens is buried within (intra) the city [of] Rome. Men have invented innumerable arts, *nature teaching them* (abl. abs.). Cicero's writings upon (de) philosophy, are filled up with the most excellent principles of virtue. The just king has supported his government by just laws. O king, thou art to be pronounced (= extolled) happy, who hast always lived uprightly, hast bound the wicked, hast conquered the enemies. The cities are surrounded (= hedged around) with walls.

All the former (superior) losses are repaired by one victory. Whence hast thou ascertained, that my brother will come to-day? Just as physicians, *when they have discovered the cause of the sickness* (abl. abs.) believe that they have discovered the cure, so shall we, when the cause of sorrow is discovered, find the ability *of curing* (gen. of gerund) [it]. As the old man entered (subj.) the assembly, all uncovered (perf.) [their] heads; but as he left (subj.) it, all covered (perf.) [their] heads again. God has enclosed (= hedged in) and covered the eyes with (abl.) very delicate membranes.

¹ at Athens. See Synt. § 92.

EXERCISE XLIV.

Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Celare (aliquem ali- constituere, to estab- effector, oris, m. crea-
quid), to conceal lish, constitute. tor.
(something from desistere, to desist, situs, us, m. condition,
some one). [ate. cease. situation.
enumerare, to enumer- inducere, to lead to, adeo, adv. so, so very.
meditari (c. acc.), to induce. injuste, adv. unjustly.
think (of some- mitescere (without primum, adv. first.
thing). [falsely. Perf. or Sup.), to proinde quasi, just
pejorare, to swear become mild, tame. as if.

Pergite, pueri, atque in id studium, in quo estis, incumbite, ut et vobis¹ honori,¹ et amicis utilitati, et reipublicae emolumento esse possitis! Nemo adeo ferus est, ut non mitescere possit. Hoc quotidie meditare, ut possis aequo animo vitam relinquere. Quidam idcirco, deum esse, non putant, quia non apparet, nec cernitur: proinde quasi nostram ipsam mentem videre possimus. Universum mundum quum cernimus, possumusne dubitare, quin ei praesit aliquis effector et moderator? Nihil tam difficile est, quin (= ut non) quaerendo investigari possit. Sic cogitandum est, tanquam aliquis in pectus intimum inspicere possit; et potest.

Satis nobis persuasum esse debet, etiamsi deum hominesque celare possimus, nihil tamen injuste esse faciendum. Potestisne dubitare, quin deus universum mundum gubernet? Non possumus. Cur nobiscum ambulare non potes?

Omnes mundi partes ita constitutae sunt, ut neque ad usum meliores potuerint esse, neque ad speciem pulchriores. Ante occupatur animus ab iracundia, quam providere satis potuit, ne occuparetur. Vix Caesar milites e castris educere potuerat, quum hostes impetum fecerunt. Quid enumerem artium multitudinem, sine quibus vita omnis nulla esse potuisset? Quem, ut mentiatur, inducere possumus; [eum], ut pejeret, exorare facile poterimus. Dolorem, si non potero frangere, occultabo. Facile intelligitur, nec figuram situmque membrorum nostrorum, nec ingenii mentisque vim effici potuisse fortunam. Hoc primum sentio, nisi in bonis, amicitiam esse non posse.

If you earnestly apply (fut.) yourselves to the study of literature, you will be able to be useful, as well to yourselves as to (your) friends and the state. Socrates thought daily of this, that he might be able to die with equanimity. Canst thou tell me,

¹ § 90, 5.

why thy brother is not able to come to me to-day? No. When you contemplate the whole world, you are not able to doubt, that it is ruled by a divine mind (*mens*). The wise can be happy, even when they are tortured. If we cultivate (*colere*) virtue, we can always be happy.

Why cannot thy brothers come to me to-day? I do not know, why they cannot. But why could they not come yesterday? They could not come yesterday on account (*per*) of much business (*plur.*). What could have been (= has been able to be) given to the human race, fairer and more noble than reason? The enemies had not as yet been able to draw their troops together, as Caesar made (*perf.*) an attack upon (*in*) them. Who believes, that the world can have been (= may have been able to be) made by chance?

EXERCISE XLV.

Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Symbōla, *ae, f.* a con- argentum vivum, *n.* familiāris, *e,* belonging
 tribution of money quicksilver. to the family; res
 or food; de sym- spatium, *i, n.* space. familiaris, *estate.*
 bōlis edere, *to eat* curculio, *ōnis, m.* perrumpere, *to break*
 at common expense. corn-worm. through.
 adolescentūlus, *i, m.* moles, *is, f.* mass. vae, *interj.* alas!
 young man, youth.

Esse oportet, ut vivamus; non vivere, ut edamus. Modice bibite et este. Heri aliquot adolescentūli convenērunt, ut de symbōlis essent. Haec herba acerba esu est. Aegritūdo lacērat, exest animum planēque conficit. Curculiones frumentum exesse incipiunt. Argentum vivum exest ac perrumpit vasa. Majores nostri cavere non potuērunt, ne vetustas monumenta exesset. Quae unquam moles tam firma fuit, quam non exesset undae? Vae vobis, qui omnem rem familiarem luxuriā comestis! Saturnus ex se natos comesse fingitur solitus, quia consūmit aetas temporū spatia.

Eat thou and drink moderately. Ye should eat moderately. Age consumes all monuments. Where dost thou eat to-day? I came, that (ut) I might eat with thee. I know not, where you ate yesterday. My brother had called us in order to eat (*Sup.*). An unripe grape is bitter to eat (*Sup. in u*). I feared that the sorrow (aegritūdo) would consume thy mind. Alas to thee, who consumest thy whole estate!

EXERCISE XLVI.

Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Affëro, attüli, allätum 3. to bring to, bring.	3. to bear forth, decëdere, to go forth, bury. die.
aufëro, abstüli, ablätum 3. to bear away, take away.	infëro, intüli, illätum, doctor, örís, m. teach- to bring against; er.
confëro, contüli, col- lätum 3. to bring together, compare.	bellum infëro ali- cui, I make war aeternitas, ätis, f. eter- upon one. nity.
defëro, detüli, delätum 3. to bring down, offer.	praefëro, tüli, lätum funditus, adv from the 3. to prefer. foundation, wholly.
effëro, extüli, elätum	refëro, tüli, lätum 3. qui (for quo), how, by to bring back, refer. whom, by what, etc.

Ferte misëro atque inöpi auxilium. Confer nostram longissimam actatem cum aeternitate, et brevissima videbitur. Quid quaeque nox, aut dies ferat, incertum est. Incumbe in eam curam et cogitationem, quae tibi summam dignitatem et gloriam afferat. Ferre laborem consuetudo docet. Pecuniam praeferre amicitiae sordidum est. Ut quisque maxime ad suum commodum refert, quaecumque agit; ita minime est vir bonus. Bonum civem reipublicae dignitatem suis omnibus commodis praeferre oportet. Hoc doctöris intelligentis est, videre, quo ferat natura sua quemque. Is denique honos mihi videtur, qui non propter spem futuri beneficii, sed propter magna merita claris viris defertur et datur.

Aristides in tanta paupertate decessit, ut, qui efferetur, vix reliquerit. Poetae ferunt, gigantes bellum diis intulisse. Socrates eundem vultum domum referbat, quem domo extulerat. Quod auri, quod argenti, quod ornamentorum in urbibus Siciliae fuit, id Verres abstulit. Multi etiam naturae vitium meditatione atque exercitatione sustulerunt. Pietate adversus deum sublata, fides etiam et societas humani generis tollitur. Qui, deum esse, negant, nonne omnem religionem funditus sustulerunt? Caritate benevolentiaeque sublata, omnis est e vita sublata jucunditas.

Bring thou aid to the wretched and the destitute! If we compare our longest age with eternity, it will be necessary that we acknowledge (subj.) that it is very short. What can bring to us a fairer joy, than virtue. The noble (probus) youth bore (fero) and did all, he sweated and shivered (*perf.* in each case). Julius Caesar took away (*perf.*) from king Ptolemy, almost six thousand talents (*gen.*). What bringest thou, my boy? I bring a present

which my father presents to thee. Dost thou not know, that Epicurus has referred all [things] to (ad) pleasure? Pleasure is preferred by many to virtue. All (plur.) that we do, must be referred to virtue. The giants are said (feror) to have made war upon the gods. Cicero relates, that immense treasures were taken by Verres from the cities of Italy.

A fault of nature has often been removed (= taken away) by exercise. The enemies were so cowardly, that they did not even bear an attack of our soldiers. I did not doubt, that you would (imperf.) bear the injustice offered (affēro) you with equanimity. Through cruelty we are borne [on] to the foulest crimes. We feared, that war would be preferred by you to peace. Thou wilt be borne (away) by avarice to base gain. Solitude takes away the enjoyment of all pleasures. Thou shouldst not be borne (away) by avarice to base gain. When the news was brought (subj.) that the enemy approached, Caesar led out (perf.) his soldiers from the camp. The wretched (man) asked us, that we would bring aid to him (sibi).

EXERCISE XLVII.

Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Defatigāre, to weary, sectāri (c. acc.), to necessitas, ātis, *f. ne-*
make weary; pass. follow after, pur- *cessity.*
to become weary. sue. serius, a, um, serious.
nōbilitare, to make adstringēre, to bind, ejusmōdi, of this sort,
known, renowned. to make binding. of this nature.
publicare, to make
public.

Qui virtutem suam publicari vult, non virtuti labōrat, sed gloriæ. Nonne poëtæ post mortem nobilitari volunt? Ego non eādē volo senex, quæ volūi, adolescens. Si vis amāri, ama. Bono mentis fruendum est, si beati esse volūmus. Docilis est, qui attente vult audire. Omnia benefacta in luce se collocāri volunt. Si acres ac diligentes esse vultis, magna saepe intelligētis ex parvis. Quem docilem velis facere, simul attentum facias oportet. Sic cum inferiore vivāmus, quemadmōdum nobiscum superiorem velimus vivere. Praeclare Soerātes hanc viam ad gloriā proximam dicebat esse, si quis id ageret, ut, qualis habēri vellet, talis esset. Si quis veram gloriā adipisci volet, virtutis officiis fungi debēbit.

Si quid per jocum dixi, nolito in serium convertere. Libero

sum iudicio, nulla ejusmodi adstrictus necessitate, ut mihi, velim nolim, sit certa tuenda sententia. Socrātes noluit ex carcēre edūci, quum facile posset. Ego me Phidiam esse malle, quam vel optimum fabrum lignarium. Utrum corpōris, an ingenii vires tibi augēri mavis? Multi sibi malunt melius esse, quam altēri. Virtute in aliā alius mavult excellēre. Quibus id persuāsum est, ut nihil malint se esse, quam bonos viros; iis reliqua facilis est doctrina. Amicitiae est ea vis, ut, simulatque sibi aliquid, quam altēri, maluērit, nulla sit. Vae vobis, qui divitias, quam virtutem sectari mavultis! Malūmus cum virtute paucis contenti esse, quam sine virtute multa habēre. Aristides, Atheniensis, bonus esse malebat, quam videri.

If we wish to bear (fero) our virtue before (prae) ourselves, we do not labor for virtue but for glory. Men [when] old, do not wish the same which they wished (perf.) [when] young. If you wish to be loved by others, you must also love others. If thou wishest to be happy, thou must cultivate virtue. Why does not thy brother wish to take a walk with us? Thou askest why he does not wish; he does wish indeed, but he cannot on account of (per) business. If you wish to undertake a great undertaking (negotium), you must make (adhibere) diligent preparation. Wilt thou come to us to-day, or (an) wilt thou not? we wish (Sub. pres.) to know. May you (= you will *Subj. pres. of volo*) also [when] absent, love us as you are accustomed to love.

Be thou unwilling to become weary in the preservation (gerund) of good men. We are unwilling, that the same [man] should excel in several things. They, who are bound by a certain (certus) sentiment, must defend it, [whether] they will [or] not. Wouldst thou live in the country, rather than in the city? Many would (= choose to) acquire riches, rather than virtue. Timoleon chose (perf.) to be esteemed, rather than to be feared (metuo). The wise choose to stand upon (abl) their own judgment, rather than [upon that] of another. Who would not rather be virtuous (= partaking of virtue, *compos*), than rich? Would you rather live in the city, than in the country? we would rather live in the country.

EXERCISE XLVIII.

Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Adire, to come to.	obīre, to die.	transīre, to pass over,
circumīre, to go a-	perīre, to go to ruin,	through, away.
round, surround.	perish.	emōri, 3. to die.
interīre, to decay.		casa, ae, f. a hut.

angustiac, arum, *f.* praealtus, a, um, *very* intempestive, *adv. un-*
narrow pass. *high, very deep.* *timely.*
 silentium, i, *n.* si- aliquando, *adv. some-* obviam, *adv. against,*
lence. *time.* *to meet.*
 excessus, ūs, *m.* de- foede, *adv. basely, in sero, adv. late, too*
parture. *a base way.* *late.*

Qui ad nos intempestive adēunt, molesti saepe sunt. Plerāque, ante oculos posita, transimus. Abēunt hirundines hibernis mensibus. Corpus mortale aliquo tempore interire necesse est. Perēunt aliquando innocentes; quis neget? nocentes tamen saepius perēunt. Omnes homines summa ope niti decet, ne vitam silentio transēant. Quis dubitet, quin ex casa vir magnus exire possit? Potius sero, quam nunquam, obviam eundum est audaciae temeritatique. Omnes cives militibus, qui e bello domum redibant, laeti obviam ibant. Si ita naturā parātum esset, ut ea dormientes agerent, quae somniarent, alligandi omnes essent, qui cubitum irent.

Illud erat insitum priscis, esse in morte sensum, neque excessu vitae sic delēri hominem, ut funditus interiret. Angustias Themistocles quaerebat, ne multitudine hostium circumirētur. Romulus ad deos transisse creditus est. Augustus obiit septuagesimo et sexto aetatis anno. Mihi nunquam persuadēri potuit, animos, dum in corporibus essent mortalibus, vivere; quum exissent ex iis, emōri. Quicquid transiit temporis, perit. Quum rure rediēro, etatim te adibo. Pompeius multique alii clari viri foede periērunt. I, quo te fata vocant. Abiit ad deos Hercūles: nunquam abisset, nisi, quum inter homines esset, eam sibi viam munivisset. Muros turesque urbis praealtum mare ambiēbat.

Be on thy guard, that thou dost not go to one untimely. Very much which is set before our eyes, is passed over by us. Our body will decay at some time; but that our soul will decay, we cannot believe. Go spiritedly against self-confidence and rashness. Who does not know, how often great men come (= go) forth from huts! As the soldiers were returning (subj.) home from the war, all the citizens went (perf.) to meet them. In the spring the swallows return to us, in the autumn they go away.

As Caesar was coming out (subj.) of the woods, he was (perf.) surrounded by the enemies. When the soul shall have left the body, it will be happy. We shall go out to meet our parents, who are returning from the country to the city. Hast thou not heard, that Pompey has perished in a base way? The orators pass over all (plur.) that appears base to speak (Sup. in *u*). The men, who pass (part. of *transire*) their lives in silence, die (obire) without fame.

EXERCISE XLIX.

Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Exulcĕrare, to irri- tate, make worse.	adversus, a, um, oppo- site.	fataliter, adv. con- formably to fate.
generĕre, to make.	cogitĕto, adv. with premeditation.	interdum, adv. some- times.
retinĕre, to hold back, prevent.	crebro, adv. frequent-	polite, adv. elegantly.
elŏqui, to pronounce.	ly.	

Intuĕri solem adversum nequimus. Decŏri vis ea est, ut ab honesto non queat separari. Risus interdum ita repente erumpit, ut eum cupientes tenĕre nequeĕmus. Dic, utrum queas, an nequeĕs mecum ire. Quum hostes exercitum nostrum fundĕre nequirent, in castra munita sese recepĕrunt. Quum dux precibus retinĕre militem nequiret, vim adhibendam censuit. Saepe imperiti mĕdici ea, quae sanare nequĕunt, exulcĕrant. Quum Demosthĕnes "rho" dicere nequiret, exercitatione fecit, ut planissime dicĕret. Ex inimico cogita posse fiĕri amicum. Nemo fit casu bonus. Si fato omnia fiunt; nihil nos admonĕre potest, ut cautiores fiĕmus.

Nemo ignaviĕ immortalis factus est. Permultum interest, utrum perturbatione aliĕqua animi, quae plerumque brevis est, an consulto et cogitĕto fiat injuria. Homo, quod crebro videt, non mirĕtur, etiamsi, cur fiat, nesciat. Non ita generĕti a natura sumus, ut ad ludum et jocum facti esse videĕmur, sed ad severitatem potius et ad quaedam studia graviora atque majora. Prudentior fis, accedente senectute. Nego esse fortunam, et omnia, quae fiunt, quaeque futura sunt, ex omni aeternitate definita dico esse fataliter. Qua de caussa dicebas, omnia, quae fiĕrent futurĕve essent, fato continĕri? Fiĕri potest, ut recte quis sentiat, et id, quod sentit, polite elŏqui nequĕat.

Men cannot look upon the opposite sun. The virtues are so (ita) connected and joined *together* (inter se), that they cannot be separated from each other. Often we cannot prevent a laugh, although (quamvis with *Subj.*) we would. Say, whether you can go with us, or cannot. There are many diseases which cannot (subj.) be cured. Demosthenes could not (perf.) at first pronounce "rho," but by exercise he effected (=made), that he pronounced [it] very plainly.

If thou wishest to be learned, learn early. From an enemy, [one] often becomes suddenly a friend. Men do not become good by chance. If all [things] happen (subj.) by chance, all (omnis)

foresight is useless. Dost thou believe, that a man may ever become immortal by cowardice? Men become wiser by age. Some philosophers were uncertain, *whether all* (omniāne) might happen by chance; I am convinced, that nothing happens by chance.

EXERCISE L.

Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Abominari, to execrate.	comoedia, ae, f. comedy.	credulus, a, um, credulous.
commemorare, to mention, call to mind.	institutum, in, an institution.	invidus, a, um, envious.
evanesco, nui 3. to disappear.	probrum, i, n, reproach.	si, conj. (with the Subj.), provided
hebesco (without Perf. and Sup.), I am inoperative.	haruspex, icis, m. soothsayer.	si (seu), or; si (seu) — si (seu), whether — or, either
proferre 3. to produce.	bellus, a, um, beautiful.	— or.
sapio, ui 3. to be wise.	consentanus, a, um, suitable.	

RULE OF SYNTAX. When the words of some one are quoted precisely as he spoke them, *inquam* is used, and is introduced among the words quoted; but if only the *sense* of what one has said is quoted, *ait* is used.

Contraria ea sunt, quorum alterum ait quid, alterum negat. Cato mirari se aiēbat, quod non ridēret haruspex, haruspicem quum vidisset. Ut quimus, aiunt, quando, ut volūmus, non licet. Sus, ut aiunt, docet Minervam. Tu ais, ego nego. Negat Epicūrus, quenquam, qui honeste non vivat, jucunde posse vivere. Quasi ego id curem, quid ille aiat, aut neget; illud quaero, quid ei, qui in voluptate summum bonum putat, consentanum sit dicere. Sive tu hoc ais, sive negas; ego tuēbor sententiam meam. Negantia contraria sunt aientibus. Ain' (for *aisne*) tu? quum res occultissimas aperueris in lucemque protuleris: negabis, esse rem ullam, quae cognosci possit? Aisne? Aio. Negasne? Nego.

I deny that, which thou assertest. If I say yes, he [also] says yes; if I say no (deny), he also says no. It is said, that thou wilt leave the city. I know not, whether thou affirmest the thing, or deniest [it]. Affirmative (= affirming) opinions (sententia), are contrary to negative (= denying) [opinions]. They said,

that thy father set out for (ad) Rome. It is delightful and becoming, says Horace, to die for one's country. Thou hast erred, thou wilt say perhaps. Never, says he, is a friend troublesome to me.

Meminerimus, etiam adversus infimos justitiam esse servandam. Animus meminit praeteritorum, praesentia cernit, futura providet. Beneficia meminisse debet is, in quem collata sunt, non commemorare, qui contulit. Illud semper memento: Qui ipse sibi sapiens prodesse nequit, nequicquam sapit. Quod tu mihi dixisti, pulchre meminero. Qui patriae beneficia meminērint, semper pro ejus salute arma capessere parati erunt. Memento mori.

Omnes odērunt eum, qui immemor est beneficii. Libertatis inimicos, effici non potest, quin (= ut non) odērīm. Invidi virtutem et bonum alienum odērunt. Virtus necesse est res sibi contrarias aspernētur atque odērit. Probos amamus, imprōbos odimus. Non dubito, quin mali me odērint. Vox dira et abominanda: Odērint, dum metūant. Cicero penitus odērat Clodium. Judicem neque studere cuiquam decet, neque odisse, neque irasci. Non ita amare debemus, ut si aliquando osūri simus. Romani regum nomen perōsi sunt.

Dimidium facti, qui bene coepit, habet. Oracula evanuerunt, postquam homines minus creduli esse coeperunt. Postquam divitiarum honori esse coeperunt, et eas gloria, imperium, potentia sequebatur: hebescere virtus, paupertas probro esse coepit. Turpe est, rem bene coeptam male finire. Undique in murum lapides conjici coepti sunt. Urbs obsideri coepta est.

Deum colit, qui novit. Nihil mihi stultius videtur, quam existimare eum studiōsum tui, quem non noris. Qui se ipse norit, aliquid sentiet se habere divinum, tantōque munere dei semper dignum aliquid et faciet et sentiet. Quam quisque norit artem, in hac se exercēat.

You should forget favors conferred, [but] remember those received. We shall remember thee, even when thou art absent. If we remember the favors conferred upon us (in nos) by our parents, we shall never be ungrateful towards (adversus) them. When we remember youth happily passed (agere), we are delighted. As often as (quotiescunque) I remembered the good principles of my teachers, a desire after (gen.) those excellent men seized (occupare) me.

We hate the men, who are unmindful of favors received. Who is there, *who does not* (quin) hate (subj.) the enemies of freedom? We did not know, why he hated us. Men love the upright, [and] hate the wicked. I doubt not, that the wicked hate me. The [is]

friend is not agreeable (*gratus*) to us, who loves us as one about to hate us. It is known, that the Romans hated (*perf.*) the name of kings very much. Him, who is unfortunate, all hate.

Thou hast begun the thing well, but ended badly. Scarcely had the soldiers begun to fortify the camp, when the enemies were (*perf.*) discovered. Already had the enemies begun to assault the city, as suddenly our soldiers came (*perf.*) for (*dat.*) aid to the citizens. *After the banishment of the kings*, (*abl. abs.*), two consuls began to be chosen yearly.

I know not, whether (*ne* attached to the verb) thou art acquainted with my friend, but if thou shalt become acquainted with him, thou wilt love him. Judge not concerning a man, before you know him. Do you know the way? we do not know it. When any one wishes to preside over the republic, he should (*oportet* with *Subj.*) be acquainted with its laws and institutions. Art thou personally (= from appearance, *de facie*) acquainted with my friend? I am not acquainted with him, but I desire (*opto*) to know (= that I may know) him.

SYNTAX.

SIXTH COURSE.

SIMPLE SENTENCES.

CHAPTER I.

Definition and General Treatment of the Simple Sentence.

§ 80. *Sentence.* — *Subject.* — *Predicate.* — *Attribute.* — *Object.*

1. SYNTAX treats of the structure of sentences. A sentence is the expression of a thought in words. A thought consists of two or more ideas (or conceptions) bearing a given relation to each other and to the speaker.

Thus, "rose," "bloom," express two different ideas. Put together in the form of a sentence, they become, "*the* rose blooms." So also, "man," "mortal," become, "man *is* mortal;" "horse," "feed," "pasture," become, "*the* horse feeds *in my* pasture." All the ideas are expressed by the words before they are combined, and combining them into a sentence is only expressing their relations to each other and the speaker, which is done partly by the addition of certain small words, and partly by changes in words. The words by which ideas are expressed (*viz.* nouns, adjectives, verbs — except the copula "to be" — and adverbs derived from these) are called *idea-words*, those by which relations are expressed, *formal or relational words*, and the changes in words are called *inflexions*.

2. Every sentence has two parts, a *subject* and a *predicate*. The subject is that of which something is said, and

the predicate that which is said of the subject. E. g. in the sentences: *rosa floret*; *homo mortalis est*, *rosa* and *homo* are the subjects, *floret* and *mortalis est*, the predicates.

3. The subject always expresses a substantive idea, and must be either a substantive or some word used substantively, as, a pronoun, numeral, adjective, participle, Infin., and in short, any word, phrase, syllable, or letter, taken by itself and used as a substantive. The subject of a finite verb is in the nominative, but with the Infin. it is in the Acc. (See § 106).

REM. 1. In the following cases the subject is not expressed by any particular word: 1) When the subject is a personal pronoun, and is not contrasted with anything so as to make it emphatic; 2) With impersonal verbs where we use *it* (but with many impersonal verbs the accompanying Infin. or subordinate sentence is to be considered as the subject); 3) When the subject is easily supplied from the connection, especially with *dicunt*, *aiunt*, *appellant*, etc. — here, as with intransitive impersonals in the third person Sing. Pass. (see § 106, R. 5), we employ the indefinite pronouns *one*, *we*, *they*. 4) Often with the third Pers. Sing. Act., in the subordinate clauses of sentences employed in expressing general thoughts or definitions, the indefinite *quis* is omitted.

REM. 2. *Res* is used for our indefinite *it*, when that pronoun is used loosely for “thing,” “matter,” “affair,” as: *res eo peruenit*, “*it* (the affair) has come to this.”

4. The predicate always expresses a verbal idea, and must be either a finite verb, or else *esse* in conjunction with an adjective (participle), substantive (infinitive), pronoun, or numeral. As *esse* connects the adjective, etc. with the subject, it is called, in such cases, the copula (*bond*).

REM. 3. The copula (*est* or *sunt*) is sometimes omitted: 1) In general expressions and proverbs; 2) With the gerund and gerundive; 3) Often in sentences expressing a conclusion; 4) Often in animated discourse; 5) The Infin. form *esse* is often omitted with participles and adjectives, especially after verbs of perception and communication; 6) The Subj. Pres., also the Imperf. and Perf. are occasionally, and only occasionally, omitted.

5. The sentence, consisting, in its simplest form, of a subject and a predicate, may be enlarged by adding words either to the subject, or predicate, or both, for the purpose of restricting their application, or as qualifications, limitations, or nearer definitions. The limitations of the subject, which are called attributives, may be either an adjective, a noun in the *Gen.* (*attributive Gen.*), or a noun in the same case as the subject (i. e. in apposition), as: *rosa pulchra*; *hortus regis*; *Cicero consul*. The limitations of the predicate, which are called objects, may be either a noun in an oblique case, a preposition with its noun, the *Infin.*, participle, or an adverb, as: *virtutem amo*; *pro patria pugnamus*; *scribere cupio*; *vehementer doleo*.*

§ 81. Agreement.

1. The verb agrees with its subject in person and number, the adjective (participle, pronoun, and numeral), whether attributive or forming a part of the predicate (§80, also 82, and 83), in gender, number, and case. But the substantive, whether in apposition, or in the predicate, *necessarily* agrees with the subject only in case;—it agrees with it in gender and number only when it is a literal (not figurative) designation of a person, and hence, has either separate forms for the masculine and feminine, or is of the common gender, as: *ego scribo*; *tu scribis*; *rosa floret*; *virtus pulchra est*; *Tomŷris, regĭna Scythorum, Cyrum, regem Persarum devicit*; but *Scipiones, duo fulmina belli*.

2. The adjective or noun in the predicāte, with the following verbs, which, like *esse*, serve as a copula, agrees with the subject according to the principles above stated:

- a) The verbs of becoming: *fio* (not *reddor*), *evādo*, *existo*, *nascor*;

* The Exercises are at the end of the Syntax.

- b) The verbs *maneo* (I remain), and *videor*, "I seem, appear" (*appareo* only poet. and later);
- c) The verbs which mean: I am called, as: *appellor*, *vocor*, *dicor*, etc.;
- d) The verbs which signify, I am made, chosen, appointed something, as: *creor*, *elīgor*, etc.;
- e) The verbs which mean: I am considered, accounted something, I am recognized, found as something, and the like, as: *dor*, *putor*, *existīmor* (*credor* only poet. and late), *judicor*, *habeor*, *cognoscor*, *invenior*, etc.

Brutus Romanorum libertatis vindex exstitit. Nemo doctus nascitur. Gloria Romanorum aeterna manet. Cicero consul creatus est. Cicero pater patriae appellatus est. Virtus summum bonum judicanda est.

REM. 1. Several other particulars concerning these verbs should be stated: 1) All that are given in the Pass. form (except *videor*) take two Acc. in the active form (§ 89, 7); 2) The predicative noun or adjective remains in the Nom. also, with the Infin. of one of these verbs, dependent upon another verb (as: *omnes boni esse volunt*); so too with the Part. when it stands in the Nom. (as: *certior factus*); 3) When the subject becomes dependent and is in the Acc., the predicative noun and Part. are also in the Acc. (as: *Ciceronem, consulem factum, Catilina persecutus est*); but the other oblique cases are not found in good writers, except occasionally the ablative absolute; 4) Several of these verbs are found also with adverbs, in which case they are not barely copulas, but have a complete predicative sense (as: *bene est; diu Romae mansit*); 5) A change from an antecedent state to another is expressed by *ex* with a verb of becoming or being made (also with the Act. of *facio*), as: *ex oratore arator factus*; 6) With *esse, videri, haberi* (also, the Act. *habere, putare, ducere*), *pro* with the Abl. is used instead of the predicative Nom. to express an equivalent (as, *Cato mihi est pro centum milibus; audacia pro muro habetur*); 7) We also find expressions of this kind; *aliquis est alicui parentis loco; aliquid habetur prodigiū loco; aliquis in hostium numero habetur, existimatur; aliquem in hostium numero habere, in hominum numero putare.*

3. The demonstrative, relative, and interrogative pronouns, whether as subject or predicate,

when connected with a substantive by *esse* or one of the verbs given in No. 2, agree with that substantive in gender, number, and case, where we use but one form for all genders, as: *this, that, what*, etc. This holds true, when the pronoun is in the Acc. depending upon a word of *calling* or *considering*. *Hic* (this) est omnium fons. *Quis* est virtutis fons? *Qui* virtutem praemio metiuntur, *nullam* virtutem nisi malitiam putant.

REM. 2. The neuter pronoun is used with a Masc. or Fem. noun, only when the nature of something is inquired after or referred to in a very general way, as: *quid* est mulier?

REM. 3. So also a predicative adjective sometimes stands in the neuter Sing. without regard to the gender and number of the noun, when it refers rather to some general idea (as: *thing, property, character, nature*, etc.) uppermost in the mind, than to its proper substantive (as: *varium et mutabile* semper est *femina*). But this is very rare in good prose, and confined to a few words, such as *commune, proprium, extremum*, used almost as nouns. Sometimes a pronoun in the neuter Sing. follows a Masc. or Fem. noun even in the Plur., when it refers rather to the general idea contained in the word, than to the word itself.

4. Sometimes the predicate does not agree with the grammatical form of the subject, but with a noun implied in it (*constructio ad intellectum*). Thus it often happens that after collective nouns referring to persons (as, *pars, multitudo, juventus*), also after *nemo, nullus, uterque*, and the like, occasionally, too, after the names of cities and countries, used for the inhabitants, a predicate follows, having the gender and number implied in the collective, etc., as: *pars* bestiis *objecti* sunt; *magna multitudo* convenerant. In the same manner a predicate in the masculine follows a neuter noun, when it refers to persons, as: *capita* conjurationis *virgis caesi* sunt.

REM. 4. A pronoun in the plural often follows a noun in the Sing. referring rather to the class of persons or things represented by the noun, than to the noun itself, as: *Democritum* omittamus. *Nihil* est enim apud *istos*, etc. (i. e. with *Democritus* and those like him, those of his class).

REM. 5. Sometimes a predicate in the Plur. follows a noun in the singular connected by the preposition *cum* with another noun in the Abl., as: *ipse dux cum aliquot principibus capiuntur* (instead of the more correct, *dux et aliquot principes*). A noun in apposition with two nouns thus connected is in the plural.

5. When the subject is the name of a thing, and the predicate is formed by a substantive with *esse*, or one of the verbs given in No. 2, the predicate, by means of attraction, generally agrees with the noun which stands nearest to it, whether it be the subject, or the predicative noun, as: *non omnis error stultitia est dicenda*. But when the subject is a proper name, the predicate must agree with it, whatever its position.

REM. 6. Often also, in comparative sentences, after *quam*, *quantum*, *nisi*, the predicate is attracted into agreement with the subject of the last clause, which stands nearest to it, as: *Semproniae cariora semper omnia, quam decus et pudicitia fuit; quis illum consulem, nisi latrones putant?* So also the similar examples: *illorum urbem ut propugnaculum oppositum esse barbaris; omni ornatu orationis tanquam veste detracta*.

REM. 7. When a vocative has a noun in apposition with it, or an attributive adjective referring to it, these also are put in the vocative; and even when these do not belong to the vocative but to the predicate, the poets sometimes put them in the vocative by attraction. But as the poets sometimes use the Nom. of the noun for the Voc., so they do of these limiting words, as: *audi tu, populus Albanus*. In the expression: *macte virtute esto*, *macte* has the force of an adverb.

6. A word in the predicate, especially a superlative, connected with a partitive Gen., takes the gender of the subject, and not of the Gen., as: *Indus est omnium fluminum maximus* (not maximum, after the gender of flumen).

REM. 8. In such expressions, as: *servitus omnium malorum postremum (est)*, *postremum* is in the neuter according to Rem. 3, or is conceived of nearly as a noun. It is only in the later writers that the gender of the partitive Gen. prevails over that of the subject in determining the gender of the predicate.

7. When a subject has a noun in apposition with it, the predicate properly agrees with the subject and not with the

noun in apposition (as: *Tulliola*, *deliciolae nostrae*, *munusculum tuum flagitat*). Still, where the subject is the name of a thing, and the noun in apposition is the more important word, the predicate may agree with the apposition. In this case the name of the thing generally precedes the name of the person, as: *deliciae meae*, *Dicaearchus*, *de animorum immortalitate disseruit*. This construction is common with the words *oppidum*, *urbs*, *civitas* standing in apposition with the names of cities, as: *Corioli oppidum captum est*.

8. When two or more subjects are connected with each other, there are three cases to be considered:

- a) The different subjects are conceived as expressing a combined plural idea; in this case the predicate is in the plural, but the predicative adjective varies its gender according as the subjects agree or disagree in gender, or refer to persons or things.—1) When they agree in gender, the adjective has the same gender (but with feminine names of things the adjective is often in the neuter Plur.); 2) When they disagree in gender, in designations of persons, the adjective takes the gender of the Masc. in preference to that of the Fem., and of the Fem. in preference to that of the neuter subject, but with names of things the adjective commonly stands in the neuter plural; 3) When both names of persons and things are united in the compound subject, the adjective follows the gender either of the person or thing, according as the one or the other is to be made the more prominent; but when the personal name is represented as a mere thing, then the adjective is in the neuter.

Pompeius, Scipio, Afranius foede perierunt. Caesar et Pompeius fortissimi fuerunt. Terra et luna sunt globosae. Ira et avaritia imperio potentiora erant. Pater et mater mihi cari sunt. Inter se contraria sunt beneficium et injuria. Ipsi (milites) atque signa militaria obscurati. Naturam inimicam inter se sunt libera civitas et rex (i. e. regia potestas, "the royal power").

- b) The subjects are conceived as a combined singular idea, in which case the predicate is in the singular. This construction is particularly common with names of things expressing similar ideas, as: *mens et ratio et consilium* in senibus est.
- c) Each of the subjects is considered alone and by itself; in this case the predicate connects itself with one of the subjects and agrees with it. This construction is followed, also, when one of the subjects is to be made prominent above the others. There may be three positions of the predicate here:
1. *Before* all the subjects; 2. *After* all the subjects;
 3. *After the first* subject.

Dubitare visus est Sulpicius et Cotta. Orgetorigis filia atque unus e filiis captus est. Cingetorigi principatus atque imperium est traditum. Thrasymbulus contemptus est a tyrannis atque ejus solitudo.

REM. 9. Subjects connected by *et* — *et* (both — and), *aut*, *vel* (or), *aut — aut*, *vel — vel* (either — or), *nec — nec* (neither — nor), may be viewed in each of the three lights described above, and vary their construction accordingly.

REM. 10. The attributive adjective generally agrees with the noun which stands nearest to it (as: Aristoteles vir summo ingenio, scientiâ, copiâ). But when emphasis or perspicuity requires it, the adjective is either repeated with each noun, or agrees with one or all of the nouns, according to one or another of the principles laid down in No. 8. — When the same substantive is to be conceived as repeated to several adjectives, but is expressed but once, it is either put in the plural, or attaches itself to one of the adjectives and stands in the singular, as: placuit, consules circa portas Collinam Esquilinamque ponere castra; inter Esquilinam Collinamque portam posuit castra; Legio Martia quartaque rempublicam defendunt.

9. When two or more subjects of different persons have a common predicate, the first person takes precedence of the second, the first and second of the third, and the predicate stands in the plural, as: ego et tu scribimus; ego et frater scribimus; tu et frater scribitis; ego et fratres scribimus.

REM. 11. Here, also, as in the case of the gender and number of the predicate, the person of the predicate sometimes follows that of the nearest subject, especially when this is the most important of the subjects, or when (as is particularly the case when connected by *et* — *et, nec* — *nec*, Rem. 9), each subject is to be considered by itself, as: *mibi tu, tui, tua omnia maximae curae sunt*. Occasionally the person of the predicate is determined by the more remote subject, when it is the most important.

§ 82. Peculiarities in the Use of Number.*

1. The Sing., both of nouns denoting persons and of those denoting things, sometimes has a collective meaning and is used for the Plur., as: *miles, eques, hostis, Poenus, Romānus*; *villa abundat porco, haedo, agno, gallina*. In such cases the writer often passes from a Sing. to the plural.

2. The plural, which properly belongs to appellatives only, is often used with proper names, names of materials and abstract nouns:

- a) With proper names, to designate two or more persons having the same name, or else those having the same character or qualities as the person named, as: *duo Scipiones*; *illa aetate vixerunt Catones, Phili, Laelii*;
- b) With names of materials, to denote the individual parts, the repeated appearance, the accumulation, or the different kinds of the material, as: *nives* (snow storms), *imbres* (showers), *vina* (different kinds of wine);
- c) With abstract nouns, to denote particular kinds, conditions or repetitions of the abstract idea, or its exhibition in different places and times; also when the abstract idea is extended to the same quality in several different things, as: *sunt duae memoriae* (two kinds of memory); *clarae*

* This section may be passed over at first.

mortes (renowned instances of death); *adolescentium familiaritates* (intimacy with young men), so: *mentes (ingenia, corpora, etc.) hominum*.

REMARK. The poets often use the Plur. (but only in the Nom. or Acc.) to amplify the expression, i. e. to exhibit more strongly the greatness, elevation and extraordinary character of the subject (*pluralis majesticus*), as: *corpōra, pectōra, corda, terga, ora, etc.*; *ortus, reditus, soles, etc.*; *aequōra, fontes, etc.*; *regna, gentes, nomīna, etc.* The plural often denotes the extension or intensity of the idea, as: *silentia, murmura, etc.*; or the emotions or affections of the mind, as: *irae, aestus, timōres, etc.*; the plurals, *libri, parentes, filii*, and other names of kindred, are used of a person, both in poetry and prose, to make the expression more comprehensive, so as to include all belonging to the particular relation.

3. When several individual things, different relations of things, or a whole conceived of as composed of parts is expressed by a neuter adjective, pronoun or numeral, the plural is used in Latin, where we more commonly use the Sing., as: *what is true (the truth), what is false (the false), each, every, this, that, much*, as: *vera, falsa dicere* (what is true, false); *omnia humana sunt fragilia* (every thing, all that is human); *haec, illa, multa (this, that, much); ea, quae, etc.* But when the neuter form is the same as the Masc., for the sake of perspicuity, *res* is used instead of the neuter of the adjective, etc., as: *conditio omnium humanarum rerum* (since *omnium humanorum*, would be ambiguous). The neuter Sing. of adjectives is used substantively, when an abstract idea is expressed as an independent whole, as: *verum* (the true, the truth), *decōrum* (the becoming), *honestum, utile, etc.*; the plural, on the contrary, denotes a concrete idea, i. e. the different kinds and conditions implied in the abstract, as: *bona* (goods, kinds of the good), *mala* (evils).

4. When two or more members of the same family name are spoken of, the family name is put in the plural, commonly after the personal names, but sometimes before,

as: Gnaeus et Publius *Scipiones*; also, *Spurii* Cassius et Mea-
lius.

§ 83. *Classes of Verbs.*

1. There are two kinds of verbs, *active* and *passive*. In an active verb, the subject appears as active, as: *rosa floret*; *puer epistolam scribit*. Those active verbs which take an accusative are called transitive, as: *puer epistolam scribit*; but the rest are called intransitive, as: *rosa floret*; *sapiens meminit mortis*; *pater tibi favet*; *amicus gaudet adventu amici*; *eo in urbem*.

2. In the passive verb, the subject appears as suffering (receiving the action), as: *bonus discipulus laudatur a preceptoribus*, *malus vituperatur*.

REM. 1. Intransitive verbs (except occasionally in the poets) have only an impersonal passive (see § 77, 4), which takes the same case as the active, but is to be translated like a passive verb with a personal subject, as: *paret mihi, he obeys me*; *paretur mihi, I am obeyed*. When the verb takes no case in the active or is followed by a preposition with a case, it has the same construction also in the passive, but in translating it we generally use, *one, they, we*, as: *itur, they go*; *pugnatur pro patria, they fight for their country*.

REM. 2. Reflexive action, i. e. action which proceeds from a subject and terminates upon it, is expressed in Latin, 1) by the active with the oblique cases of the personal pronoun (*mei, mihi, me, etc.*), as: *omnes homines se amant*; *Socrates immortalem sibi peperit gloriam*; 2) by the passive, e. g. *congregantur* (they assemble themselves), means very much the same as: *conveniunt, they assemble*.

REM. 3. Many active verbs which express *motion*, etc., have besides a transitive signification, an intransitive or reflexive meaning, as: *vertere, mutare, deflectere*, and many others. — Of course, the corresponding verbs in English, do not always coincide with the Latin in being transitive or intransitive.

3. Deponent verbs are those which have a *passive* form but an *active* (a few are *intransitive*) signification, as: *dux hortatur milites*; *morior*. But deponents are occasionally,

especially in the Perf. Part., used *passively*, as: *adepta libertas, liberty having been obtained*. So also some deponent Perf. Part. seem at times to be used as Pres. Act. Part.

§ 84. *Tenses of the Verb.*

1. The tenses are divided into two classes:

- a) Principal Tenses: Present, Perfect, and Future: *scribo, I write, scripsi, I have written, scribo, I shall write, Fut. Perf. scripsero, I shall have written.*
- b) Historical Tenses: Imperfect, Pluperfect, and the narrative Perfect: *scribebam, I wrote, was writing, scripseram, I had written, scripsi, I wrote.*

REM. 1. There are the same tenses, also, in the subjunctive mode, — but the Fut. Subj. is in the periphrastic form. See the table of conjugations, § 50.

2. The Pres. Indic. expresses an action as present to the speaker (or writer). The present is often used, also, in animated narration of past events, since what is past is conceived of so vividly by the writer, as to appear present (*historical Pres.*). It is used in all respects, as in English.

REM. 2. An action which is past, but continues to the present, either actually or in its effects, is often expressed by the Pres., especially with verbs of perceiving, as: *audio, video, accipio*, etc. So also in giving the views or expressions of another, which belong to no particular time, as: *ut narrat Lucilius; Democritus vult*. In like manner the present is used with *jamdiu, jampridem, jamdudum*. So too of the dedication of books, in the phrase, *qui inscribitur* ("which is dedicated to" i. e. was and still continues to be).

REM. 3. On the contrary, an action merely in progress ("is doing"), or barely conceived as thought of or resolved upon ("I do it," "think of doing it"), is often expressed by the present. In the same manner, the Imperf., and Pres. Part. are used of what *was taking place* (past).

3. The Perf. Indic. not only expresses a past action as completed in the present time of the writer, like our Perf.; but also, like the Greek aorist, barely as

past, without reference to any other past action (*historical* or *narrative* Perf.). In the latter case, the Perf. is translated by, and corresponds to that form of our Imperf. which is expressed without a circumlocution ("did," "came," etc., not "was doing," "was coming," etc.). *Scripti epistolam, I have written the letter* (i. e. the letter is now a *written one, in a written state, completed*, whether just finished or not). *Caesar Pompeium devicit* ("conquered," as a mere past occurrence).

REM. 4. As the Perf. exhibits an action not only as past, but as being in a state of completion in the present, the Perf. is often employed, in Latin, to express rather this state of completion, than the idea of the action's being past. In such cases the Perf. must be translated by the Pres. (also the Pluperf. by the Imperf.), as: *memini* (literally, I have recollected), *I remember*, *novi* (I have become acquainted with), *I know*. So also, *cognovi, consedi, consuevi, constitui*, etc. So *fui* sometimes means "I have been and still am." For the Perf. instead of the Pres. in subordinate sentences, see R. 10.

REM. 5. The Perf. is sometimes used to express with emphasis a future action, when the writer conceives of something as sure to be done, and hence asserts it as already done. *Brutus si conservatus erit, vicimus* ("we have conquered," i. e. "shall conquer," "are certain of victory").

REM. 6. The historical Perf. is sometimes used (mostly by the poets) to express general truths or what is wont to occur, like the Greek aorist, and where we use the Present. In prose this usage is principally confined to verbs connected with *multi, nemo, saepe*, and the like, where the idea of *repetition* or *being wont* is implied, as: *haud semper errat fama, aliquando et elegit*.

4. The Imperf., like the historical Perf., expresses an action as past, but always as standing related to some other past action (or time), either expressed or to be supplied by the mind. *Quum scribebam, in expectatione erant omnia. Sophistae appellabantur* (i. e. by their contemporaries). *Principio rerum, imperium penes reges erat* (the corresponding time is implied in *principio*).

REM. 7. In expressing general truths, the Imperf. is sometimes used instead of the Pres., the action being referred to the particular time of its occurrence. *Pastum animantibus large et copiose natura cum, qui cuique aptus erat, comparavit*.

5. Hence the Perf. Indic. used in narration, relates the principal events, the Imperf. the accompanying circumstances; the Perf. merely relates, the Imperf. describes. Hence the frequent use of the Imperf. in subordinate clauses. Hence, too, the use of the Imperf. in expressing continued or customary action, while the Perf. represents an action as momentary. The change from the one to the other of these tenses, in expressing the different shades of ideas denoted by them, imparts great liveliness to the narrative. Caesar urbem *intravit*, omnes cives *laetabantur*. *Veni, vidi, vici*. Germani veteres venatui *studebant*.

REM. 8. Whether a past action should be expressed by the Imperf. or by the historical Perf. does not, however, depend upon its being of longer or shorter continuance, but upon its being descriptive or narrative. In the former case, whether the action be longer or shorter in duration, it is expressed by the Imperf., and in the latter by the Perfect.

REM. 9. In lively description, instead of the Imperf. or historical Perf., the Infin. Pres. (*historical* Infin.) is often used, especially where several contemporaneous actions, or actions rapidly succeeding each other, are described. Also in subordinate sentences introduced by *quum*; and in Tacitus after *ubi, ut* and *postquam*, but always with an Imperf. or historical Pres. following it. The subject and attributive qualifications, as with the finite verb, are in the Nom., but when the subject is easily supplied from the connection, it is not expressed.—Multum ipse (Catilina) *pugnare, saepe hostem ferire*.

6. The Pluperf. expresses an action as past (completed) before another past action. *Scripseram* epistolam, *quum* amicus venit.

REM. 10. In many cases, in subordinate clauses (rarely in principal clauses), the Latin uses the Pluperf. or Perf. where we use the Imperf., since the action is really completed before the commencement of the action expressed by the principal clause (as: *quum* litteras *accepissem*—or *postquam* *accepi*—*profectus sum*, Eng. “when I *received* the letter, I departed.” This is especially the case after principal sentences which express a customary action either in the Pres. or Imperf., where we use also the Pres. or Imperf. in the subordinate sentence. *Quum* huc *veni*

hoc ipsum nihil agere et plane cessare *delectat* ("when or as often as I come").

7. The Fut. expresses an action as future in relation to the present time of the speaker. It is used, 1) In many cases where we use the Pres. in English, as where we say "I come to-morrow" (for "I will come"); 2) As a milder and modest way of asserting something, since the decision is left to the future; 3) In subordinate sentences, after the Fut. Imperat. or hortatory Subj. in the principal sentence, where the English commonly uses the Pres.; 4) Commands, exhortations, admonitions, requests, and in connection with *non*, prohibitions, are expressed by the second person of the Fut., the performance being left to the person's will. *Semper igitur ea (aegritudine) sapiens vacabit. Qui adipisci veram gloriam volet, justitiae fungatur officii. Valebis meaque negotia videbis.*

8. The Fut. Perf. expresses an action as past (completed) in the future. On account of its awkwardness, it is much less frequently used in English than in Latin, its place often being supplied by the simple Fut., the Pres. or the Perf. *Ut sementem feceris, ita metes (as you sow).*

REM. 11. The Fut. Perf. is often used to express with emphasis, what, if not emphatic, would be expressed by the simple Fut. This may be translated into English by the simple Fut., or frequently by the Perf. with a corresponding emphasis. *Tolle hanc opinionem; luctum sustuleris* ("you will take away," or "you have taken away").

REM. 12. The Fut. Perf. of verbs, which have the meaning of the Pres. in the Perf. (R. 4), should be translated into English by the simple Fut.; so also the Fut. Perf. of *posse, velle, libet, licet, placet*, which are often found in subordinate clauses.—Especially to be noticed is the use of *videro*, mostly after *mox, post* or *alias*, in putting off the consideration of something for the present, as: *tu quidem adhuc meam causam agis; sed hoc mox video.*

9. The use of the tenses in the Periphrastic Conjugation (§ 53). agrees entirely with their use in the simple conjugation. There are the following forms:

a) The Pres. Part. Act. with *sum*, which expresses the ac-

tion as continuing, as a state or condition, as: *gestus erat non verba exprimens, sed cum sententiis congruens*. But the Part. is often a mere attributive of the subject of *sum*, instead of forming the predicate with it.

- b) The Fut. Part. Act. with *sum*, which expresses an action as destined, impending or intended. *Bellum scripturus sum* ("I am to write," "I think of writing," "am about to write," "I will write").

REM. 13. The periphrastic Fut. Pass. is expressed by *futurum est* (*erat*, etc.), followed by *ut* and the Subj.

REM. 14. The Fut. of the simple conjugation expresses the action barely as future; while the Fut. Act. Part. with *sum*, represents it as now before the mind, as designed, as impending or destined to happen from its very condition or nature, as: *scribam*, "I will write;" *scripturus sum*, "I purpose," "have in mind," "think of writing."

- c) The Perf. Pass. Part. with *sum*, which expresses a *passive state*, resulting from a completed action. *Ornatus sum* ("I am adorned," "am in an adorned state"). *Arma, quae fixa in parietibus fuerant* ("which had been fixed," "which having been fixed, remained so").

REM. 15. The Perf. Pass. Part. with *sum*, is used also simply as the passive, in forming the preterite tenses of the common conjugations (see the Paradigms), in which case the forms *fueram*, *fuissem* and *fuiro* are often used instead of *eram*, *essem*, *ero*, in the same meaning.

- d) The Gerundive with *sum*, *eram*, etc., and the Gerund with *est*, *erat*, etc., for which see §§ 98, 99.

10. In epistolary writings (especially in the beginning and at the end of letters), the Imperf. or Perf. is often used of what was present to the writer (and the Pluperf. of what was completed), since he allowed for the time of the transportation of the letter, and spoke of things as from the time of its reception.

§ 85. *Modes of the Verb.*

1. The Indicative is the mode employed in expressing facts, realities, or things viewed as facts, as: *rosa floret.*

2. The Subjunctive is the mode employed in expressing what is imagined or barely conceived of in the principal tenses, as either present or future, and in the historical tenses (except in conditional sentences), as past. It is used mostly in subordinate or *subjoined* sentences (hence the name *subjunctive*); but is used in independent sentences (whether simple or accompanied by a subordinate clause) in the following cases:—

- a) The Subj. of the principal tenses, especially of the Pres., is used in independent sentences to express a supposition, a presumption, a modest assertion or opinion, a deliberative question, an encouragement, exhortation, wish. We may translate this Subj. into English either by the Pres. Indic., or by the subjunctive forms with *may, can, would, could,* or by *let* with the Infin. *Nemo sanus de virtutis pretio dubitet. Quis de animorum immortalitate dubitet? Eamus* (“let us go,” or “we would go.”) *Utinam amicus convalescat!*
- b) The Subj. of the historical tenses is used in independent sentences: 1) To express a supposition the opposite of what is or is not, as: *errares, thou wouldst err* (either present or future); *errasses, thou wouldst have erred* (past); *si hoc diceres errares, if thou shouldst say this, thou wouldst err*; *si hoc dixisses, errasses, if thou hadst said this, thou wouldst have erred.* So: *non errares, non errasses.* 2) To express a wish of which one knows that it will not be realized (Imperf.), or has not been realized (Pluperf.), as: *utinam amicus convalesceret! utinam amicus convaluisset!* 3) The Subj. Imperf. is used in reference to the past, to express an assumption, supposition, concession, an undetermined

possibility, also demands, requests, and deliberative questions, as: at *dares hanc vim M. Crasso* (i. e. suppose one had given); so *crederes, putares, cerneres, videres* (one might believe, perceive, etc.); *imitatus esses ipsum illum Voconium* (you should have imitated); *quid facerem?* (what could I have done?).

REM. 1. The Subj. is sometimes used for the Indic., for the purpose of exhibiting a fact as a mere conception; and the Indic. for the Subj., to exhibit a conception as a reality. The Perf. Subj. is often used in a modest way to express an opinion or view, and may be translated by the Pres. (Indic. or Subj.), or by the Perf. or Fut. Indic.

REM. 2. The Subj. in subordinate sentences will be treated of hereafter. The conjunctions which are always accompanied by the Subj. are: *ut* (that, in order that), *ne* (that not; but after verbs expressing fear and anxiety, *that*), *quo* (in order that thereby), *quin* (that not; but after expressions denoting doubt it should be translated *that*), *quominus* (that), after verbs of hindering.—The Subj. is always used, also, in indirect or dependent questions (see § 104).

REM. 3. For the succession of the tenses see § 105.

3. The *Imperative* is used to express *commands*, as: *scribe*. The two forms of the second person of the Imperative are thus distinguished: the shorter forms (*ama, amate*) have a *milder*, the longer forms (*amato, amatote*) have, in most cases, a *stronger* meaning; hence these last should be translated by *should* or *must*, and are used especially in *directions* and *injunctions*.

Ferte misero atque inopi auxilium. Colito virtutem. Leges observantor. Discipulus amato praeceptores.

REM. 4. As impersonal verbs have no Imperat. the Subj. must always be used in its stead, as: *ne te tuae vitae pigcat* (let it not, it should not). For the Fut. instead of the Imperat. see § 84, 7. Besides, the following circumlocutions, used in expressing commands or wishes, should be here noticed: 1) *fac* with the Subj., generally without *ut*, as: *nunc tu fac attentum te praebeas*; 2) *velim* with the Subj. without *ut*, as: *tu velim animo sapienti fortique sis*; 3) *cura, ut*, as: *cura, ut valeas*.

REM. 5. The negative with the Imperat. and also with the Subj. of wishing, encouraging, and exhorting, is *ne*

(not *non*), as: *ne* scribe; *ne* eamus. However, instead of *ne* (which, except in poetry, stands only with the second form of the Imper), *noli*, *nolite* with the Infin. are more common, as: *noli* (*nolite*) *scribere* (do not write); but *ne* often stands with the second person Subj. Perf., as: *ne scripseris* (write not).—With the second Pers. Subj. Pres., *cave* and *fac ne* are used in urgent dissuasives, as: *cave*, *ne festines* (be sure not to hasten); *fac*, *ne quid aliud cures*.

CHAPTER II.

§ 86. *Of the Attributive Relation in Sentences.*

1. An attributive is that which limits, qualifies or more nearly defines a substantive, so as to form a combined idea with it. It may be: 1) An adjective (or participle), as: *rosa pulchra*, *rosa florens*; 2) A noun in the Gen., as: *hortus regis*; 3) A noun in apposition, as: *Philippus, rex Macedonum*.

REM. 1. The attributive Gen. will be treated of under the cases. It may here be remarked, that after *ad* (also *prope*, and sometimes *ab* and *in*) the nouns *aedes* or *templum* are often omitted, and the attributive genitive is left without a noun to depend upon, as: *habitabat rex ad Jovis Statoris*. So also *filius* and *filia* are often omitted, leaving the name of the father alone in the Gen., as: *Hasdrubal Gisgonis*.

2. The attributive adjective (participle, adjective pronoun and numeral) expresses a quality as already belonging to a substantive. (For its agreement with its substantive, see § 81.)

REM. 2. When the adjective, either of itself or from the connection, plainly expresses the idea of its noun also, the noun is omitted. This occurs especially in the following cases:

- a) Adjectives (both Sing. and Plur.) which designate persons by some quality peculiar to them, as: *amicus, ami-*

ca, inimicus (a), adversarius (a), aequalis, senex, familiaris, cognatus (a), propinquus (a), sodalis, adolescens. These are generally used wholly as substantives, but most of them may also be used as adjectives.

- b) Adjectives in the plural which designate a class of persons by some common quality peculiar to persons, as: *docti, indocti, probi, improbi, pii, impii, disertii, divites, periti, imperiti, calamitosi, etc.*; also in the comparative and superlative, as: *doctiores, doctissimi, etc.*— But when the adjective expresses an indefinite quality, it cannot be used without its noun, unless the connection shows to what it refers, as: *magnus, major, minor, tenuis, mediocris, superior, inferior, summus, infimus, etc.* These are mostly used in the plural, but sometimes in the singular, especially *sapiens*.— Gentile adjectives are not used in the Sing. without a noun or pronoun with which they agree except they designate an entire people or class. Hence we find, *Romanus, Graecus, Arpinus* homo; but *Romanus*, for milites Romani. So in Livy, Hannibal, or some of the Carthaginian generals, is often designated by *Poenus*.
- c) The neuter Sing. of adjectives of the second declension (rarely of the third, and only in the Nom. and Acc.), used in an abstract sense, as: *bonum, malum, decorum, indecorum, ridiculum, contrarium, honestum, verum, falsum, justum, aequum, ambiguum, utile*; but those of the third declension often in connection with a preposition. The neuter plural of such adjectives has a concrete meaning (see § 82, 3).
- d) Certain feminine and neuter adjectives, which naturally, or by prevailing usage, refer to particular nouns, as: *patria* (sc. terra), *natalis* (sc. dies), *Bachanalia* (sc. sacra), *liberna* (sc. castra). Also where the reference is obvious from the connection, as: *primas, secundas* (sc. partes) agere; *frigidam, calidam* (sc. aquam) potare; *aliquem repetundarum* (sc. pecuniarum) accusare.

REM. 3. Adjectives referring to a noun in apposition with a proper name (except those given under Rem. 2. a) must take after them *homo* or *vir* in apposition. But gentile adjectives, and adjectives which have acquired the force of proper names, usually stand after their nouns without taking these words in apposition, as: *Aristides Atheniensis, Cato Major, Laelius Sapiens* (the wise), *Crassus Dives*. Besides, a proper name

is not directly qualified by an adjective, but through the noun in apposition, as: Socrates, *sapientissimus homo*; Corinthus, *amplissima urbs*.

REM. 4. Such substantive adjectives are rarely qualified by any other adjective-word except a numeral or pronoun, as: *doctissimi illi veteres*.—Some Perf. Past. Part., as: *factum, dictum, inventum*, etc., are not only joined as participles with adverbs, but as substantives with adjectives, as: *praeclare facta and praeclara facta*, etc.

REM. 5. Many substantives in *tor* are used also as adjectives, both attributive and predicative, and take a feminine form in *trix* in reference to a feminine noun, as: *victor exercitus*; *victrices Athenae*. Other substantives are thus used but rarely, as: *exercitus tiro, milites tirōnes*.

REM. 6. The Latin often employs an attributive adjective, especially to denote the relation of *origin, descent, country*, also other relations, where we use the genitive or a preposition with its case, as: *Prodicus Cēus* (*Prodicus of Cos*); *pugna Marathonia* (*the battle at Marathon*); *aliena vitia* (*the faults of others*).

3. The adjectives: *primus, ultimus, extrēmus, postrēmus, novissimus, intimus, summus, medius, infimus, imus, reliquus*, generally denote the first, last, etc. part of a thing, but agree in gender, number, and case with their nouns, like other attributives, as: *extremo Peloponnesio bello* (*in the last part of the Peloponnesian war*).

4. When two or more adjectives refer to the same substantive, they are either connected with each other by the conjunctions *et, atque, ac, que*, or they stand without any connective between them. In the first case the adjectives qualify their noun, each independently of the other, and are said to be coördinate to each other; in the other case, one of the series of adjectives qualifies the noun directly and the other (or others) qualifies the compound idea thus formed. Their relation here is said to be subordinate. Thus: *Socrates fuit sapientissimus et optimus homo* (coördinate); *praeclarus ille vir* (subordinate).

REM. 7. Pronouns and numerals are oftenest employed in a subordinate relation to other adjectives; but *multi* (*plurimi*), *ae, a,*

is often connected with the other adjective by a conjunction, when it is not emphatic, as : *multi et praeclari viri* (many great men).

5. Many attributive adjectives, in Latin, do not qualify a subject or object by itself, but only in reference to the predicate. In this way the ideas of place, time, number, the ground or reason, condition, way and manner, are expressed by adjectives, very much as by adverbs. Adjectives of this kind are : *superior, inferior, summus, extremus, infimus, medius, propior, proximus, etc.*; *primus*, and the remaining *ordinals*; also *princeps, prior, postremus, unus, solus, totus, omnis, ipse, libens, invitus, tacitus, etc.*, as : *Philippus proximus accedebat* (Philip came up *next*).

REM. 8. But when the qualifying idea can be referred only to the predicate, and not at the same time to the subject or object, an adverb and not an adjective must be used. Thus we can say, either *libens* or *libenter* hunc librum legi, but only *suaviter* cantas, because it cannot be inferred that one who sings *beautifully* is himself *beautiful*; but the poets sometimes use the adjective even in such cases.

REM. 9. Of the adjective forms *primus, solus, unus, ultimus, postrēmus*, and the corresponding adverbial forms *primum, ultimum, etc.*, the former are used when the meaning is that which is first, alone of all persons or things of the kind (as, "he was the first," "the only one" to do it), and the latter, when "first" ("last," etc.) means for the first time, first in order, for the last time, last in order, as : *hanc urbem primam adii* (this was the first city which I approached); but *primum hanc urbem adii* (for the first time).

REM. 10. The place of an attributive adjective is often supplied by a preposition with its case. 1) Oftenest by *cum* or *sine* with the ablative, as : *laetitia gestiens est sine ratione animi elatio* (a *senseless* elation of mind); *cum dignitate otium dulce est* (a *dignified* leisure);—2) *ex* or *de* with the ablative of the origin, extraction, material or whole in relation to a part, as : *ex Arcadia hospes* (an *Arcadian* guest); *homo unus ex omnibus* (a *one-of-many* man);—3) Not unfrequently *ad, apud, in, adversus, etc.* with an Acc., or the name of a place without a preposition, as : *castris ad Bagradam* (at the *Bagradian* camp); *pietas adversus deos* (*God-ward* piety); *Alexandrea discessus* (the *Alexandrian* departure);—4) But generally, when

the attributive idea is expressed by a preposition and its case, it is accompanied by a participle agreeing with the noun to which the attributive refers, or its attributive character is indicated by its position, as: *bellum cum Carthaginiensibus gestum*; *mons prope urbem situs* (literally, the-near-the-city-situated mountain); *Caesāris in Hispania res secundae*.

6. A noun is said to be in apposition with another noun, when it is joined to another noun or personal pronoun (whether expressed, or implied in the person of the verb) in the same case, to qualify or further define it. When it designates persons it also agrees with the noun to which it refers in gender and number, as: *Tomŷris, regīna Scytharum, Cyrum, regem Persarum, devicit*; *Themistocles veni ad te* (i. e. *ego*, Th.). Compare § 81, 1.

REM. 11. In order to give prominence to the word in apposition, *dico* is sometimes added to it without affecting the construction, as: *quam hesternus dies nobis, consularibus dico, turpis illuxit!*

7. A noun in apposition, like the attributive adjective (No. 5), is often used to qualify a noun rather with reference to the predicate than in itself. In this way the ideas of time, ground, etc., may be expressed by apposition, as: *dux proditor patriae interfectus est* (*while a traitor*). So often *puer, infans, senex, consul*, etc. (*while a boy, while a consul*, etc.).

8. A word in apposition with a possessive pronoun is put in the genitive, since the possessive pronoun is equivalent to the Gen. of the personal pronoun, as: *tuum studium adolescentis perspexi* ("I have observed your zeal, youth!" lit. "the zeal of you a youth"). In the same manner *ipsius, ipsorum, ipsarum* (own) follow a possessive, as: *filius suum ipsius patrem vituperat*. Also *omnium*, as: *vestram omnium vicem*; but generally (always when *omnium* stands first) the pronoun is put in the Gen. Plur. also, as: *praesens omnium nostrum fortuna*. So with *utriusque*, as: *verecundia utriusque nostrum* (instead of *nostra utriusque ver.*).

REM. 12. In the later historical writers, especially in Tacitus, a noun in apposition (often with a whole sentence), frequently stands as a definition, or expresses an aim or object, as: *mille equites, cumulus prosperis aut subsidium laborantibus, ducebantur*; Vitellius omnes conquiri et interfici jussit, *munimentum ad preasens, in posterum ultionem*. The case is somewhat different where an Acc. with an accompanying adjective is used as a sort of exclamation after a foregoing sentence, to express an opinion of the subject treated of in that sentence, as: *hoc dicto admoneor, ut aliquid etiam de humatione et sepultura dicendum existimem: rem non difficilimem!* This is common in Cicero.

9. A substantive expressing a whole, instead of being in the Gen., often stands in the same case as its parts, which are in apposition with it. This is called *partitive* or *distributive apposition*. Here belong especially, the words: *quisque, uterque, alius—alius, alii—alii, alter—alter, pars—pars; alius—alium* (each one the other), so also *alter—alterum*, of two things. The subject expressing the whole may be implied in the predicate (we, you, they). Thus: *milites pars in agros dilapsi sunt, pars urbes petunt; amici alter alterum amplexi sunt; alius alium expectantes cunctamini*. It is rare that the predicate agrees with the part in apposition, rather than with the whole.

CHAPTER III.

§ 87. *Of the Objective Relation in Sentences.*

1. As the attributive limits the subject, or more properly, a substantive idea (whether subject or object), so the object limits or forms a nearer definition of the predicate (a verbal idea). The object embraces: 1) The cases; 2) The prepositions with their cases; 3) The Infinitive; 4) The participle; 5) The adverb.

REM. 1. Some verbs require an object after them in order to express a complete idea, as: *cupio scribere* ("I desire,"—

what? "to write"). Others may be followed by an object or not, as: *rosa floret*, or *rosa floret in horto*. Objects of this latter kind express only the relations of place, time, degree, means, way and manner.

TREATMENT OF THE CASES.

2. There are four cases, in Latin, which express an objective relation, the Genitive, Dative, Accusative and Ablative. Of these, the Gen. expresses the object as active (as the cause or author of the action); the Acc. as suffering or receiving the action, or as the effect or result of the action; the Dat. as participating in the action, or as its end or aim; the Abl. as an instrument or means.

REM. 2. These cases are called *casus obliqui*, while the Nom. and Voc. are called *casus recti*. The Nom. is the case of the subject, the Voc. is the case of direct address.

§ 88. A. *The Genitive.*

The Genitive denotes that which produces, calls forth, embraces or includes an action. It answers the questions: *whose? of whom? of what? in consequence of whom or what?* etc., and is used in the following cases:

1. With the following verbs and phrases denoting a feeling or affection of the mind: *misereor* (poet. *miseresco*), "I pity;" *me* (aliquem) *misēret* (rarer *miseretur*), *poenitet*, *piget*, *pudet*, *taedet* and *pertaesum est*, "It excites my pity" (I compassionate), "I repent," etc. (But *pudet* sometimes takes the Gen. of the person also.) *Me misēret tui*. *Nunquam primi consilii deum poenitet*.

2. With the following *adjectives* expressing feelings of the mind: *cupīdus*, *avidus*, *avarus*, *studiōsus*, *aemūlus*, *invidus*, *providus*, *fastidiōsus*; also *amicus* and *inimicus* (which, however, when used more strictly as adjectives, take the Dat.). *Avida est periculi virtus*. *Populus potentiae invidus est*.

REM. 1. The poets and later writers often employ the Gen. after nearly all adjectives expressing mental states or

emotions of any kind, as: *lassus, callidus, doctus, certus, dubius, laetus*, etc.; also with those denoting removal or separation (properly requiring the Abl.), and even where the Gen. or Abl. of quality (with the adjective agreeing with it), or Abl. of respect, is commonly used, as: *lassus viae*; *integer vitae scelerisque purus*; *ingens animi*, etc.

3. With the following verbs of remembering, forgetting and reminding: *memini, venit mihi in mentem* (I think, it occurs to me), *reminiscor, obliviscor*; *admoneo, commoneo, commonefacio* aliquem;—also with the following adjectives of remembering and forgetting, knowledge and ignorance, experience and inexperience: *memor, and immemor*; *consciens, nesciens, insciens*; *gnarus, ignarus*; *prudens, imprudens*; *peritus, imperitus, consultus, rudis*; *insolens, insolitus, insuetus*. *Pueri meminērint verecundiae. Cimo prudens rei militaris fuit. Venit mihi Platonis in mentem.*

REM. 2. *Memini, reminiscor* and *obliviscor* often, and *recordor*, almost always, take an Acc. *Moneo* and *commoneo* are oftener found with *de* and the Abl.; they also, as well as *admoneo*, take the neuter pronouns *hoc, id, illud* in the Acc. *Rudis* and *prudens* are very often found with *in* and the Abl.

4. With participles in *ans* and *ens* used as adjectives; also (but only in the poets and later writers) with many verbal adjectives in *ax*, as: *ferax, capax*, (*ferax* as denoting abundance, etc., see No. 7, sometimes takes the Abl.). *Homo glorię appetens saepe a virtutis via deflectit. Nimium retinens libertatis. Justum ac tenacem propositi virum. Terra satis ferax.*

5. With verbs (also adjectives) of accusing, criminating, condemning, convicting and acquitting (which in the Act. take also an Acc. with the Abl.), as: *accuso, incuso*; *arguo, coarguo, insimulo*; *arcesso, postulo*; *convinco, damno, condemno*; *absolvo, libero*. Here the charge or crime is put in the Genitive (sometimes in the Abl. both with and without *de*). *Miltiades proditiōnis est accusatus. (Fannius) C. Verrem insimulat avaritię et audacię.*

REM. 3. The punishment, when it is death (*caput, mors*) or of the nature of a fine, is generally in the Gen., but sometimes in the Abl. Other punishments are put in the Acc. with *ad* or *in*, as: *aliquem ad bestias (in metalla) condemnare*.

6. With the following adjectives which denote participation, community (and the contrary), likeness and unlikeness: *particeps, expers, consors, exsors, jejūnus, exhēres, immānis* (oftener with the Abl.); also the following, which are often found with the dative: *commūnis, socius, affīnis, vicīnus, proprius* (almost always with the Gen. in Cic.), *aliēnus, sacer; similis, dissimilis* (especially with the Gen. of persons), *par, dispar, aequalis, superstes* (rarely with the Dat.). *Bestiae sunt rationis et orationis expertes. Homo particeps est rationis.*

7. With *potens, impōtens, compos* (*impos* not during the classical period of the language), and adjectives denoting plenty and want, which are also found with the ablative, as: *plenus, refertus, complētus, fertilis, inops, sterilis, inānis, vacuus, egēnus*; also with the verbs *implēre, egēre, indigēre* (but these often take the Abl.). *Ira, ut insania, impotens sui est. Gallia frugum fertilis fuit. Inops consilii es.*

8. The genitive stands with *esse* and *fiēri* to signify: 1) That to which something belongs or of which it is (*possessive Gen.*); here also belong the expressions: *aliquid suae (or alicujus) ditionis (potestatis) facere*, and *aliquid lucri facere* (to bring something under one's power, to turn something to one's advantage); 2) That to which something belongs as a property or quality, in which case the quality itself is commonly expressed by an infinitive. This last Gen. we translate by: It is the *part, manner, custom, characteristic, duty, sign, mark* (of some one); *it is incumbent on one*, and the like. *Omnia quae mulieris fuerunt, viri fiunt* (all which belonged to the wife become the part of the husband). *Viri probi est verum dicere* (it is the *part, duty*).

REM. 4. Verbs of considering, regarding, seeming, also take the Gen. in the last sense, as: *multi superstitionem imbecilli animi putant* (the mark of a feeble mind).

REM. 5. Instead of the Gen. of the personal pronouns: *mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri* (est), *meum, tuum, suum, nostrum, vestrum est* are used.

9. The genitive or ablative of a substantive with an adjective agreeing with it, stands with *esse* to express the character or quality of an object (Gen. or Abl. of *quality*). This Gen. or Abl. is also used as an *attribute* to a noun, without *esse*.

The general distinction between the two cases seems to be, that the Gen. denotes essential qualities, while the Abl. denotes circumstantial or accidental qualities.

10. The genitive stands as the expression of value (Gen. of *price*) with verbs of valuing and esteeming; buying and selling (but see also § 91, 4. c), as: *aestīmo* (also with the Abl. *magno*, etc.), *facio, pendo, duco, puto, habeo* (also in the Pass.), *videor* and *sum*; *emo, vendo, venĕo*. Of this kind are the Genitives: *magni* (not *multi*), *pluris* (not *majōris*), *maxīmi, plurīmi*; *parvi, minōris, minīmi, tanti, tantūdem* or *non minōris, quanti, quantūvis, quancūque*; *nihīli, pensi*; *floci, nauci, assis, teruncii, pili*. *Divitiae a sapienti viro minimi putantur* (are held *very low*). *Quanti emisti hunc librum* (for how much, at what price)?

11. With the impersonal verb *interest* (rarely *refert*), "it concerns;" the person (or thing) whom something concerns, is put in the genitive. Instead of the genitives of the personal pronouns; *mei, tui*, etc., the Abl. Sing. of the possessives, viz.: *meā, tuā, suā, nostrā, vestrā, cuiā* (sc. *caussā*) are used, and in this case *refert* is used as well as *interest*, and in the same sense. But both these verbs may stand also without a personal object, especially *refert*.

How much or how little one is interested in a thing is expressed: 1) by adverbs, as: *magnopĕre, magis, maxīme, nihīl, parum, minīme*;—2) by the adverbial neuters: *mul-*

tum, plus, plurimum, minus, minimum, tantum, etc.;—3) by the genitives: *mogni, pluris, parvi, tanti, quanti, etc.*, as above, No. 10.

The thing which interests or concerns one, is rarely expressed by a substantive, but: 1) by an infinitive; 2) by the accusative with an infinitive; 3) by a subordinate sentence with *ut* (that), *ne* (that not) and the subjunctive; 4) by an indirect question (in the Subj.).—The general expressions: *this, that, what* one is interested in, are expressed by the accusatives: *id, illud, quod, quid*.

Interest omnium, recte facere. Quid nostra refert (interest), victum esse Antonium? Praeceptorum multum interest, discipulos summo studio in litteras incumbere. Magni mea interest (refert), ut te videam. Omnium magni interest feliciter vivere.

REM. 6. That as to which or in what point of view one is interested in a thing, is put in the Acc. with *ad*, as: *magni ad honorem nostrum interest, quam primum ad urbem me venire.*

12. Finally, the genitive stands with a substantive as an attributive or nearer definition of it, as: *hortus regis* (= *hortus regius*).

REM. 7. Hence the genitive with the substantives: *caussā, gratiā, ergo*, which we render by *on account of, for the sake of*, and with *instar, like*. Instead of the genitives *mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri: meā, tuā, suā, nostrā, vestrā*, are used with *caussā* and *gratiā*, as: *meā, tuā, suā, nostrā, vestrā, caussā* or *gratiā* (on my account, thy account, etc.).

REM. 8. The attributive Gen. often takes the place of a noun in apposition, as: *urbs Romae* (the city of Rome = the city, Rome); *virtutes continentiae, gravitatis, justitiae*. With *nomen* (cognomen), *vox, vocabulum mihi est (manet, datum)*, the word used to designate the person or thing named is not, in good writers, in the Gen., but either in the Nom. or Dat., as: *fons, cui nomen Arethusa est; puer ab inopia Egerio inditum nomen (est)*. With *nomen do alicui (dico alicui)*, the Dat. is commonly used, rarely the Acc., as: *tardo cognomen pingui damus*. With *nomen habeo*, a proper name is in the Acc., but a common name in the Gen.

13. The attributive genitive, which may be either possessive or objective, according as it expresses simply the cause, or at the same time the cause and

the object of the state or action indicated, is used to designate:

- a) The author or cause, as: *conjuratio Catilinae*; *desiderium patriae* (excited by and terminating upon one's country);
- b) The owner or possessor, as: *hortus regis*.
- c) The whole from which a part is separated, as: *partes corporis*. The partitive genitive is used as follows:
 - 1) With comparatives, (as: *prior, posterior*, etc.), superlatives (both adjective and adverbial), pronouns (as: *quis, qui, ullus, hic, ille*, etc.), and numerals (as: *primus, unus, pauci*, etc.—but *plerique*, in the classical period of the language, is not found with the partitive genitive);
 - 2) With nouns expressing quantity, measure and number, as: *modius, libra, pondus, talentum*, etc.; *legio, cohors*, etc.; *multitudo, copia, numerus, vis*, etc.;
 - 3) With the neuter singular of adjectives and pronouns expressing quantity, but only in the Nom. and Acc., as: *tantum, tantundem, quantum, aliquantum, multum* (but not *magnum* and *parvum*), *plus, amplius, plurimum, nimium, minus, minimum*; *aliquid, quid, quicquid*; *quicquam, nihil*, sometimes also, *hoc, illud, id, quod*, etc.;
 - 4) With the adverbs of quantity used substantively: *satis, abunde, affatim, parum, nimis, partim*;
 - 5) With the adverbs of place: *ubi, unde, quo, usquam, nusquam, longe*, are used the genitives *gentium, terrarum, loci*, (also *eodem loci*), *locorum*; and with *eo* (to this degree), and *quo* (to what degree), the Gen. of an abstract noun.

Duorum fratrum major natu. Cicero omnium Romanorum prestantissimus est. Ingens multitudo hominum. Aliquid pristini roboris (but instead of *multum pecuniae, magna pecunia* is used). (Cimo) *habebat satis eloquentiae. Ubi terrarum* (where in the world)? *Quo amentiae* (to what degree of folly)?

REM. 9. Instead of the partitive genitive, *ex, de* (rarely *in*) with the Abl. are sometimes found, as: *ex omnibus militibus pauci*

contra hostes decertabant. This is generally the case in prose after *unus*, when it means *one out of a larger number* (not *one* as corresponding to *other*), as : *unus ex fortissimis* (not *unus fortissimorum*).

REM. 10. But the whole is often put in the same case as the part, especially when the whole is not to be expressly opposed to its parts. This construction is necessary where the quality of the part belongs to the whole class, as : *mortales homines* (never : *mortales hominum*) because each and every man is mortal. When adjectives in the neuter Sing. are used in the attributive relation to the above named adjectives of quantity (13, c. 3), those of the third declension are almost invariably put in apposition, but those of the second dec. may be either in apposition or in the partitive Gen., as : *nihil coeleste* ; but, *nihil divinum* or *divini*.

REM. 11. The attributive Gen. must be translated into English by different prepositions in different cases, as : *memoria prae-teriti temporis* (of) ; *desiderium patriae* (for) ; *consuetudo amicum* (with). Sometimes, instead of the Gen., the corresponding prepositions with their case are used, as : *amor in (adversus, erga) patrem*.—Two genitives expressing different relations may depend upon one noun, as : *labor est quadam functio corporis gravioris operis* (capability of the body of enduring heavier labor).

§ 89. B. Accusative.

1. The accusative stands in answer to the question, *whom?* or *what?* It signifies a passive object, as : *rex civitatem regit*, or that which is produced by an action (*effect*), as : *scribo epistolam*. Hence it stands with all transitive verbs, and those used transitively.

2. The simplest case of the accusative of the effect is that of an abstract noun from the same stem as the verb or of a kindred meaning, as : *vitam (aetatem) vivere*. But instead of the kindred noun itself, its attribute is often used, as : *olere crocum* (= *olere odorem croceum*) ; *agere juventutem* (= *agere aetatem juventutis*).

REM. 1. In prose the ablative of the instrument is commonly used instead of this Acc., as : *triumphavit (Papius) insigni triumpho*.

REM. 2. The Acc. of the neuter pronouns, after intransitive verbs, is of this nature. These accusatives express the aim

or purpose, or object, in a very general way. But when a noun is used in their place it is put in the Gen., Dat., or in the Abl. with or without a preposition, as: *quid* me accusas? (*why* do you accuse—*what accusation* do you accuse—me of?), but, *cujus rei* me accusas? *utrumque* laetor (I rejoice at each). Such accusatives as *alia id genus*; *homines id aetatis*; *vicem meam* (*tuam*, etc.), “on my (thy) account;” *ceterum, cetera* (for the rest, in other respects, but), are of the nature of the Greek Acc. (Acc. by *synecdoche*). By the poets and later prose writers this synecdochical Acc. was much used as a nearer definition, after adjectives, participles, intransitive and passive verbs, in all kinds of expressions, as: *vite caput* tegitur.

REM. 3. The Acc. Sing. of adjectives (rarely the plur.) is used in this way in poetry, where, in prose, adverbs are commonly used, especially with verbs of shining, sounding, calling, etc., as: *immane sonat*; *horridum stridens*.

3. The following verbs take the *accusative* (mostly of a person) although they might seem from their meaning to require a different case, *jūvo, adjūvo*; *deficio*; *fugio, defugio, effugio, subterfugio*; *aequo, adaequo, aequipāro*; *sequor* and *sector*; *imītor, aemūlor* (but sometimes with Dat.); *decet* (*decent*), *dedēcet, praetērit, fallit, latet*. *Malus fugit bonum* (flees from = flees.) *Pedites equitem cursu aequabant* (kept up with).

4. Many intransitive verbs (especially such as express an affection of the mind) are often used transitively and constructed with the Acc.; so also many intransitive verbs when compounded with prepositions which govern an Acc., as: *cives meum casum doluerunt*; *accedere locum* (also *ad* l. and loco).

REM. 4. With many of these compounds the preposition is repeated, as: *inire in urbem* (or *inire urbem*). The preposition is not repeated when the verb is used in a figurative sense, as: *adeo aliquem* (I visit one). Most compound verbs of this class have a passive form, as: *circumvenior, transeor*, etc.

5. The Acc. expresses *extent* of time, space, weight and measure, in answer to the questions: how long? how far? how wide (broad)? how high? how deep? how thick? how many (much)? how great? etc., as: *quaedam bestiōlae unum diem* vivunt; *turris pedes duccentos* alta est.

REM. 5. From this use of the Acc. many adverbial expressions have arisen, as: *magnam, majorem, maximam partem* (great, greater, greatest part), *summum, multum* (much, greatly), *plus, plurimum*, as: *multum te amo*.

REM. 6. In order to define *length of time* more exactly, prepositions stand with the Acc., viz.: 1) *per* (through, during); 2) *intra* (within); 3) *inter* (during, in the course of); 4) *in* with the Acc., in answer to the questions: what time? at what time? for how long? 5) *ad*, to the questions: till when? up to what time? 6) *ad, sub, circa* (about, towards).

REM. 7. Time how long is rarely expressed by the Abl. in the writers of the best period, but often by Tacitus and the later writers. For the Abl. of measure, and in the questions: how long before? how long after? see under the Ablative.

REM. 8. In order to express how long before or after the present time of the speaker an action happened or will happen, *ante* or *abhinc* (ago) and *post* are used with the Acc.; but *abhinc* sometimes stands also with the Abl., as; *ante (abhinc) tres annos amicum vidi; post paucos dies te videbo; Roscius litem decidit abhinc annis quattuor* (or: ante quattuor annos). See § 91, 12.

6. The Acc. (generally with an attributive) is used in exclamations; commonly after an interjection, but sometimes without, as: *heu me miserum! O fallacem hominum spem!*

REM. 9. When the exclamation is a direct address to one, it stands in the Voc. after *O* or *pro*, as: *O fortunate adolescens! En* and *ecce* always take the Nom. in Cicero; in other writers the Acc. also.

7. A double accusative stands in the following cases:

- a) With verbs which signify *to call* (name); *to make, choose, appoint one something*; *to account, consider as, to be something*; *to show one's self as something*; *to give, take, have as something*.

Julius Caesar *dictatorem se fecit. Homines caecos reddit cupiditas et avaritia. Romulus urbem ex nomine suo Romam vocavit. Ciceronem universus populus consulem declaravit. Sapientem beatum habemus. Antistius se praestitit acerrimum propugnatorum communis libertatis. Athenienses Miltiadem sibi imperatorem sumpserunt. Epaminondas praeceptorem habuit Lysim. Romani Ciceronem patrem patriae appellaverunt.*

REM. 10. The passive of these verbs has a double nominative (§ 81, 2), as: *pavo superbus dicitur*.

- b) With the verbs: *celo, doceo, interrōgo*;—*oro, rogo, flagito*; *posco, postūlo*, and the like.—Also several transitive verbs compounded with *ad, circum, praeter, trans*.

Ciceronem Minerva omnes artes edocuit. Ne quid turpe amicum roga! Ego te sententiam tuam rogo. Nullam rem te celo. Caesar exercitum Rhenum transportavit.

REM. 11. But *peto* (properly: *I strive after*), *I request, entreat*, is constructed with *a*, and *quaero* (properly: *I seek*), *I ask*, with *a* or *ex*, as: *peto a te librum, quaero a (ex) te sententiam*. Many other verbs of asking or demanding are sometimes constructed with *a*, and some with *de*, as also are many verbs of teaching.

REM. 12. With most of the above verbs, in the passive construction, the personal object becomes the nominative and the accusative of the thing remains. *Cicero a Minerva omnes artes edoctus est. Cato rogatus est sententiam*. Still with verbs of *demanding*, the accusative of the thing becomes the nominative, and the accusative of the person is changed into the Abl. and governed by the preposition *a*, as: *pecunia a me poscitur, flagitatur*.

REM. 13. For the Acc. with *propior, proximus, propius, proxime* see § 90, 1. d, and for the Acc. with verbal adjectives and nouns, see § 98, Rem.

§ 90. C. Dative.

1. The dative represents an object as sharing or interested in the action, and hence stands in answer to the questions: *to whom? to what? for whom? for what? for whose advantage? for whose disadvantage? for what end?* It generally stands with verbs and adjectives where, in English, the prepositions *to* or *for* are used to govern the case, or where the relation involved is similar to that expressed by these prepositions. There belong here especially the following classes of words:

- a) Words expressing profit, aid, injury, as: *do, prosum, obsum, auxilior*, etc., (but not *juvo, adjuvo*, see § 89, 3), *utilis* (also with *ad* and Acc.), *inutilis* etc.;
- b) Pleasing, displeasing, favor and disfavor,

anger, friendship and hatred, as: *pluceo, displiceo*; *blandior, faveo, irascor, succenseo*; *amicus, inimicus* (which with some other adjectives, when considered as nouns, are sometimes found with the Gen. also), *carus, alienus*, etc.;

c) Commanding, obeying, serving, trusting, yielding, as: *imp̄ero, ausculto, pareo, obs̄equor, servio, morem gero, fido* (but see § 91, R. 15), *cedo* (but see § 91, 10. a).

d) Meeting, approaching, nearness, agreeing, union, community, likeness, comparison, superiority, and their opposites, as: *occurro, obviam eo, obvius, appropinquo*;—*propior, proximus, propius, proxime* (which also, like *prope*, are sometimes found with the Acc.);—*vicinus, finitimus*;—*congruens, congruenter, conveniens, convenienter, consentaneus*;—*consciens sum, respondeo, misceo*;—*communis, junctus, socius, alienus, similis, dissimilis, par, dispar, aequalis, superstes* (some of which, especially *similis* and *dissimilis* are found also with the Gen.);—*comp̄ono, confero, praefero, antefero, postpono, excello, praesto* (also Acc.);—chiefly in poetry, *idem, contendo, pugno, certo, disto, diversus*, and other words of ‘difference,’ ‘diversity,’ etc.;

e) Fitness, readiness, as: *aptus, accommodatus, idoneus, necessarius*, etc.; (very often also with *ad*, especially of things, also *alienus*, sometimes with *ab*), *promptus*, etc.

REM. 1. All transitive verbs may take together with the Acc. the Dat. of the *person* (or *thing*) who *shares in the action* (Dat. of the remote object).—But some verbs, as: *dono, adsp̄ergo, circumdo, exuo*, etc. take either the Dat. of the person and Acc. of the thing, or Acc. of the person and Abl. of the thing.

Do tibi donum. Epistolam tibi scribo. Non scholae, sed vitae discimus. Litterarum studium hominibus utilissimum est. Canis lupo similis est. Ratio omnibus hominibus communis est. Natūra corpus animo circumdedit. Deus animum circumdedit corpore.

REM. 2. The Dat. (mostly with the later writers,) often denotes

the person (or thing viewed as a person) in whose view or character or will, something is so. Hence the use of the Dat. of the personal pronouns of the *first* and *second* persons with but little apparent meaning, it being designed merely to indicate in a free and familiar manner the interest or participation of the speaker or the one addressed in the action (*Dativus ethicus*), as: *ecce tibi exortus est Isocrates* (lo, there arises Isocrates to thee).

REM. 3. The Dat. of the agent stands regularly with the gerund and the gerundive, and often with the passive (especially the Perf. Pass.), instead of *a* with the Abl. of the agent or author. But the Dat. retains in this case, as in others, something of its peculiar meaning, and hence represents the agent as at the same time sharing in the action, and not simply as the author.

REM. 4. Datives which seem to be used for the Gen. may always be referred to some of the usages of the dative. Oftenest, perhaps, to the Dat. of the advantage or disadvantage (after nouns), or to the dative of the haver (see No. 4) after verbs used in a sense nearly equivalent to the copula *esse*, as: *exitium pecori* (Dat. disadvantage).

2. The following verbs take the *dative* in Latin, while in English the corresponding verbs take the objective (Acc.) case: *nubo, parco, benedīco,—maledīco, supplico,—obtreco, studeo,—arrīdeo, invideo, persuadeo, medeor*. Most of these verbs also take the Dat. in the Pass. construction, for which see § 83, R. 1.

Venus nupsit Vulcano. Parce mihi. Ne infantibus quidem parcebatur (not even children were spared). *Benedicimus* (praise) *bonis, maledicimus* (censure) *malis*. *Donum tuum valde mihi arrisit* (please). *Probus invidet nemini. Mihi invidetur* (I am envied). *Omnibus amicis pro te libentissime supplicabo* (entreat). *Mali bonis obtreclare* (disparage) *solent*. *Nunquam tibi persuadebo. Mihi persuadetur* (I am persuaded). *Pueri litteris studere debent* (study). *Omnes homines libertati student* (strive after). *Philosophia medetur animis*.

3. The dative stands also with an *interjection*, as: *vae (hei) misero mihi!*

REM. 5. Many verbs by composition with prepositions, especially with the following: *ab, ad, ante, cum (con), de, ex, in, inter, ob, post, prae, pro, sub* and *super*, acquire a meaning which makes them take the dative. But most of these verbs, especially

those compounded with *ad*, *in* and *con*, are found also with the preposition repeated, followed by its case.

REM. 6. Some verbs in the *same* or *similar* sense take at one time the Dat. and at another the Acc., viz.: *adūlor*, *aemūlor*, *comūtor*, *antecēdo*, *anteō*, *praesto*, *praecurro*, *despēro*, *illūdo*, *insulto*, *incēdo*, *invādo*, *praestōlor* and *adjaceo*.—Others, again, take different cases, but in *different* senses, as: *cavēo* (Dat., Acc., or Abl. with *ab*), *respondeo* (Acc. and Dat., or *ad* with Acc.), *incumbo* (Dat., also Acc. with *ad* or *in*), *misceo* (Dat., or Acc. and Dat., or Acc. and Abl. of instr. or material), and with similar variations: *consūlo*, *prospicio*, *provideo*; *convenio*, *cupio*, *impōno*, *manēo*; *metūo*, *timeo*, *vereor*; *modēror*, *peto*, *recipio*, *vaco*. The difference of case with these verbs arises from the different points of view in which the writer contemplated the idea in different cases.

4. The dative stands with *est*, *sunt*, (*abest*, *deest*, 'have not'), to express the person or thing who has or possesses something. The thing possessed stands in the nominative as subject (Dat. of the *haver*).

Suus cuique mos est. Semper in civitate [ii], quibus opes nulae sunt, bonis invident. Multi mihi sunt libri. Hoc unum illi abfuit (defuit).

REM. 7. The dative of possession with *esse* differs from the genitive of possession with *esse* (§ 88, 8), in this: that with the Dat., the idea of possession is less emphatic, like our *have*, while with the Gen. it is represented as *absolute* and *necessary*.

REM. 8. In *nomen mihi est* (I have the name, am called), the name stands either in the *dative* or *nominative*, as: *nomen mihi est Carōlo* (*Carōlus*).

5. The dative of the end (in answer to the question: *for what end?*), to which besides, a dative of the person is commonly added, stands:

- a) With *sum*, which, in this case, is to be rendered *conduce to*, *serve for*;
- b) With *do*, *accipio*, *relinquo*, *deligo*, *constitūo*, *dico*, *mitto*, *venio*, *proficiscor*, *eo*, *habeo*, etc.; also with *do*, *duco*, *tribuo*, *verto* in the meaning: *to impute to*.

Bonum non potest esse cuiquam malo. Virtutes hominibus decōri gloriaeque sunt. Virtus sola neque datur dono, neque accipi-

tur. Pausaniās venit Atticis auxilio. Vitio mihi dant, quod mortem hominis necessarii graviter fero.

REM. 9. The Dat. of the person and the Dat. of the end are each sometimes wanting. Also, instead of the Dat. of the end, the Nom. or Acc. in apposition with the subject or object of the sentence, is often found, especially in the later writers, as: *missus est rector juveni (as a guide)*; or it is put in the Acc. with *ad* or *in*, as: *relicti ad praesidium.*

§ 91. D. Ablative.

The Abl. expresses the instrumental relation, and hence is used especially in the following cases:

1. To denote the means, instrument or material, in answer to the questions, *wherewith? whereby? whence? whereof?* (Abl. of *instrument* or *material*):

a) In general, in the ordinary instrumental relations, as: *oculis videmus; equo vehi; ludere pilā.*

REM. 1. When a person is employed as a means or instrument, the Acc. with *per* is generally used, as: *per tuum patrem miseria liberatus sum* (also by a periphrasis, as: *tui patris auxilio miseria liberatus sum*). The accompanying person (except sometimes in expressions relating to military affairs, where the accompanying army or force is in the Abl. without *cum*) is put in the Abl. with *cum*, as: *cum fratre ambulavi.*

REM. 2. With passive and intransitive verbs the personal agent or author is put in the Abl. with the preposition *ab*, as: *mundus a deo creatus est.* But with the passive participles: *natus, genitus, ortus* (poet. *satus, editus*), the father or mother (also *genere, loco, familia, etc.*) stand in the Abl. without *ab*.

b) With words which express the ideas of furnishing, adorning, endowing; enjoying; forming, instructing; being familiar with or accustomed to, as: *instruo, dono, orno, praeditus, etc.; delecto, oblecto, etc.; instruo, erudio, instituo, imbuo, etc.; assuefacio, assuesco, assuetus* (the Dat. with these three words is rarer and not so good). Also *afficio* (affects, fills) with the Abl. belongs here. *Natura oculos tenuissimis membranis vestivit. Pater filium litteris erudit.*

Scelerum exercitatione assuefactus erat. Summo gaudio afficior.

REM. 3. But *erudire*, in speaking of instruction in special arts, is constructed with *in* and the Abl., as: *erudire in jure civili*. So *exercere* or *se exercere aliqua re* or *in aliqua*.

- c) With *constare*, *continēri* (both of which, however, are often constructed with prepositions). With verbs of making and framing the material is generally governed by *ex*. *Animo* (or *ex animo*) *constamus et corpore*. *Honestas his virtutibus continetur*. *In qua continetur* *communitas*.
- d) With verbs of nourishing, sustaining, living, as: *alo*, *vivo*, etc., as: *Britanni lacte et carne vivunt*.
- e) With expressions of filling, abundance and want, as: *abundo*, *redundo*, *affluo*, *circumfluo*, *scateo*; *compleo*, *expleo*, *impleo*, *oppleo*, *repleo*, *suppleo*, *satiuro*, *satio*, *farcio*, *refercio*, *conspargo*, *respergo*, *cumūlo*, *onēro*, *obruo*; *augeo*, *locuplētō*; *egeo*, *indigeo*, *careo*; *plenus*, *fecundus*, *fertilis*, *dives*, *confertus*, *refertus*, *onustus*, *inops*, *inānis*, etc. *Germania abundat fluminibus*. *Miserum est, carere consuetudine amicorum*.

REM. 4. The following take the *Gen.* also, *egere* and especially *indigere*; *plenus* and *inanis* (both, more frequently than the Abl.), *refertus* and *complētus* (rarely and only of a person), *fertilis*, *inops* (see § 88, 7). Sometimes in poetry, but very rarely in prose, *impleo*, *compleo* and *abundo* take the *Gen.* after the analogy of the Greek.

REM. 5. *Augere*, also *macte* (from the obsolete verb *magere*, "to increase"), whether alone or connected with *esto*, *estote*, take the Abl., as: *macte virtute esto* (lit. "be increased on account of your virtue" = heaven bless thy virtue)!

- f) With *opus* (there is need of), with which the *thing needed* stands in the Abl., and the person needing something in the Dat., as: *duce nobis opus est* (we need a leader). But *opus est* (especially when the thing needed is expressed by a neuter adjective or pronoun) is often personal, in which case the

thing needed stands as subject in the Nom., and *est* varies to suit the number and person of the subject, as: *dux nobis opus est; duces nobis opus sunt; haec mihi opus sunt.*

REM. 6. When the thing needed is a verb, it is expressed: 1) Most commonly by the Acc. with the Infin. (instead of the Dat. with the Infin.), or when no person is expressed, by the simple Infin., as: *nihil opus est te hic sedere* (not *tibi*); 2) By the Abl. of the Perf. Pass. Part. both with and without a noun, as: *opus est amicis conventis* (for *amicos convenire*); 3) Sometimes by the Supine in *u*, as: *quod scitu opus est.*

REM. 7. Instead of *opus*, in writers both before and after the classical period, we find *usus*, which has the same constructions as *opus*, but often takes the Gen. instead of the Abl.

g) With the deponents: *utor, fruor, fungor, potior* and *vescor*, and their compounds, as: *multi deorum beneficio perverse utuntur.*

REM. 8. With expressions denoting the highest power, supreme authority, *potiri* takes the Gen., as in the common phrase *rerum potiri*; also, in other cases, as: *Alexander regni Persarum potitus est.*

REM. 9. These verbs, also, but rarely except in the early writers, take the Acc.; hence they form the gerundive, as: *utendus, fruendus, etc.*

h) Finally, with the verbs *pluere* (also with the Acc.), *sudare* and *manare* (poet. also with the Acc.) and the like, also with verbs denoting a sacrificial offering: *sacrificare, facere, immolare, litare* (all except *facere* with the Acc. also). *Sudare sanguine. Decemviri quinquaginta capris in foro sacrificaverunt.*

2. The ablative is used to express the measure or standard according to which something is measured, judged or done (Abl. of *reference*). Particularly:

a) With verbs of measuring, judging, concluding, determining, as: *metiri, ponderare, judicare, examinare, aestimare, finire, definire, describere, dirigere,*

terminare, etc., as : *studia nostra naturae regulā metiamur.*

REM. 10. The Abl. after these verbs is often found with a preposition, as : *ex opinione judicare, ponderare*, etc.—Here belong such ablatives as, *mea* or *alicujus opinione, sententia*, etc., which also are sometimes governed by *ex* or *de*.

- b) With the comparative, where that with which another thing is compared is put in the Abl. and generally placed before the comparative, as : *pater filio doctior est.* See comparative sentences, § 115.
- c) With expressions denoting comparison in likeness or unlikeness, superiority or inferiority, hence with comparatives and superlatives, the Abl. expresses that as to which, or in reference to which the comparison is made (Abl. of *respect* or *nearer definition*). *Epaminondae nemo Thebanus par fuit eloquentiā. Maximus natu. Natione Medus fuit.*

3. The ablative is used to express the measure or degree by which one action or quality exceeds or falls short of another (Abl. of *difference*).

- a) With comparatives and superlatives, also words containing the idea of a comparison, as : *malo, praesto, sup̄ero; ante, post.* Here belong especially the neuter adverbs : *multo* (by much, far), *parvo, paullo, nihilo, tanto, quanto, aliquanto*, etc. *Sol multis partibus major atque amplior est, quam terra. Homerus annis multis fuit ante Romulum.*
- b) With the verbs *abesse* and *distare*, also some other verbs, to denote the distance by which one object is separated from another, instead of the more common Acc. of distance (see § 89, 5). *Aesculapii templum quinque milibus passuum ab Epidauro distat.*

REM. 11. When the place from which anything is removed is not expressed, but is to be supplied from the context, the preposition *ab* is often added, as : *positis castris a milibus passuum quindecim.*

- c) With expressions of buying and selling, costing, hiring, exchanging, as: *emo*, *vendo*, *veneo*, *sto*, *consto*, *conduco*, *muto*, *permūto*, *commuto*, *venālis*, *carus*, etc., the price, and with *dignus*, *indignus* and *indignor*, that of which something is worthy or unworthy, stands in the Abl. (Abl. of price). *Hunc librum parvo pretio emi. Hic liber tribus obolis carus est. Veritas auro digna est.*

REM. 12. Here belong the ablatives: *magno* (for much, dear), *parvo* (for little, cheap), *plurimo*, *minimo*, *tanto*, *quanto*, *nihiilo*, *nonnihiilo* (sometimes with *pretio*, as: *magno pretio*), with verbs of buying and selling. Instead of the Abl. the Gen. of some of these and other similar words is sometimes used, but in Cicero only: *tanti*, *tantidem*, *quanti*, *pluris*, *minoris*, *maximi*, and these always without *pretii*, as: *maximi hunc librum emi*. In a very similar sense, also, the following words are used: *bene*, *melius*, *optime*, *male*, *pejus*, *peissime* *emere*, *vendere*. With verbs of valuing the Gen. is used, as: *aliquem* or *aliquid magni facio*, (only *aestimo* is occasionally found with *magno*). But the definite price is always in the Abl. (see 3, c).

4. The ablative is used to express the ground, occasion or cause of an action (*on what account? whereby? whence?*) It stands:

- a) In the common causal relations, as: *caeci avaritiā* (by avarice); *officia deserunt molitiā animi* (from, on account of); *prelio vicimus*.

REM. 13. The cause or ground is often expressed, also, by the prepositions *prae*, *per*, *ob*, *propter*, *de* with their cases.

- b) With expressions denoting an affection of the mind or state of the body, as: *laetor*, *exulto*, *gaudeo*, *doleo*, *delector*, *floreo*, *valeo*, *labōro*, *glorior*, *me jacto*; *ardeo*, *exardesco*, *flagro*; *laetus*, *molestus*, *anxius*, *superbus*, *contentus*; *aeger*, *fessus*, etc.; also in expressions denoting distinction, superiority, excellence, as: *excellō*, *praesto*, *sup̄cro*, *insignis*, *excellens*, etc. *Delicto dolere, correctione gaudere oportet. Parvo est natura contenta.*

REM. 14. The verbs *laetor*, *gaudeo*, *doleo*, *moereo*, *glorior*, *me jacto* are often found with *de* and the Abl., and instead of *me jacto aliqua re* or *de aliqua re*, we also find *jacto aliquid*. For the Acc. with some of these verbs, see § 89, 4. We also find the expressions *dolent mihi dentes*, *dolet mihi pes*, *laboro ex renibus*, etc.

- c) With *nitor* (I rest upon), *fido*, *confīdo*, *fretus*, *acquiesco*.
Salus hominum non veritate solum, sed etiam famā nitur. *Opulentiā fretus.*

REM. 15. *Acquiesco* oftener, and *nitor* quite often, take *in* with the Abl. In the sense *strive after something*, *nitor* takes the Acc. with *ad* or *in*; and as we find *nitor re* or *in re*, so also we find *stare re* and sometime *in re*, as: *stare iudicio suo*. *Fido* and *confido* quite as frequently take the Dat., and always when the object is a person. *Diffido* almost always takes the Dat.

- d) With verbs of perceiving or knowing, as: *cernor*, *sentio*, *cognosco*, *intelligo*, *scio*, etc., which, however, are sometimes constructed with prepositions, as *ex* or *in*.
Amicitiae caritate et amore cernuntur.

5. The ablative, generally having an adjective, pronoun or numeral agreeing with it, is used to express the way or manner in which something happens (*how?* Abl. of *manner*). *Urbs dolo capta est*. *Multa casu fiunt*.

6. The ablative of manner, always with an adjective, pronoun or numeral agreeing with it, signifies also, the feeling or state of mind, as well as the outward condition or circumstances, under which something takes place. *Id aequo animo fert civitas*. *Nulla est altercatio clamoribus unquam habita majoribus*. *Quid hoc populo obtineri potest?*

REM. 16. The preposition *cum* is often used with the Abl. of manner, even when it has an attributive agreeing with it, and almost always when it is without an attributive. But *dolo*, *fraude*, *casu*, *vi*, *ratione*, *via*, *ordine*, *modo*, *more*, *consuetudine*, *ritu*, *pedibus*, *navibus*, *jure*, *injuria*; *animo*, *mente*, *pacto*, *lege*, *conditione*, *consilio*, *corpore* (or an Abl. referring to any part of the body); also, *forti animo*, *hoc mente*, *nullo pacto (modo)*, *certa ratione*, etc., are used without *cum*, being little more than adverbs.

REM. 17. In a similar way the following ablatives joined to at-

tributives are used without *cum* in connection with verbs of going, coming, and the like: *copiis, exercitu, legione, legionibus, cohortibus, navibus*, as: *Caesar omnibus copiis ad Ilerdam proficiscitur.*

REM. 18. For the ablative of quality, see § 88, 9.

7. Finally, the ablative expresses the time and place of an action. The ablative here, as in other cases, retains its instrumental character, since the time and place, being the sphere and necessary condition of the action, appear, in a certain sense, as its cause. The Abl. of place expresses both the relation *where* and *whence*, as: *eodem loco stat* (where); *hostes urbe pulsi sunt* (whence). It is used as follows:

8. The ablative of place signifies first, the place in which something happens (*where?*). This, however, applies mostly to nouns qualified by *totus* and *omnis*, or *loco, statu, via, itinere* qualified by an adjective or pronoun, and the phrase *terrā marīque*. In most other designations of place (except names of cities and towns, see § 92), the preposition *in* is joined with the ablative. *Meliore loco res nostrae sunt. Eloquentia peregrinata totā Asiā est.*

REM. 19. So also with *se tenere* the ablative stands without *in*, as: *domo (castris, etc.) se tenere*. Also with verbs of motion, the place through which the motion is made is in the Abl. without *in*; it being conceived of as the instrument, as: *amnem vado* (at, by a ford) *trajecit*; but sometimes it is in the Acc. with *per*. In like manner we find the ablatives *tecto, domo, civitate, urbe, moenibus, mensa*, and the like, used with *accipere* and *recipere*, and *animo* with *pendere, angi, anzius, moveri (commoveri)*, and the like. In poetry the ablative of place is used more extensively.

9. The ablative of place, in the second place, expresses the place or object from which something is separated or freed (Abl. of *separation*). It is used:

- a) With expressions of removing and separation (of which the transitive verbs take also an Acc. with the Abl.), as: *moveo, pello, cedo, arceo, prohibeo*, and many verbs compounded with *ab, ex* and *de*, as: *abstineo, de-*

sisto, decēdo, dejicio, deturbo, excēdo, exclūdo, exturbo, etc.
Caesar castra loco movit. Milites itinere destiterunt.

REM. 20. The prepositions *ab, ex, de* are often joined with ablatives of this kind, especially when they designate persons. The poets and later writers use this ablative also with *absterreo, deterreo, secerno, sepāro*, and some verbs compounded with *dis*.

b) With expressions of freeing, clearing, depriving (of which the transitive verbs take also an Acc.), as: *libēro, solvo, absolvo, exsolvo, levo, laxo, relaxo, expedio, exonēro, purgo, vaco, etc.*;—*privo, orbo, spolio, nudo, exuo, fraudo, etc.*;—*liber, vacuus, orbus, nudus, immūnis, aliēnus, etc.*

REM. 21. The Abl. with *libero, vaco, vacuus, laxo, relaxo, expedio, absolvo*, is sometimes governed by *ab*; also with *liber* and *alienus*, especially when it designates a person. In the sense, "injurious," *alienus* sometimes takes the Dat., and occasionally the Gen.

REM. 22. The poets sometimes, after the Greek, use the Gen. with verbs of removing, separating, freeing, as: *desino querelarum, desisto pugnae, purus sceleris, etc.*

10. The local relation is extended to the time in which anything happens. The *where* becomes a *when*. Hence the Abl. is used in answer to the question *when?* to express the time at or within which an action happens. Epaminondas *die uno* Graeciam liberavit. Roscius Romam *multis annis* non venit. So *tempore, memoria, nocte, vere; ludis* (at the games), *comitiis, bello* (as: *secundo bello Punico*, "in the time of, etc."); *initio, principio* (also with *in*), *pace, etc.*

REM. 23. The adding of *in* to the Abl. is necessary, when the action is represented as repeated within a certain time, as: *bis in die* satūrum fieri. *In* is often used with the Abl. also (or *intra* with the Acc.), for the sake of expressing the time with more emphasis. In expressing the periods of life, too, and similar distinctions of time, *in* is used, as: *in pueritia, in omni vita, in omni puncto* temporis, etc. But when only a portion of a period of life is expressed, by the addition of an adjective to the noun denoting the period, the preposition is omitted, as: *extrema pueritia*.

REM. 24. The simple ablatives: *bello*, *proelio*, *pace* mean, "at the time of the war," "battle," "peace," but when preceded by *in* (*in bello*, etc.), they are used in their literal sense, to denote being in a state of war, peace, etc., or else "during the war," etc. And when joined with an attributive, the simple Abl. is also used in this latter sense. But *in* with the ablative of *tempus*, *tempestas*, *aetas*, *dies* accompanied by an attributive, is used to express some circumstance or peculiarity of the time, as: *in tali tempore* (in so peculiar a time); *in tempore* (also simply *tempore*), "at the proper time."

REM. 25. Time how long (which is generally in the Acc., see § 89, 5.) differs from time within which, as *during* does from *within*.

11. The ablative stands with *ante* and *post* to express the length of time before or after some point of time defined by the connection. *Ante* and *post* are then used as adverbs if they have no case after them, but if they have, they govern it in the Acc. Numa Pompilius *annis permultis ante* fuit, quam Pythagoras. Laelius sermonem de amicitia habuit *paucis diebus post* mortem Africāni.

REM. 26. When that before or after which something happens is expressed, *ante* and *post* follow the Abl., but when it is to be supplied by the mind, and the time before or after is expressed by a noun and adjective, they may stand either after them both or between them, as: *tribus annis ante (post)*, or *tribus ante (post) annis*. But simple extent of time here, as in other cases, is expressed by the accusative.

REM. 27. The point of past time before or after which something has happened may also be expressed by a subordinate sentence with *quam*. In this case, in designating the year of the time before or after, whether expressed by the Abl. and *antequam (postquam)*, or by *per* and the Acc. with *quam*, the ordinal numbers were used, hence: *tertio anno ante (post) quam* decesserat, or: *ante (post) tertium annum, quam* decesserat. So also *pridie* and *postridie quam* id factum est. Instead of *postquam* we sometimes find a relative pronoun or the conjunction *quum*, as: *paucis diebus, quibus (quum)* id factum est (a few days after, etc.).

REM. 28. For *ante*, *post*, *abhinc* with the Acc. of the time before or after the present, see § 89, R. 8. But occasionally, contrary to the prevailing usage, the Abl. is used when speaking of time before or after the present, and the Acc. in

speaking of time before or after a time defined in the context.

REM. 29. The relations of time, *since when? about what time?* are expressed, the first by *ab*, *ex* and *de*, the last by *ad*, *circa*, *sub* with the Acc., or by the Abl. with the adverb *fere*; *till when?* is expressed by *ad* or *in* with the Acc.

§ 92. Construction of the Names of Cities.

1. The names of *cities* (*towns, villages, and small islands, very rarely of countries*) of the *first* and *second Dec. Sing.* stand, in answer to the question *where?* in the *genitive*; but the names of cities of the *third Dec.* and of the *Plur.* of the *first* and *second Dec.* in the *ablative*, without *in*. In answer to the question, *whither?* they all stand in the *accusative*, and in answer to the question, *whence?* in the *ablative*, in each case without a preposition.

Ut *Romae* consules, sic *Carthagine* quotannis bini reges creabantur. Talis *Romae* Fabricius, qualis Aristides *Athenis* fuit. Pompeius hiemare *Dyrrachii* et *Apolloniae* constituerat. *Delphis* Apollinis oraculum fuit. Cono plurimum *Cypri* vixit, Iphicrâtes in *Thracia*, Timothêus *Lesbi*. Curius primus *Romam* elephântos quattuor duxit. Pompeius *Luceriâ* proficiscitur *Canusium* atque inde *Brundisium*. Lycurgus *Cretam* profectus est ibique perpetuum exsilium egit. Aeschines cessit *Athenis* et se *Rhodum* contulit. Consul *Româ* *Athenas* profectus est.

REM. 1. *Even to, as far as, of countries,* is expressed by *usque ad* and the Acc., but of *cities,* by *usque* and the Acc. without *ad*, as: *usque ad Aegyptum*, or *usque Romam* profectus sum.—In the question *whence?* the preposition *ab* is sometimes added to the Abl., especially for giving greater perspicuity, as: *ab Athenis* proficisci in animo habebam. When it is to be expressed that something happened on the way out from a place, *ab* is invariably used, as: *jam a Brundusio* bellum gerebat.—*Ad* is used with the Acc. when an *approach to* (towards) a city is to be expressed. Also, *ab* and *ad* are used when a removal from one place to another is to be expressed emphatically, as: *ab Athenis ad Lacedaemônem*.

REM. 2. When an adjective or adjective pronoun belongs to the name of a city of the *first* or *second Dec. Sing.*, in the question *where?* the attributive and noun are both in the Abl. (instead of the Gen.) without a preposition, as: *Româ ipsâ, totâ Româ*. But

this construction is rare, since *apposition* is generally used instead of it (see No. 2.).

REM. 3. *Domus* and *rus* have the same construction as the names of cities: *domi* (at home), *domi meae, tuae, suae, nostrae, vestrae, alienae* (at my house, etc.), *domum* (to the house), *domo* (from the house, home);—*ruri* (rarely *rure*), in the country, *rus* (into, to, the country), *rure* (from the country). Besides, *humi* (on the ground), *domi militiaeque* or *domi bellique* (at home and abroad, in peace and in war).

2. The words in *apposition* with the names of cities, as: *urbs, oppidum, caput* (chief city), in answer to the question *where?* stand in the *ablative*; in answer to the question *whither?* in the *accusative*; in answer to the question *whence?* in the *ablative*, in each of the three cases, mostly without the preposition (*in, ab, ex*).

Archias poëta *Antiochiæ* natus est, *celebri* quondam *urbe* et *copiosa*. Cicero profectus est *Athenas, urbem celeberrimam*. Demaratus *Corintho, urbe amplissima, Tarquinius* fugit.

REM. 4. But when the words *urbs, oppidum* stand before the name of the city, we find: *in urbe, in oppido* with the name of the city *after* it in the *Abl.* (sometimes in the *Gen.*), as: *in oppido Cizio; in oppido Athenis; in oppido Antiochiæ*. So in the *Acc.* when an *adjective* agrees with the name of the town, or the words *urbs, oppidum* stand with it *without an adjective*, as: *ad doctas Athenas; in oppidum Cirtam*. So also with *ab* and *ex*, as: *ab (ex) urbe Roma*.

§ 93. Use of the Prepositions.

1. *Ab* and *de* (from, by, of) differ thus: 1) of place, *ab* means *away from* a place, *de, down from, or away from*.—2) *ab* is used with an active object, and hence stands with the *agent* or *doer* after passive verbs; *de*, on the contrary, is used with a passive object.—*Ex* properly means *out of*, and hence *from, out from, down from, immediately after, according to*.

Milites *ab urbe* profecti sunt. Lucretius *de muro* se dejecit. *De foro* cives discesserunt (away from the forum). *Multae fabulae de Hercule a poetis* fictae sunt (many fables have been invent-

ed concerning Hercules by the poets). *Multa de te a fratre tuo audivi* (I have heard much of thee from thy brother). *Vapores a sole ex aquis excitantur*.

2. *Circum* is used only of place (not of time), as: *terras circum axem convertit*. *Circa* is not so strong as *circum*, and means *about* (not *all around*).

3. The verbs: *pono, loco, collōco, constituo, defīgo*, and some others, generally take *in* with the ablative, where the accusative would seem to be required, since they imply motion.—*Super* and *subter* generally take the *accusative* (rarely the ablative).

REM. 1. Certain other prepositions which are liable to be confounded may be briefly distinguished as follows: 1) *ad* properly denotes an aim: *to, up to, for*; *apud* (particularly of persons) the scene or sphere within which something is: *with, among, at, in*; 2) *juxta* (beside, by) without anything intervening; *prope* (near, near by); 3) *propter* (literally: *near by*), means figuratively, *on account of*, to express an actual ground or reason of something; *ob* (literally: *before*), *on account of*, to express a conceived cause, or a cause in the view of the mind, whether actual or not; 4) *ante* (before), opposed to behind; *coram* (before), in the presence of; *prae* (before), openly, ostentatiously, hence *in comparison with*, also of a hindering cause (on account of); *pro* (before), in front of, figuratively, *for, according to*; 5) *adversus* (towards, against, over against), in both a friendly and a hostile sense; *contra* (over against, contrary to); 6) *trans* (“over,” “beyond” something conceived of as an obstacle); *ultra* (“beyond” something as a mere mathematical point or line); 7) *extra* (without), in both senses of “without”; *praeter* (lit. *by before*), beyond, contrary to, except.

REM. 2. The prepositions *ad, supra* and *circa* are often mere adverbs before numerals, having no influence upon their case, as: *occisis ad hominum milibus quattuor*; *supra octo milia hominum occisa*. In some instances the numeral stands in the Acc. after these prepositions, but is followed by a predicate as though it was in the Nom., as: *supra septingentos capti*; *circa quingentos virores ceciderunt*.

CHAPTER IV.

Pronouns, Numerals and Participials in both the Attributive and Objective Relations.

§ 94. *Of the use of the Pronoun.*

1. The personal pronouns in the Nom.: *ego, tu, nos, vos* are expressed with their verb, only when a particular stress rests upon them, hence, especially in contrasts. The possessive pronouns, also: *meus, tuus*, etc. are used only in this case, or for the sake of perspicuity.

Ego fleo, tu rides. Meus frater diligens est, tuus piger. But: Frater me amat (not, frater meus me amat).

2. The genitives *nostri* and *vestri*, like *mei, tui, sui*, are objective (not possessive), but *nostrum* and *vestrum* are used partitively.

Memoria *nostri* (of us, terminating upon us). Memor sum *vestri*. Quis *nostrum* haec dixit? Nemo *vestrum* sua officia explevit. Besides, we should distinguish: *pars nostri, vestri* (a part of us, you = of our, your being or nature), e. g. *animus est pars nostri*, from: *pars nostrum, vestrum* (a part of us).

3. The pronouns *sui, sibi, se; suus, a, um*, are used when an object (person or thing) stands in the relation of opposition to itself, or as the object of its own action, thought or reference.

Omnia animalia se diligunt. Haec oratio sibi repugnat. Alexander, quum interemisset Clitum, familiarem suum, vix a se manus abstinuit. Hannibalem sui cives e civitate ejecerunt. Dux cum militibus suis fugit. Oravi amicum, ut sibi consuleret.

REM. 1. In the first and second persons, of course, the oblique cases of the pronouns, *ego, tu; meus, a, um; tuus, a, um; noster, vester*, etc. must be used instead of *sui*.

4. When these reflexive pronouns stand as the subject of an Infin., or with a Part., or in dependent clauses and refer to the subject of the leading clause, they may generally be translated

into English by, *he, she, it, to him, to her, to it, him, her, it, they, them, to them*. But *ipse*, in this case, is often used instead of *sui*, especially where the reflexive might be referred to the subject of the subordinate clause.

Animus sentit, *se sua vi moveri* (the soul is conscious, that it is moved by its own power). Caesar exercitu per *se* comparato rempublicam liberavit (with an army collected by *him*). Caesar milites adhortatus est, ut *se* sequerentur (that they should follow *him*).

5. The oblique cases of *is, ea, id*, on the contrary, are used when an object is *not* opposed to *itself* (does not seem to think, speak or act upon or about itself), but to *another object*; *ejus, eorum, and earum*, in this case, are translated into English by *his, her, their*.

Pater *ei* ignovit (*him*, e. g. his son, or *her*, e. g. his daughter; but: pater *sibi* ignovit, *himself*). Pater semper *ejus* memor erit (*his*, e. g. friends). Pater *eum* valde diligit. Mater *eam* valde amat. Dux et milites *ejus* fugerunt (and *his* soldiers; but: dux cum militibus *suis* fugit). Caesar fortissimus fuit: *ejus* facta admiramur (*his* deeds). Hostes multas urbes exciderunt, *earumque* incolas in servitutem abduxerunt (and *their* inhabitants).

REM. 2. Of *hic, iste* and *ille*, the first is used in referring to something belonging to or in some way connected with the speaker, the second of something pertaining to the person addressed, and the third to something remote from the speaker, and thus forms a contrast with *hic*, which always expresses that which is nearer to the speaker, either in thought, feeling or position, than *ille*. Besides its appropriate reference to what pertains to the second person, *iste* is also used in referring to something previously mentioned with emphasis, and often with contempt.

6. *Idem* (the same, the very same, the aforesaid), is used when a new action or quality is ascribed to a subject of which something has already been asserted (or is about to be asserted). When the two qualities ascribed to the subject are in keeping with each other, *idem* may often be translated by, 'also,' 'in like manner,' 'likewise,' etc., but when at variance with each other, by, 'yet,' 'still,' etc.

Quicquid honestum est, *idem* est (is also) utile. Fuerunt quidam, qui *iidem* ornate ac graviter, *iidem* versute et subtiliter dicerent (not only—but also). Multi, qui propter gloriae cupiditatem vulnera exceperunt fortiter et tulerunt, *iidem* ommissa contentione dolorem morbi ferre non possunt (*yet*). *Eodem loco* res est, quasi ea pecunia legata non esset.

7. The pronoun *ipse, a, um* (self) often stands with the personal pronouns, either in the same case with the subject, when the subject is contrasted with other subjects, or in the same case as the object, when the object is contrasted with other objects.

Ego *me ipse* vitupero (*I* and not another). Ego *me ipsum* vitupero (*myself* and not another). Saepe ii homines, qui *sibi ipsis* maxime placent, aliis maxime displicent. De *me ipse* loquor. De *me ipso* loquor. Memet ipsum (always in the same case as the pronoun with *met*) consolor.

8. The genitives *ipsius, ipsorum* and *ipsarum*, which often stand in connection with the possessive pronouns, are to be translated into English by *own*.

Meus ipsius pater (my *own* father). *Mea ipsius* mater (my *own* mother). *Meum ipsius* consilium (my *own* counsel). *Tuus ipsius* frater. Dux *suā ipsius* culpā victus est. *Noster ipsorum* pater. *Vestra ipsorum* mater. Duces *suā ipsorum* culpā victi sunt. *Sorores mea suā ipsarum* voluntate domi manent.

9. Besides what was said of the difference in usage between the interrogatives *quis? quid?* and *qui? quae? quod?* in § 30, Rem. 3, it should be here stated, that, when *quis* has a noun with it, the noun is to be regarded as in *apposition* with it; that *quis* inquires barely after the *name* of the person or thing (what?), *qui* after its nature (what sort of?), as: *quis philosophus?* (*what philosopher?*) *qui philosophus?* (*what sort of a philosopher?*).

REM. 3. For the distinction between the double forms of the indefinite pronouns *quis, qua, quid, qui, quae, quod*, as well as for the usage of *quisquam, quispiam; ecquis* and *quidam*, etc., see § 31.

10. The indefinite pronoun *quis (qui), qua (quae), quid (quod)*, *some one, one*, is less emphatic than *aliquis*, etc., and

stands most commonly after *si, nisi, ne, num quum, qui, quae, quod, ut, quo* or *quanto* (*the*, with the comparative).

Si quis de immortalitate animorum dubitat, insanus est. Vide, ne quem laedas. Num quis dubitat hac de re? Quo (quanto) quis sapientior est, eo (tanto) modestior est.

11. When *quisque* is connected with the pronouns *sui, sibi, se, suos*, it stands immediately after them.

Trahit sua quemque voluptas. Minime sibi quisque notus est.

12. When *quisque* stands after superlatives, it may be translated by *precisely the, the very*, and when it stands after ordinal numbers, by *each, every*.

Sapientissimus quisque virtutem maxime amat (precisely the wisest). Quarto quoque anno (every fourth year).

13. *Uterque* (each of two, both) in connection with a noun, takes the same gender, number and case as the noun; but when *uterque* is connected with a pronoun, this pronoun stands in the genitive. In both cases the predicate is in the singular.

Uterque dux clarus fuit (both leaders were renowned). Uterque eorum clarus fuit (both these were renowned). Uterque nostrum, vestrum (we both, you both). Quorum uterque (both of whom).

REM. 4. The plural of *uterque* (also of *uter, alter, neuter*, No. 14) is used when *two parties* are spoken of, to *both*, or at least, *one* of which, *several belong*, or when it stands in connection with nouns used only in the plural, as: *utrique duces* (the generals, of which there are several on both sides). *Utrique, Caesar et hostes. Utrāque castra* (both camps).

14. *Uter, alter, neuter* are used when the discourse is of only two; *quis, alius, nullus*, on the contrary, when the discourse is of several.

REM. 5. For the usage of *nemo, nullus* and *ullus*, see § 31. R. 1.

Uter fratrum ad te venit (which of the two brothers)? Uter vestrum hoc dixit (which of you two)? Duo sunt fratres: alter (the one) litteris operam dat; alter (the other) miles est. Neu-

ter nostrum (neither of us *two*). When a comparison occurs with *uter*, *alter*, *neuter*, the comparative is used where we sometimes use the superlative, as: *uter fortior est? which of the two is the bravest?*

15. The phrases, *alius aliud*, *alius aliter*, etc., are translated: *the one this, the other that; the one in this way, the other in that.*

Alii aliud probant. Alii aliter vivunt.

REM. 6. The indefinite pronouns, *one*, *they*, *we* are expressed in Latin:

- a) By the third Pers. Plur. Act., as: *dicunt, ferunt, tradunt*;
- b) By the third Pers. Sing. Pass., as: *narratur; bene vivitur*;
- c) By the *personal* Pass., as: *amor, one loves me, amaris, one loves thee, sapientes beati existimantur, we account the wise happy*;
- d) By the first Pers. Plur. Act. (in this case the speaker must be included under the *one*, *we*), as: *viro sapienti libenter paremus*;
- e) By the second Pers. Sing. Act., particularly of the Subj., as: *credas* (one may believe).

§ 95. *Of the Numeral.*

1. The plural of *unus*, *a*, *um* is used: 1) in the meaning, *some, only, alone, the same*, and in connection with *alteri* (the one—the other); 2) With nouns used only in the plural, as: *unae litterae*, etc. In other cases it is in the singular, even when it forms a part of a compound numeral agreeing with a plural noun, as: *unus et viginti homines*.

2. *Mille* (see § 33, Rem. 4) is generally an indeclinable adjective, and hence, with few exceptions, is not followed by a noun in the Gen.; but *milia* (unless followed by a smaller numeral, which stands immediately before the Nom. and agrees with it,) is always followed by the partitive Gen. of the noun it refers to. The poets and the later prose writers, also, use *mille* with adverbial numerals in expressing several thousands of anything, as: *bis (ter, quater) mille homines, 2000 (3000, 4000)*.

3. The *distributives*, which answer the question *how many each?* or *how many at a time?* are used when one wishes to

express, *that a number is divided equally among several objects, or a certain number of times.*

Pater filiis senos libros dat (six books apiece, i. e. the father gives each of his sons six books; hence, if we suppose three sons, the father divides eighteen books into three equal parts). *Sex fossae, quinos pedes altae, ducebantur* (each five feet deep).

4. Besides, the distributives are used for the *cardinal* numbers with nouns which have only the plural (and by the poets and later writers, occasionally in other cases), as: *bina castra, two camps*. For *singuli, ae, a*, in this case, *uni, ae, a* is used, as: *una castra, one camp, unae nuptiae, one wedding, unae litterae, one letter, trina castra, three camps* (but: *terna castra, three camps apiece*). *Bini* is sometimes used also to denote *a pair*, instead of *gemi*.

REMARK. The distributives are generally used for the cardinal numbers with *milia*, especially to express *a million or millions*, as: *decies centena milia, vicies centena milia, tricies centena milia, centies centena milia, 1, 2, 3, 10 millions*. In this case, in reckoning money, all but the numeral adverb is generally omitted, as: *decies sestertium* (for: *decies centena milia sestertium*), *a million sesterces*. So in expressing *thousands*, *milia* is generally omitted and instead of *sestertium* (Gen. Plur. Masc.) the neuter form *sestertia* is used.

§ 96. *The Infinitive.*

1. The infinitive is properly a neuter noun expressing the abstract action or state of its verb. Hence it occasionally has a neuter adjective or pronoun agreeing with it as an attributive. Still it governs the same case as its verb. It is used only in the nominative and accusative, as subject or object, thus:

- a) As subject, as: *dulce et decorum est pro patria mori*;
- b) As object, i. e. as that which limits or completes the idea, or that which expresses the aim or result, after verbs (also many nouns, adjectives and pronouns of a similar import) of willing and not willing, beginning, ceasing, being able, being de-

terminated, being accustomed, etc. Especially with the following list of verbs :

Volo, nolo, malo, cupio, concupisco, gestio (*ardeo, aspernor* poetic), *audeo* (*sustineo* poet.), *studeo* (*quaero* poet.), *conor, tento, nitor, contendo, intendo, negligo, non curo, omitto, intermitto, supersedeo* (*parco* and *fugio* poet.), *taedet, piget, poenitet* ;—*incipio, coepi, instituo, desino, desisto, maturo, festino, propero, accelero, cunctor, dubito, vercor* (*metuo* and *timeo* poet.), *recuso* (*abnuo* poet.), *pergo, persevero* ;—*statuo, constituo, decerno, cogito, agito* (*mente*), *aggredior, ingredior, adior* (*ordior* poet.), *memini, recordor, obliviscor, paro, paratus sum, animum induco, in animo est, in animo habeo, consilium est, consilium capio, meditor, molior, mihi est propositum, placet* (*contentus sum* poet.) ; *soleo* (*amo* poet.), *consuesco, adsuesco, consuetus, assuetus sum, assuefaceo, prohibeo* ;—*doceo, disco* ;—*possum, queo, nequeo* (*valeo* poet.), *licet, libet, facile, difficile est, scio, nescio* ;—*debeo, cogor, oportet, necesse est, opus est, decet, convenit, juvat* (*gaudeo, delector* poetic).

REM. 1. Some of the above verbs take the Acc. with the Infin. (see § 106). *Doceo, jubeo, veto, sino, cogo, moneo, hortor, impedio, prohibeo*, etc., take an Acc. of the person together with the Infin., as : *docebo eum posthac tacere*.

REM. 2. Instead of the Fut. Infin. formed from the Fut. Part. of any verb with *esse, fore* or *futurum esse* followed by *ut* and the Subj. of that verb is often used, as : *spero fore ut contingat id nobis*.

REM. 3. In the poets and later prose writers (commencing with Livy) the Infin. is used with much greater latitude than in the writers of the classical period ; conforming almost wholly to its use in Greek. Accordingly it is often employed by them (especially after verbs of motion) to express the aim or intention, as : *descendo promere vina*.

REM. 4. For the Infin. with *coepi* and *desino*, see § 76, R. 3.—For the Acc. with the Infin., see § 106.

2. In animated description the Latin often uses the Infin. Pres. for the finite verb (*historical* Infin.), as : *multum ipse pugnare, saepe hostem ferire*.

§ 97. *The Supine.*

1. The Supine in *um* stands with verbs of going, coming, sending, calling, leading, and generally, such as imply motion (but *festino, propero, accelero, maturo* only with the Infin. § 96), in order to express the end or object of these verbs, as: in urbem migravi *habitatum*.

2. The Supine in *u* stands: a) as a nearer definition after adjectives expressing a physical, mental or moral feeling; ease, difficulty, incredibility, as: *juvundus, injuvundus, molestus, suavis, dulcis, acerbus, mollis, durus, turpis, foedus, honestus, bonus, nefarius, horrendus, crudēlis* (*dignus, indignus* rare, commonly with *qui* and the Subj.), etc.; *facilis, difficilis, incredibilis*, etc.; b) with *fas est, nefas est, opus est*, as: *pira dulcia sunt gustatu; fas est dictu*.

REMARK. Instead of the Supine in *u* we often find the following constructions: 1) The Infin. Act. as subject of the sentence, especially with *facile, difficile est*; 2) an adverb with a finite verb, particularly with *facile, difficulter*; 3) the gerund with *ad*; 4) the verbal noun in *io*.

§ 98. *The Gerund.*

1. The gerund in the Nom. in connection with *est*, as: *scribendum est*, (lit. 'there is a writing'), may be translated into English by: *it is to be* (written) or: *one must, one should* (write). The *person* which *must* or *should* do something is put in the *dative* (but in the Abl. with *ab* when the *object* is in the dative). Hence we may translate it into English by: *I, thou, he, she, it must, should* (write), *we must, should* (write), etc.

2. The gerund (even in the Nom. with *est*) has an active meaning, and like the infinitive, takes the same case as its verb. But instead of the gerund with an object in the *accusative*, the *gerundive* is used. See § 99, 1.

Obtemperandum est virtutis praeceptis. Sui cuique iudicio utendum est (each one must use his own judgment).

3. The remaining cases of the gerund supply the cases of the infinitive. Still the Acc. of the gerund is used only in connection with a *preposition*. The gerund being of the nature of a noun is governed in its different cases in the same manner as a noun.

Nom. *Natare* est utile (swimming is useful).

Gen. *Natandi* ars utilis est (the art of swimming is useful). *Natandi* sum peritus (I am skilled in swimming).

Dat. *Natando* homo aptus est (man is fitted for swimming).

Acc. *Natare* disco (I learn to swim, or swimming); but: *ad natandum* homo aptus est (is fitted for swimming, or: to swim). *Inter natandum* (while swimming); *ob natandum* (on account of swimming).

Abl. *Natando* corporis vires exercentur (by swimming). *In natando* (in swimming), *a natando* (by swimming), *ex natando*, *de natando*.

4. The gerund in the oblique cases also, like the Infin., takes the same case as its verb. Still, instead of the gerund in the Dat. and Acc. with an object in the *accusative*, the *gerundive* is used. See § 99, 1.

Ars pueros bene educandi difficilis est. *Pauci idonei sunt ad alii imperandum*.

REMARK. The verbal adjective in *bundus* sometimes takes an Acc., like the Ger., and the verbal noun in *io*, the same case as the verb from which it is derived.

§ 99. Gerundive.

1. When the gerund would take an object in the *accusative*, the *gerundive* (or Fut. Pass. Part.) is *commonly* used instead of the gerund in the Gen. and Abl., and *always* in the Nom., Dat. and accusative. The *agent or doer*, as with the gerund, stands in the *dative*.

2. The change of the construction of the gerund into that of the gerundive takes place in the following manner:

- a) The noun which would stand in the Acc. with the gerund, is put in *the same case in which the gerund* stands;
- b) The gerund is changed into the gerundive;

- c) But the gerundive is put in the *same case, number and gender* as the noun.

E. g. If in the phrase : *ars pueros educandi*, one would use the gerundive instead of the gerund, he must : a) put the Acc. *pueros* in the case of the gerund *educandi*, hence in the Gen. : *puerorum* (*ars puerorum*) ; b) he must then change the gerund *educandi* into the gerundive *educandus, a, um* ; c) finally, must put this gerundive in the same gender, number and case as *puerorum*, hence *educandorum*.

Nom.	Nobis bene <i>educandum</i> est <i>pueros</i> , must be changed into :	<i>Pueri</i> nobis bene <i>educandi</i> sunt.
Gen.	<i>Ars civitatem gubernandi</i> est difficillima ; for which commonly :	<i>Ars civitatis gubernandae</i> est difficillima.
Dat.	<i>Asinus idoneus</i> est <i>onera portando</i> , must be changed into :	<i>Asinus idoneus</i> est <i>oneribus portandis</i> .
Acc.	<i>Puer aptus</i> est ad <i>litteras tractandum</i> , must be changed into :	<i>Puer aptus</i> est ad <i>litteras tractandas</i> .
Abl.	<i>Litteras tractando</i> ingenium acuitur, for which commonly :	<i>Litteris tractandis</i> ingenium acuitur.

REM. 1. But the gerund in the Gen., Dat. and Abl. is not changed into the gerundive when the object in the Acc. is the *neuter* of an *adjective* or *pronoun*, as : *studium vera cognoscendi* (not *verorum cognoscendorum*) ; *cupidus sum hoc audiendi* (not *hujus audiendi*).

3. The gerundive stands also with verbs signifying *to take, to give, care, attend to, give up, cause* and the like, in order to express an *intention* or *end*.

Urbs a duce militibus diripienda data est (for plundering). *Urbem dux militibus diripiendam dedit*. *Perfugam Fabricius reducendum curavit* (caused to be led back).

REM. 2. The gerundive is often omitted for the sake of brevity, as : *equites imperat civitatibus* (i. e. *cogendos* : *equites cogendos*).

REM. 3. The Dat. of the gerundive with a noun, sometimes even the Gen. (especially by Livy), is often used to denote *fitness* or *purpose*.

§ 100. *The Participle.*

1. The participle, which, like the Infin., depends for its time upon the accompanying verb, like that, also, governs the same case as its verb, as: *epistolam scribens*; *hostibus parcens*; and like an adjective, agrees in gender, number and case with its noun, as: *puer laudatus*; *puella laudata*.

2. The participle is used as follows:

- a) Wholly as an *adjective*, as: *rosa florens pulchra est* (the blooming rose). *Rosa est florens* (the rose is blooming).
- b) As a limitation of a verb, and agreeing with its object when it has any: 1) The Pres. Act. Part. with verbs of seeing and hearing, as: *video puerum currentem*; 2) The Perf. Pass. Part. with *habeo*, *teneo*, *possideo*, and in poetry and the later prose, *do*, *reddo*, *curro*, *aliquid missum facio*, often forming a sort of periphrasis with the verb, as: *locum nobilitas praesidiis firmatum tenebat*; *habeo perspectum* (I have perceived); *sic stratas legiones dabo* (thus I will prostrate the legions); 3) The Perf. Pass. Part. with *opus est*, as: *opus fuit Hirto convento*; *maturato opus est*;
- c) Instead of the relative *who*, *which* with some form of the *finite verb*, as: *cives acriter cum hostibus dimicabant urbem oppugnantibus* (*who* were assaulting the city);
- d) Instead of the conjunctions, *while*, *as*, *after*, *when*, *if*, *because*, *since*, *although* with the *finite verb*, as: *cogitantes coelestia, haec nostra ut exigua et minima contemnimus* (*when* we think upon heavenly things). *Hostes, amnem transgressi, castra muniverunt* (*after* they had passed over the river).

REM. 1. The Perf. Pass. Part. agreeing with a case of a noun, dependent on another noun or preposition, may generally be translated by an abstract noun of corresponding meaning, as: *ab urbe condita* (from the *founding* of the city).

3. The Part. Fut. Act. is often used in order to express a *design* or *purpose*, and in this case is to be rendered by *that*, *in*

order that with the finite verb, or by *in order to* with the infinitive.

Ingens hominum multitudo in urbem convēnit ludos publicos spectatura.

4. There are two kinds of *participial construction* in Latin : the one is called the *subordinate participial construction*, the other, the *independent participial construction*, or *ablative absolute*. They express, as the particles employed in their translation indicate, the relations of *time, cause, motive or design, condition, concession, way and manner*. Since we generally translate the participle into English by a subordinate clause, the difference between these two constructions may be explained as follows :

a) The *subordinate participial construction* is used, where (as expressed in English) the subordinate clause has no subject of its own, but has for its subject either the subject or object of the principal clause. In this case, the participle agrees in gender, number and case with this subject or object.

Sol oriens pellit noctem (when the sun rises, it (i. e. the sun) chases away the night). *Aristides, patriā pulsus, Lacedaemōnem fugit* (as Aristides had been expelled from his country, he (Aristides) fled to Lacedemon). *Hostes, victoriam adepti, in castra se receperunt* (after the enemy had obtained the victory, they (the enemy) returned to the camp). *Caesar hostes fugatos persecutus est, after the enemy had been put to flight, Caesar pursued them* (the enemy).

b) The *ablative absolute* is used, where (as expressed in English) the subordinate clause has its own subject, which is neither the subject nor the object of the principal clause. In this case the subject of the subordinate clause stands in the *ablative* and the participle is added in the same case.

Sole oriente, nox fugit (when the sun rises, the night flees). *Recuperatā pace, artes efflorescunt* (as soon as peace is regained, the arts flourish).

REM. 2. Very often both the *subordinate participle* and the *ab-*

lative absolute may be translated by a *substantive* with or without a *preposition*, as: the rising of the sun dispels the night; after obtaining the victory, the enemy returned to the camp; with the setting of the sun night flees.

REM. 3. *Substantives* and *adjectives*, also, are often used in the same way as participles (there being no Pres. Part. of *sum*, which would generally be required in such cases), as: *bellum Gallicum, Caesare imperatore, gestum est* (under the conduct of Caesar). *Naturā duce, errare nullo pacto potest* (under the guidance of nature). *Natus est Augustus, Cicerone et Antonio consulibus* (in the consulship of Cicero and Anthony). And sometimes the Part. is found without its noun expressed.

REM. 4. The idea 'since,' 'although,' which are properly expressed by the Part. itself, was often expressed by the later writers, both with the subordinate and absolute Part., by *quando, etsi, quanquam, quamvis*, etc.

CHAPTER V.

§ 101. *Of the Adverb.*

1. Finally, the objective relation is expressed by the adverb. Adverbs express the relations of place, time, way, manner, intensity or degree of a predicate (verb), attribute (adjective) or another adverb. They express very much the same relations as the cases of nouns, and hence are often merely adjectives or nouns in a certain case, as *tuto, cito, multum, plurimum*, etc. (See § 26, R. 1.)

REM. 1. In good prose adverbs are rarely used to qualify nouns. But this is often the case with the numeral adverbs: *bis, iter, etc., primum, iterum, tertium, etc.*, in connection with *names of office* standing in apposition, as: *Cajus, bis (iterum) consul*. So *admodum puer (adolescens)*; *plane vir*. In such cases the noun has something of the meaning of an adjective or participle. The poets use many other adverbs in this way.

2. Besides adverbs of place, time, way, manner and quantity, there are others which affect rather the nature or mode of the assertion contained in a sentence, than any particu-

lar word in the sentence. These are called modal adverbs. They express the certainty or uncertainty, the affirmation or negation of the assertion, or exhibit it as interrogatory in its character.

- a) Certainty, assurance, affirmation, confirmation: *profecto* (i. e. pro facto, as a fact, with all the certainty of a fact, objective certainty); *nae* (only at the beginning of a sentence and usually before pronouns—much weaker than *profecto*); *certe*, *certo* (the first gives assurance to the whole thought, the second only to the predicate,—both subjective); *certe quidem* (stronger than *certe* alone); *saltem* (at least); *sane* (used especially in concessions, ironical admissions, and affirmative answers); *vero* (“in truth” takes the second place in a sentence, except in answers, where it takes the first); *re vera* (“in reality,”—opposed to mere appearances);—*quidem* (stands after its word and gives emphasis to it either by way of confirmation, “certainly,” or, more frequently, by concession, “indeed,” “it is admitted”).

REM. 2. *Equidem* is a strengthened form of *quidem*, used principally to express the assurance of the speaker, and hence mostly with the first person singular;—*scilicet*, *videlicet*, *nimirum*, *quippe*, *nempe* (to wit, doubtless, truly). These are properly causal particles; *scilicet* (i. e. *sci-licet*) represents the reason as obvious or known; *videlicet* (i. e. *vide licet*), as seen; *nimirum* (i. e. *noli mirari* = *mirum ni ita sit*), as natural and giving no occasion for wonder; *quippe* (i. e. *quiape*), as readily suggesting itself; *nempe* (i. e. *nampe*, differs from *quippe* as *nam* from *quia*) is often used ironically in questions. Indeed, all these adverbs are often ironical, and *scilicet*, especially when followed by *quidem*, is concessive.

- b) Uncertainty: *fortasse*, *forsitan* (i. e. *fors sitan*), are used mostly in subordinate sentences, *forsan* (poetic), *fortassis* (unclassical), *forte* (by chance), but with *si*, *nisi*, *ne*, *num* it has the meaning *perhaps*.
- c) Negation: *non* (direct negative, with verbs, adjectives and adverbs; but *nihil* is sometimes used in its stead,

mostly with verbs, to express the negation with more emphasis); *haud* ("hardly," "not exactly," subjective negative; with the exception of the formulas, *haud scio* (*sciam*), *an*, used mostly with adjectives and adverbs); *ne* (used in expressing negative commands, wishes and entreaties, with the imperative and subjunctive); also, *ne—quidem* (separated by the emphatic word, "not even," "never"); *nedum* (generally after a negative sentence and with the Subj., "much less," "not to say"); finally, *modo ne, dommodo ne* (if only not).

REM. 3. *Non*, especially by the poets, is sometimes used for *ne*; also *neque* for *neve*, and *nemo, nihil, nullus*, for *nequis*, etc. On the contrary, *neque, nec* are sometimes used for *et non*, and *neve* or *neu* instead of *et ne*.

3. Two negatives in the same sentence destroy each other and leave an affirmative meaning, but with the following distinction: When *non* follows *nihil, nullus, nemo, nunquam, nusquam*, the affirmation is complete and emphatic; but when *non* precedes the other negative word, the general negation is destroyed and only an indefinite affirmation is expressed. Hence we have:

<i>Nihil non</i> (all),	<i>non nihil</i> (something),
<i>Nullus non, nemo non</i> (each, every),	<i>non nullus, non nemo</i> (some),
<i>Nunquam non</i> (ever, always),	<i>non nunquam</i> (sometimes),
<i>Nusquam non</i> (everywhere),	<i>non nusquam</i> (somewhere).

REM. 4. So also the expressions, *non possum non, nemo potest non, non ignoro, non nescio*, etc., *non possum ignorare, non nolo, non nego, non (haud) inutilis, non (haud) indoctus*, etc., are affirmative and stronger than the simple positive. In like manner, *non modo (tantum)* means, 'not only,' and *modo non*, 'only not.'

REM. 5. The interrogative adverbs will be treated of under interrogative sentences (§ 116).

SEVENTH COURSE.

COMPOUND SENTENCES.

CHAPTER I.

§ 102. A. *Coördinate Sentences.*

1. A coördinate sentence consists of two or more sentences *logically* independent, but *grammatically* connected, so as to have a common reference to each other and express a single idea, as: Demosthenes was a great orator and Cicero was a great orator, or (in an abridged form), Demosthenes and Cicero were great orators.

2. The relation of coördinate sentences is :

- a) *Copulative*, which is expressed: 1) by: *et, que* (always attached to its word), *atque, ac* (never before a vowel or *h*), *and*; 2) negatively, by: *neque, nec* (*et non, ac non* more emphatic), *and not, nor, neve (neu), and that not*, in dissuading, after *ut* or *ne* in the preceding clause; 3) as an advance upon or a stronger case than that of the preceding clause, by: *etiam, quoque* ('also,' 'even,' differ from each other as *et* and *que*); *ne—quidem* (rarely *nec*) *not even*, the parts of the first always separated by the word to be rendered emphatic; 4) with emphasis and formality, by: *et—et; que—que* (mostly poetic) 'so well—as also,' 'both—and,' *neque (nec) — neve (neu)*, 'neither—nor,' *non modo (solum, tantum)—sed etiam* (neg. *ne—quidem, vix*) *not only* (merely)—*but also* (not even, scarcely), *quum—tum* (so well—as especially), the latter being the more important or special circumstance; 5) partitively or distributively, by: *alius—alius, alter—alter, pars—pars, partim—partim, alias—alias, aliter—aliter; modo—modo, nunc—nunc, jam—jam, tum—tum, simul—simul* (now—now, at one time—at another);

6) in the simple order of succession, by : *primum* (*primo*), *deinde*, *tum*, *postea*, *denique* (first, second, third, etc., in short, last of all).

REM. 1. A negative sentence is sometimes found connected with an affirmative one, in which case the connectives are : *neque* (*nec*)—*et*, or *et*—*neque* (*nec*), or *neque*—*neque non*.—In sentences usually connected by *non modo non* (*nihil*), etc.—*sed nequidem*, when both clauses have the same predicate, the negative (*non*, *nihil*, *nullus*, *nunquam*, etc.) is generally omitted after *modo*, etc.—*Neque* (*nec*), when followed by *enim*, *vero*, *tamen*, *autem*, has the force of the simple negative *non* (*non enim* is used only when emphasis is to be given to the negation). We also find : *neque non*, *neque vero non* (and in fact), *neque tamen non* (nevertheless), affirmative.

REM. 2. *Et* is the most general copulative and connects things which are conceived of as independent of each other and equally important ; *que* adds something which appears as a natural appendage to the preceding word or sentence ; while *ac* is used when the second member contains a *nearer definition*, an *advance* upon, or a *continuation* of the preceding sentence or word.

b) *Adversative*, which is expressed : 1) when a negative clause precedes and is to be wholly *excluded* by the second, by : *sed* (but) and *verum*, 'but' (lit. *it is true*) ; 2) where the second member merely *restricts* the first, by : *sed* (but), *verum* (but, but rather, it is true, the fact is), *vero* (but, in truth), *autem* (but, while), *at* (yet, but yet, at least), *tamen* (yet, nevertheless, but yet), *atqui* (now, but now, however) ; *sed tamen*, *veruntamen*, *at vero* (marking a stronger opposition than the simple forms). To *sed*, *verum*, *tamen* and its compounds, the concessive *quidem* (indeed) often stands opposed in the preceding clause.

REM. 3. These particles in their restrictive use differ thus : *sed* (restrictive) expresses a simple opposition ; *verum* opposes something to what precedes as *true* and *certain*, like our "but rather ;" *vero* gives its clause the preponderance over the preceding as something which is *truer*, but is less adversative than *verum* ; *autem* is a general adversative particle expressing little more than a continuance, and hence may often be rendered by *again*, *and*, *at* opposes something to the preceding as *valid*, and hence is used

especially in *objections*, also in *quick* and *lively transitions*; *tamen* opposes something as *unexpected*, and *atqui* something as *well known* and *admitted*, like our “now,” “but now,” hence it is specially used in the minor premiss of a direct syllogism.

REM. 4. Sometimes the adversative particle is not expressed in its clause, the opposition being sufficiently implied without it.

- c) *Disjunctive*, which is expressed: 1) when the exclusion of the idea of one clause by the other is to be represented as *real* and *necessary* in the mind of the writer, by: *aut—aut* (either—or if not, or else, or even); 2) when the exclusion is to be represented as simply *allowable* or *optional*, by: *vel—vel* (either—or, i. e. either the one or the other as you choose, not *necessarily* excluding either); 3) when the choice between two or more things is to be represented as wholly *unknown* or *undecided* by the writer, by: *sive (seu)—sive (seu)*, *either—or*, *whether this or that*.

REM. 5. The first of each of these pairs of particles is often wanting, leaving the last alone, but their meaning remains substantially the same. However, *vel* is generally *corrective* (“or rather”) when standing alone, and sometimes has the sense of *even*.—The disjunctive particle *ve* is enclitic and represents the exclusion as *optional*.

REM. 6. *Sive—sive* are used with the Indic. mode.

- d) *Causal*, where the *reason*, *ground*, *explanation*, or *confirmation* of something is given. It is expressed: 1) by: *nam*, *namque* (a strengthened form of *nam*), *enim*, *et̄enim* (a strengthened form of *enim*), *for*, *namely*, *certainly*, *surely*; 2) where the reason is to be represented as *obvious* and often with some degree of *irony*, by: *nempe*, *quippe*, *scilicet*, *videlicet*, *nimirum*, (to wit, naturally, surely, doubtless, no wonder).

REM. 7. *Nam* gives a *conclusive reason* or *proof*, and is stronger than *enim*; on the contrary, *enim* serves especially for introducing *explanations* and *illustrations*; still they are sometimes exchanged—These differ from the subordinate causal conjunctions, *quod*, *quia*, etc. (§ 112), by giving more properly the *explanation* or *reason* than the *cause* or *ground*.

REM. 8. *Enim* is strengthened by *vero*, as : *enimvëro* (in truth), also, *verum enimvero* (yes, in truth) ; it is also joined to *at*, *verum* and *sed*, as : *at enim*, *verum enim*, *sed enim* (but surely).

- e) *Deductive*, where *conclusions* are given. It is expressed : 1) by : *igitur* (therefore, now), expressing a *self-evident* conclusion (that which is *necessarily involved* in what precedes), as in a syllogism ; *ergo* (consequently, hence), expressing (with more emphasis than *igitur*) a conclusion which follows from what precedes, but rather from the general scope than from any particular sentences ; *itãque* (and thus), introduces a *fact* as following from what precedes ; 2) by the *demonstrative* adverbs : *propterea*, *eo*, generally *ideo* (on this account) ; *idcirco* (therefore) ; *hinc*, *inde* (hence) ; *proinde* (therefore), used only in *commands* and *exhortations*, hence with the Imper. and Subj. ; 3) by the *relative* adverbs : *quapropter*, *quare*, *quamõbrem*, *quocirca* (wherefore).

REM. 9. Of the different classes of coördinate particles, *autem*, *vero*, *enim*, *quoque*, *que*, *igitur* follow (except occasionally, *igitur*, *enim* and *vero*, when emphatic) one, and, in a few instances, two words of the sentence to which they belong ; the others take the first place.

CHAPTER II.

§ 103. B. *Subordinate Sentences.*

1. Subordinate sentences are those which *complete* or *define* other sentences and hence are dependent. By themselves they make an incomplete sense, and appear both in *sense* and *form* subordinate to the principal clause.

2. The sentence to which another belongs as a dependent part, is called the *principal sentence*, the dependent sentence or clause, on the contrary, is called the *subordinate sentence*, and both together are called a *compound sentence*. E. g. in the compound sentence : "when the spring comes, the trees

bloom," the last clause: "the trees bloom," is the principal sentence, and the first "when the spring comes," the subordinate sentence.

3. Subordinate sentences are:

- a) *Substantive sentences*, i. e. such as are but the expanded idea of some case of a *substantive*, as: I rejoice, *that thou art in health* (= I rejoice *at thy health*);
- b) *Adjective sentences*, i. e. such as are but the expanded idea of an *adjective* (or participle), as: the rose, *which blooms*, is beautiful (= *the blooming* rose);
- c) *Adverbial sentences*, i. e. such as are only an expansion of an *adverb* or an *expression of the nature of an adverb*, which designates *place, time or manner*, as: *after the enemy was conquered* our soldiers returned (= *after the conquering of the enemy*).

REMARK. *Interrogative sentences* do not form a separate class of sentences, but are merely common independent or dependent sentences used in asking questions. But indirect interrogatives occupy the place of a substantive, and hence are properly *substantive sentences*; however, for the sake of convenience, they are treated of separately. See § 116.

§ 104. *Of the use of the Modes in Subordinate Sentences.*

1. In the subordinate sentences which are introduced by the indefinite relative pronouns: *quisquis, quicumque, qualiscunque, quotcunque ubicunque, quocunque, quotiescunque, utcunque, quotquot*, etc. (§ 32), the *indicative* is used in Latin, while we, in English, generally use the pronoun *whoever*, etc., with the *subjunctive*.

Sapiens, ubicunque est, beatus est (wherever he may be). *Quoquo modo res sese habet, in sententia mea permanebo* (however the thing may be). *Quicquid est, ego te non deseram* (whatever it may be).

2. The use of the *Subj.* in subordinate sentences will be more fully explained in treating of particular subordinate sentences. For the present the following may suffice:

- a) *Ut* (that, in order that), *ne* (in order that not, that not),

quin (after the phrases : *it is not doubtful, I do not doubt*), *that*, always take the subjunctive ;

- b) In questions depending upon another sentence (*indirect questions*) the Subj. is always used (except occasionally in the poets), as : *dic mihi, cur rideas* (tell me why you laugh). *Nescio, ubi fueris* (I do not know, where you have been). In this case the Subj. should be translated as an *indicative*.

REMARK. The Subj. is used in many cases which it is not easy to refer to particular rules, but which arise from the very nature of the mode, which is employed in setting forth *aims*, mere *conceptions*, *suppositions* or *individual views*, as opposed to positive and absolute *fact* or *reality*.

- c) In all sentences closely connected with and dependent upon an Acc. with the Infin., as : *me scito, dum tu absis, scribere audacius*.

§ 105. Succession of the Tenses in Subordinate Sentences.

1. The following rules may be given for the succession of the tenses in the different clauses of compound sentences united by the subordinating conjunctions or pronouns :

- a) Upon a *principal tense* : Pres., Perfect-present and Fut., there follows again a *principal tense* : Pres., Perfect-present and the Future Periphrastic Present, according as the discourse in the subordinate sentence is of a *contemporaneous, completed* or *future* action ;
- b) Upon an *historical tense* : Imperfect, Perfect-historical and Plupf., there follows again an *historical tense* : Imperf., Plupf. and Future Periphrastic Imperf., according as the discourse in the subordinate sentence is of a *contemporaneous, completed* or *future* action.

Scio, quid agas.

Scio, quid egeris.

Scio, quid acturus sis.

Cognovi (I have learned), *quid agas.*

Cognovi, quid egeris.

Cognovi, quid acturus sis.

Sciebam, quid ageres.

Sciebam, quid egisses.

Sciebam, quid acturus esses.

Cognovi (I learned), *quid ageres.*

Cognovi, quid egisses.

Cognovi, quid acturus esses.

Audiam, quid agas.

Audiam, quid egeris.

Audiam, quid acturus sis.

Cognoveram, quid ageres.

Cognoveram, quid egisses.

Cognoveram, quid acturus esses.

Opto, ut ad me venias. Optabam, ut ad me venires. Te rogo, ne mihi succenseas. Te rogabam, ne mihi succensereres. Non dubito, quin rem tuam bene geras. Non dubitavi (I have not doubted), quin rem tuam bene geras. Non dubitabo, quin rem tuam bene gesturus sis. Non dubitabam (dubitavi, I doubted, dubitaveram), quin rem tuam bene gereres (gessisses, gesturus, esses).

REM. 1. But when past actions are conceived and expressed as present by the writer, or as continuing to the present in their effect, purpose, etc. (see § 84, R. 9), a historical may follow a principal tense; and reversely, when present actions are conceived of and expressed as past, or are viewed from a past point of view, a principal may follow a historical tense.

REM. 2. As the Infin. and Part. do not properly express time, but only the *circumstances* of an action, the tense of the verb which follows is not determined by the Infin. or Part. but by the finite verb upon which they depend.

II. SUBSTANTIVE SENTENCES.

§ 106. *Accusative with the Infinitive.*

PRELIMINARY REMARK. In English, substantive sentences are introduced by the conjunctions: *that, that not*. In Latin they are expressed by: 1) The Acc. with the Infin.; 2) *ut, ne, quo quominus, quin* and a finite verb (but when these express a *result*, the sentences are adverbial); 3) *quod* with a finite verb. The Acc. with the Infin. expresses the object or end more *subjectively* and *indefinitely* than *ut*, etc., while *quod* expresses it as a *fact* or *cause*. After many verbs either of these kinds of sentences may follow, according as it is desired to express the object or end with the one or the other of these shades of meaning.

1. When a sentence, as: *rosa floret*, is the *object* of one of the verbs mentioned below (No. 2), in Latin, the subject (*rosa*) is changed into the Acc. (*rosam*), and the finite verb into the Infin., as: *video rosam florere* (I see, that the rose blooms). When the predicate is expressed by an *adjective* or *substantive* with the verb *sum, fio*, etc. (§ 81, 2), the adjective or substantive is also put in the Acc., as: *aqua frigide*

est; *sentio aquam frigidam esse* (I perceive that the water is cold). *Audimus, Cyrum regem Persarum fuisse* (we hear, that Cyrus was king of the Persians). This construction is called the Acc. with the Infinitive, and by a species of attraction, is often extended into a dependent clause, especially when it expresses a comparison, as: *te suspicor iisdem rebus, quibus me ipsum commoveri*.

2. The Acc. with the Infin. stands after the following classes of verbs and expressions:—

- a) After verbs and expressions of perceiving, feeling, judging, thinking, believing, knowing, hoping, as: *cognosco, intelligo, sentio, video, audio, cogito, iudico, puto, credo, censeo, spero* (but not *expecto*), *despero, scio, nescio, facio* (assume), etc.; *opinio est, spes est*, etc.
- b) After verbs and expressions of saying, relating, promising, showing, and making known in any way, as: *dico, nego, narro, nuntio, concedo, promitto, polliceor, indico, doceo, certiore facio, persuadeo, demonstro, proba, efficio, simulo, dissimulo*, etc.; *appareat, constat, elucet, convenit*; *verum, verisimile, certum est, sequitur*, etc.;
- c) After verbs and expressions of willing, desiring, letting, bidding, and their contraries, as: *volo, nolo, malo, cupio, studeo* (which are sometimes also constructed with the simple Infin. or Part., or with *ut* or *ne*), *placet*; *sino, patior*; *jubeo* and *veto*;
- d) After impersonal verbs and expressions denoting propriety, necessity, right, as *oportet, opus est, necesse est, licet, convenit*; — *par, rectum, justum, aequum, fas est, expedit*; *utile, pulchrum, mos, tempus est*, etc. (which are also constructed with *ut*);
- e) After verbs and expressions signifying an affection or feeling of the mind, as: *gaudeo, laetor, juvat me, doleo, angor, sollicitor, indignor, aegre, moleste, indigne fero, queror, miror, admiror, glorior*. These verbs are also sometimes followed by *quod* and a finite verb. See § 101.

Sentimus calere ignem, nivem esse albam, dulce mel. Historia narrat, Romam a Romulo conditam esse. *Volo te ex itinere mox redire.* Virtus non patitur nos luxurie indulgere. *Caesar milites castra, munire jussit. Caesar milites pontem rescindere vetuit. Constat inter omnes, Romanos fuisse fortissimos.*

REM. 1. When no agent is expressed after *jubere, vetare, sinere* and *pati* in the Infinitive, the Infinitive Pass. is used in Latin. *Caesar castra muniri jussit. Caesar pontem rescindi vetuit. Caesar urbem diripi passus est.*

REM. 2. With *licet* (it is permitted) there is commonly found the Dat. (of the person) with the Infinitive, instead of the Acc. with the Infinitive, as: *quiescere tibi licet.* And in the poets and later writers with many other verbs, as: *do, concedo, contingit, liberum est,* etc.

REM. 3. *Oportet* and *necesse est* are connected either with the Acc. with the Infinitive or with the subjunctive without *ut*, as: *oportet nos virtuti studere,* or: *virtuti studeamus oportet. Necesse est sapientem semper beatum esse,* or: *sapiens semper beatus sit necesse est.*

REM. 4. When the subject of the Infinitive is the same as that of the governing verb, and would be one of the pronouns *me, te, se, nos, vos,* (rarely *eum, eos*), it is often omitted, and then the predicative adjective referring to it is in the nominative, as: *cupio esse clemens* (or *me esse clementem*).

REM. 5. With many verbs of perceiving, thinking, declaring, and the like, a personal passive form is commonly used instead of the impersonal, thus making the subject of the Infinitive nominative to the governing verb, as: *dicor,* (instead of *dicitur*), *trador, feror* (I am said, it is said that I, they say that I); *putor, credor, existimor, videor, jubeor, vetor,* etc. After these verbs, the infinitives *esse* and *feri* take a predicative nominative which agrees with the subject of the governing verb in gender, number and case, as: *Romulus ad deos transisse creditus est; Alexander fortissimus fuisse traditur.* This construction is called the nominative with the infinitive.

REM. 6. With many verbs under a) and b) the pronouns *hoc, id, illud, istud,* (also *quod* sometimes), and *sic* are often found referring to what is explained in the following Acc. with the Infinitive, as: *sic sentio, non posse animum esse mortalem.*

§ 107. B. *Ut, ne, ut ne, ut non* with the Subjunctive.

1. *Ut*, "that" (*ne, ut ne*, "that not," *neve (nen)*, "and that

not, nor"), in the first place, is used to express a *conceived* or *designed effect* (*ut final*), and stands after expressions of *making* and *effecting*; *caring* and *striving*; *asking*, *demanding*, *exhorting*, *persuading*, *advising*, *exciting*, *urging*, *commanding* (*impĕro*), *ordering*; *wishing*, *allowing* or *permitting* (*concedo*, *permitto*), *hoping*; finally, after every sentence, in order to express an *end* or *object* (*ut* = "in order that," *ne* = "in order that not"), as: *curo*, *caveo*, *video* (I care), *labōro*, *operam do*, *id ago*, *contendo*, *consĕquor*, *assĕquor*, *adipiscor*, *impetro*, *teneo*, etc.; *rogo*, *oro*, *peto*, *postūlo*, *moneo*, *hortor*, *auctor sum*, *consilium do*, *suadeo*, *persuadeo*, *moneo*, *excito*, *impello*, *impĕro*, *edīco*, *mando*, *praescribo*, *praecipio*, etc.; *opto*, *concedo*, *permitto*; — *lex est*, *munus est*, and other nouns, generally with *est*; *eo*, *ideo*, *idcirco*, *ob hanc causam*, etc.

Sol efficit, ut omnia floreat. Ante senectutem *curavi, ut bene vivĕrem*; in senectute, *ut bene moriar.* *Oro te, ut mihi succurras.* *Te rogo, ne defatigĕre neu diffīdas.* Caesar milites *hortatus est, ut acriter dimicarent.* *Dux imperavit, ut milites stationes suas servarent.* *Edimus, ut vivamus*; non vivimus, *ut edamus.* *Vetus est lex, ut idem amici velint.*

REM. 1. The verbs *volo*, *nolo*, *malo*, *cupio* are more frequently used with the Acc. with the Infin., than with *ut* and the Subj. Comp. § 106, 2. c). *Impero* is used with the Acc. with the Infin. only when the Infin. is in the *passive*, as: *dux imperavit urbem diripi.* Concerning *jubeo* and *veto* see § 106, 2. c) and Rem. 2.

REM. 2. After negative verbs, as: *impedio*, *prohibeo*, *recuso*, *vito*, and the like, (also after *caveo*, commonly), *ne*, and not *ut ne*, is used. After verbs of *making* or *affecting*, *ne* (*ut ne*) is used when the effect is merely *conceived* and *aimed at*, but *ut non*, when the effect is *actual*.

REM. 3. With verbs of *directing*, *asking*, *exhorting*, and the like, *ut* is often omitted before the Subj., and regularly after *velim*, *malim*, *nolim*, *vellem*, *mallem*, *nollem* and *fac*.

REM. 4. Verbs meaning to *permit* or *allow*, (and in questions *potest fieri*), are often omitted before *ut* or *ne*, and sometimes, also the *ut* and *ne* themselves are omitted, as: *ne sit* (i. e. *sine ne sit*) sane summum malum dolor, malam certe est; *sinete me expurgem* (i. e. *ut me*).

REM. 5. Verbs of *perceiving*, and *communicating*

(*verba sentiendi et declarandi*) are constructed with *ut* (*ne*) and the Subj. when they express a command; otherwise with the Acc. with the Infin. See § 106, 2, a. and b.

2. In the second place *ut* (that, so that) is used to express the *actual* effect which follows from the principal sentence (*ut consecutive*). When such a sentence is negative, *ut non* (*ut nullus, ut nemo, ut nihil, ut nunquam*, etc.), and not *ne* or *ut ne*, is used. This *ut* (*ut non*), is used in the following cases:—

a) After *est, futurum esse* or *fore, multum abest, prope est, in .eo sum; fit, accīdit, evēnit, contingit* (in poetry and late prose writers with the Infin. also), *usu venit; proximum est, extremum est, reliquum est, restat, superest, relinquitur*;—*aequum, verum, rectum est, convenit (mihi), integrum est*, and many substantives with *est*, as: *mos est*, etc. (which are also constructed with the Acc. and Infin. See § 106, 2. d).

b) After *efficere, probare, efficitur, sequitur, consequens est* (which also take the Acc. with the Infin., § 106, 2, b);—*ita, sic, eo, adeo, usque eo, tam, tantopere; talis, is, hic, iste, ejusmodi, tantus*; and finally, after any sentence in order to express a *result*, (*ut* = so that).

Persaepe *evēnit, ut utilitas cum honestate certet. Restat, ut de litterarum utilitate loquar. Ita vivere debemus, ut in omni re recti conscientiam servemus. Non possunt multi rem amittere, ut non plures secum in eandem trahant calamitatem.*

REM. 6. For *ut* concessive, see § 114. R.; and for *ut* comparative, see § 115, 1, a.

3. After expressions of *fear* and *solicitude*, *ne* is to be translated by *that*, and *ut* and *ne non* by *that not*. In the first case the object of fear, etc., is *not* desired, in the second it *is*.

Omnes cives metuebant, ne urbs ab hostibus expugnaretur. Timeo, ut hos labores sustineas. Vereor, ne non perficiam, quod suscepi.

§ 108. C. *Quo, quominus* and *quin* with the Subjunctive.

1. *Quo* is used for *ut eo*, 1) in the meaning, *in order that*

thereby; 2) in the meaning, *that (in order that, so that), that so much the*, when a comparative follows.

Haec lex data est *quo* malefici *deterrentur*. Caesar milites cohortatus est *quo* animo *fortiore essent*.

2. *Quomīnus*, (lit. "by which the less," "that not") stands after verbs and expressions of hindering, preventing, resisting, opposing, and the like; also after *religio est*, and *per me stare*, and is generally to be translated into English by *that*. *Ne* is used for it only when the *end* or *aim* of the hindering is to be expressed. But *ne* is always used after *caveo*, *interdico* and *vito*.

Aetas non *impēdit* *quomīnus* litteras tractemus. Quid sapienti potest *obstare*, *quomīnus* beatus sit? Non *repugnabo*, *quomīnus* hunc librum *legas*. *Impedior* dolore *animi*, *ne* de hujus miseria plura dicam.

REM. 1. After *impedire*, *prohibere*, *recusare* and *cavere*, the Infin. is sometimes used instead of *quomīnus* and the Subj.

3. *Quin* (composed of *quī ne*; "how not," "why not") is used only when the principal sentence is *negative* or is a question implying a negative. It occurs in the following cases:—

a) In the meaning *that not*, instead of *ut non*, after *facere non possum*, *fieri non potest*;

b) After *nemo est*, *nihil est*, *nemo est tam*, *nihil est tam*, and the like, or *nemo*, *nihil*, *nusquam*, *nunquam*, with any verb; where *quin* is often equivalent to *qui non*, *quae non*, *quod non*;

c) Instead of *quomīnus*, when the principal sentence is *negative* (but *quomīnus* or *ne*, and not *quin*, follows *non impedio*, *non prohibeo*, *non intercēdo*, and *ne* follows *non interdico*). In this and the following cases, *quin* is to be translated by *that*;

d) After *nihil*, *non multum*, *paullum abest*;

e) After *non dubito*, *dubium non est*, *controversia non est*, *non ambigitur*, and the like.

Facere non possum, *quin* quotidie ad te *mittam* litteras (I cannot forbear to write to you daily). *Fieri non potuit*, *quin* urbs ab hostibus *caperetur*. *Nihil abest*, *quin* *sim* miserrimus. *Non mul-*

tum abfuit, quin hostes vincerentur. Homines barbari sibi non temperabant, quin in Italiam contenderent.—Non dubito, quin verum dixeris. Quis dubitat, quin in virtute divitiae sint positae? Dubium non erat, quin victoriam de hostibus reportaturi essemus. Non dubito, quin haec res non acciderit (will not happen).

REM. 2. So also, after *non dico, nego, haud ignoro*, and the like, *quin* is sometimes found instead of the more usual Acc. with the Infin. — But *non dubito*, in the meaning “I do not scruple,” “hesitate,” takes the Infin., and in some authors, in all meanings.

REM. 3. *Quin etiam* (properly, “how not also,”) means *nay* rather, *besides, moreover*; *quin immo* is of nearly the same meaning.

§ 109. *Quod* (that, because) with the Indicative.

1. *Quod* (that) introduces a substantive sentence, which gives the *explanation* or *ground* of the predicate or some other word of the principal clause. The *subjunctive* stands with *quod*, only when the sentence is expressed as the sentiment, or from the view of some other person than the writer or speaker. The cases in which *quod* is used are the following:—

- a) After certain expressions, as: *bene, male, prudenter facio; bene, male fit, evēnit, accidit*, and the like, *praetereo, mitto*, and generally *adde, accedit*;
- b) In order to introduce the *explanation* of a *substantive* (in which case, also, *ut* or the Acc., with the Infin. is used), or *pronoun* or *pronominal adverb* in the principal sentence;
- c) After words signifying an *affection of the mind*, as: *laetor, gaudeo, doleo, indignor, aegre fero, moleste fero, queror, miror, glorior, jucundum est*, and the like; also after verbs of *praising, censuring, accusing, thanking*.

Bene facio, quod me adjuvas. Magnum beneficium est naturae, quod necesse est mori. Gaudeo, quod vales. Laudo te, quod rem tuam bene gessisti. Laudat Africanum Panaetius, quod fuerit abstinens (i. e. because Panaetius conceived him so).

REM. 4. Verbs signifying an affection of the mind are more frequently constructed with an Acc. with the Infinitive. See § 106, 2, e.

§ 110. *Adjective Sentences* introduced by *qui* (*quae, quod*), *qualis, quantus, etc.*

1. The relative *qui, quae, quod* agrees in *gender* and *number* with the word to which it refers; the *case* of the relative, on the contrary, depends upon the construction of the clause to which it belongs.

Beati sunt ii homines, quorum vita virtutis praeceptis regitur. Deus est, qui omnem hunc mundum regit.

2. The *person* of the verb in adjective sentences, is determined by the person of the substantive or pronoun to which the relative refers.

Ego qui scribo; tu qui scribis; pater, qui scribit; nos, qui scribimus; vos, qui scribitis; fratres, qui scribunt.

REM. 1. These general rules for the agreement of the relative, are subject to substantially the same variations in particular instances, as take place in the case of other adjectives; for which, see § 81, 8. But when the relative refers to a *whole sentence*, it is put in the *neuter Sing.* or else *quae res* or *id quod* is substituted for it. Also when a noun follows in the predicate, the relative oftener agrees with it than with its antecedent.

REM. 2. The demonstrative to which the relative refers is often omitted, when no particular emphasis rests upon it; this happens most frequently when the adjective sentence stands *first*, or when the omitted demonstrative expresses something *indefinite* and is equivalent to *aliquis*, or when the relative may be resolved into *si quis*, as: *quis* (for *quibus*) opes nullae sunt, (ii) bonis invident. Utile est, uti motu animi, qui (= *si quis*) uti ratione non potest.

REM. 3. When the relative sentence stands first, the noun of the principal sentence to which it refers, is often transposed to the relative sentence, in which case a demonstrative referring to this noun generally follows in the principal sentence, as: *quam quisque norit artem, in hac se exerceat*. This transposition sometimes takes place, also, when the principal clause stands first.

REM. 4. When an adjective sentence has another sentence subordinate to it, the demonstrative pronoun of this sentence is omitted, and the relative takes its place and is put in the same case which the demonstrative would have taken, as: *aberat omnis dolor, qui si adesset, non molliter ferret* (instead of: *quem, si [is] adesset, non molliter ferret*).

REM. 5. The relative at the beginning of a sentence often has the force of a demonstrative or personal pronoun, as in the phrase: *quae quum ita sint* (since *these* things are so), so common in Cicero. — It is often, also, equivalent to a personal pronoun with a connective, as: *and, but, for, therefore, hence, I (you, he, etc.)*.

3. The subjunctive is used in adjective sentences in the following cases:

- a) When the adjective sentence expresses an *end* or *aim* and *qui* seems to stand for *ut ego, ut tu, ut is*; especially after verbs of *sending, coming, giving, selecting*.
- b) When the adjective sentence expresses a *result* flowing from the *nature* or *character* of something: 1) After *is talis, ejusmodi, tam, tantus*, and often (instead of *ut*) after *quam* with a comparative, (here when the principal sentence is *negative, quin* may be used instead of *qui non*); — 2) After *aptus, idoneus, dignus, indignus* (in the poets and later writers with the Infin. also); — 3) After *est, sunt, exstitit, exstiterunt, exoritur, reperiuntur, inveniuntur; reperio, invenio, nanciscor, habeo, non (nihil) habeo, etc.*; — 4) After the negative expressions: *non est, nemo est, nihil est, nullus est, quis est? quid est? non desunt, etc.* (here too *quin* may be used in the place of *qui non*, when the negation is not to be made with emphasis); — 5) When the adjective sentence gives the *ground* or *reason* of the action in the principal sentence, and *qui* can be translated by *since (although) I, since you, since he*.

Hostes ad Caesarem legatos miserunt, *qui pacem ab eo peterent* (who were to ask). Vir probus *dignus est, cui fidem habeamus* (deserves that we give him our confidence). *Sunt qui censeant, una animum et corpus occidere. Nullum est animal praeter hominem, quod habeat notitiam aliquam dei. Non is eram, qui aliorum miseriam ad me non pertinere censerem. O fortunate adolescens, qui tuae virtutis Homerum praeconem invenëris!* Incidunt multae saepe causae, *quae conturbent animos utilitatis specie* (of such a nature that).

REM. 6. Relative adverbs are followed by the Subj. after

many of the above words, like relative pronouns, as: *est ubi id valeat*.

REM. 7. When *qui* has the causal meaning described in 3, 5), *ut*, *quippe*, *utpöte* often stand before it, in which case, when the cause is represented as an *actual* one, the Indic. is sometimes used. And so in general the Indic. may be used in many of the above combinations, when the idea is different from what is there described.

REM. 8. *Quod* sometimes means *as far as* (as: *quod sciam*), and in Tacitus, *wherefore, so that* = *propter quod*. Agric. XII. Also where it introduces a sentence which is to be made the subject of remark, in the sense, *as to what, with regard to the fact that*, as: *quod ad crimina attinet*, etc. When *quod* is followed by a conjunction, as: *si, nisi*, it may generally be translated by *but, whereas, or and*.

III. ADVERBIAL SENTENCES.

§ 111. a. *Adverbial Sentences of Time.*

Adverbial sentences of time are introduced by the conjunctions *quum* (*cum*), *postquam*, *ut, ubi, simulac* (*simulatque*), *ex quo* (since), *priusquam* and *antēquam*, *dum, quoad, donec*. These conjunctions *generally* take the Indic., but sometimes the subjunctive.

REM. 1. *Quando* (rarely a temporal conjunction), *quamdiu* and *quoties* also belong here, but need no special treatment, since they have nothing peculiar in their construction.

1. *Quum* is used either of *time* or *cause*. The *temporal quum* (when, while, as) is used with the *indicative* of all the tenses, yet almost invariably with the *subjunctive* of the *imperfect* and *pluperfect*, when a *perfect* stands in the principal clause. The *causal quum* (since), is always connected with the *subjunctive*.

a) *Quum* *coelum contemplantur, dei magnitudinem admiramur* (*when*). *Ager, quum multos annos quieverit, uberiores fructus efferre solet* (*when, after*). *Sapiens non ejulabit, quum doloribus torquebätur* (*when*). *Quum ad me litteras dedëris, ad te proficiscar* (*when*).

- b) *Quum* milites de hostium adventu *edocerentur*, continuo summo pugnandi ardore *flagraverunt* (*as*). Alexander, *quum* *interemisset* Clitum, familiarem suum, *vix* a se manus *abstinuit* (*as*).
- c) *Quum* philosophia animis *medeatur*, totos nos penitusque ei tradere debemus (*since*). *Quum* milites pericula *vererentur*, non audebant cum hostibus *confligere* (*since*).

REM. 2. When *quum* would regularly stand immediately before *vix*, *vixdum*, *nondum* or *jam*, it is usually transferred to what in English would be the principal clause, which in this case, follows the subordinate clause.

2. *Postquam*, *posteaquam* (after that), *ut* (just as = as soon as), *ubi* (*as*), *simulatque* (*simulac* never before a vowel or *h*), *as soon as*, are connected with the *indicative*, and indeed, most frequently with the *perfect*, which we commonly translate into English by the pluperfect.

REM. 3. *Simul* is sometimes used in the sense of *simulatque*; also *ut primum*, *ubi primum*.

Postquam Caesar aciem *instruxit*, omnes hostes in unum locum *convolaverunt*. *Ut* dies *illuxit*, profectus sum. Hostes, *ubi* nostros equites *conspexerunt*, *fugerunt*. *Simulatque* aliquid *audiēro*, ad te scribam.

3. *Priusquam*, *antēquam* or *anteāquam* (before that, ere, before), are connected:

- a) With the Subj. Pres., more rarely with the Indic. Present;
- b) With the Indicative Perfect;
- c) With the Indicative Fut. Perfect;
- d) With the Subj., Imperf. and Pluperfect.
- a) *Tempestat* minatur, *antēquam* *surgat*.
- b) *Antequam* bellum urbis nostrae opes *absumpsit*, *potentissima* fuit.
- c) Non dives eris, *priusquam* divitias *contempseris*.
- d) Hostes propulsati sunt, *antequam* urbem *obsidione* *cingerent*. Dies *obrepit* hostibus, *priusquam* *aggērem* *extruxissent*.

4. *Dum* in the meaning *while*, *at the same time that*, *as long as*, and *quoad* (*donec* only after the classical period and by the

poets) in the meaning *as long as*, are connected with the *indicative*.

Dum haec geruntur, hostium copiae conveniunt. Lacedaemoniorum gens fortis fuit, *dum* Lycurgi leges vigeant. Cato, *quoad vixit*, virtutum laude crevit.

REM. 4. *Dum*, in the meaning *while, at the same time that*, is commonly used with the Indic. Pres., whatever tense stands in the principal sentence, as : *dum* dux aciem *instruit*, hostis totam urbem cinxerat. — As an enclitic after *vix* or a negative, *dum* means *yet*, as : *vixdum, necdum* (scarcely yet, nor yet).

1. *Dum, quoad* and *donec* in the meaning *till, until, till that*, are generally connected with the *subjunctive* of the Pres., Imperf. and Pluperf., or with the *indicative* of the Perf. and Fut. Perfect.

Milites exspectant, *dum* dux se e castris contra hostes *educat*. Milites expectabant, *dum* dux se e castris contra hostes *educeret*. Cicero omni quiete abstinuit, *donec* Catilinae conjurationem *detexisset*. Milites tamdiu restiterunt, *quoad* hostes fugam *capessiverunt*. Tamdiu manebo, *dum* omnem rem *cognovero*.

REM. 5. Adverbial sentences of *place* are not treated of separately, since they are of very limited use and correspond entirely to adjective sentences in the use of the modes. They are introduced by : *ubi* (where), *ubicunque* (wherever), *unde* (whence), *undecunque* (whencever), *quo* (whither), and *quocunque* (whithersoever).

§ 112. b. Causal Adverbial Sentences.

In causal adverbial sentences, the *cause* or *ground* is conceived of as contemporaneous or antecedent to the action of the principal clause, and hence as an essential or organic part of the whole thought, which is not the case in coördinate causal sentences. They are introduced by the conjunctions : *quod, quia, quoniam* (= *quum jam*). These conjunctions are properly used with the *indicative*; the *subjunctive* is used with them, only when the cause is given as the *sentiment*, or from the *view* of some other person than the writer or speaker.

REMARK. These conjunctions give the *real* or *true* ground from which the action *actually* springs, whereas the causal *quum* § 111, 1, gives it simply as a ground upon which the mind proceeds

in its *thoughts*, or as a *conceived ground*. — *Quod* and *quia* do not materially differ from each other, except that *quod* is always used where the subordinate clause expresses the cause at the same time as the *object* of the verb of the principal sentence. *Quoniam* (also *quando*, *quandoquidem* and *siquidem*, which are occasionally used), express an *obvious* or *self-evident* ground; *quoniam* also means, *after that*, like *postquam*, except that it always represents the time as a *cause*.

Cicero pater patriae appellatus est, *quod* ejus consilio et vigilantia Catilinae conjuratio detecta est. *Quia* natura mutari non potest, idcirco verae amicitiae sempiternae sunt. *Quoniam* jam nox est, in vestra tecta discedite.

§ 113. c. *Conditional Adverbial Sentences.*

1. Conditional adverbial sentences are introduced by: *si* (if), *nisi* (*ni*) and *si non* (if not, unless).

2. The *indicative* is used in sentences of this kind, when the condition is expressed as *real* and *certain*, or contains a *general truth*. In this case the Indic. is generally used in the principal sentence also.

Si hoc dicis, erras. Si hoc dicebas, errabas. Si quis spiritum ducit, vivit.

3. The *subjunctive* is used when the condition is *arbitrary* or barely *conceived of* or *possible*; and in the principal sentence in this case, the *subjunctive* is used also.

a) The Subj. Pres. and Perf. is used when the condition is represented as a mere *undetermined supposition*, and may generally be rendered by the Imperfect.

b) The Subj. Imperf. and Pluperf., when the condition is represented as a *supposition the contrary of what actually is or is not*, and may generally be rendered by the Pluperfect.

Si hoc dicas, erres (If thou shouldst say this, whether now or at any future time, as possibly you may, thou wouldst err). *Si hoc diceres, errares* (if thou saidst this, thou erredst; but I know thou didst not say it; hence thou didst not err). *Si hoc dixisses, errasses* (if thou hadst said this, thou wouldst have erred; but I know thou hast not said it; hence thou hast not erred). Impudens sim si plus postulem.

REM. In the clauses expressing the result or consequence,

when their verb, or adjective with *esse*, denotes *duty, fitness, power, permission, preference*, etc., or when their predicate is expressed by the Fut. Acc. or Pass. Part. with *esse*, or when they contain *vix paene, prope*, or when the design is to express the consequence as *inevitable* and *certain*, the Indic. of the historical tenses (most commonly the Imperf.) is generally used.

REM. 2. *Nisi* makes a supposition *negatively*, but leaves the thing supposed *affirmative*: "if it be *not* supposed, that something is;" but *si non* makes a supposition *affirmatively*, while the thing supposed is *negative*: "if it be supposed that something is *not*." Non potes jucunde vivere, nisi cum virtute vivis. Homo beatus est, si cupidatibus non succumbit.

4. *Dum, dummodo, modo* in the meaning *provided that, if only*; *dum ne, dummodo ne, modo ne* (provided that not, if only not) always take the *subjunctive*. But *si modo* takes the *indicative*.

Multi omnia recta et honesta negligunt, dummodo potentiam consequantur.

REM. 3. The conditional clause is often omitted when it is either contained in a participle, adjective, or preposition with its case, or may be easily supplied from the connection. — When the hypothetical conjunction is omitted, the verb stands first.

§ 114. d. Concessive Adverbial Sentences.

Concessive sentences are introduced by :

- a) *etsi, tametsi* (even if, although), *quamquam* (although), commonly with the *indicative* ;
- b) *etiamsi* (even if, although), more frequently with the *subjunctive* than with the Indic. ;
- c) *quamvis* (although, however), and *licet* (properly: "be it allowed that"), *although*, are always, in good writers, connected with the *subjunctive* of one of the principal tenses.

REMARK. *Ut, ne* and *quum* sometimes have a concessive meaning also, *in case that, supposing that* (or *that not*), *when*, etc.

Viri boni recte agunt, etsi nullum consecuturum emolumentum vident. Etiamsi secundissimis rebus utäre, tamen beatus non eris, si virtute cares. Sapiens dolorem patienter tolerat, quamvis acerbus sit.

§ 115. e. *Adverbial Sentences of Comparison.*

1. The comparing of the subject of the principal sentence in respect to *manner* or *greatness* and *degree* is expressed:

- a) By: *ut* (*uti, sicut, quemadmodum, rare quomodo*) with the *indicative* — *ita* (*sic*), as, even as — so; *tam* (*tantopere, tantum*) — *quam* (*quantopere, quantum*), so great — as; *non tam* — *quam* (not so much — as), and the like.

REM. 1. Comparison is expressed also by *atque* (*ac*) after the following words expressing *likeness* and *unlikeness*, as: *par, pariter, similis, similiter, aequae, perinde, alius, aliter, similis, dispar, contra, secus*, etc.; — also by *quam* or *nisi* after *non alius, nullus alius, nihil* (*quid?*) *aliud*.

REM. 2. In a barely *imaginary* and *supposed* comparison, the subordinate sentence is introduced by: *quasi, tanquam, tanquam si, ut si* (rare *ut*), *velut, velut si, ac si*, with the *subjunctive*. The succession of the tenses in this case is according to the principles already stated (§ 105), but the English uses a historical tense, without regard to that of the principal sentence.

b) By the *comparative* with *quam* (than) when two objects are compared with respect to the *same* quality. Then both objects are in the same case.

Melior tutiorque est certa pax, quam sperata victoria.

REM. 3. Instead of *quam* with the Nom. or Acc., the *ablative* without *quam* may be used with the comparative of the first member. See § 91, 2. b. The English *even, still* with the comparative, is expressed by *etiam*, as: *etiam major or major etiam*; and with the superlative by *vel*.

REM. 4. The comparative adverbs: *magis, plus, amplius* and *potius*, all generally translated by *more*, differ as follows: 1) *Magis* is strictly an adverb and means *in a higher degree, rather*; — 2) *Plus* is properly an adjective used substantively in the Nom. or Acc., and means *more, a larger number, a higher degree* (but never *in a higher degree*); still in some expressions *magis* and *plus* may be exchanged with each other, as: *magis, also, plus te amo*; — 3) *Amplius* means *further, and of time, longer*; — 4.) *Potius* means *in preference, rather*.

REM. 5. The comparatives: *plus, amplius, longius* and *minus*, in connection with *numerals*, generally take neither *quam* nor the

Abl., but leave the structure of the sentence, unaffected, as: *septuaginta amplius annos vixit* (he lived more than seventy years).

2. When two qualities or actions of *one object* are compared with each other, *both* adjectives or adverbs are put in the *comparative*, and the last is connected to the other by *quam*; more rarely, both are in the *positive*, but *magis* stands with the first, and *quam* with the last.

Pestilentia minacior quam perniciosior, cogitationes hominum a certaminibus publicis avertit (a more threatening than destructive pestilence). *Bellum a civibus nostris fortius, quam felicius* gestum est (with more bravery than success).

REM. 6. The comparative is very often used without the second member of the comparison, and may then be translated by *too, too much, very, somewhat* with the positive, as: *senectus est loquacior* (somewhat loquacious; properly: *more loquacious*, i. e. more loquacious than is proper). Sometimes we find the second member expressed somewhat irregularly by *quam pro* and the *Abl.*, *quam ut* or *quam qui* and a verb.

REM. 7. When the comparison is limited definitely to *two* objects, in Latin, the *comparative* and not the superlative is used, as: *uter vestrum est major natu?* (which of you *two* is the older?)

3. *Quo—eo*, or *quanto—tanto* (*the—so much the*) in connection with two comparatives, express a *uniform proportion* between two qualities or actions.

Quo plura habent homines, eo ampliora expetere solent.

4. When the discourse is of an *indefinite* subject, instead of the last mentioned mode of expressions, we commonly find: *ut quisque—ita* with two *superlatives*.

Ut quisque est sapientissimus ita est modestissimus (the wiser a man is, the more modest he is).

§ 116. *Of Interrogative Sentences.*

1. Questions are either *independent* (direct), as: *Wast thou at school yesterday?* or *dependent* upon another sentence going before (indirect questions), as: *I do not know, whether thou wast at school yesterday.*

REM. 1. The phrases *quid ais* (tell me), *dic mihi*, *cedo*, *quaeso* and *nescio quis*, are used parenthetically, and hence do not make the accompanying interrogative clause dependent.

2. In the direct question, the *indicative* is used when it is asked *positively*, the *subjunctive* when it is asked *doubtfully*. In the indirect question the *subjunctive* is always used (except occasionally by the poets).

Quid agis? Quid agamus? (what can we do?). *Dic, quid agas.*

3. Both direct and indirect questions are introduced:

a. By interrogative and relative pronouns and adverbs, as: *quis, qui, uter, qualis, quantus; ubi, unde, quo, quando, quomodo, cur; quin* (in urgent questions), *quī* (how), *quare, quam, quantopere* (how very).

Quis hunc librum legit? Uter vestrum major natu est? Cur ad me non venisti? Dic, quis hunc librum legerit. Nescio, uter vestrum major natu sit. Narra, cur ad me non veneris.

b. By the interrogative words *ne, nonne, num, utrum*.

a) *Ne*, which is always attached to the accented word, leaves it undecided whether the interrogator expects an *affirmative* or *negative* answer;

b) *Nonne* (not?) commonly implies that the interrogator expects an *affirmative* answer;

c) *Num* (is it possible that?) commonly implies that the interrogator expects a *negative* answer;

d) *Utrum* is used only in *double* questions.

REM. 2. *Ne* and *utrum*, in *direct* questions, can be translated into English by no particular word. In *indirect* questions, *ne, utrum, num*, may be translated by *whether*, and *nonne* by *whether not*. — *Si* (or *si forte*) ‘if perchance’ is found in indirect questions implying *hope* or *expectation*.

Fuistine heri in schola? Dic, fuerisne heri in schola? Nonne sapiens beatus est? Quaeris ex me, nonne putem sapientem beatum esse? Num vita beata in divitiis posita est? Dubito, num vita beata in divitiis posita sit.

4. In *disjunctive* questions, in which one member excludes the other, the first member is introduced by *utrum* or the en-

clitic *ne* (which are occasionally not expressed), and the second by *an* (or), both in direct and indirect questions. The forms *ne—ne*, *an—an* are rarely found except in the poets.

Utrum unus, an plures sunt mundi? Quæritur, utrum unus an plures sint mundi. Mortalisne, an immortalis est animus humanus? Quæritur mortalಿಸne, an immortalis sit animus humanus. Incertum erat, bellum an pax cum Celtibêris esset.

REM. 2. *An* is also used in *simple indirect* questions with the words, *nescio, haud scio, dubito, incertum*, and the like, expressing a modest *affirmative*; also in a question put in the form of an *alternative* to another sentence either expressed or implied. *Or not* is expressed in Latin, by *annon* in *direct*, by *necne* in *indirect* questions.

5. The answer *yes* or *no* is expressed :

- a) *Yes*: by the repetition of the word upon which the stress of the question lies; and *no* in the same way, but with *non* placed before it;
- b) *Yes*: by *etiam, ita, ita est, sane, vero*, and the like; *no*: by *non, non ita, minime*, and the like; *Yes (no) rather*, by *immo (immo vero, immo vero etiam)* with the addition of a word expressing the opposite of what is implied in the question.

Fuistine heri in schola? Fui. Fuistine heri domi? Vero. Estne frater domi? Non est. Venitne pater tuus? Minime. Egebat amicus tuus? Immo locuples erat.

REM. 3. Questions are also asked without any special interrogative word, by placing the word upon which the accent rests first in its sentence; this mode of asking a question implies more *emotion*.

§ 117. *Of the Form of Direct and Indirect Discourse.*

1. When one's thoughts or words, (whether our *own* or another's), or general or particular truths, are directly quoted by a writer or speaker, in their original form, without being merged in the present narrative or statement, it is called the *direct discourse* (*oratio recta*), as: The messenger announced, *Peace is concluded*; I assert, *the soul is immortal*. But when in a similar case, the thought is made *dependent* upon some word of *perceiving* or *communicating*, it is called the *oblique*

discourse, (*oratio obliqua*), as : The messenger announced, that *peace was concluded*; I assert, that *the soul is immortal*.

REM. 1. Of the two verbs: *inquam* and *aio*, the first is used in *direct* and the second in *indirect* discourse. *Inquam* is never placed before the words quoted, but is introduced among them.

2. *Principal* sentences, on assuming the form of *indirect* discourse, are expressed :

- a) By the Acc. with Infin., when they express a simple statement of fact, as : *nuntius allatus est, pacem esse compositam* (*direct* discourse : *pax est composita*) ;
- b) By the *subjunctive*, when they express a *command* or *wish*, or are of an *interrogative* character, as : *dux dixit, omnia esse perdita*; *milites suae salutis consulere* (*direct* discourse : *omnia sunt perdita*; *consulite milites, vestrae salutis*).

REM. 2. Questions introduced by *num*, *an*, *utrum* — *an*, *ne* and *nonne* more commonly take the form of the Acc. with the Infin. There are also some other variations between the Infin. and Subj. similar to those which have been found to exist in the different kinds of subordinate sentences.

3. *Subordinate* sentences in *indirect* discourse are expressed by the *subjunctive*. But when in sense they have more of the character of *principal* sentences, especially when introduced by relative pronouns or adverbs, they take the form of the Acc. with the Infin.

REM. 3. But the Indic. is used in the subordinate clauses, when the writer wishes to represent the thought as his own, or as a definite fact. And in nearly all cases the Subj. should be translated as an Indicative.

Caesar dixit, se, *postquam* hostes *fusi* essent, castra muniturum esse. Apud Hypānim fluvium Aristotēles ait *bestiolas* quasdam nasci, *quae* unum diem *vivant*.

§ 118. *Special Idiomatic Constructions.*

1. *Ellipsis*. This consists in the omission of a word or sentence, expressing some general or subordinate idea readily supplied by the mind or easily inferred from the connection,

but essential to the full grammatical expression of the thought, as: ad *Caereris* (here the sense is obvious enough as it is, but in order to explain the grammatical dependence of *Caereris* we must supply *aedem*). It occurs especially in the following cases: —

- a) In expressing briefly actions, views and judgments, where instead of the verbs, *facere, dicere, judicare, censere, statuere* and the like, with an adverb, the adverb alone is found, as: *quanto Stoici melius* (sc. *censent*).
- b) In the conversational style, and hence, in dialogue, an object is often found without a governing verb, as: *sed quid hos* (sc. *commemoro?*); *verum haec alias* (sc. *tractabimus*). In dialogue *inquit, respondit* are often omitted.

2. Brachylogy, or the shortening and contraction of sentences. In ellipsis there is an actual omission of an element essential to the grammatical resolution of the sentence, but in brachylogy the omission is only apparent, since the element is really involved in some part of the sentence. The following cases occur:

- a) In coördinate (occasionally also in subordinate sentences), a predicate common to the different clauses is expressed but once, and hence must be supplied (and often in a different form from that expressed) in the other clause or clauses, as: *beate vivere alii in alio* (sc. *ponunt*), *vos in voluptate ponitis*.
- b) An affirmative word must often be supplied from a negative word expressed; most frequently in antithetic clauses introduced by adversative adverbs, as: *dico* from *nego*, *jubeo* from *veto*, *volo* from *nolo*, *quisque* from *nemo*, *ut* from *ne*, etc.
- c) From a verb with a specific meaning, one with a general meaning (as *facere*) must often be supplied. This was common in the time of Livy in the expression: *nihil, aliud quam*, as: *per biduum nihil aliud quam steterunt parati ad pugnam*.

3. Zeugma. This is a species of brachylogy. It con-

sists in applying a verb to several subjects or objects which in its strict sense can apply only to one. Only such verbs can be so used as are capable of being taken in a narrower, or wider sense in different cases, as: *meque vosque* in omnibus rebus juxta *geram* (for *me geram vosque habebo*).

REM. 1. The sudden breaking off of the discourse from the effect of some strong feeling is called *aposiopësis* (*reticentia*), as: *quos ego* (sc. *punirem*). This is a rhetorical figure and does not belong here.

4. Abridged comparison. In comparative expressions there is often an abridgement by comparing the attribute of one object, not with the attribute of another object, but directly with the other object itself, as: *testis est Phalaris, cujus est praeter ceteros* (for: *credulitatem ceterorum*) *nobilitata credulitas*.

5. Pleonasm. This is the opposite of the figures before named. It is the introduction of a word, which, in a grammatical point of view is superfluous, since the idea is contained in some other word. The desire of perspicuity or emphasis is generally the cause of pleonasm. The demonstrative pronouns are oftenest used pleonastically, as: *is est sapiens, quem quaerimus, is est et beatus*.

REM. 2. The grammatical pleonasms should be distinguished from the rhetorical pleonasms, which, for the purpose of strengthening an idea or making it more palpable, employ two or even more words of a similar signification, as: *famã prius praecepta res erat*.

REM. 3. A verb of sensation and perception, instead of being followed by an Acc. with the Infin., often takes *sic* or *ita*, and is followed in a subordinate clause by *ut* and another verb of sensation or perception upon which the Infin. depends, as: *de morte (Epicurus) ita sentit, ut, dissoluto animante, sensum extinctum putet* (for *sentit sensum extinctum*).

6. Blending of sentences. Of this there are two cases to be noticed.

a) Where the subject of the subordinate clause, for the purpose of giving it more prominence, is transferred

to the principal clause and made either the object or subject of the verb of that clause; in the latter case the construction becomes personal instead of being impersonal, as it would have been without the transfer. *Nosti Marcellum*, quam tardus sit (for *nosti*, quam tardus sit Marcellus). *Quidam* saepe in parva pecunia perspicuntur, quam sint lenes, (for *perspicitur*, quam lenes sint *quidam*).

- b) Where the principal sentence is blended into one with the subordinate (intermediate) sentence, by being made dependent upon the subordinate sentence and expressed generally by the Acc. with the Infin., as: *Epicurei quemadmodum asseverant, ex corpusculis, concurrentibus temere atque casu, mundum esse perfectum* (for: quemadmodum Ep. ass., *mundus est perfectus.*)

7. **Anacoluthon** (non sequitur). This figure is used, where the construction with which a sentence is commenced, is not continued through, but is changed into another, which grammatically does not correspond with the former, but logically, i. e. in signification and meaning, is equivalent to it. Anacoluthon arises from a vivid mode of representation, or an effort to impart perspicuity, brevity, strength or propriety, to the discourse. Anacoluths are of two kinds, grammatical and rhetorical, there are also instances where they are to be attributed to carelessness in the writer. Grammatical anacoluths arise mostly from the introduction of parentheses, where the construction following the parenthesis is adapted rather to the substance of the parenthesis than to the part of the sentence before the parenthesis.

REM. 4. To anacoluths belongs the so called *Anantapodōton*, which arises, where, in antitheses and divisions the second member of the antithesis or division is not wholly wanting, but not constructed so as to correspond to the first, as where, instead of *deinde* after *primum*, *etiam* or *vero* is used, or the construction is so changed as to have no reference to it.

EXERCISES ON THE SYNTAX.

ON § 80.

Time flees.* I write, you read. The wise [man] is happy. It is sweet and becoming to die for [our] country. A is either short or long. I write. Run ye. They say the enemy is near. He brought (*perducere*) the affair to this. Romulus was king. To live well is to live honorably (*honeste*). The substance (*argumentum*) of the book is this.

ON § 81.

A friend is faithful. Virtue is beautiful. Romulus was the first king of the Romans. Tomyris was queen of the Scythians. Athens was the abode of all the arts. Iphigenia was priestess (*sacerdos*, c. g.) of Diana. No one becomes good by chance. No one is born rich. The rich often become (*evadere*) beggars. Numa Pompilius was elected (*perj.*) king by the Romans. Piety is justly considered the foundation of all the virtues. The renown of Roman bravery will remain forever (= eternal). Demosthenes is justly considered the most renowned orator of the Greeks. Lycurgus appeared (*perf.* of *existere*) the defender of his country. Aristides was called the just by the Athenians. The sun appears to us smaller than it is. This is the fountain of all renowned deeds. Tell me what is the cause of your grief? What I was at Cannae, this you are to-day. A great multitude assembled from all sides (*undique*). A part were tortured, a part exposed (*obicere*) to the beasts. Honor is not to be considered a disgrace (*ignominia*). The games were called Megalisia. The sun is the brightest (*lucidus*) of all things. Alexander, king of the Macedonians, carried on (*perf.*) war with Darius, king of the Persians. Cnaeus and Publius Scipio (*plur.*), the two thunderbolts of war, died suddenly in Spain. The divine is eternal, the human frail. Castor and Pollux were seen fighting (= to fight) from horses. Grammar and music were formerly united. Night and booty delayed (*remoror*) the enemy. Father and mother are dead. Labor and pleasure are by nature dissimilar (*dissimilis*). The king and royal fleet left (*proficiscor*) together. Reason and speech are a

* For rules on the arrangement of words, see p. 112.

bond (vinculum) of union (societas) of the whole human race. By food and drink hunger and thirst are allayed (depellere). The mind and spirit and counsel and sentiment of a state are (= is) placed in the laws. These words would be (= have themselves) well, if either Socrates or Antisthenes should speak [them]. In assisting (gerundive) men, either [their] character or fortune is accustomed to be regarded (spectare). We see all fields and seas serving (parens) for the utility of man. I and my brother returned (perf.) yesterday from a journey. I and my brother learn, thou and thy brother play. We and thy parents rejoice at (de) thy return. This both I and my Cicero will demand. I and the Roman people declare (indicere) and make war upon the people of the ancient Latins.

ON §§ 83, 84.

Remember death. I love the day. The letter is written. I rejoice at (abl.) the arrival of the friend. I favor thee. I am favored. I go into the city. They go into the city. I revolve thy counsel with myself. Socrates gained (perf. of *parere*) immortal glory to himself. The Suevi wash themselves in rivers. The air (aer) is moved by us, for wherever we go, whenever we move, it seems *as it were* (quasi) to give place and yield (cedere). Calphurnius sets out for Rome. Upon astronomy (astrologia) we hear that Caius Sulpitius has bestowed (ponere) labor and care. I desire indeed, and long since desire to visit (visere) Alexandria. Ambassadors were sent to Rome by the Saguntini, asking aid for the war now evidently (haud dubie) threatening. The city was captured by the enemies, but the citizens had already deserted it. God has created the whole earth. Hannibal vanquished the Romans in (abl.) the second Punic war. All the rest of us (ceteri), noble and ignoble, are (perf.) without favor, without authority. Carthage was destroyed by Scipio. When I was writing these things, all [things] were in expectation. Those were called Sophists, who philosophized for the sake of ostentation and gain. Music flourished in Greece, and all studied it, nor was he thought sufficiently cultivated by learning, who was ignorant [of it]. So long as thou shalt be fortunate thou wilt number many friends. Sorrow is a disturbance of the mind; a wise man, therefore, will always *be free from* (vacare) it. You will not desert me. If we shall have fulfilled our duties we shall be happy (beatus). In a few days I shall have returned. Jugurtha immediately will obey (= be obedient to) your commands. But if the soul is destined to die with the body, yet you will piously and sacredly (inviolata) cherish (= preserve) our memory.

Twice thence (deinde) after the reign of Numa, Janus was closed. This third epistle I have written to you on the same day. *On the day before* (pridie) the Ides of February, before light, I have written you this letter.

ON § 85.

The view of Epicurus concerning the highest good, I cannot approve. Why should we doubt concerning (de) the immortality of the soul (plur.)? We should love our native country! Let us bear with equanimity, all which happens to us! The principles of virtue we would not neglect! The beginning (principium *plur.*) of all things should be taken (ducere) from the immortal gods! What *has fallen to the lot* (obtingere) of each one, this let him hold fast to (tenere). O that all would strive after virtue! Without thy aid, I had been the most unhappy man. O that thou hadst been silent! What should I have answered? Flatter ye not bad men. Thou shouldst obey [thy] parents and teachers. Scholars should respect (vereri) their teachers.

ON § 86.

The king lived at the [temple] of Jupiter Stator. Cicero's Tullia was very dear to him. The wicked separate themselves from the good. *There is the greatest difference* (plurimum interest) between a learned and a rude man. Prodicus of Cos (Ceus), Hippius of Elea (Eleus) and other sophists were held in great honor. Antistius concealed himself in the interior of (intimus) Macedonia. All right and praiseworthy things are referred to this. The business was given that he should refit thirty old long galleys. This is considered a voluptuous, delicate, effeminate (voluptuarius, delicatus, mollis) discipline. The nation of the Tyrians first either taught or learned letters. The Roman senate met often (frequens). Cicero first brought (traducere) philosophy from Greece into Latium. I omit Greece and that Athens, the inventress of all the sciences (doctrina). [I] Themistocles have come to thee. Baetra (neut. plur.) the head of the region is situated under the mountain. I do not wish the same things [as] an old man, which I wished [when] a boy. I have seen your zeal [while] a young man. Sons censure their own father. My own fault alone cannot be corrected. We delay, one waiting for another. The other things were deferred, each to be done in its own time.

ON § 88.

1. We pity those who repent (= whom it repents) of their faults. A scholar, who loathes labor, will not make progress in

literature. Who would not be ashamed of ignorance? Many are dissatisfied with their fortune. I pity thee, my boy! We should pity those, who, by fortune, not by wickedness, find themselves (esse) in adversity (miseriae, arum). The truth needs not approbation. The rich are often greedy after greater riches. A good scholar *occupies himself zealously* (studiosus sum) with literature. The ancient Germans were very eager for war. The people (gens) of the Gauls were very greedy of gold.

2. Vespasian was unmindful of injuries (offensa, ae). They live happily who are conscious of no wickedness. The mind remembers the past, perceives (cernere) the present [and] foresees the future. The Romans were very skilful in war. Deserters (perfuga, ae) very familiar (= acquainted) with the country, had spied out (explorare) the march of the enemies. The spirit of man is ignorant of (nescius) [its] future fortune (fatum). Cinna forgot (perf.) the favors which he had received of Augustus. Remind not the wretched of his wretchedness (plur.). The soldiers, mindful of [their] former bravery, fought (perf.) spiritedly. We should forget favors conferred (conferre), [but] remember [those] received. The people of the Samnites were very skilful in war. The Scythians were unskilful in literature and the arts. The Romans always longed (appetens sum) after fame and were eager for praise. We hate the man despising divine and human laws. Camels endure (patiens sum) hunger and thirst.

3. Pausanias, king of the Lacedaemonians, was accused of treason. The Athenians charged (insimulare) Socrates with impiety (impietas adversus deos) and condemned him to death. Cicero charged (coarguere) Verres with the greatest avarice. Roscius was accused of parricide. Miltiades was accused of treachery and condemned to death, but afterwards was absolved from capital punishment (caput). Man alone of (ex) so many kinds of living beings is partaking of reason. The drunken [man] is not master of his understanding (mens). Alexander, king of the Macedonians, was not master of his anger. Beasts are destitute of reason and speech. Bravery is peculiar to man in the highest degree (maxime). The earth is full of various herbs, flowers and trees. The age of Augustus was productive of good poets, [but] destitute of good orators. Sicily is very productive of grain.

4. Inconsiderateness is inherent in youth, providence in old age. To the Romans, in (abl.) the time of Augustus, belonged almost the whole of the then known circle of the earth. What belongs to me, belongs also to my friends. Great bravery was

inherent in the Roman soldiers. It is the duty of the wise to teach the ignorant. It is a sign of inconstancy, now to trust and now to distrust the very same men. It is our duty to defend our country. It is the duty of the scholar, to apply himself with all zeal, to the study of the liberal arts and letters. It is not always a quality of the very same man, to think correctly and to express his thoughts elegantly in (abl.) discourse. A man of elevated soul despises riches. Caesar was not of large stature, but of a brave mind and a fierce spirit. The fleet of the enemies consisted of 253 ships. Cato *possessed* (= was of) a remarkable (singularis) wisdom in all things.

5. In every (omnis) service, we should value the will of the giver the highest. Alexander valued Hephaestion very high. For how much has thy father sold [his] garden? *for just so much* (tantumquod), as (quantum) he *gave for* (= bought) it. We despise the men who esteem virtue [but] little. Pericles valued Anaxagoras, his teacher, very much. For how much did you buy this book? Parents are much interested, that [their] children be brought up well. I am much interested, that you apply yourselves with all zeal to literature. All good men are much interested, to be loved by others. We are much interested in this, what good men judge concerning us.

6. Homer is the oldest (vetus) of all the Greek poets. Socrates was the wisest of all the Greeks. No one of the Romans surpassed Cicero in (abl.) eloquence. Tarquinius Superbus was the last of the Roman kings. Virtue has in itself sufficient protection for a peaceful life. The less honor there is to literature, so much the less studies there are. We draw much pleasure from literature. *What kind* (quid) of business art thou pursuing? The scholar should be diligent in school, not so much (tam) on account of his teachers, as on his own account. We do much on account of friends, which we should not do on our own account. The Greeks built before Troy, a horse like a mountain. Many Romans had houses like mountains. Misfortune is an occasion for virtue. We should strive to obtain intercourse with (gen.) good men. Not the fear of punishment but the love of virtue should keep us from wrong. The memory of renowned men will be obscured by no oblivion. The passion for honor is a hard mistress.

ON § 89

1. We assist him with delight who has assisted us. No one of the Thebans could equal Alcibiades in bodily powers. The enemies, whom the Romans followed swiftly, could not escape their

hands. We should imitate those who love virtue. What becomes boys, often does not become men. It is our duty to assist the wretched. Flee the bad and emulate the good. The soldiers made (= drew) a trench 600 feet long, 8 feet broad, 10 feet deep. Death no one can escape. Not courage, but strength (plur.) failed our soldiers. Troy was besieged (perf.) 10 years by the Greeks. A long time the Lacedemonians held (perf.) the supremacy of Greece. Theophrastus died (perf.) 84 years old (natus). In hatred against the Romans no one equalled (aequiparare) Hannibal.

2. Nicomedes, king of Bithynia, by his will, made the Roman people his heir. The Romans called the supreme (summus) council (= counsel) senate. The people chose Ancus Martius king. Duty demands, that (*ut* with subj.) we behave (praestare) ourselves religiously and uprightly not only in great but also in small matters. We should acknowledge virtue as the greatest good to men. Children should conceal nothing from [their] parents. Jugurtha, by ambassadors, entreated Metellus for peace. The ambassadors of Darius, requested (petere) help of the Carthaginians against Greece. Give me the book, which I *long since* (jam pridem) requested (perf.) of thee. I ask of thee thy opinion. Grain was demanded by the citizens. Reason makes man lord of the earth. Recompense for labor we consider honorable. The Parian marble the Greeks considered precious. [They] are ridiculous, who teach others what they have not themselves learned (= ascertained). Eumenes concealed from all, the journey, *which he was designing to make* (Subj. periphrast.). The greatest affairs were concealed from me by thee. Cicero, informed (= instructed) by the ambassador of all [things], commanded (imperare) the pretors, that they should take (deprehendere) the Allobroges by ambuscade. The ambassadors demanded back of the enemies, all which had been taken from the citizens during (per) the truce. Socrates demanded of those, *who enjoyed his instruction* (ejus consuetudine utebantur), no money for his instruction. Caesar demanded of the Edui, the grain which they had promised (polliceri). Cicero was asked his opinion in the senate.

ON § 90.

1. We live not merely for ourselves, but also for our country and other men. The dog is like the wolf. A good citizen obeys the laws with delight. Whoever reviles others, reviles himself [also]. It is easy to convince a good man of the value of virtue. It is base to disparage others (alter). It is a mark of an ill-dis-

posed man, never to praise a good man. They have many friends, upon whom fortune smiles. Philosophy cures sick (aeger, gra, grum) souls. We are attached (studere) to those who preserve (conservare) [their] fidelity. The upright [man] envies nobody, [but] is envied by many. Save time, O boys! Scarcely any one (ullus) of mortals, does fortune always smile upon. *It is better* (praestat), by the capital punishment of one wicked man, to restrain the wickedness of many, than on account of (propter) many wicked [men] to spare one. To the priestesses (sacerdos, ôtis) of Vesta, it was not permitted to marry a man.

2. Cicero possessed a remarkable eloquence. Man has many faculties of body and soul. Sicily (Sicilia, ae) has a volcanic mountain, called Aetna. Riches conduce to the destruction of (= are for destruction to, etc.) many men. Bad customs conduce to the destruction of a state. Just laws serve for safety to a state. Attalus, a king of Asia, gave his kingdom to the Romans for a present. Caesar left behind 500 soldiers for protection to the camp. Bravery is imputed to the Romans for praise. Caesar came to the city, besieged by the enemies, for aid. Poverty should be imputed to no man for a reproach. From whom hast thou received this book as a present? The father has given me the book for a present. Xerxes, king of the Persians, gave to Themistocles Myus (Myus, untis), a city of Asia, for a present. Industry is imputed for praise to the scholar.

ON § 91.

1. We see with the eyes, hear with the ears, smell with the nose (nares, ium), taste with the palate, feel with the nerves. Very high mountains are covered with perpetual (perennis) snow and ice. We often obtain more by goodness than by force. The Roman state was delivered from destruction by Cicero. God has enclosed (sepire) and covered (vestire) the eyes with very delicate membranes. We ought to aid those most, who need (indigere) our aid most. They are all rich who are endowed with virtue. The fortunate abound in friends. The unfortunate *are destitute* (carere) of friends. The sun fills all [things] with its light. Aemilius, the Roman consul, enriched (ditare) his soldiers with great booty. Our mind is filled (afficere) with joy when we have done something good. Greece abounded in great poets. The body has need of food and drink (potio). When we act rightly, we have need of neither dissimulation (simulatio) nor deception (fallacia). Any one you please of the sailors can govern the ship in (abl.) a quiet sea, [but] when (ubi) a violent

(*saevus*) storm has arisen, then they have need of a pilot. The Helots (*Helôta*, *ae*) among the Lacedaemonians, performed the office of slaves. That (is) ship performs (*conficere*) the course best which has (*uti*) the most skilful pilot. Many men abuse reason. Discharge scrupulously the office committed to thee. The covetous [man] does not enjoy the riches which he has. The Greeks anciently ate acorns. Alexander possessed himself of the kingdom of Darius.

2. Scholars in school, are judged of and estimated not according to rank (= genius), but good manners, a teachable spirit, and active (*acer*) industry. The wise man measures men not according to fortune but according to character. There is nothing more amiable than virtue. Ireland is smaller by a half than Britain. Carthage was founded eighty-two years before Rome. Cimon, five years after he had been expelled, was recalled to [his] native country. In the six hundred and second year *after the founding of the city Rome* (*post urbam conditam*) the third war against the Carthaginians was undertaken. The friend whose arrival I had expected three days before, has come to-day, and will return again after ten days. Chrysogonus bought (*perf.*) a Corinthian vase for an immense price. For how much has thy father sold his horse? he has sold it for so much (*tantum*) as (*quantum*) he bought it for. The war has cost (*stare*) us much blood. An ungrateful mind is unworthy of favors. Virtue and wisdom are worthy of man. Receive those into friendship whom thou shalt consider worthy of thy love. The wise man endures the hardship of life with equanimity.

3. Xerxes was conquered (*perf.*) more by the wisdom of Themistocles than by the arms of Greece. The minds of men are often tormented by distressing (*acerbus*, *a*, *um*) cares. We ought to grieve at faults, to rejoice at [their] correction (*correctio*). It is the part of a bad man to glory in his faults. Greece formerly flourished (= bloomed) in power (*opes*), dominion, [and] glory. Crassus suffered from an immoderate desire for riches. Caesar, by his arrival, humbled (*frangere*, *perf.*) the Gauls trusting to (*fretus*) their bravery. The wise [man] does not trust to the stability of fortune. Upon the goods of the soul alone (*solus*, *a*, *um*) can we depend (*niti*). Nature is contented with little attention. The Romans by sea (*mare*) and by land have carried on many wars. The colonies of the Syrians were spread (*diffundere*) over almost the whole circle of the world. The Romans awaited in a suitable place the attack of the enemies. In the spring the swallows return to us, in the autumn they go away. In the months of October and November, the fruits are collected from (*ex*) the trees.

ON § 92.

In Sparta, the boys were scourged (*caedēre*) with thongs (*lorum*) at the altar of Diana. Cicero, in Rhodes, *attached himself* (*se applicare*) to Molon. Artemisia, the wife of a king of Caria, built at Halicarnassus a famous (*nobilis*) sepulchre. In the times of Pericles, many renowned men lived at Athens. Hannibal was born at Carthage. Themistocles, presented with great presents by Artaxerxes, returned (*perf.*) to Asia and established (*constituere*) his abode at Magnesia. The corpse of Alexander was removed (*transferre, perf.*) from Babylon, the chief city of Assyria, to Alexandria, a city of Egypt. Dionysius, the tyrant, fled (*perf.*) from Syracuse, the most powerful city of Sicily to Corinth, a very renowned (*celeber*) city of Greece. Cato took away (*perf.*) his life at Utica, a city of Africa. Hannibal was recalled from Italy to Carthage. Scipio often *hurried away* (*evolare*) from the city into the country, [and] then returned to business from the country into the city. Alexander died (*perf.*) at Babylon, the chief city of Assyria. The soldiers returned (*perf.*) home joyful at the victory. The soul in the body is as if in a foreign house. In the time of Phyrrius, the first elephants came to Rome. Nowhere *does one live* (*vivitur*) so conveniently (*commode*) as at home. Archimedes was killed (*perf.*) at Syracuse, a city of Sicily, by a Roman soldier. Marius died at his house an old man. Laelius *hastened forth* (*evolare*) into the country from the city, as if (*tanquam*) from chains. The superiority (*virtus*) of Caesar had been acknowledged at home and abroad. Socrates brought back to the house the very same expression which he had carried forth from it. Cicero often lived in the country. The poet Ovid lived *a long time* (*alliquamdiu*) at Tomi, a city of Moesia, in exile.

ON § 93.

The Gauls were conquered (*perf.*) by Caesar. Caesar has related much of the Gauls. Cornelius Nepos wrote (*perf.*) a book concerning the life and customs of Cato. The life and customs of Cato were written by Cornelius Nepos. The citizens, besieged by the enemies, placed all hope in the wisdom and firmness of the general. From whom hast thou heard this news concerning the arrival of my father? from thy brother. We would place the highest good in virtue! The wise man fixes (*defigere*) his thoughts not upon pleasure but upon virtue.

ON § 94.

1. Children love their parents. It is the duty of the king to

look out for the welfare of his subjects. Lysander, king of the Lacedemonians left behind (*perf.*) a great report of himself. With delight we pity thee. Each of us will always recollect thee and thine. I shall always preserve a recollection of you. The best part of us is immortal. A part of us had remained at home. Many of us have deserved well of (*de*) our country. The general and his soldiers have distinguished themselves in battle by bravery. Men use beasts for their advantage. [His] friends exhorted Darius, that (*ut* with *Subj.*) he should subject Greece to himself. The king Eurystheus commanded (*imperare*) Hercules, that (*ut* with *Subj.*) he should bring (*afferre*) to him the arms of the queen of the Amazons. Cleopatra admitted (*admittere*) a viper (*aspis, idis*) to herself and was killed (*extinguere, perf.*) by its poison. After the encounter at Issus, the mother of Darius, his wife and his daughter, were taken captives. We ourselves ought to govern (*imperare*) ourselves. Virtue itself protects itself. Many are wise for themselves indeed, but not for others. The (*is*) general cannot restrain (*continere*) [his] army, who does not restrain himself (*se ipsum*). The companions of Ulysses perished (*perf.*) by their own folly. Many evils happen to us by our own fault (*culpa*).

2. Each one is the architect (*faber*) of his fortune. Assign to each his own. With the greatest difficulty does each one judge correctly of himself. Each one ought to protect his own. Precisely the best [man] undertakes most easily dangers and labors for his country. Money has always been despised by the very best [men]. Every fifth year, all Sicily was rated (*perf.*). Demosthenes and Cicero were the most renowned orators of antiquity; to which dost thou give the preëminence (*palma*)? Virgil, Ovid and Horace were very distinguished poets of the Romans; which dost thou consider the best? Each is a fault, to believe every one and [to believe] no one. I believe neither, neither thee nor thy brother. Both, Homer and Virgil, were distinguished poets; the one of them was a Greek, the other a Roman. Both, the Romans and the enemies, fought bravely. One excels in this, another in that. One occupies himself with this, another with that.

3. They called those philosophers sophists, who pursued philosophy for gain or ostentation. They run. *Honorable conduct* (= the honorable) excites (*movere*) the approbation of those with whom we live. They will censure me. We deride fools. The perversities (*pravitas*) of the soul, one properly (= correctly) calls faults. *The means of living* (*victus*) and care of the body, we refer to health and strength, not to property. How

short is the longest life of man, when one compares (subj.) it to eternity! What one has promised he must make good. By entreaties, one often effects (perficere) more than by force. It is becoming, not to censure that which one does not understand (intelligere, *Subj.*).

ON § 95.

A thousand soldiers have defended the city spiritedly against 3000 enemies which assaulted it. All (omnis) Gaul which is embraced (continere) by the Pyrenees mountains, the Alps and the Sevens (mons Gebenna) is 3,200,000 paces in extent (= circuit). The leader of our army has pursued the enemy with 1000 soldiers. As at Rome two consuls, so at Carthage two kings, were annually elected. The Roman legions consisted (esse) at certain times of 5000 footmen and 300 horsemen. The army of the enemy had pitched 2 camps, ours 3. The father wrote a letter to each of his 4 sons. Very often by a truce, have the already enfeebled powers of an army been restored (reparare). Two acres of land a-piece were divided (perf.) to the people. The mother gave to each child 1 apple, 6 pears, 7 plums, 8 cherries. The enemies pitched (perf.) 3 camps, each of which 3 trenches surrounded.

ON §§ 96, 97.

To a cultivated and learned man, to think is to live. They, whose fathers or ancestors have distinguished (praestare) themselves by some renown, seek to excel in the same kind of praise. Practice teaches to bear (ferre) labor. Without virtue nobody can be happy. The army hastens, in order to deliver the city from the siege. The Romans sent (perf.) ambassadors to Delphi, in order to consult the oracle. What is so pleasant (jucundus) to perceive and to bear, as a discourse adorned with wise thoughts and weighty (gravis) words? An unripe grape is bitter to taste. The fish is easy to catch in disturbed water.

ON § 98.

It is sufficiently known that good men must contend with the bad. Socrates was accustomed by inquiry (percontari) and questioning (= asking) to elicit the sentiments (opinio) of those with whom he discoursed (disserere). One must come for aid, not merely to the body, but much (multo) more to the understanding and the mind. We should forget injuries. Who does not know, that the hope of impunity is a very great enticement

to (gen.) sin (peccare). All the citizens burned (exardescere, *perf.*) with desire to fight for the safety of their country. One must use the occasion. Learn, O boys, early the art of using time wisely! Few men are fitted (*idoneus* with *dat.*) to speak. Man is born to act. The Persians were very skilful in (gen.) riding. The character (*mos, plur.*) is discovered (= uncovered) in (inter) playing freely. From delaying (*cunctari*) Fabius was called the delayer. One must abstain from ignoble pleasures.

ON § 99.

When anger moves thee very much (*maxime*), thou must curb thy tongue very carefully. The art of governing (*gubernare*) a state well and wisely, is very difficult. Many are more desirous of increasing [their] riches than of securing [their] virtue. We should account wisdom the art of living well and peacefully. The camel is fitted (*aptus, a, um*, with *dat.*) for bearing great loads. Water is very useful for preserving our health. Gymnastic exercises avail very much (*plurimum*) for (ad) confirming the health. The Phenicians were very skilful in the art of governing ships. No possession is to be esteemed higher than virtue. The soldiers tried (*experiri*) all [things] in order to (ad) capture the city. The first book of Cicero's Tusculan Disputations treats (*est*) of the contempt of death; the second of the enduring of pain; the third of the relieving of sorrow. Socrates passed (*perf.*) [his] whole life in improving the morals of others. To be drawn (*abdūci*) from *active duties* (*res gerere*) by the effort to investigate truth, is *inconsistent with duty* (*contra officium*). The life of the wise man consists in the exercise of virtue. Good parents bestow (*collocare in* with *abl.*) all care upon the proper (= good) bringing up of their children. Some (*nonnulli*) sports are not unprofitable for (*dat.*) sharpening (*acuere*) the wits (*ingenium*) of boys. The contempt of death avails very much in delivering the soul from fear. Nature has given (*tradere*) to woman the attending to (*procurare*) and managing (*administrare*) the domestic affairs (*res*). Caesar gave up (*concedere*) the taken city to the soldiers for plundering (*diripere*). Good parents cause (*curare*) their children to be well instructed.

ON § 100.

1. What do eighty years, which are spent (*exigere*) in (per) inactivity (*inertia*), profit (*juvare*) a man? Two friends are like one soul which dwells in two bodies. When Alexander had possessed himself of Egypt he built Alexandria. Hipparchus, a son of Pisistratus, fell in the battle of Marathon (*Marathonius, a*,

um), while he was bearing arms against his country. Sulla was sent to Asia, in order to carry on war with the king Mithridates. After the enemies had possessed themselves of the city, they plundered it. *By day* (interdiu) we do not see the stars, because they are obscured by the light of the sun. We have confidence in upright men, even if they are not sworn. The enemies dispersed (dilābi, *perf.*) into the city, in order to protect themselves by (abl.) the walls (moenia). We cannot live happily (beate), if we fear death.

2. When we strive against nature, we labor in vain. Men have invented innumerable arts, while nature taught [them]. What solicitude would torment the wicked, if the fear of capital punishment were taken away? Since God guides human affairs, we should be destitute of all fear. When humanity is extirpated from the soul, the man ceases to be man. When Cato had read through (passive) the *Phaedo* of Plato, he took his life. Under the reign of Augustus, the Roman empire was rated (*perf.*). After the troops were drawn together the general determined (*perf.*) to attack the camp of the enemies. After taking away piety and religion, disturbance of life and a great confusion follow. At the instigation (by *auctor*) of the magians, Xerxes was to have burned (inflamare) the temples of Greece. The wise man remains rich even after the loss (amittere) of all the gifts of fortune.

ON § 101.

Father left (*proficisci*) yesterday. Apelles painted beautifully. These things are both said and believed most stupidly (*stulte*). The customs and institutions of life indeed we keep better, but our ancestors surely tempered (*temperāre*) the state with better institutions and laws. The wise man, surely, joyful escapes from this darkness (*plur.*) into the light. Take from me this pain, or at least diminish it. A magnificent voice, in truth, and worthy of a great and wise man! A thing truly difficult. That is indeed the greatest thing for the mind itself, to see the mind. I indeed deliver up to you a stable kingdom if you shall be good, but if evil, weak. Brutus touched the earth with his mouth (*osculum*) doubtless, because it is the common mother of all mortals. Before others, evidently, Demosthenes learned to speak. Not all things, evidently, have the gods given to the same man. Whom do I adorn? those, surely, who themselves are ornaments to the state. Yesterday I came to Cumanum, tomorrow, perhaps to thee. That truly is great, and I know not but (*an*) the greatest. I am not ignorant how uncertain the

minds of men are. Do not lie. Let there be no nocturnal sacrifices. Every one is (= no one is not) a kind judge to himself. A wise man is always (= never is not) happy. He said that he was not unwilling. Sometimes (= not never) likeness creates error. Some, whether by a certain felicity or goodness of nature, or by the discipline of their parents, follow the right way of life.

ON § 102.

Socrates and Plato were most wise. The senate and Roman people decreed (*decernere*) war. The rising of the sun and moon and other heavenly bodies (*sidus, ěris*). We should place the whole power of living well in strength (*robur, ěris*) and greatness of mind. Nothing has been both invented and perfected (*perficere*) at the same time. Take both me and my kingdom. Jupiter is accustomed neither to be angry nor to injure. Socrates did not at one time say this, at another, that. My pain is not only not diminished but even increased. It is not only not allowed to be angry, but not even to grieve. He is not brave but cowardly. A sesterce (*nummus*) is nothing (*obscurare*) in the riches of Croesus, yet it is a part of his riches. A short life has been given to us, yet the memory of a life *well spent* (*reditus, a, um*) is eternal. Whatever is said (*enunciare*), is either true or false. Noble men are able either to corrupt or to correct the morals of the state. Noble men, whether they begin to act rightly or badly, excel in each. There are three kinds of good and evil things, for they can be either in the mind (*plur.*), in the body, or without. Aristides was of about *the same age with* (*aequalis*) Themistocles, and thus he contended with him for the supremacy (*principatus, us*). All animals are mortal, but man is an animal, therefore man is mortal. She denies that I am her daughter; she is not then my mother. Why then do you hesitate to talk about this?

ON §§ 104, 105.

In whatever way the thing has itself, it is not permitted to thee to desert (*deserere*) the post committed to thee. Whoever that wretched [man] may be, let us lend him aid. The goods of the body and of fortune, however great they may be, are uncertain and frail. Wherever thou mayest be, thou shouldst live uprightly. Who is so powerful that he can *dispense with* (*carere*) the aid of others. Tell me what thou doest now, didst yesterday, and wilt do to-morrow. The friend related to me where he had

been, where he was, and where he would be. Who doubts that Hannibal had fought very bravely against the Romans. I do not doubt that our soldiers will bear off the victory over the enemy.

ON § 106.

I know that my body is mortal, [but] that my soul is immortal. Aristotle shows (= teaches), that the poet Orpheus never existed. It is known, that the Romans destroyed Carthage. Some philosophers believed that the *world came into existence* (nasci) by chance. Titus was unwilling that *any one* (quisquam) should go away from him sad. We hope that thou wilt soon return from (ex) the journey. Who can deny that God governs the whole world? It is known, that Hannibal fought very bravely against the Romans. History relates, that in the Persian wars (bella Persica), innumerable troops of the Persians were routed by the Greeks. Darius promised, that he would give 1000 talents to the murderer of Alexander. It is not permitted to many men to be idle. The Germans suffered no (non) wine to be imported (*importare*) to them. We should be willing (velle) to live with an inferior (inferior), as we wish a superior (superior) to live with us. There is no one who should not wish, that his children should be happy. Demosthenes did not permit that the Athenians should make peace with Philip, king of Macedon. It is related (tradi) that Aristides was the most just of all the Athenians. They relate that the Milesian Thales first (primus) predicted *an eclipse of the sun* (defectio solis). He who reigns well, must (necesse est) sometime (aliquando) have obeyed. We should (oportet) serve philosophy, in order that true freedom may fall to our lot. A good citizen should (oportet) prefer the dignity of the state to all his own advantages. Caesar bade (perf.) his soldiers to assault the city. Caesar caused (jubere) the city to be assaulted. The general forbade his soldiers to plunder the taken city. They say, that Ceres first (prima) taught the use of grain to men. Alexander allowed the grave of Cyrus to be opened. It seems as though the sun were smaller than the earth. It is said, that the war is finished.

ON § 107.

Before old age, we should look out that we live well, in old age, that we die well. If all [things] happen (fieri) by fate, nothing can admonish us, that we should be more cautious. Nature in-

cites us to strive to obtain the agreeable, to flee the disagreeable. The sun effects, that all trees, plants and herbs bloom and reach maturity. It comes to pass by (abl.) nature, that children are loved by [their] parents. Parents look out, that [their] children are not surrounded by bad men. Themistocles advised, that the Athenians should desert the walls and defend themselves with ships. The soldiers demanded, that the citizens should deliver up their arms. Many praise others in order that they may be praised [in turn] by them. The Gauls, after they had received the gold of the Romans (abl. abs.), returned, in order to besiege the capitol. Caesar commanded the soldiers not to go out from the camp. He is happy (beatus), to whom it happens to obtain (assēqui) wisdom. The composing of the book concerning old age, was so delightful to Cicero, that it took from (abstergere) him all the burdens (onus) of age. In a short time, the minds coalesced into (abl.) so great friendship, that every distinction of rank (ordo et locus) was forgotten. So great is the multitude of stars, that they cannot be numbered. It happened, that the very same night in which Alexander the Great was born, the temple of the Ephesian Diana was burned (conflagrāre). There was a very great fear at Rome, that the Gauls would return the second time (itērum) to Rome. The Romans feared, that the victory would cost them much blood. All the citizens feared, that the peace would not be of longer continuance.

ON § 108.

Good parents do not cease (intermittunt) to exhort [their] children to virtue, in order that they may become better daily (in dies). All the soldiers believed that nothing would stand in the way of their gaining (adipisci) the victory. Superstition prevents attaining (= reaching) much true knowledge of things. No hindrance deterred Alexander from penetrating (penetrare) to the ocean. Nothing keeps a wise man from pursuing (studere) virtue. Avarice prevents men from enjoying the good [things] which they possess. Who [ever] contemplates (fut.) the heavens, the earth and the order of the whole world, will not doubt that there is a God. We do not doubt that our souls are immortal. The soldiers did not doubt, that they should bear off the victory over the enemies. It is not possible, that they who are contented with their lot do not live happily. We cannot forbear despising those who prefer money to virtue. Nothing was so sacred to the enemies who had captured the city, that they might not violate it. There was then no one in the city, who did not desire peace. There is almost nothing so difficult, that man by the exertion of his powers cannot do it.

ON § 109.

It is very agreeable to me that thou hast already returned from (ex) the journey. Thou doest well, that thou wishest to live in the country for the strengthening (gerundive) of thy health. We rejoice, that thou and thy brother have returned safe. It is a great kindness to boys that they are instructed in literature in school. We grieve very much, that you are not able to come. Socrates was unjustly accused by the Athenians, that he corrupted (corrumpere) the youth. Caesar praised the soldiers, that they had fought so spiritedly against the enemies. All citizens rejoiced, that the city was delivered from the siege. That Caesar was killed by Brutus, we complain (= censure). How great is the goodness of nature, that she produces so many, so various and so agreeable [things]!

ON § 110.

Who obeys modestly, seems worthy sometime (aliquando) to command. Every upright man is undeserving (non dignus est), that the ungrateful citizens should deride him. Fabricius was such, that he could not be corrupted by the money of Pyrrhus. The husbandmen cultivate the earth, in order that it may bear fruit. Caesar sent horsemen, who might pursue the fleeing enemy. History is *of that nature* (idoneus), that by it the mind of the boy may be cultivated. There are and have been philosophers, who think (censere) that God has no concern (procuratio) at all (omnio) about human affairs. Thou art worthy, that we should have confidence in thee in all things. There is no grief of the soul which may not be abated by length of time. There were philosophers, who said that pleasure is the highest good. Nero was not worthy to reign over the Romans. What (quis) so great advantage was there in prosperity, when thou hadst not a friend who would rejoice at it *in like manner* (aeque) as (ac) thyself? There was nothing so sacred, that it was not violated by the insolence of the enemy. You are not such (ii), that we should obey you. There is nothing by which a boy can please others more, than by modesty. I pronounce myself happy, that I have [a friend], who rejoices at my prosperity *even as* (aeque atque) I myself. There is no reason that we should fear death.

ON § 111.

We shall be happy, when we shall be free from passion (plur.). He who does not prevent (defendere) injury nor repel (propulsare)

re) it when he can, acts (facere) unjustly. A virtuous man will be happy (beatus), even when he shall have lost all the gifts of fortune. Since the weather is clear, we will take a walk. As Caesar came out of the wood, he was surrounded (perf.) by the enemies. As Alexander had taken Thebes, he spared (perf.) the family of the poet Pindar. As soon as Verres had reached (perf.) the province, he gave (tradere) himself wholly (totus) to avarice. After the general had fallen, the soldiers fled (perf.). As (ubi) the Romans heard that the enemies approached, they went (perf.) spiritedly against them.

The enemies did not cease (desistere) to flee, before they came (perf.) to the Rhine. When Epaminondas went to a [social] circle, in which a conversation was (subj.) held (habere) either concerning the state or concerning philosophy, he never went away from there before the conversation had been finished. Before thou reapest, thou must (oportet) sow. Mithridates thrust through (transfigere) Datamas with a sword, and before any one (quisquam) could come to his assistance (succurrere), killed [him]. As long as (quoad) the city was guarded by the citizens, the enemies did not dare (perf.) to assault it. I shall wait until thou returnest. Epaminondas held back the iron in [his] body, until (quoad) it was announced (renuntiare, perf.) that the Boeotians had conquered. The Romans waited until the enemies had approached the camp. The soldiers remained in the camp until the day dawned (illucescere).

ON §§ 112, 113, 114.

The laws we obey, not from (propter) fear, but we follow them, because we judge this is most salutary. As Xenocrates was asked, why he was almost always silent (silere), he answered: Because it has often (aliquando) repented me to have spoken (dicere), but never to have been silent (tacere). If you hate those whom you should love, you act wickedly. If we discharge our office religiously, we shall enjoy the good opinion (bona existimatio) of men. If we do not follow virtue, we cannot live peacefully (beate). If all [things] happened by fate, all (omnis) foresight would be useless. Fire becomes extinct if it is not nourished. We are ready to endure toils and burdens (= loads), if we may only obtain (adipisci) the victory. Folly thinks (credere), that it has never obtained (consequi) enough, although (etsi) it has obtained (adipisci) what it desires (concupiscere). Nobody, however wealthy he may be, can be without the aid of others. We should cultivate virtue (honestas), even if no advantage may follow it. The good [man] does not avenge himself

on his enemies, even if he has obtained (nancisci) an opportunity. It is a terrible (dirus) and abominable (abominandus) saying (= word): They may hate if only they fear.

ON § 115.

Most men strive eagerly to obtain riches and power, [and] neglect virtue, as if true prosperity rested not upon virtue, but riches. Always act thus (sic), as though thou wast seen and heard by others. The words of the orator were more acute than true, It did not escape Hannibal (fallo, *perf.*), that the enemies would despatch (gerere) affairs *with more spirit* (ferociter) than deliberation (consulto). The wise man abstains from too violent emotions of the soul. This book is somewhat difficult to understand. The greater and more divine the excellence in minds, so much the greater care they need (indigère). The more eminent (= higher) men are, so much the more condescending they should be to the more humble. The better one is, so much the more he serves his descendants. The better one is, so much the more his mind strives to obtain immortal fame. The better one is, *with so much the more difficulty* (difficile) he considers others bad.

ON § 116.

What each night and each day may bring [with itself], is uncertain. On account of fear I know not who I am. Who has said this? I know not, who has said this. When (quum) we behold (cernere) the whole earth, we cannot doubt, that a governor presides over it. Is the sun greater, or smaller than the earth? Is it possible that thou believest, that our souls decay after death? I doubt whether the news is true. Ere thou beginnest a thing, deliberate, whether it be good or bad. Has not God filled the earth with all good things? Was the world made (efficere) by chance, or by a divine power? Is thy brother at home? Yes. Is it possible that the three-headed Cerberus in the lower regions frightens thee? Wast thou yesterday at my house, or not? Tell me whether thou hast been at my house or not? I know not, whether I can come to thee to-morrow. Wilt thou go to walk to-day, or not? Tell me, whether thou wilt go to walk to-day, or not? Who knows, whether fortune will always smile upon him. There were philosophers, who doubted, whether the world was made by chance, or by the divine reason. Hast thou read the book which I lately sent thee? No. It is a question, whether wisdom makes men happy, or not. Will thy father

return to-morrow from (ex) [his] journey? Yes. Is the wise man alone to be accounted happy? Yes. Wast thou at home yesterday? No rather, I was far from home.

ON § 117.

Nobly Socrates said, that the nearest way to renown is, when one *exerts himself* (id agere) that he may be such as (qualis) he wishes to be considered. When ambassadors had come from king Mithridates requesting peace, Sulla answered, that he would not give it unless (nisi) he, after deserting the fields which he had taken, should return into his own kingdom (regnum). The ambassadors announced to the senate, that the Aeduans had pitched their tent in their territory and were laying waste the country; that the Romans should come and bring aid to them.

APPENDIX.

A. PROSODY.

§ 119. *Quantity of Syllables.*

PRELIMINARY REMARK. The general rules of quantity have already been given (§ 3) and should be reviewed before proceeding to the following special rules.

1. The *derived* word generally follows the quantity of its *primitive*, as: amor, amabilis, amicus, amator, redamo.

REM. 1. In *declension* are excepted: *lār, vās, pār, pēs, sāl, mās, bōs*, Gen. *lāris, pārīs, sālis*, etc.; — In the *verb* it is a general principle, that the forms of the different tenses have the same quantity as the tense-forms from which they are derived, i. e. either as the Pres. Perf. Sup. or Infin., according as they are derived from the one or the other; e. g. (*divido*), *divīdam*; (*divisi*), *divīseram*; (*divisum*), *divīsurus*; (*dividere*), *divīderem*.

REM. 2. Concerning the quantity of the Perf. and Sup. the following should be observed:

1) All *dissyllabic* perfects and supines lengthen the short vowel of the stem, when it is followed by a consonant, as : *vīdeo*, *vīdi*, *vīsum* ; *mōveo*, *mōvi*, *mōtum*, etc. (but *lūi*, *rūi*, *sūi*, according to § 3, 3).

Ten dissyllabic *supines* have the stem-syllable short : *dātum*, *stātum*, *rātum*, *sātum*, *ītum*, *quītum*, *cītum*, *lītum*, *sītum*, *rītum*, from : *do*, *sisto*, *reor*, *sero*, *eo*, *queo*, *cieo*, *lino*, *sino*, *ruo*. The compounds of *sto* have together with *stātum*, *stītum* also ; also two compounds of *nosco*, *nōtum*, viz. *cognosco* and *agnosco*, have in the supine : *cognītum*, *agnītum*.

2) *Reduplicated* perfects, besides the short syllable of reduplication, have also the stem-syllable following it short, as : *cado*, *cēcīdi*, *disco*, *dīdīci*, etc. (but *mōmōrdi*, *cūcūrri* from : *mordeo*, *curro*, are long according to § 3, 4, and *cēcīdi* (from *caedo*) according to § 3, 2).

To reduplicate perfects belong also : *dēdi*, *stēti*, *stīti* ; *tūli* is contracted from *tētūli* ; *bībi* comes, apparently, from an obsolete stem *bo* ; finally, *fīdi* and *scīdi* have rejected their syllable of reduplication.

REM. 3. In *derivation* and *composition* also, there are some departures from the general rule (Rule 1), as : *sōpor* and *sōpire*, *dūc* (in *dux*, *dūcis*) and *dūco*, *rēg*, (in *rex rēgis*) and *rēgo*, etc. But especially *uti*, *si* and *rē* in composition.

2. For the quantity of the *penult* we have the following alphabetical list. (The quantity of the penult in declension and conjugation is best learned from the paradigms.)

-*ācus*, -*ūcus*, -*ūca*, as : *merācus*, *cadūcus*, *lactūca* ; Exc. : -*ācus* in : *Aegyptiācus*, *Corinthiācus* and others of the kind ;

-*ādes*, and -*īdes* in Patronymics, as : *Priamiādes*, *Atlantiādes* ; but *ūdes* in Patronymics from primitives in *eus* and *cles*, as : *Pelides*, *Atrides*, *Heraclides*, and in *Belides*, *Lycurgīdes*, *Amphiarīdes*, *Coronides* ;

-*āgo*, -*ēgo*, -*īgo*, -*ūgo* in nouns, as : *vorāgo*, *vertīgo*, *lanūgo* (but the Greek *harpāgo* has *a* short) ;

-*āis*, -*ēis*, -*īis*, -*ōis*, -*ōis*, -*īne*, -*ōne* in Patronymics, as : *Ptolemāis*, *Chryseīs*, *Memphitis*, *Icariōtis*, *Minōis*, *Nerine*, *Acrisiōne* ; Exc. : *Danāis*, *Thebāis*, *Phocāis*, *Nerēis* ;

-*ālis*, -*ēlis*, -*ēla*, -*ūlis*, -*ūra*, as : *canālis*, *conjugālis*, *fidēlis*, *querēla*, *edūlis*, *pictāra* ;

-*āmen*, as : *exāmen*, *flāmen* ;

-*ānus*, -*āna*, -*ēnus*, -*ēna*, -*īnus*, -*īna*, -*ōnus*, -*ōna*, -*ūnus*, -*ūna*, as : *montānus*, *membrāna*, *egēnus*, *habēna*, *peregrīnus*, *canīnus*, *Gabinus*, *sagina*, *piscina* (except *pagina*), *patrōnus*, *annōna*, *tribūnus*,

- lacūna; but *īnus* is short in adjectives which express *time* or *material*, as: *crastīnus*, *diutīnus*, *cedrīnus*, *elephantīnus*, except in: *vespertīnus*, *matutīnus*, *repentīnus*;
- ārus*, -*ārīs*, -*ōrus*, -*ōsus*, as: *avārus*, *singulāris*, *canōrus*, *pilōsus*;
- Exc.: *barbārus*, *opipārus*, *hilāris*;
- ātīm*, -*ītīm*, -*ūtīm*, as: *privātīm*, *virītīm*, *tribūtīm*, (in *affūtīm*, *stātīm* the *a* belongs to the stem);
- āvus*, -*īvus*, *īva*, as: *octāvus*, *aestīvus*, *salīva*;
- ēdo*, -*īdo*, -*ūdo* in substantives, as: *aibēdo*, *cupīdo*, *consuetūdo*;
- ēgo*, see *āgo*;
- ēis*, see *āis*;
- ēlis*, *ēla*, see *ālis*;
- ēmus*, as: *extrēmus*;
- ēni* and -*īni* in distributive adjectives, as: *bīni*, *vicēni*;
- ēnus*, -*ēna*, see *ānus*;
- ēro*, -*īco* (*īcor*), -*īgo*, -*īno* (*īnor*, *cīnor*), -*ūlo*, -*ūlo* (*ūlor*), -*īto*, verbal endings, as: *vitupēro*, *claudīco*, *rustīcor*, *levīgo*, *fulmīno*, *destīno*, *crīmīnor*, *patrocīnor*, *mutīlo*, *pullūlo*, *gratūlor*, *ventīto*; but the *i* is *long* when it belongs to the stem and is long there, as: *cornīcor* (from *cornix*, *īcis*), *festīno*, *sagīno*, *opīnor*, *propīno*, *inclīno*, from: *festīnus*, *sagīna*, *opīnio*, *πίνω*, *κλίνω*; — besides, *i* in the ending *īto*, is long when the stem has an *i* immediately before it, as: *dormīto* (for *dormī -īto*);
- ētus*, as: *flētus*;
- ērus*, as: *infēri*, *postēri*; but *ērus* in: *austērus*, *sincērus*, *sevērus*, *procērus*;
- ētum*, -*ēta*, as: *dumētum*, *monēta*;
- īco*, see *ēro*;
- īcus*, -*īca*, as: *modīcus*, *famelīcus*, so also adverbs in *īcus*, as: *modīcus*; Exc.: *amicus*, *pudīcus*, *apricus*, *anticus*, *posticus*, *mendīcus*, *umbilīcus*; *formīca*, *lectīca*, *lorīca*, *urtīca*, *vesīca*;
- īdes*, see *ādes*;
- īdo*, see *ēdo*;
- īdus*, as: *cupīdus*;
- īgo*, see *āgo*;
- īgo*, see *ēro*;
- īlis*, -*īlus* (*a*, *um*), -*ōlus* (*a*, *um*), *ūlus*, (*a*, *um*) as: *humīlis*, *parīlis*, *simīlis*, and all in *īlis* which come from *verbs*, as: *facīlis*, *fertīlis*, *sterīlis*; *rutilus*, *filiōlus*, *filiōla*, *catūlus*, *canicūla*, *bacūlum*; adjectives derived from personal appellations have the *i* long, as: *servīlis*, *puerīlis*; also, *exīlis*, *subtīlis*, and the names of the months, as: *Aprīlis*;
- īlo*, see *ēro*;
- īmen*, as: *specīmen*, *regīmen*; Exc.: those derived from verbs of the fourth Conj. have *īmen*, as: *lenīmen*, *farcīmen*;

- imus*, in : bimus, trimus, quadrimus, of two, three, four years, and in : opimus, matrimonus, patrīmus, prīmus, imus (lowest); but -*imus* in superlative-endings, as : probissīmus, and in finitīmus and intīmus ;
- ine*, see āis ;
- ini*, see ēni ;
- ino* (*īnor*), see ěro ;
- inus*, ina, see ānus ;
- itim*, see ātim ;
- itis*, see āis ;
- ito*, see ěro ;
- itor* and *itus* retain the quantity of the supine from which they are derived, as : monītor (from *monītum*) auditor (from *audītum*), exītus (from *exītum*) ;
- itus*, -*iter*, adverbial endings, as : divinītus, acrīter ;
- ivus*, *iva*, see āvus ;
- ois*, see āis ;
- one*, see āis ;
- onus*, -*ona*, see ānus ;
- orus*, -*osus*, see ārus ;
- otīs*, see āis ;
- ucus*, -*uca*, see ācus ;
- udo*, see ēdo ;
- ugo*, see āgo ;
- ulis*, see ālis ;
- ulo* (*ūlor*), see ěro ;
- umen* in *tegūmen* (for *tegīmen*), but -*umen* in : acūmen, cacūmen, flūmen (contracted from *fluvīmen*) ;
- unus*, -*una*, see ānus ;
- ura*, see ālis ;
- utim*, see ātim ;

3. For the quantity of *final* syllables ending in a vowel, we have the following general rule: *a, e, y*, are *short* ; *i, o, u*, are *long*. To this rule there are the following exceptions :

a is *long* : 1) in the Abl. of the first Dec., as : mensā ; 2) in the Voc. of Greek proper names in *as*, as : Aeneā (from Aenēas, ae), Pallā (from Pallas, antis) ; the Voc. of those in *es* has partly *ā* and partly *ǎ*, as : Anchisā, Atridā ; 3) in the Imper. of the first Conj., as : amā, except *putā* in the meaning *namely, to wit* ;—4) in adverbs, prepositions and conjunctions of two or more syllables, as : circā, juxtā, intrā, infrā, suprā, anteā, posteā, practereā,

- frustrā ; Exc. : itā, quā and the interjection *eiā* ; 5) in the indeclinable numerals, as : trīgintō ;
- e* is *long* : 1) in the Abl. of the fifth Dec. as : rē, speciē, diē (hence also, hodiē, postridiē, pridīē, quarē ; also famē) ;— 2) in all Greek words of the first Dec. as : crambē, epitomē, and those used in the plural only, as : Tempē, melē, cetē ;— 3) in the Imper. of the second Conj., as : docē ; but *e* is double-timed in : cavē, habē, tacē, manē, valē, jubē, vidē, (hence *vidēs* for : vide, sī vis) ;— 4) in adverbs derived from adjectives of the *second* Dec., as : pulchrē, longē, acerbē, valdē (from *validus*) ; so also : ferē, fermē, and the interjection ohē ; but *e* is short in : benē, malē, temerē (longē, clarē, infermē, supernē, in Lucr. and Hor.) ; also in all adverbs derived from adjectives of the *third* Dec., as : facilē, impunē ;
- i* is *short* : 1) in mihī, tibī, sibī (in the arsis sometimes long), and cui when it is two syllables ; but it is commonly one syllable and is long, so also its compounds : cuidam, cuilibet ;— 2) in the Voc. of Greek words, as : Alexī, and in the Dat. of Greek imparisyllabic words, as : Paridī (from Paris, idis) ;— 3) in : nisī and quasī (although *si* is long), sicubī, necubī ; but *ubi* and *ibi* are double-timed ; in : ubinam, ubivis, ubicunque, *i* is generally *short*, while in : ubique, ibique it is always *long*, generally also in ibidem ;— 4) in : utique, utinam the *i* is short, although they come from *uti* ;
- o* is *short* : 1) in the adverbs : citō, immō, illicō, cedō (give here, say), modō with its compounds, as : dummodō, postmodō, quomodō (but separated, *quo modō*) ;— 2) in : egō, duō, octō ; but commonly *ambō* ;— 3) in verbal endings and in the Nom. and Vocative-endings of Latin words of the third Dec. the poets of the golden age generally made *o* long, as : amō, amaverō, amatō, scribō, scribitō, scripserō ; origō, consuetudō ; in Greek words *o* is always long, as : echō, argō ;
- u* is always *long* and *y* always *short*, according to the rule, except in the contracted Dat., as : Coty for Cotyi.

4. For the quantity of final syllables in words of two or more syllables ending in a *consonant*, we have the following general rules :

I. *c* final makes the preceding vowel *long*, as : alēc, illūc ; Exc. : donēc ;

II. *ās, ēs, ōs*, are *long* ; *īs, ūs, ŷs* are *short* ; to this general rule there are the following exceptions :

- a) *as* is short: 1) in the Nom. of Greek words of the third Dec. which have *ādis* in the Gen., as; lampās, ādis, Pallās, ādis; so anās, ātis; — 2) in the Acc. Plur. of Greek words of the third Dec. as: heroās, Arcadās, from *heros*, *Arcas*;
- b) *es* is short: 1) in the Nom. and Voc. Sing. of imparisyllabic words of the third Dec. whose genitive has the *penult* short, as: milēs, itis, segēs, ētis, praesēs, īdis, hebēs, ētis; Exc.: Cerēs, abiēs, ariēs and the compounds of *pēs*, as: tripēs, except praepēs, ētis; — 2) in the Nom. (neuter) and the Voc. Sing. of Greek words in *es*, where in Greek the termination is *ες*, as: cacoethēs (κακόηθης) Demosthenēs (but Demosthenēs in the Nom. = ης); — 3) in the Nom. and Voc. Plur. of Greek words generally (in the poets), as: Arcadēs, Troadēs; but in Latin words, or such as were naturalized in the language, *es* is long, as: patrēs, matrēs; — 4) in the compounds of *ēs* (thou art), as: adēs, abēs, potēs; — 5) in the preposition *penēs*;
- c) *os* is short: 1) in: compōs, impōs (ōtis), exōs, (from *os*, *ossis*); — 2) in Greek words, when *os* corresponds to *ος* in Greek, as: Delōs, chaōs, melōs; Palladōs, Gen. of Pallas (but: herōs = ἥρωος, Minōs = Μίνωος, Nicocleōs = Νικόκλεωος);
- d) *is* is long: 1) in the Dat. and Abl. Plur., as: mensis, pueris, nobis, vobis; hence also, in the adverbs: gratis, foris; — 2) in the Acc. of the third Dec. (for *es*), as: omnis; — 3) in the Nom. Sing. of proper names of the third Dec. which have the *penult* of the Gen. long, as: Samnis, itis, Salamis, inis, Simois, entis; — 4) in the second person Sing. Pres. of those verbs which have *itis* in the second person Plur., as: audis, possis (as well as: sis from *sum*), velis, nolis, malis; also in: mavis, quivis, quamvis, utervis, since *vis* (from *volo*) is long; in the second person Sing. of the Fut. Perf. *is* of itself is short, but by the necessity of the verse is often made long, as: dixeris, so also is the *i* in the plural-endings *imus*, *itis* of the Fut. Perf. often made long by the poets for the same reason, as: scripserimus, scripseritis;
- e) *us* is long: 1) in the Nom. Sing. of words of the second Dec. which have *u* long in the *penult* of the Gen., as: virtūs, ūtis, palūs, ūdis, tellūs, ūris, (but: corpūs, ōris, vetūs, ěris, etc.); — 2) in the Gen. Sing. and in the Nom. Acc. Voc. Plur. of the fourth Dec., as: fructūs (contracted from *fructuis* and *fructues*); — 3) in Greek words, when *us* corresponds to *ους* in Greek, as: tripūs, ōdis (τρίπους), Panthūs; in the Gen.: Sapphūs from Sappho (Σαπφούς), Cliūs from Clio, etc.; but in: Oedipūs, i, polypūs, i, the Greek *ους* becomes *ūs* in Latin;
- f) *ys* is long: 1) in words which have an associate form in *yn*, as:

Phorcēs and Phorcēn; — 2) when *ys* stands by contraction for *yes* and *yas*, as: Erinnēs.

III. *l, m, n, r, d, t* final, make the vowel of the final syllable *short*, as: animāl, tectūm, circūm-ago, carmēn, carcēr, amōr, apūd, vidēn (for *videsne*), nostīn (for *nostine*), Thetīn, Pylōn, Iliōn, illūd, capūt, amāt, monēt, regīt, audīt. To this general rule there are the following exceptions, in which the vowel before these consonants is *long*:

- a) *l*: in Hebrew proper names in *el*, as: Daniēl;
- b) *n*: 1) in the Greek Acc. of words in *as, es, e*, as: Aeneān, Anchisēn, Calliopēn, epitomēn; — 2) in the Nom. of masculine and feminine nouns which come from the Greek, as: titān, hymēn, Salamīn, Pandiōn (except Lacedaemōn and some others), and in the Latin *liēn*; — 3) in the Greek Gen. Plur. in *on* (= *ων*).
- c) *r*: in the compounds of *pār*, as: dispār; and in Greek imparisyllables in *er*, as: aēr, aethēr, cratēr, Ibēr (but short in oblique cases, except the two last).

5. *Monosyllabic* words are *long*, as: sāl, sōl, mōs, spēs, pār, hōc, dā, stā, rē, ē, nē (the negative).

EXCEPTIONS: 1) the substantives: vēr, mēl, fēl, ōs (ossis), *a bone*, (but: ōs, ōris, *the face*), cōr, (rarely cōr); — 2) the pronouns: quis, quīd, quōd; is, id; quōt, tōt; hic, *this*, is generally, and hic, *here*, always *long*; — 3) the adverbs: bīs, tēr, sāt; — 4) the verbal forms in *t*: fīt, sīt, scīt, dāt, dēt, stāt, stēt, it; the imperatives *fēr, fūr*, and *ēs*, thou art (but *ēs, thou eates!*); — 5) the particles: āb, ād, ān, āt, cīs, ēt, in, nēc, ōb, pār, pōl, sēd, sūb, ūt, vēl, and the *suffixes* (enclitics): quē, vē, cē, nē (but: nē, *that not, in order that not*, except in composition, as: nēque, nēfas, etc.), tē (tutē), ptē (suoptē).

§ 121. *Hexameter Verse*.*

1. A verse is a series of poetic feet forming, in general, a line of poetry. The particular feet or members of which it is composed are called *metres*.

* The more complicated metres of Horace are usually described in editions of that author; or may be found in the Greek Grammars, or in Munk's Greek and Roman metres.

2. When the last foot of a verse is complete, the verse is called *acatalectic*; but when incomplete, *catalectic*.

3. Every foot or metre consists of an *arsis* and a *thesis*. The *arsis* is that part of the foot (in hexameter verse, the first syllable of the foot), on which the stress or elevation of the voice is placed in pronouncing it. The rest of the foot (whether one syllable or more) is called *thesis*, and is to be pronounced in a falling tone of voice. The stress of voice laid on the arsis is called the *ictus* (beat) and may be regarded as the poetic accent; hence it is often marked as such by the sign (´). A succession of feet pronounced with due regard to arsis and thesis constitutes *rhythm*.

4. Hence it will be apparent, that a line of poetry, in a given kind of measure, consists of a fixed number of feet and a variable number of words, which, of course, must occasion a disagreement between the terminations of the feet and words. Besides, as *rhythm* was the leading element in ancient poetry, it was not, except for a given purpose, attempted to produce a coincidence between the feet and words, that it might be apparent that the rhythm was independent of the words as such. This *division* of the feet by the terminations of the words is called *caesura*, as:

Infandúm | regína | jubés | renováre | dolórem.

In feet of three syllables, as: - ∪ ∪, the word may end either after the arsis (´ | ∪ ∪) or in the middle of the thesis (´ ∪ | ∪). In the first case it is called the *masculine*, in the second the *feminine* caesura. The *coincidence* of the termination of a word with the termination of a foot is called *diaerēsis*, as:

Persequar | ét rarís habitáta, mapália, téctis.

In certain kinds of verse, certain caesuras and diaereses are necessary, and are to be especially observed in reading the verse; these are called *principal caesuras* and *diaereses*.

5. Hexameter verse is measured by six feet which may be either *spondees* or *dactyles*, except the last foot, which is a disyllabic catalectus (No. 2). A spondee consists of two long

syllables designated thus: --; a dactyle of one long and two short, designated thus: - ∪ ∪. Hence we have:

$\begin{array}{c} \text{ ' } \quad \text{ - } \\ \text{ - } \quad \text{ ∪ } \end{array}$		$\begin{array}{c} \text{ ' } \quad \text{ - } \\ \text{ - } \quad \text{ ∪ } \end{array}$		$\begin{array}{c} \text{ ' } \quad \text{ - } \\ \text{ - } \quad \text{ ∪ } \end{array}$		$\begin{array}{c} \text{ ' } \quad \text{ - } \\ \text{ - } \quad \text{ ∪ } \end{array}$		$\begin{array}{c} \text{ ' } \quad \text{ - } \\ \text{ - } \quad \text{ ∪ } \end{array}$		$\begin{array}{c} \text{ ' } \quad \text{ - } \\ \text{ - } \quad \text{ ∪ } \end{array}$
Sed fugit		intere		a fugit		irrepa		rabile		tempus.
Adspici		unt ocu		lis Supe		ri mor		talia		justis.

REM. 1. The *fifth* foot is generally a dactyle; rarely a spondee, and only when the poet wishes to give the line a character of *slowness, seriousness* and *solemnity*; such a verse is called a *spondaic* verse, a dactyle usually precedes the spondee and the verse generally closes with a word of three or four syllables, as:

Cara deum suboles, magnum Jovis | incrē | mentum.

REM. 2. *Dactyles* often express a rapid and brisk, as *spondees* do a slow and heavy motion, as:

Quadrupedante putrem sonitu quatit ungulo campum.
Illi inter sese magna vi brachia tollunt.

REM. 3. The *principal* caesura in Hexameter verse, generally occurs *after the arsis* of the *third* foot and sometimes in the *thesis* of the same foot; but occasionally also, after the arsis in the fourth foot, in which case another caesura generally precedes, after the arsis of the second foot. Sometimes, also, several caesuras of this kind are found in the same verse; in which case the sense must determine which is to be observed as the principal one. Besides the principal caesura, there may be other subordinate caesuras, e. g.

Sed | fugit interea, || fugit irreparabile tempus.
Dum vires | annique | sinunt, || tolerate labores.
Oderunt | peccare | boni, || virtutis | amore.
Nudus | ara, | sere | nudus; || hiems | ignava | colono.
Infandum | regina | jubes || renovare | dolorem.

REM. 4. The commonest and most graceful close of an hexameter verse is made by a word of two or three syllables.

§ 122. Scansion.

Scansion is the division of a verse into the feet or members of which it is made up. In doing this, however, the proper terminations of the words must not be wholly overlooked, but

should be observed by making a slight pause at each of the caesuras and a marked pause at the principal caesura, as far as this can be done without obscuring the proper division into feet. In scanning, the following things are to be observed :

a) A vowel at the end of a word before another vowel or an *h* in the following word is *absorbed* (elision), as :

Núlla n(e) habés viti(a) ? ímm(o) ali(a), haúd fortásse minóra.

REM. 1. Elision rarely takes place at the end of a line, as :

O'mnia Múrcurió similis vocémque colóremque
E't crinés flavós et mémbra decóra juvéntae.

In this case, the last syllable is to be joined to the first of the following line. Such a line is called *versus hypermēter*.

REM. 2. When elision is neglected in the beginning or middle of a verse, there arises what is called the *hiatus* (gaping, difficulty of pronunciation). This the poets endeavor if possible to avoid; yet it is allowable before monosyllables, before one of the stronger punctuation marks, and in a long vowel followed by a short one; also in the arsis, the hiatus occasions less difficulty of pronunciation, as :

O' et de Latiá, O ét de génte Sabina.
E't succús pecori et lác subdúcutur ágris.
Pósthabitá colúisse Samó : *hic* illius arma.
Núbibus ésse solét aut púrpureaé Aurórae.

REM. 3. Occasionally a long vowel in the *thesis* before another vowel is *short*, as :

I'nsulae I'onió in mágno.

b) An *m* at the end of a word with a vowel before it and before a vowel in the following word long by nature or position, is, together with the vowel before it, omitted in reading (ecthlipsis), as :

Quód latet. gnot (um) ést ; ignóti núlla cupído.

REM. 4. In monosyllabic words which stand in the arsis, principally before a strong punctuation mark or in the caesura, the ecthlipsis is sometimes omitted. Before a short syllable the ecthlipsis is difficult.

c) When the last syllable of a word ends with a consonant and the following word in the same line begins with a consonant, that final syllable is uniformly *long*, as :

Némo adeó ferus ést, ut *nón* mitéscere pósset.

d) The *ictus* often makes a short syllable long; still this is generally the case only : a) when the short syllable ends in a *consonant*, especially *r*, *s* or *t*;—b) when the caesura follows it;—c) when upon a vowel in the close of a word, a word follows beginning with two consonants; e. g.

O'mnia vincit Amór, et nós cedámus Amóri.
Té canit ágricolá, | magná quum vénerit úrbe
Nil opus ést morté *pro* mé, sed amóre fidéque.

e) Two vowels in two successive syllables are often contracted into one (*Synaerēsis* or *Synizēsis*), as : Phaethon, Thesēi, déerunt, vehēmens (two syllables), particularly, huic, cui, ii, iidem; so also, dein, dehinc, deinceps, deinde, proinde, prout; so also other vowels which are pronounced with more difficulty in one sound, as : quoad, postea, alveo, pueri.

f) A short *u* or *i* is often rejected before *l* and *m*, as : *perīclum* for *pericūlum*, *tegmen* for *teǵmen* or *teǵmen*.

g) The letters *i* and *u*, having been originally both consonants and vowels, when they follow another consonant and are followed by a vowel, make the preceding vowel *long by position*, as : flūviorum (= fluvjorum); gēnuā (= genva), etc.

h) From the necessity of the verse, a *long* syllable is sometimes used as *short* (*Systōle*), and, on the contrary, a *short* syllable as *long* (*Diastōle*). The *systōle* is very common in the third person Plur. Indic. Perf. Act., and in *alterius* and in names, as : Aenēades;—the *diastōle* is used especially in the Subj. Perf. Act. and Fut. Perf. Act., (*audiveritis*), also in names in which three short syllables follow one another, of which the first is then made long by the *ictus*, as :

O'bstupui, stetēruntque comaé, vox faucibus haésit.

B. § 123. ABBREVIATIONS.

1) Personal Names: A. *Aulus*. App. *Appius*. G. or C. *Gaius* (or *Caius*). Gn. or Cn. *Gnaeus* (or *Cnaeus*). D. *Decimus*. K. (*Kaeso*). L. *Lucius*. M. *Marcus*. Mn. *Manius*. N. *Numerius*. P. *Publius*. Q. *Quintus*. Ser. *Servius*. Mam. *Mameacus*. Sex. or S. *Sextus*. Sp. *Spurius*. T. *Titus*. Ti. *Tiberius*.

2) Appellatives: P. *Pater*. F. *Filius*. Fr. *Frater*, etc.

3) Designations of honor and office: Aed. *Aedilis*. Cos. *Consul*. Coss. *Consules*. Cos. d. (or des.) *Consul designatus*. D. *Divus*. Imp. *Imperator*. O. M. *Optimus maximus*. P. C. *Patres conscripti*. P. R. *Populus Romanus*. Pr. *Praetor*. Praef. *Praefectus*. P. F. *Pontifex Maximus*. P. S. *Plebiscitum*. Quir. *Quirites*. Res. *Respublica*. S. P. Q. R. *Senatus populusque Romanus*. S. C. *Senatus consultum*. Tr. Pl. *Tribunus plebis*.

4) Designations of money and weight: HS. or H-S. *Sestertius* (*Sestertium*). L. *Libra*. LL. *Dupondius*.

5) Designations of time: A. D. *Ante diem*. A. U. C. *Ab urbe condita*. C. or K. *Calendae* (*Kalendae*). Id. *Idus*. Non. *Nonae*.

6) Abbreviations in letters: S. *Salutem*. S. D. *Salutem dicit*. S. P. D. *Salutem plurimam dicit*. S. V. B. E. E. V. *Si vales, bene est; ego valeo*.

C. § 124. ROMAN CALENDAR.

1. *Kalendae* means the *first* day of each month; *Nonae* the *seventh* day of March, May, July, and October, but the *fifth* of the remaining eight months; *Idus* was the *fifteenth* of the

four months named above, and the *thirteenth* of the other eight.

2. Since the names of the months are properly adjectives, they generally agree with *Kalendae*, *Nonae* and *Idus* in gender, number and case, and are rarely governed by them in the Gen. as: *Calendis Juniis*, *on the first day of June*; *Nonis Octobribus*, *on the seventh of October*; *Idibus Septembribus*, *on the thirteenth of September*.

3. The days lying between the three fixed days just mentioned, were reckoned backwards from each of these fixed days, as the 1st, 2d, 3d, etc., day before the *Kalends*, *Nones*, or *Ides*, as the case might be, and *dies* and *ante* were generally omitted. The day from which one began to reckon (as the *Kalends*, *Nones*, or *Ides*) was always included in the number mentioned, as: *Claudius excessit III. Idus Octobres*, i. e. *tertio die ante Idus Octobres*, *on the thirteenth of October*. Hence, in order to get (according to our mode of reckoning, which does *not* include the day from which we compute) the true day before one of the divisions, we must subtract one from the number mentioned.

REMARK. July and August, which were named after Julius and Augustus Caesar, were called respectively, *Quintilis* and *Sextilis* before their time. *Pridie* and *Postridie* are sometimes followed by an Acc., and sometimes by a Gen. of the day or division of the month.

4. In determining what day of the previous month any day before the *Calends* of a given month is, we must know how many days the month has (see table) and reckon back from the *Calends* of the month mentioned (i. e. the month following), as: *tertio Calendas Apriles*, *on the 30th of March*; *tertio Calendas Maias*, *on the 29th of April*; *tertio Calendas Martias*, *on the 27th (28th) of February*; since March has 31, April 30 and February 28 (in leap year 29) days.

The days of our months.	March, May, July and October (have 31 days).	January, August, and December (have also 31 days).	April, June, Sept. and Nov. (have 30 days) .	February (has 28, and in Leap Years 29 days).
1	<i>Kalendis.</i>	<i>Kalendis.</i>	<i>Kalendis.</i>	<i>Kalendis.</i>
2	VI } ante	IV } ante	IV } ante	IV } ante
3	V } Nonas.	III } Nonas.	III } Nonas.	III } Nonas.
4	IV } Nonas.	Pridie Nonas.	Pridie Nonas.	Pridie Nonas.
5	III } Nonas.	<i>Nonis.</i>	<i>Nonis.</i>	<i>Nonis.</i>
6	Pridie Nonas.	VIII } Nonas.	VIII } Nonas.	VIII } Nonas.
7	<i>Nonis.</i>	VII } Nonas.	VII } Nonas.	VII } Nonas.
8	VIII } ante	VI } ante	VI } ante	VI } ante
9	VII } ante	V } Idus.	V } Idus.	V } Idus.
10	VI } ante	IV } Idus.	IV } Idus.	IV } Idus.
11	V } Idus.	III } Idus.	III } Idus.	III } Idus.
12	IV } Idus.	Pridie Idus.	Pridie Idus.	Pridie Idus.
13	III } Idus.	<i>Idibus.</i>	<i>Idibus.</i>	<i>Idibus.</i>
14	Pridie Idus.	XIX } Idibus.	XVIII } Idibus.	XVI } Idibus.
15	<i>Idibus.</i>	XVIII } Idibus.	XVII } Idibus.	XV } Idibus.
16	XVII } ante	XVII } ante	XVI } ante	XIV } ante
17	XVI } ante	XVI } ante	XV } ante	XIII } ante
18	XV } ante	XV } ante	XIV } ante	XII } ante
19	XIV } ante	XIV } ante	XIII } ante	XI } ante
20	XIII } ante	XIII } ante	XII } ante	X } ante
21	XII } ante	XII } ante	XI } ante	IX } ante
22	XI } ante	XI } ante	X } ante	VIII } ante
23	X } ante	X } ante	IX } ante	VII } ante
24	IX } ante	IX } ante	VIII } ante	VI } ante
25	VIII } ante	VIII } ante	VII } ante	V } ante
26	VII } ante	VII } ante	VI } ante	IV } ante
27	VI } ante	VI } ante	V } ante	III } ante
28	V } ante	V } ante	IV } ante	Prid. Kalendas
29	IV } ante	IV } ante	III } ante	Martias.
30	III } ante	III } ante	Prid. Kalendas	
31	Prid. Kalendas of the fol. month.	Prid. Kalendas of the fol. month.	of the fol. month.	

LATIN READING LESSONS.

I. FABLES.

1. *Lupus et capra.*

Lupus, capram conspicatus, quae in rupe pascebatur, quum ad eam accedere non posset, eam, ut de rupe descenderet, hortabatur, praedicans, apud se mollia prata ac varias herbas esse. Ei vero capra respondit: Mi amice, non me ad pascua vocas, sed ipse cibi indiges!

2. *Lupus et opiliones.*

Opiliones aliquot, caesã atque assatã ove, convivium agebant. Quod quum lupus, qui praedandi caussã forte stabula circumibat, videret, ad opiliones conversus: Quos clamores, inquit, et quantos tumultus vos contra me excitaretis, si ego facerem, quod vos facitis? Tum unus ex iis: Hoc interest, inquit: nos, quae nostra sunt, comedimus; tu vero aliena furaris.

3. *Vulpes et uva.*

Vulpes, extremã fame coacta, uvam appetebat, ex alta vite dependentem. Quam quum, summis viribus saliens, attingere non posset, tandem discẽdens: Nondum matura est, inquit; nolo acerbam sumere. — Sic saepe homines, quae facere non possunt, verbis elẽvant.

4. *Rusticus et canis fidẽlis.*

Rusticus in agros exiit ad opus suum. Filiõlum, qui in cunis jacebat, reliquit custodiendum cani fideli atque valido. Arrepsit anguis immanis, qui puerũlum exstincturus erat. Sed custos fidelis corripit eum dentibus acutis et, dum necare studet, cunas simul evertit super exstinctum anguem. Mox ex arvo rediit agricola; ut videt cunas eversas cruentumque canis rictum, irã

accenditur. Temère igitur custodem filioli interficit ligone, quem manibus tenebat. Sed ubi cunas restituit, supra anguem occisum repërit puerum vivum et incolūmem. Sera tum poenitentia fuit facinoris temere patrati.

5. *Leo, asinus et vulpes.*

Vulpes, asinus et leo venatum iverant. Amplā praedā factā, leo asinum illam partiri jubet. Qui quum singulis singulas partes poneret aequales, leo eum correptum dilaniavit et vulpi negotium partiendi tribuit. Illa astutior leoni maximam partem apposuit, sibi vix minimam reservans particūlam. Tum leo subridens ejus prudentiam laudare et, unde hoc didicerit, interrogare coepit. Et vulpes: Hujus me, inquit, calamitas docuit, quid minores potenti- oribus debeant.

6. *Asinus pelle leonina indūtus.*

Asinus fugitivus repërit forte in silva pellem leoninam, eāque indutus territare coepit homines et bestias. Venit is, qui asinum perdiderat, eumque quaerit. Asinus, quum herum vidisset, horrendum in modum rugire coepit, ut illum quoque falleret. At herus, comprehensis auricūlis, quae exstabant: Etiamsi alios, inquit, fallas, me tamen non falles. Ita eum probe verberat domumque abigit.

7. *Rusticus et filii.*

Inter filios rustici cujusdam grave dissidium ortum erat. Diu frustra operam impenderat pater, hortans, ut pacem atque concordiam colerent. Tandem filiis: Virgūlas, inquit, mihi afferte quinquaginta et considite. Tum omnes virgūlas in unum fascicūlum colligavit eumque constrictum singulis filiis obtūlit hortans, ut frangerent. Illi autem quanquam vim omnem adhibebant, frustra laborarunt, nec quicquam profecerunt. Tum pater nodum discidit singulasque illis virgulas dedit, quas sine ullo labore confregerunt. Quo facto, rusticus filios ita allocutus est: Haec res vobis exemplo sit. Tuti eritis ab inimicorum injuriis, quamdiū vos amabitis et concordēs eritis: at, simulac facta erit dissensio atqua discordia, inimici securi in vos irrumpent.

8. *Luscinia et cucūlus.*

Luscinia verno quodam die dulcissime canere coepit. Pueri aliquot haud procul abërant in valle ludentes. Hi quum lusui essent intenti, lusciniæ cañtu nihil movebantur. Non multo post cuculus coepit cuculare. Continuo pueri, lusu neglecto, ei ac-

clamabant vocemque cuculi identidem imitabantur. Audisne, luscinia, inquit cuculus, quanto me isti plausu excipiant et quantopere cantu meo delectentur? Luscinia, quae nollet cum eo altercari, nihil impediēbat, quominus ille suam vocem miraretur. Interēa pastor fistula canens cum puella lento gradu praeteriit. Cuculus itērum vociferatur, novas laudes captans. At puella pastorem allocuta: Male sit, inquit, huic cuculo, qui cantui tuo odiosam vocem intermiscet.

Quo audito, quum cuculus, in pudorem coniectus, oonticuisset, luscinia tam suaviter canere coepit, ut se ipsam superare velle videretur. Pastor, fistulā depositā: Consideramus hic, inquit, sub arbore et lusciniā audiamus. Tum pastor et puella cantum luscinae certatim laudare coeperunt et diu taciti intentis auribus sedent. Ad postremum adeo capta est puella sonorum dulcedine, ut etiam lacrimae erumperent. Tum luscinia ad cuculum conversa: Videsne, inquit, quantum ab imperitorum opinionibus prudentiorum iudicia distent? Una sane ex istis lacrimis, quamvis muta sit, locupletior tamen est artis meae testis, quam inconditus iste puerorum clamor, quem tantopere jactabas. Monet fabula, magnorum artificum opera non vulgi opinione, sed prudentium existimatione esse censenda.

9. *Auceps et vipera.*

Auceps ibat venatum et mox vidit in altissima arbore palumbem; appropērat eum capturus, sed inter eundum premit forte pede altero viperam in herba latentem, quae illum mordet. Me miserum, inquit, dum alteri insidior, ipse dispereo.

10. *Mendax.*

Puer in prato oves pascebat atque per jocum clamitabat, ut sibi auxilium ferretur, quasi lupus gregem esset adortus. Agricolae undique succurrebant, neque lupum inveniebant. Ita ter quaterque se elusos a puero viderunt. Deinde, quum ipse lupus aggrediretur, et puer revera imploraret auxilium; nemo gregi subvēnit, et oves lupi praeda sunt factae. Mendaci homini non credimus, etiam vera quum dicit.

11. *Formica et columba.*

Formica sitiens descenderat ad fontem; sed undae eam abriperunt, nec multum abērat, quin misera periret. Quum vero columba sortem ejus videret, misericordiā tacta ramulum in aquam injecit. Hunc assecuta est formica in eoque natans effūgit mortem. Paulo post venator, arcu instructus, illuc venit, colum-

banque telo suo transfixurus fuit. Periculum sentit formica et, ut piae columbae opem ferret, accurrit atque venatoris talum momordit. Dolore impeditus ille telum non recte misit, et columba incolūmis avolavit. — Juva et juvabēre; raro beneficium perit.

12. *Vulpes et corvus.*

Corvus, quum frustum carnis rapuisset, in arbore quadam con-sedit. Quo conspecto, vulpes, carnem cupiens, accurrit eumque callidis verbis adoritur. O corve, inquit, quam pulchra es avis, quam speciosa! Te decuit esse avium regem. Sane omnes aves regiis virtutibus antecederes, si vocem haberes. His corvus laudibus inflatus, ne mutus haberetur, clamorem edidit, sed simul, aperto rostro, carnem amisit; eam vulpes statim rapuit atque irridens dixit: Heus, corve! Nihil tibi deest praeter mentem.

II. DIALOGUES.

1. *Colloquium Jocosum.*

Andrēas. Salve, mi Mauriti. *Mauritius.* Gratias ago, mi Andrēa. Quid affers? *A.* Me ipsum. *M.* Sic rem haud magni pretii huc attulisti. *A.* At magno constiti patri meo. *M.* Credo pluris, quam quisquam te aestimet. *A.* Sed Rudolphus estne domi? *M.* Nescio. Pulsa fores ejus et videbis. *A.* Heus, Rudolphe! domine es? *R.* Non sum. *A.* Impūdens! Non ego audio te loquentem? *R.* Immo tu es impudens. Nuper ancillae vestrae credidi, te non esse domi, quum tamen esses, et tu non credis mihi ipsi? *A.* Aequum dicis; par pari retulisti. *R.* Ego quidem ut non omnibus dormio, ita non omnibus sum domi. Nunc vero adsum. *A.* Sed tu mihi videris cochlēae vitam agere. Quid ita? *A.* Quia perpetuo domi latitas nec unquam prorēpis. *R.* Foris nihil mihi est negotii. *A.* At serenum coelum nunc invitat ad deambulandum. *R.* Ita est. Si igitur deambulare libet, te comitabor; nam per totum hunc mensem pedem portā non extuli. Vocabo Mauritium, ut una nobiscum eat. *A.* Placet. Sic enim jucundior erit ambulatio.

2. *Colloquium ejusdem generis.*

Syrus. Opto tibi multam felicitatem. *Geta.* Et ego tibi duplicatum opto, quicquid optas mihi. *S.* Quid agis rei? *G.* Confabūlor. *S.* Quid? confabularis solus? *G.* Ut vides. *S.* Fortasse tecum. Proinde tibi videndum est, ut cum homine pro-

bo confabulère. *G.* Immo cum lepidissimo congerrone confabulor; lego enim librum joci plenum. *S.* Tu perpetuo littëris studes. *G.* Non est ulla studiorum satietas. *S.* Verum; sed est tamen modus quidam. Non omittenda quidem sunt studia, sed tamen intermittenda nonnunquam. Nihil suave, quod perpetuum. Voluptates commendat rarior usus. Tu littëris studes noctes ac dies. *G.* Age, tuo more facis. Rides me, ut soles. Non me fallit tuus jocus. Ipsi codices pulvere situque obducti, loquuntur, quam sim immodicus in studio. *S.* Emoriar, ni loquor ex animo.

3. *Ludus.*

Carolus. Veni, mi Ludovice! *Ludovicus.* Quo tandem? *C.* In hortum; satis jam legimus et scripsimus; ludamus quoque. *L.* Ego pensum meum ante absolvam. *C.* Nondumne absolvisti? *L.* Nondum omnia. Tune jam omnia didicisti et scripsisti, quae praeceptor nos discere et scribere jussit? *C.* Non omnia. *L.* Ergo nondum licet ludere. *C.* Cur non liceat? Reliqua discam et scribam post ludum. *L.* Sed praestat, primum discere, deinde ludere. *C.* Quam morosum sodalem habeo! *L.* Non sum morosus, sed facere volo, quae jussa sunt. *C.* Ergo una ediscamus. Ego tibi recitabo, tu mihi. Deinde, quum omnia didicerimus, statim ad ludum properabimus. *L.* Placet; nam peracti labores jucundi sunt.

4. *De surgendo.*

Fridericus. Heus, heus, Carole! expergiscere! tempus est surgere. Audisne? *C.* Non audio. *F.* Ubi ergo habes aures? *C.* In lecto. *F.* Hoc video. Sed quid facis adhuc in lecto? *C.* Quid faciam? Dormio. *F.* Dormis? et loquëris tamen mecum? *C.* Saltem volo dormire. *F.* Nunc autem non est tempus dormiendi, sed surgendi. *C.* Quota est hora? *F.* Septima. *C.* Quando tu surrexisti e lecto? *F.* Jam ante duas horas. *C.* Num sorores meae jam surrexerunt? *F.* Jam pridem. *C.* Sed frater meus certe adhuc jacet in lecto. *F.* Erras. Quum expergefacerem eum statim reliquit nidum suum. *C.* Mox igitur surgam.

5. *Ambulatio.*

Fridericus. Age, mi frater, ambulemus; tempestas serena est *Augustus.* Placet; sed ubi ambulabimus? Num in pratis? *F.* Minime; prata enim pluvia inundavit, et viae lutulentae sunt. Placetne adscendere in montem quem e fenestra prospicimus?

A. Placet; jam pridem enim in monte non fuimus. *F.* Hiems nos prohibuit; hieme enim mons glacie et nive tectus erat. Quid stas autem? *A.* Duæ viae ducunt ad montem: altera recta, altera flexuosa. Utram eligemus? *F.* Flexuosam censeo; est enim umbrosior, et sol fervet. Descendentes alterâ ibimus et ambulationem variabimus. Vesperi enim sol minus fervet. *A.* Eamus igitur!

6. *Jussum herile.*

Rabinus. Profer ocræas; nam equitandum est. *Syrus.* En adsunt. *R.* Probe quidem abs te curatae; totae albescent situ. Opinor nec deteras, nec unctas hoc anno; adeo rigent prae siccitate. Deterge uvidulo panno; mox unge ad ignem diligenter ac macera, donec molliantur. *S.* Curabitur. *R.* Ubi calcaria? *S.* Adsunt. *R.* Verum; sed obducta rubigine. Ubi frenum et ephippia? *S.* Sunt in promptu. *R.* Vide, ne quid desit, aut ne quid ruptum sit aut mox rumpendum, ne quid nobis sit in mora, quum erimus in cursu. Propere hoc lorum sarcientium cura. Reversus inspicere soleas equorum, num qui clavi desint aut vascillent. Quam macri sunt equi, quamque strigosi! Quoties absterges, aut pectis illos in anno? *S.* Immo quotidie. *R.* Nimirum res ipsa loquitur. Jejunia colunt, opinor, nonnunquam totum triduum. *S.* Minime. *R.* Negas tu quidem, sed aliud dicant equi, si loqui liceat: quanquam satis loquuntur ipsa macie. *S.* Curo sedulo. *R.* Cur igitur tu habitior equis? *S.* Quia non pascor foeno. *R.* Hoc igitur restat. Adorna manticam celeriter. *S.* Fiet.

7. *Monita Paedagōgi.*

Paedagogus. Tu mihi videris non in aula natus, sed in caula: adeo moribus es agrestibus. Puerum ingenuum decent ingenui mores. Quoties alloquitur te quispiam, cui debes honorem, compone te in rectum corporis statum, apere caput. Vultus sit nec tristis, nec torvus, nec impudens, nec protervus, nec instabilis, sed hilaris modestia temperatus; oculi verecundi, semper intenti in eum, quocum loqueris; juncti pedes, quietae manus. Neve vacilles alternis tibiis, neve manus agant gestus, neve mordeto labrum, neve scabito caput, neve fodito aures. Vestis item ad decorum componatur, ut totus cultus, vultus, gestus et habitus corporis ingenuam modestiam et verecundam indolem prae se ferat. *Puer.* Quid, si mediter? *Pae.* Fac. *Pu.* Siccine satis? *Pae.* Nondum. *Pu.* Quid, si sic? *Pae.* Propemodum. *Pu.* Quid, si sic? *Pae.* Hem satis est; hoc tene, ne sis inepte loquax, aut

praeceps. Neve vagetur animus interim, sed sis attentus, quid alter dicat. Si quid erit respondendum, id facito paucis, ac prudenter, interdum praefatus honorem, nonnunquam etiam addito cognomine, honoris gratia; atque identidem modice flectas alterum genu, praesertim ubi responsum absolveris. Neve abeas, nisi praefatus veniam, aut ab ipso dimissus. Nunc age, specimen aliquod hujus rei nobis praebe!

Quantum temporis abfuisti a maternis aedibus? *Pu.* Jam sex ferme menses. *Pae.* Addendum erat: domine. *Pu.* Jam sex ferme menses domine. *Pae.* Non tangeris desiderio matris? *Pu.* Nonnunquam sane. *Pae.* Cupis eam revisere? *Pu.* Cupio, domine, si id pace liceat tua. *Pae.* Nunc flectendum erat genu. Bene habet. Sic pergito! Quum loqueris, cave, ne praecipites sermonem, aut haesites linguâ, aut palâto murmures, sed distincte, clare, articulatim consuescito proferre verba tua. Si quem praeteribis natu grandem, magistratum, sacerdotem, doctorem, aut omnino virum gravem; memento aperire caput. In convivio sic te praebebis hilârem, ut semper meminêris, quid deceat aetatem tuam: postremus omnium admoveto manum patinae. Si quid datur lautius, recusato modeste; si instabitur, accipe et age gratias: mox, decerpta particûla, quod reliquum est, illi reddito, aut alicui proxime accubanti. Si quis praebibet, hilariter illi bene precator, sed ipse bibito modice. Si non sitis, tamen admoveto calicem labris. Arride loquentibus: ipse cave ne quid loquere, nisi rogatus. Ne cui obtrectato, ne cui temet anteposito, ne tua jactato, ne aliena despicio. Esto comis, etiam erga tenuis fortunae sodales. Ita fiet, ut sine invidia laudem invenias et amicos pares. Si vidêris, convivium extrâhi, precatus veniam ac, salutatis convivis, subducito te a mensa. Vide, ut horum memineris. *Pu.* Dabitur opera, mi praeceptor! Numquid aliud vis? *Pae.* Adito nunc libros tuos. *Pu.* Fiet.

8. Venatio.

Paullus. Trahit sua quemque voluptas; mihi placet venatio. *Thomas.* Placet etiam mihi; sed ubi canes, ubi venabûla, ubi casses? *P.* Valeant apri, ursi, cervi et vulpes! nos insidiabimur cunicûlis. *Vicentius.* At ego laqueos injiciam locustis. *Laurentius.* Ego ranas captabo. *Barthôlus.* Ego papiliones venabor. *L.* Difficile est sectari volantia. *B.* Difficile, sed pulchrum; nisi pulchrius esse ducis sectari lumbricos aut cochlêas, quia carent alis. *L.* Equidem malo insidiari piscibus; est mihi hamus elegans. *B.* Sed unde parabis escam? *L.* Lumbricorum ubi-vis magna est copia. *B.* Est, si tibi velint prorepere e terra. *L.* At ego nox efficiam, ut milia prosiliant. *B.* Quo pacto?

incantamentis? *L.* Videbis artem. Imple hanc situlam aquā. Hos juglandium summos cortices virentes contrafactos immittito. Hac aqua perfunde solum. Nunc observa paullisper. Vides emergentes? *B.* Rem prodigiosam video. Sic olim, opinor, exsilibant armati ex satis serpentis dentibus. Sed plerique pisces delicatioris et elegantioris sunt palāti, quam ut esca tam vulgari capiantur. *L.* Novi quoddam insecti genus, quo talibus insidiari soleo. *B.* Tu vide, possisne imponere piscibus; ego ranis facessam negotium. *L.* Quomodo? reti? *B.* Non; sed arcu. *L.* Novum piscandi genus. *B.* At non injucundum. Videbis et fatebēre. *V.* Quid, si certemus nucibus? *P.* Nuces pueris relinquamus; nos grandiores sumus. *V.* Et tamen nihil aliud adhuc, quam pueri, sumus. *P.* Sed quibus decorum est ludere nucibus, iisdem non indecorum est equitare in arundine longa. *V.* Tu igitur praescribito lusus genus; sequar, quocumque vocaveris. *P.* Et ego futurus sum omnium horarum homo.

9. *Reditus Patris.*

Petrus. Quid ita laetus es, mi Sigismunde? *Sigismundus.* Quia pater domum rediit. *P.* Ubīnam fuit? *S.* Lipsiae. *P.* Cur eo fuerat profectus? *S.* Nescisne, mercatum ibi esse habitum, eumque frequentari a mercatoribus negotiandi causa? *P.* Utrum pedes, an eques rediit, an in rheda? *S.* Equo vectus est. *P.* Quando advēnit? *S.* Ante horam. *P.* Quis tibi tam cito nuntiavit? *S.* Famulus, qui eum jam e longinquo venientem viderat. *P.* Jamne salutasti? *S.* Salutavi, quum vix ex equo descendisset. *P.* Quid amplius illi fecisti? *S.* Calcaria detraxi et ocrēas. *P.* Bene fecisti; sed miror, te propter adventum ejus non domi mansisse. *S.* Id nec pater permisisset, nec ego ipse vellem, quum nunc tempus adsit in scholam eundi. *P.* Id quidem laude dignum est; sed quomodo valet pater tuus? *S.* Optime dei beneficio. *P.* Ego gaudeo tecum, quod salvus rediit. *S.* Sed alias pluribus colloquemur. Nunc in scholam eamus!

10. *Colloquium scholasticum.*

Cornelius. Scite tu quidem scribis; sed charta tua perfluit. Charta subhumida est ac transmittit atramentum. *Andreas.* Quaeso, ut appāres mihi pennam hanc. *C.* Deest mihi scalprum librarium. *A.* En tibi! *C.* Hui, quam obtusum! *A.* Accipe cotem! *C.* Utrum soles scribere cuspidē duriore, an molliore? *A.* Accommoda ad manum tuam. *C.* Ego molliore soleo. *A.* Quaeso, ut mihi describas ordine figuras elementorum. *C.* Grae-

cas, an Latinas? *A.* Latinas primum conabor imitari. *C.* Suppedita chartam. *A.* Accipe. *C.* Sed meum atramentum dilutius est saepius infusâ aquâ. *A.* At meum atramentarium prorsus exaruit. Rogabo alicunde. *C.* Praestat habere domi, quam rogare mutuum. *A.* Quid est discipulus sine calamo et atramento? *C.* Quod miles sine clipeo et gladio. *A.* Utinam mihi sint digiti tam celeres! Ego non possum dictantis vocem scribendo assêqui. *C.* prima cura sit, ut bene scribas; proxima, ut celeriter. Sat cito, si sat bene. *A.* Belle; sed istam cantionem cane praeceptor, quum dictat: Sat cito, si sat bene.

III. HISTORY.

1. *Tres Persarum in Graecos expeditiones.*

(Cf. Corn. Nep. Milt. 4. Justin. 2. 9—15.)

1. Iônes, in Asia minore Persarum imperio subjecti, quum jam diu servitutis jugum aegre tulissent, Aristagôra et Histiaeo ducibus, libertatem recuperare constituerunt (502—496 a. Chr.). Ac Atheniensibus et Eretriensibus, sociis, adjuti ceperunt quidem Sardes; sed ingentibus Persarum copiis oppressi tandem rursus in eorum dit'ionem redacti sunt. Darius, rex Persarum, Graecis ob auxilium Ionibus latum iratus, consilium cepit Graeciae bellum inferre. Prima expeditio, duce Mardonio suscepta (492), foedo usa est exitu. Nam classis Persarum maximam partem ad promontorium, quod appellatur Athos, tempestatibus deleta est; exercitus autem pedester a Thraciae gentibus devictus.

2. Duobus annis post (490) Darius alteram in Graecos suscepit expeditionem. Classem quingentarum navium comparavit eique Datim praefecit et Artaphernem, iisque ducenta peditum, decem milia equitum dedit. Illi praefecti regis, classe ad Euboeam appulsa, celeriter Eretriam ceperunt omnesque ejus gentis cives abreptos in Asiam ad regem miserunt. Inde ad Atticam accesserunt ac suas copias in campum Marathonium deduxerunt. Is abest ab Athenis circiter milia passuum decem. Athenienses, audito Darii adventu, auxilium a Lacedaemoniis, socia tum civitate, petiverunt. Quos ubi viderunt quadridui religione teneri, non expectato auxilio, instructis decem milibus civium et Plataeensibus auxiliariis mille, adversus sexcenta milia hostium in proelium egrediuntur.

3. Miltiâdes et dux belli erat, et auctor non expectandi auxilii.

Magna in pugnam euntibus alacritas animorum fuit, adeo, ut, quum mille passus inter duas acies essent, citato cursu ante jac-tum sagittarum ad hostem venerint. Nec audaciae ejus eventus defuit. Victi Persae in naves confugerunt; ex quibus multae suppressae, multae captae sunt. In eo proelio tanta virtus singulorum fuit, ut, cujus laus prima esset, difficile judicium videretur. Inter ceteros tamen Themistoclis adolescentis gloria emicuit, in quo jam tum indoles futurae imperatoriae virtutis apparuit.

4. Cynaegiri quoque, militis Atheniensis, gloria magnis scripto-rum laudibus celebrata est: qui post proelii innumerabiles caedes, quum fugientes hostes ad naves egisset, onustam navem dextra manu tenuit nec prius dimisit, quam manum amitteret: tum quo-que, amputatâ dextrâ, navem sinistra comprehendit: quam et ipsam quum amisisset, ad postremum morsu navem detinuit. Tanta in eo virtus fuit, ut non tot caedibus fatigatus, non duabus manibus amissis victus, truncus ad postremum et veluti rabida fera dentibus dimicaverit.— Ducenta milia Persae eo proelio sive nau-fragio amisere. Cecidit etiam Hippias, qui, olim tyrannus Athe-niensis, tum regno pulsus, apud Darium in exilio vivebat et non solum auctor et concitor ejus belli fuerat, sed etiam ducem se Dario adversus patriam suam obtulerat, diis patriae ultoribus poenas repetentibus. Interea Darius, quum bellum instauraret, in ipso apparatu decesset. (480.)

5. Xerxes, qui patri in regno successit, bellum a patre coeptum adversus Graeciam per quinquennium instruxit. Septingenta milia de regno armaverat et trecenta milia de auxiliis, ut non immerito proditum sit, flumina ab exercitu ejus siccata, Graeciam-que omnem vix capere exercitum ejus potuisse. Naves quoque milia ducentas numero habuisse dicitur.

6. Ut introitus Xerxis (480) in Graeciam terribilis fuit, ita tur-pis ac foedus discessus. Nam quum Leonidas, rex Lacedaemoni-orum, cum quattuor milibus militum angustias Thermopylarum occupasset, Xerxes, contempta paucitate, eos pugnam capessere jubet, quorum cognati Marathoniâ pugna interfecti fuerant: qui, dum ulcisci suos cupiunt, principium cladis fuere: succedente deinde inutili turba, major caedes editur. Triduum ibi cum dolore et indignatione Persarum dimicatum; quarto die, quum nuntia-tum esset Leonidae, a viginti milibus hostium summum cacumem teneri, tunc hortatur socios, recedant, et se ad meliora patriae tempora reservent; sibi cum Lacedaemoniis fortunam experien-dam; plura se patriae, quam vitae, debere; ceteros ad praesidia Graeciae servandos. Audito regis imperio, discessere ceteri, soli Lacedaemonii remanserunt. Initio hujus belli Delphis oraculum erat datum, aut regi Lacedaemoniorum, aut urbi cadendum esse.

7. Et idcirco rex Leonidas, quum in bellum proficisceretur,

ita suos firmaverat, ut ire se parato ad moriendum animo scirent. Angustias propterea occupaverat, ut cum paucis aut majore gloria vinceret, aut minore damno reipublicae caderet. Dimissis igitur sociis, hortatur Lacedaemonios, meminerint, quocumque modo proeliaturi sint, cadendum esse; caverent, ne fortius mansisse, quam dimicasse viderentur; nec expectandum, donec ab hoste circumvenirentur, sed, dum nox occasionem daret, securis et laetis superveniendum; nusquam victores honestius, quam in castris hostium perituros. Nihil erat difficile persuadere paratis mori: statim arma capiunt, et sexcenti viri in castra quingentorum milium irrumpunt; statimque regis praetorium petunt, aut cum illo, aut, si ipsi oppressi essent, in ipsius potissimum sede morituri. Tumultus totis castris oritur. Lacedaemonii posteaquam regem non inveniunt, per omnia castra victores vagantur, caedunt sternuntque omnia, quum sciant, se pugnare non spe victoriae, sed in mortis poenam. Proelium a principio noctis in majorem partem diei tractum. Ad postremum non victi, sed vicendo fatigati interingentes stratorum hostium catervas occiderunt.

8. Xerxes, duobus vulneribus terrestri proelio acceptis, experi maris fortunam statuit. Ante navale proelium miserat Xerxes quattuor milia armatorum Delphos ad templum Apollinis diripiendum: prorsus, quasi non cum Graecis tantum, sed etiam cum diis immortalibus bellum gereret: quae manus tota imbribus et fulminibus deleta est, ut intelligeret, quam nullae essent hominum adversus deos vires. Post haec Thespias, et Plataeas, et Athenas vacuas hominibus incendit et, quoniam ferro in homines non poterat, in aedificia igne grassatur. Namque Athenienses post pugnam Marathoniam, praemonente Themistocle, victoriam illam, de Persis reportatam, non finem, sed causam majoris belli fore, ducentas naves fabricati erant. Adventante igitur Xerxe, consulentibus Delphis oraculum responsum erat, salutem muris ligneis tuerentur.

9. Themistocles igitur persuadet omnibus, civitatem non in aedificiis, sed in civibus esse positam. Itaque eos melius salutem navibus, quam urbi commissuros. Hujus sententiae etiam Deum auctorem esse. Probato consilio, conjuges liberosque cum pretiosissimis rebus abditis insulis, relictâ urbe, demandant; ipsi naves armati conscendunt. Exemplum Atheniensium etiam aliae urbes imitatae sunt. Itaque quum conjuncta omnis sociorum classis, et intenta in bellum navale esset, angustiasque Salaminii freti, ne circumveniri a multitudine posset, occupasset; dissensio inter civitatum principes oritur. Qui quum, deserto bello, ad sua tuenda dilabi vellent, timens Themistocles, ne discessu sociorum vires minuerentur, per servum fidelem Xerxi nuntiat, uno in loco eum contractam Graeciam capere facillime posse. Quodsi civitates,

quae jam abire vellent, dissiparentur; majore labore ei singulas consecandas. Hoc dolo impulit regem, ut signum pugnae daret. Graeci quoque, adventu hostium occupati, proelium collatis viribus capessunt (480).

10. Interea rex, velut spectator pugnae, cum parte navium in littore remānet; Artemisiā autem, regina Halicarnassi quae in auxilium Xerxi venerat, inter primos duces bellum acerrime ciebat: quippe ut in viro muliēbrem timorem, ita in muliere virilem audaciam cerneret. Quum anceps proelium esset, Iōnes ex praecepto Themistoclis pugnae se paullatim subtrahere coeperunt: quorum defectio animos ceterorum fregit. Itaque circumspicientes fugam pelluntur Persae et mox, proelio victi, in fugam vertuntur. In qua trepidatione multae captae sunt naves, multae mersae; plures tamen, non minus saevitiam regis, quam hostem, timentes, domum dilabuntur.

11. Hac clade perculsum et dubium Xerxem Mardonius hortatur, in regnum abeat, ne quid seditionis moveat fama adversi belli, in majus, sicuti mos est, omnia extollens; sibi trecenta milia armatorum lecta ex omnibus copiis relinquat: qua manu aut cum gloria ejus perdomiturum se Greciam, aut, si aliter eventus ferat, sine ejusdem infamia hostibus cessurum. Probato consilio, Mardonio exercitus traditur: reliquas copias rex ipse reducere in regnum parat. Sed Graeci, audita regis fuga, consilium ineunt pontis interrumpendi, quem ille Abūdō veluti victor maris fecerat, ut, intercluso reditu, aut cum exercitu deleretur, aut desperatione rerum pacem victus petere cogeretur.

12. Sed Themistocles, timens, ne interclusi hostes desperationem in virtutem verterent et iter, quod aliter non pateret, ferro patefacerent, quum vincere consilio ceteros non posset, servum ad Xerxem mittit, certiolemque consilii facit et occupare transitum maturata fuga jubet. Ille, perculsus nuntio, tradit ducibus milites perducendos; ipse cum paucis Abūdum contendit. Ubi quum solutum pontem hibernis tempestatibus offendisset, piscatoria scapha trepidus trajecit. Nec pedestribus copiis feliciter iter fuit; quotidiano enim labori etiam fames accesserat. Multorum deinde dierum inopia contraxerat etiam pestem; tantāque foeditas morientium fuit, ut viae cadaveribus implerentur, alitesque et bestiae, escae illecebris sollicitatae, exercitum sequerentur.

13. Mardonius ad Plataeas in Boeotia a Pausania Lacedaemonio et Aristide Atheniensi devictus est (479). Castra referta regalis opulentiae capta. Eodem forte die, quo Mardonii copiae deletae sunt etiam navali proelio in Asia sub monte Mycāle adversus Persas dimicatum est (479) et splendida de Persis reportata victoria. Ibi ante proelium, quum classes ex adverso starent, fama ad utrumque exercitum venit, vicisse Graecos et Mardonii

copias occidione occidisse. Confecto bello, quum de praemiis civitatum ageretur, omnium iudicio Atheniensium virtus ceteris praelata est. Inter duces quoque Themistocles princeps civitatum testimonio iudicatus gloriam patriae suae auxit.

2. *Brevis conspectus historiae Romanae ab urbe condita usque ad Augustum.* (Ex Eutropio, aliis mutatis, aliis omissis, nonnullis etiam ex aliis scriptoribus additis.

1. Romanum imperium a Romulo exordium habet, qui Rheae Silviae, Vestalis virginis et Martis filius, cum Remo, fratre gemino, urbem condidit, quam ex nomine suo Romam vocavit (753 a. Chr.). Asylō aperto ad numerum civium augendum, ingens hominum multitudo ex finitimis civitatibus Romam confluit. At viri non habebant feminas. Itaque Romulus ludos solennes instituit invitavitque ad eorum spectaculum vicinas urbis Romae nationes. Quum multi alii convenerunt, tum Sabinorum omnis multitudo cum liberis et conjugibus. Dum ludi eduntur, extemplo Romani discurrunt magnamque virginum partem rapiunt.

2. Propter raptarum injuriam Sabini Romanis bellum intulerunt. Res venit ad pugnam. Utrunque acerrime decertatur. In media acie repente raptae mulieres crinibus passis scissaque veste ausae sunt se inter tela volantia inferre et precibus infestas acies dirimere. Rebus compositis, Romulus centum ex senioribus legit, quorum consilio omnia ageret, quos senatores nominavit propter senectutem. Anno regni tricesimo septimo, quum orta subito tempestate non comparuisset, ad deos transisse putatus est (761).

3. Postea Numa Pompilius, Curibus, urbe in agro Sabinorum, natus, rex creatus est (715 — 673). Qui bellum quidem nullum gessit, sed non minus civitati, quam Romulus, profuit. Nam legibus moribusque et sacris plurimis constitutis populi barbari et bellicosi mores mollivit. Etiam annum descripsit in decem menses. Omnia autem, quae faciebat, se nymphae Egeriae jussu facere dictitabat. Regnavit tres et quadraginta annos. — Huic successit Tullus Hostilius (673 — 640). Is bella reparavit. Bellum Albanis illatum, certamine trigeminorum fratrum, qui forte in utroque exercitu erant, nec aetate, nec viribus disparium, finitum est. Deinde etiam Veientes et Fidenates bello superavit. Quum XXX annos regnasset, fulmine ictus cum domo sua arsit.

4. Post hunc Ancus Marcius, Numae ex filia nepos, suscepit imperium (640—616). Contra Latinos dimicavit, apud ostium Tiberis urbem condidit, quam Ostiam vocavit. Vicesimo quarto anno imperii morbo periit. — Deinde regnum Tarquinius Priscus

accepit (616 — 578). Is numerum senatorum duplicavit; circum Romae aedificavit; ludos Romanos instituit. Vicit idem etiam Sabinos nec parum agrorum, iis ademptorum, urbis Romae territorio adjunxit. Muros fecit et cloacas; Capitolium inchoavit. Tricesimo octavo imperii anno per Anci filios occisus est, regis ejus, cui ipse successerat. — Post hunc Servius Tullius suscepit imperium (578 — 534). Primus omnium censum ordinavit. Sub eo Roma habuit capitum LXXXIII milia civium Romanorum cum iis, qui in agris erant. Occisus est XLV imperii anno scelere generi sui Tarquinii, filii ejus regis, cui ipse successerat, et filiae, quam Tarquinius habebat uxorem.

5. Hic Tarquinius, qui propter superbiam Superbi cognomen accepit, septimus fuit atque ultimus regum (534 — 509). Multas gentes devicit; templum Jovi in Capitolio aedificavit. Postea Ardeam, urbem Etruriae, oppugnans imperium perdidit. Nam quum filius ejus nobilissimae feminae, Lucretiae, eidemque pudicissimae, vñ fecisset, eaque de injuria marito et patri et amicis quæsta fuisset, in omnium conspectu se occidit, postquam eos obtestata fuerat, ut hanc injuriam ulciscerentur. Propter quam causam M. Brutus, Tarquinius Collatinus alique in exitium regis conjuraverunt, et, populo concitato, ei imperium ademerunt. Cum uxore et liberis suis fugit, quum XXV annos regnasset. Ita Romae regnatum est per septem reges annos CCXLIV.

6. Hinc consules coepti sunt pro uno rege duo hac causa creari (509), ut si unus malus esse voluisset, alter eum, habens eandem potestatem, coërceret. Et placuit, r.e imperium longius, quam annuum haberent, ne per diuturnitatem potestatis insolentiores fierent, sed aequitatem semper servarent, qui se post annum scirent futuros esse privatos. Fuerunt igitur anno primo, expulsis regibus, consules L. Junius Brutus, qui maxime egerat, ut Tarquinius pelleretur, et Tarquinius Collatinus, maritus Lucretiae. Sed Tarquinio Collatino statim sublata dignitas est. Placuerat enim, ne quisquam in urbe maneret, qui Tarquinius vocaretur. In ejus locum factus est Valerius Publicola consul.

7. Commovit tamen bellum urbi Romae rex Tarquinius, qui fuerat expulsus, et, collectis multis gentibus, ut in regnum posset restitui, dimicavit. In prima pugna Brutus consul et Ancus, Tarquinii filius, alter alterum se occiderunt. Romani tamen ex ea pugna victores discesserunt. Brutum Romanae matronae, defensorem pudicitiae suae, quasi communem patrem, per annum luxerunt. Valerius Publicola Sp. Lucretium, Lucretiae patrem, collegam sibi fecit: quo morbo mortuo, iterum Horatium Pulvillum collegam sibi sumpsit. Ita primus annus quinque consules habuit.

8. Etiam secundo anno (508) iterum Tarquinius, ut recipere-

tur in regnum, bellum Romanis intulit, auxilium ei ferente Porsēnā, Etruscorum rege. Is ne Tiberim transiret, virtute Horatii Coelitis prohibitus est, qui dum alii pontem rescindunt, unus Etruscos sustinuit et, ponte rupto, armatus se in flumen misit et ad suos transnavit. Quum Porsēna urbem obsideret, C. Mucius Scaevōla, adolescens nobilis, in castra hostium se contulit, ut Porsenam regem occideret. At pro rege scribam obruncat, qui propter eum sedebat pari fere ornatu indutus. Tum a regiis satellitibus comprehensus, ante tribūnal regis constitutus est. Qui quum tormenta minitaretur, Mucius, dextrā accenso ad sacrificium foculo injectā: En tibi, inquit, quam vile corpus sit iis, qui magnam gloriam vident. Qua animi virtute percussus rex juvenem intactum inviolatumque dimisit. Tum Mucius, quasi remunerans beneficium, trecentos principes juventutis Romanae in ejus vitam conjurasse ait. Qua re territus Porsēna pacem cum Romanis fecit. Tarquinius autem Tuscūlum abiit ibique privatus cum uxore consenuit.

9. Sexto decimo anno post reges exactos (492) seditionem populus Romae fecit, questus, se a senatu et consulibus tributis et militia premi. Magna pars plebis urbem reliquit et in montem trans Aniēnem amnem secessit. Pavor ingens patres occupavit. Placuit igitur oratorem ad plebem mitti Menenium Agrippam, facundum virum et plebi, ex qua ipse ortus erat, carum. Is fabula de membrorum humani corporis contra ventrem conspiratione narrata, flexit mentes hominum. Ad concordiam firmandam tribuni plebis facti sunt, qui plebem contra senatum et consules defenderent.

10. Sequenti anno (491). Volsci bellum reparaverunt, sed devicti sunt, et Coriōli, eorum urbs, capti a Q. Marcio, cui inde cognomen Coriolano fuit. Postero anno idem Coriolanus, quum, fame in urbe orta, infestum se reddidisset plebi, urbe expulsus est. Iratus in Volseos abiit exsulatum. A quibus benigne exceptus et dux creatus exercitum contra Romanos duxit eosque saepe vicit. Usque ad quintum miliarium urbis accessit, oppugnaturus etiam patriam, legatis, qui pacem petebant, repudiatis. Tandem ad eum mater Veturia et uxor Volumnia ex urbe venerunt, quarum fletu et deprecatione superatus removit exercitum. Abductis deinde legionibus ex agro Romano, invidia rei oppressus perisse traditur.

11. Undecim annis post (477), bello cum Vejentibus exorto, quum Romani graviter ab hostibus premerentur, trecenti nobiles homines, qui ex Fabia gente erant, bellum soli susceperunt, promittentes, se privato sumptu bellum gesturos et confecturos. Quum saepe hostes vicissent, ad Cremēram flumen castra posuerunt. Ibi Vejentes dolo usi in insidias Fabios pellexe-

runt et ad unum omnes occiderunt. Unus omnino superfuit ex tanta gente, qui per aetatem puerilem duci non poterat ad pugnam. Sequenti anno (476), quum in Algido monte Romanus obsideretur exercitus, L. Quinctius Cincinnatus dictator est factus, qui agrum quattuor jugerum possidens manibus suis colebat. Is quum in opere et arans esset inventus, sudore deterso, togam praetextam accepit et, caesis hostibus, liberavit exercitum.

12. Sex annis post (450) pro duobus consulibus decemviri creati sunt, qui summam potestatem haberent. Sed quum primo anno bene egissent, secundo unus ex iis, Appius Claudius, virginem ingenuam, Virginiam, corrumpere voluit. At pater ejus, Virginius, centurio, vir erectioris indolis, quum eam aliter tueri non posset, ne in potestatem Appii veniret, filiam suapte manu occidit et regressus ad milites movit tumultum. Sublata est decemviris potestas, ipsique damnati sunt.

13. Multis annis post Vejentes rebellaverunt (403—393). Dictator contra eos missus est Furius Camillus, qui primum eos vicit acie, mox etiam Vejos diu obsidens cepit, deinde etiam Faliscos urbem obsidebat. Quae urbs quum acriter a civibus defensa capi non posset a Romanis, ludimagister quidam, cujus curae principum liberi demandati erant, eos ex urbe in castra Romanorum duxit, ut, pueris Camillo traditis, urbem proderet. At Camillus, proditione repudiata, proditorem, manibus post tergum victis, pueris Faliscos verberibus agendum dedit. Qua animi nobilitate commoti Falisci urbem Romanis tradiderunt.

14. Sed commota est ei invidia, quod praedam inique divisisset, damnatusque ob eam causam et expulsus civitate est. Eodem fere tempore Galli Senones ad urbem venerunt et, Romanis apud flumen Alliam victis, urbem ipsam occuparunt; neque defendi quicquam, nisi Capitolium, potuit. Quod quum diu obsedissent, et jam Romani fame laborarent, a Camillo, qui in vicina civitate exsulabat, Gallis superventum est gravissimeque victi sunt.

15. Anno CCCLXXXIV post urbem conditam (358) Galli iterum contra Romanos bellum moverunt et quarto milliaro trans Anienem fluvium consederunt. Gallus eximia corporis magnitudine, quem Romae virum fortissimum haberet, ad certamen singulare provocavit. T. Manlius, accepta provocatione, Gallum occidit eumque torque aureo, quo ornatus erat, spoliavit. Hinc cognomen accepit Torquati. Galli fugam capessiverunt. Novo bello cum Gallis exorto, anno urbis CCCCVI, iterum Gallus, corporis magnitudine insignis, e Romanis qui esset optimus ad certamen provocavit. Tum se M. Valerius, tribunus militum, obtulit, et, quum processisset armatus, corvus ei supra dextrum brachium sedit. Mox commissa pugna, idem corvus alis et unguibus Galli

oculos verberavit, ne rectum posset adspicere. Ita a Valerio interfectus, non solum victoriam ei, sed etiam nomen dedit. Nam postea Corvus est dictus.

16. Postea Samnitibus a Romanis bellum illatum est (300—290). In quo bello Romani, T. Veturio et Spurio Postumio consulibus, ingenti dedecore affecti sunt. Pontius enim, dux hostium, eos ad Furculas Caudinas in angustias pellexit et, quum inde sese expedire non possent, omnes sub jugum misit. Tandem post cruentissimum undequinquaginta annorum bellum fortissima Samnitium gens a Romanis est devicta.

17. Paucis annis post (281) Tarentinis, qui in ultima Italia sunt, bellum indictum est, qui legatis Romanorum injuriam fecissent. Hi Pyrrhum, Epiri regem, contra Romanos auxilium poposcerunt. Is mox in Italiam venit. Missus est contra eum consul L. Valerius Laevinus, qui, quum exploratores Pyrrhi cepisset, jussit eos per castra duci, ostendi omnem exercitum tumque dimitti, ut renunciarent Pyrrho, quaecumque a Romanis agerentur. Commissā mox pugnā, quum jam Pyrrhus fugeret, elephantorum auxilio vicit, quos incognitos Romani expaverunt; sed non proelio finem dedit. Pyrrhus Romanos mille octingentos cepit eosque summo honore tractavit; occisos sepelivit. Quos quum adverso vulnere et truci vultu etiam mortuos jacere vidisset, sustulit ad coelum manus dicens, se totius orbis dominum esse potuisse, si tales sibi milites contigissent.

18. Postea Pyrrhus, junctis sibi Samnitibus, Lucanis Brutiisque, Romam perrexit, omnia ferro ignique vastavit, Campaniam depopulatus est atque ad Praeneste venit. Mox terrore exercitus, qui cum consule sequebatur, in Campaniam se recepit. Legati ad Pyrrhum de redimendis captivis missi ab eo honorifice excepti sunt; captivos sine pretio reddidit. Unum ex legatis Romanorum, Fabricium, sic admiratus est, ut, quum eum pauperem esse cognovisset, quarta parte regni promissa, sollicitare voluerit, ut ad se transiret; at contemptus a Fabricio est. Quare quum Pyrrhus ingenti Romanorum admiratione teneretur, legatum misit, qui pacem aequis conditionibus peteret, praecipuum virum, Cineam nomine, ita ut Pyrrhus partem Italiae, quam jam armis occupaverat, obtineret.

19. Pax displicuit, responsumque Pyrrho a senatu est, eum cum Romanis, nisi ex Italiae recessisset, pacem habere non posse. Tum Romani jusserunt captivos omnes quos Pyrrhus reddiderat, infames haberi, quod armati capi potuissent, nec ante eos ad veterem statum reverti, quam si binorum hostium occisorum spolia retulissent. Ita legatus Pyrrhi revertit. A quo quum quaereret Pyrrhus, qualem Romam comperisset? Cineas dixit, regum se patriam vidisse; scilicet tales illic fere omnes, qualis unus Pyrr-

hus in Epiro et reliqua Graecia putaretur. Missi sunt contra Pyrrhum duces P. Sulpicius et Decius Mus, consules (279). Certamine commisso Pyrrhus vulneratus est, elephantis interfecti, XX milia caesa hostium, et ex Romanis tantum quinque milia. Pyrrhus Tarentum fugatus est.

20. Interjecto anno (278), contra Pyrrhum Fabricius est missus, qui prius inter legatos sollicitari non potuerat, quarta parte regni promissa. Tum, quum vicina castra ipse et rex haberent, medicus Pyrrhi ad eum nocte venit, promittens, se veneno Pyrrhum occisurum, si sibi aliquid polliceretur; quem Fabricius victum reduci iussit ad dominum Pyrrhoque dici, quae contra caput ejus medicus spondisset. Tunc rex, admiratus eum, dixisse fertur: Ille est Fabricius, qui difficilius ab honestate, quam sol a cursu suo averti potest. Tum rex in Siciliam profectus est (277); Fabricius, victis Samnitibus et Lucanis, triumphavit. Consules deinde, Curius Dentatus et Cornelius Lentulus, adversus Pyrrhum missi sunt; Curius contra eum pugnavit, exercitum ejus cecidit, ipsum Tarentum fugavit, castra cepit. Eo die caesa hostium XXIII milia. Curius in consulatu triumphavit; primus Romanos elephantos quattuor duxit. Pyrrhus etiam a Tarento mox recessit et apud Argos, Graeciae urbem, occisus est (274).

21. Quum jam clarum urbis Romae nomen esset, arma tamen extra Italiam mota non fuerant. Anno autem CCCCXC post urbem conditam (262), exercitu in Siciliam trajecto, Hieronem, regem Syracusarum, devicerunt et Poenis, qui multas civitates in ea insula occupaverant, bellum intulerunt. Quinto anno belli Punici (258) primum Romani in mari dimicaverunt. Duilius, consul Romanorum, commisso proelio navali, Carthaginiensium ducem vicit, XXXI naves cepit, XIV mersit, VII milia hostium cepit, III milia occidit. Neque ulla victoria Romanis gratior fuit, quod, invicti terrā, jam etiam mari plurimum possent.

22. L. Manlio Vulso, M. Atilio Regulo consulibus (256), bellum in Africam translatum est; contra Hamilcarem, Carthaginiensium ducem, in mari pugnatum, victusque est. Nam perditis LXIV navibus, se recepit. Romani XXII amiserunt. Sed quum in Africam transissent, primum Clypeam, Africae urbem, in deditionem acceperunt. Consules usque ad Carthaginem processerunt, multisque vastatis, Manlius victor Romam rediit et XXVII milia captivorum reduxit; Atilius Regulus in Africa remansit. Is contra Poenos aciem instruxit; contra tres Carthaginiensium duces dimicans, victor fuit; XVIII milia hostium cecidit, quinque milia cum XVIII elephantis cepit; LXXIV civitates in fidem accepit. Tum victi Carthaginienses pacem a Romanis petierunt: quam cum Regulus nollet, nisi durissimis conditionibus, dare, Poeni auxilium a Lacedaemoniis petierunt; et duce Xan-

thippo, qui a Laeadaemoniis missus fuerat, Romanorum dux Regulus victus est. Nam duo milia tantum ex omni Romano exercitu refugerunt; quingenti cum imperatore Regulo capti sunt; XXX milia occisa; Regulus ipse in catenas conjectus.

23. Postea autem Carthaginenses, multis ac gravissimis cladibus affecti et terra marique superati, Regulum ducem, quem ceperant, rogarunt, ut Romam proficisceretur et pacem a Romanis peteret ac permutationem captivorum faceret. Ille Romam quum venisset, inductus in senatum, nihil ut Romanus egit dixitque, se ex illa die, quae in potestatem Poenorum venisset, Romanum esse desisse. Itaque et uxorem a complexu removit et senatui suasit, ne pax cum Poenis fieret; illos enim, fractos tot casibus, spem nullam habere; se tanti non esse, ut tot milia captivorum propter unum se et senem, et paucos, qui ex Romanis capti fuerant, redderentur. Haec sententia vicit. Ipse Carthaginem rediit; offerentibus Romanis, ut eum Romae tenerent, negavit, se in ea urbe mansurum, in qua, postquam Poenis servisset, dignitatem honesti civis habere non posset. Regressus igitur in Africam, omnibus suppliciis extinctus est.

24. Anno belli Punici XXIII (242) Lutatio Catulo, alteri consuli Romanorum, bellum contra Afros commissum est. Profectus est cum CCC navibus in Siciliam. Poeni contra ipsum CCCC paraverunt. Contra Lilybaeum, promontorium Siciliae, pugnatum est ingenti virtute Romanorum. Nam LXXIII Carthaginensium naves captae sunt, CXXV demersae, XXXII milia hostium capta, XIII occisa; infinitum auri argentique pondus in potestatem Romanorum redactum. Ex classe Romana XII naves demersae. Statim Carthaginenses pacem petierunt, tributaque est iis pax; captivi Romanorum, qui tenebantur a Carthaginensibus, redditi sunt. Carthaginenses Sicilia, Sardinia et ceterisque inter Italiam et Africam insulis decesserunt omnemque Hispaniam, quae citra Iberum est, Romanis permisissent.

25. Anno DXXIV. ab u. c. (299) ingentes Gallorum copiae Alpes transierunt. Sed pro Romanis tota Italia consensit, traditumque est a Fabio historico, qui ei bello interfuit, DCCC milia hominum parata ad id bellum fuisse. Sed res per consulem L. Aemilium apud Clusium, Etruriae urbem, prospere gesta est; XL. milia hostium interfecta sunt. Aliquot deinde annis post contra Gallos in agro Insubrium pugnatum est, finitumque est bellum M. Claudio Marcello, Cn. Cornelio Scipione consulibus. Tum Marcellus cum parva manu equitum dimicavit et regem Gallorum, Virdomarum nomine, manu sua occidit. Postea cum collega ingentes copias Gallorum peremit, Mediolanum expugnavit, grandem praedam Romam pertulit ac triumphans spolia Galli, stipiti imposta, humeris suis vexit.

26. Paulo post (218) bellum Punicum secundum Romanis illatum est per Hannibalem, Carthaginiensium ducem, quem, novem annos natum, pater Hamilcar, ad aram abductum jurare jussit, nunquam se in amicitia cum Romanis fore. Is, annum agens vicesimum, patre mortuo, Saguntum, Hispaniae civitatem, Romanis amicam, oppugnare aggressus est. Huic Romani per legatos denunciaverunt, ut bello abstineret. Is legatos admittere noluit. Romani etiam Carthaginem miserunt, ut mandaretur Hannibali, ne bellum contra socios populi Romani gereret. Dura responsa a Carthaginiensibus reddita. Saguntini interea fame victi sunt. Tum Romani Carthaginiensibus bellum indixerunt.

27. Hannibal, relicto in Hispania fratre Hasdrubale, Pyrenaeum transiit; Alpes, adhuc ea parte invias, sibi patefecit. Traditur in Italiam LXXX milia peditum, et XX milia equitum, septem et XXX elephantos adduxisse. Interea multi Ligures et Galli Hannibali se conjunxerunt. P. Cornelius Scipio Hannibali primus occurrit; commisso ad Ticinum proelio, fugatis suis, ipse vulneratus in castra rediit. Tum Sempronius Gracchus conflictavit apud Trebiam amnem. Is quoque vincitur. Hannibali multi se in Italia dederunt. Inde in Tusciam veniens Hannibal Flaminium consulem ad Trasimenum lacum acie devicit (217). Ipse Flaminus intremptus est; Romanorum XXV milia caesa sunt, ceteri diffugerunt. Jamjam, exercitibus Romanis devictis, Hannibal ipsam urbem Romam aggressurus vibebatur; at praeter omnem expectationem transduxit copias in Italiam inferiorem. Missus adversus Hannibalem est Q. Fabius Maximus, qui differendo pugnam Hannibalem debilitavit et cunctando res Romanas restituit.

28. L. Aemilius Paullus, P. Terentius Varro, consules, Fabio succedunt (216); qui ambos consules monuit, ut Hannibalem, calidum et impatientem ducem, non aliter vincerent, quam proelium differendo. Verum quum impatientiam Varronis, obloquente consule altero, apud vicum, qui Cannae appellatur, in Apulia pugnatum esset, ambo consules ab Hannibale vincuntur. In ea pugna tria milia Poenorum pereunt, magna pars de exercitu Hannibalis sauciatur; nullo tamen Punico bello Romani gravius accepti sunt. Perit enim in eo Aemilius Paullus consul, consulares aut praetorii XX, senatores capti aut occisi XXX, nobiles viri CCC, militum XL milia, equitum III milia et quingenti. In quibus malis nemo tamen Romanorum pacis mentionem fecit. Servi, quod nunquam ante factum est, manumissi et milites facti sunt.

29. Post eam pugnam multae Italiae civitates, quae Romanis paruerant, se ad Hannibalem transtulerunt. Hannibal Romanis obtulit, ut captivos redimerent; responsumque est a senatu, eos cives non esse necessarios, qui, quum a mati essent, capi potuis-

sent. Ille omnes postea variis suppliciis interfecit et tres modios aureorum annulorum Carthaginem misit, quos e manibus equitum Romanorum, senatorum et militum detraxerat. Interea in Hispania, ubi frater Hannibalis, Hasdrubal, remanserat cum magno exercitu, ut eam totam Poenis subigeret, a duobus Scipionibus, Romanis ducibus, vincitur perditque in pugna XXXV milia hominum.

30. Anno quarto, postquam in Italiam Hannibal venit (215), M. Claudius Marcellus consul apud Nolam, civitatem Campaniae, contra Hannibalem bene pugnavit. Hannibal multas civitates Romanorum per Apuliam, Calabriam et Bruttios occupavit: quo tempore etiam rex Macedoniae, Philippus, ad eum legatos misit, promittens auxilia contra Romanos ea conditione, ut deletis Romanis, ipse quoque contra Graecos ab Hannibale auxilia acciperet. Captis autem legatis Philippi et re cognita, Romani in Macedoniam M. Valerium Laevinum ire jusserunt, in Sardiniam T. Manlium Torquatium, proconsulem. Nam etiam ea sollicitata ab Hannibale Romanos deseruerat.

31. Ita uno tempore quattuor locis pugnabatur: in Italia contra Hannibalem; in Hispaniis contra fratrem ejus Hasdrubalem; in Macedonia contra Philippum; in Sardinia contra Sardos et alterum Hasdrubalem Carthaginensem. Is a T. Manlio proconsule, qui in Sardiniam missus fuerat, vivus est captus, occisa cum eo XII milia, capti mille quingenti, et a Romanis Sardinia subacta. Manlius victor captivos et Hasdrubalem Romam reportavit. Interea etiam Philippus a Laevino in Macedonia vincitur, et in Hispania a Scipionibus Hasdrubal et Mago, tertius frater Hannibalis.

32. Decimo anno, postquam Hannibal in Italiam venerat (211), P. Sulpicio, Cn. Fulvio consulibus, Hannibal usque ad quartum milliarium urbis accessit, equites ejus usque ad portam. Mox consulum metu, cum exercitu venientium, Hannibal in Campaniam se recepit. In Hispania a fratre ejus Hasdrubale ambo Scipiones, qui per multos annos victores fuerant, interficiuntur; exercitus tamen integer mansit; casu enim magis erant, quam virtute, decepti. Quo tempore (210) etiam a consule Marcello Siciliae magna pars capta est, quam tenere Poeni coeperant, et nobilissimae urbis Syracusanae praeda ingens Romam perlata est. Laevinus in Macedonia cum Philippo, et multis Graeciae populis, et rege Asiae Attalo, amicitiam fecit et, in Siciliam profectus, Hannonem quendam, Poenorum ducem, apud Agrigentum cum ipso oppido cepit, eumque Romam cum captivis nobilibus misit; XL civitates in deditionem accepit, XXVI expugnavit. Ita, omni Sicilia recepta, Macedonia fracta, cum ingenti gloria Romam regressus est. Hannibal in Italia Cn. Fulvium consulem subito aggressus cum octo milibus hominum interfecit (240).

33. Interea (209) in Hispanias, ubi, occisis duobus Scipionibus, nullus Romanus dux erat, P. Cornelius Scipio mittitur, filius P. Scipionis, qui ibidem bellum gesserat, annos natus quattuor et viginti, vir Romanorum omnium et sua aetate, et posteriore tempore fere primus. Is puer duodeviginti annorum in pugna ad Ticinum commissa patrem singulari virtute servavit. Deinde post cladem Cannensem multos nobilissimorum juvenum, Italiam deserere cupientium, auctoritate sua ab eo consilio deterruit. Viginti quattuor annos natus in Hispaniam missus, die, quo venit, Cathaginem Novam cepit (210): in qua omne aurum et argentum et belli apparatus Poeni habebant; nobilissimos quoque obsides, quos ab Hispanis acceperant; Magonem etiam, fratrem Hannibalis, ibidem cepit, quem Romam cum aliis misit. Romae ingens laetitia post hunc nuntium fuit. Scipio Hispanorum obsides parentibus reddidit. Quare omnes fere Hispani ad eum uno animo transierunt. Post quae Hasdrubalem, Hannibalis fratrem, victum fugavit et praedam maximam cepit.

34. Interea in Italia consul Q. Fabius Maximus Tarentum cepit (209), in qua ingentes copiae Hannibalis erant. Tum multae civitates Romanorum, quae ad Hannibalem transierant, rursus se Fabio Maximo dederunt. In Hispania Scipio egregias res gessit. In Italia tamen male pugnatum est. Nam Claudius Marcellus consul ab Hannibale occisus est. Desperans Hannibal, Hispanias contra Scipionem ducem diutius posse retineri, fratrem suum Hasdrubalem in Italiam cum omnibus copiis evocavit.

35. Is veniens eodem itinere, quo etiam Hannibal venerat, a consulibus Appio Claudio Nerone et M. Livio Salinatore apud Metaurum fluvium et Senam, Piceni civitatem, in insidias compositas incidit (207); strenue tamen pugnans occisus est; ingentes ejus copiae captae aut interfectae sunt; magnum pondus auri atque argenti Romam relatum. Post haec Hannibal diffidere de belli coepit eventu. Romanis ingens animus accessit. Itaque et ipsi evocaverunt ex Hispania P. Cornelium Scipionem. Is Romam cum ingenti gloria venit (206). Omnes civitates, quae in Brutiis ab Hannibale tenebantur, Romanis se tradiderunt.

36. Scipio anno XIV, postquam in Italiam Hannibal venerat, consul est factus (205) et in Africam missus (204). Ibi contra Hannonem, ducem Poenorum, pugnavit, exercitum ejus interfecit. Secundo proelio (203) castra cepit cum quattuor milibus et quingentis militibus, XI milibus occisis. Syphacem, Numidiae regem, qui se Poenis coniunxerat, cepit. Syphax cum nobilissimis Numidis et infinitis spoliis Romam ab Scipione missus est. Qua re audita, omnis fere Italia Hannibalem deseruit. Ipse a Carthaginensibus redire in Africam jubetur, quam Scipio vastabat. Ita anno XVII ab Hannibale Italia liberata est (202).

37. Hannibale compluribus proeliis devicto, bello etiam a Masinissa, rege Numidarum, Carthagini illato, pace saepius frustra tentata, pugna ad Zamam comittitur, qualis vix ullâ memoriâ fuit, quum peritissimi viri copias suas ad bellum educerent. Scipio victor recedit, paene ipso Hannibale capto, qui cum quattuor equitibus evasit. Post id certamen pax cum Carthaginiensibus facta est. Scipio Romam rediit (201), ingenti gloria triumphavit atque Africanus ex eo appellari coeptus est. Hannibal metuens, ne Romanis traderetur, primum ad Antiöchum, Syriae regem, deinde, eo a Romanis victo, ad Prusiam, Bithyniae regem, confugit; etiam ab eo, per T. Quinctium Flaminium repetitus, quum tradendus Romam esset, venenum sumpsit. Hunc finem cepit secundum bellum Punicum post annum nonum decimum, quam coeperat.

38. Finito bello Punico secundo, Romanorum potentia in dies magis magisque crevit. Philippus II., rex Macedoniae, a T. Quinctio Flaminio ad Cynoscephâlas acie devictus est (197). Idem T. Quinctius etiam Lacedaemoniis intulit bellum et ducem eorum, Nabidem, superavit. Antiochus Magnus, rex Syriae, ad quem Hannibal confugerat, a L. Scipione, cui frater Scipio Africanus legatus erat additus, ad Magnesiam, Asiae civitatem, ingenti proelio fusus est (190). Scipio propter Asiam domitam accipit nomen Asiatici.

39. Philippo, rege Macedoniae, mortuo, filius ejus Perseus rebellavit, ingentibus copiis ad bellum paratis. Dux Romanorum, P. Licinius, consul, contra eum missus, a rege gravi proelio victus est. Neque tamen Romani, quanquam superati erant, regi petenti pacem praestare voluerunt, nisi his conditionibus, ut se et suos senatui et populo R. dederet. Mox missus contra eum L. Aemilius Paullus consul regem ad Pydnam (168) splendide devicit, XX milibus peditum ejus occisis. Equitatus cum rege fugit. Urbes Macedoniae omnes, quas rex tenuerat, Romanis se dediderunt. Ipse rex, quum desereretur ab amicis, venit in Paulli potestatem. Is triumphavit magnificentissime in curru aureo, duobus filiis utroque latere adstantibus, ductis ante currum duobus regis filiis et ipso Persöo.

40. Tertium deinde bellum contra Carthaginem suscipitur (149), sexcentesimo et altero anno ab urbe condita, L. Manlio Censorino, et M. Manlio coss., anno LI, postquam secundum Punicum bellum transactum erat. Hi profecti Carthaginem oppugnaverunt. Contra eos Hasdrubal, dux Carthaginensium, dimicabat. Scipio tunc, Scipionis Africani nepos, tribunus ibi militabat. Hujus apud omnes ingens metus et reverentia erat. Nam et paratissimus ad dimicandum et consultissimus habebatur. Itaque per eum multa prospere gesta sunt.

41. Quum igitur clarum Scipionis nomen esset, juvenis adhuc consul est factus (147) et contra Carthaginem missus. Is eam, a civibus acerrime defensam, cepit ac diruit (146). Spolia ibi inventa, quae variarum civitatum excidiis Carthago collegerat; et ornamenta urbium civitatibus Siciliae, Italiae, Africae reddidit, quae sua recognoscebant. Ita Carthago septingentesimo anno, quam condita erat, deleta est (146). Scipio nomen, quod avus ejus acceperat, meruit; scilicet, ut propter virtutem etiam ipse Africanus junior vocaretur. Eodem anno Corinthus, nobilissima Graeciae civitas, propter injuriam legatorum Romanorum, a Mumio consule capta ac diruta est.

42. Quinque annis interjectis (141), Viriathus quidam in Lusitania bellum contra Romanos movit. Is primo pastor fuit; mox latronum dux; postremo tantos ad-bellum populos concitavit, ut vindex libertatis Hispaniae putaretur. Post XIV annorum bellum a suis interfectus est. Quum interfectores ejus praemium a Caepione consule peterent, responsum est, nunquam Romanis placuisse, imperatorem a suis militibus interfici.

43. Eodem tempore (141) bellum exortum est cum Numantinis, quae Hispaniae civitas fuit opulentissima. Superatus ab iis Q. Pompeius pacem ignobilem fecit. Post eum C. Hostilius Mancinus consul iterum cum Numantinis pacem fecit infamem; quam populus et senatus jussit infringi atque ipsum Mancinum hostibus tradi, ut in illo, quem auctorem foederis habebant, injuriam soluti foederis vindicarent. Post tantam igitur ignominiam, P. Scipio Africanus, qui Carthaginem diruerat, missus est (134). Is primum militem vitiosum et ignavum exercendo magis, quam puniendo, sine ulla acerbitate correxit. Tum multas Hispaniae civitates partim bello cepit, partim in deditionem accepit. Postremo ipsam Numantiam, per XIV annos obsessam acerrimeque defensam, fame confecit et a solo evertit; reliquam provinciam in fidem accepit.

44. P. Scipione Nasica et L. Calpurnio Bestia consulibus (110), Jugurthae, Numidarum regi, bellum illatum est, quod Adherbalem et Hiempsalem, Micipsae filios, fratres suos, reges, et P. R. amicos interemisisset. Missus adversus eum consul Calpurnius Bestia, corruptus regis pecunia, pacem cum eo flagitiosissimam fecit, quae a senatu improbata est. Tandem Q. Caecilius Metellus consul (109), exercitu magna severitate et moderatione correcto et ad disciplinam Romanam reducto, Jugurtham variis proeliis vicit multasque civitates ipsas in deditionem accepit. Successit ei C. Marius. Is Jugurtham superavit belloque terminum posuit, capto Jugurtha per quaestorem suum Cornelium Sullam, ingentem virum. Ante currum triumphantis Marii Jugurtha cum duobus filiis ductus est vinetus et mox jussu consulis in carcere strangulatus (106).

45. Dum bellum in Numidia contra Jugurtham geritur, Romani consules M. Manlius et Q. Caepio a Cimbris et Teutōnis, aliorum Germanorum et Gallorum gentibus victi sunt ad flumen Rhodanum; et ingenti interneccione attriti, etiam castra sua et magnam partem exercitus perdiderunt. Timor Romae grandis fuit, quantus vix Hannibalis tempore Punici belli, ne iterum Galli Romam venirent. Ergo marius iterum consul est factus (104), bellumque ei contra Cimbro et Teutonos decretum est. — Tertio quoque ei et quarto delatus est consulatus, quia bellum Cimbricum protrahatur. Cum Cimbris igitur confligit et duobus proeliis CC milia hostium cecidit. LXXX milia cepit et ducem eorum Teutobodum, propter quod meritum absens quinto consul est factus.

46. Interea Cimabri et Teutoni, quorum copia adhuc infinita erat, in Italiam transierunt. Iterum a C. Mario et Q. Catulo contra eos dimicatum est ad Verōnam proelio, CXL milia aut in pugna, aut in fuga caesa sunt; LX milia capta. Romani milites ex utroque exercitu trecenti perierunt (101). Tria et triginta Cimbris signa sublata sunt. DCLXI nono anno ab urbe condita (91), quum prope alia omnia bella cessarent, in Italia gravissimum bellum Picentes, Marsi Pelignique moverunt: qui, quum multos annos jam populo Romano obedirent, tum libertatem sibi aequam vindicare coeperunt. Perniciosum admodum hoc bellum fuit. In eo bello maxime excelluit L. Cornelius Sulla, qui, quum alias res egregias gessisset, tum Cluentium, hostium ducem, cum magnis copiis fudit; per quadriennium cum gravi calamitate hoc bellum tractum est. Quinto demum anno finitum est per L. Cornelium Sullam jusque civitatis sociis tributum.

47. Anno urbis conditae DCLXII primum Romae bellum civile commotum est: eodem anno etiam Mithridaticum. Causam bello civili C. Marius, sexies consul, dedit. Nam quum Sulla consul, contra Mithridatem, regem Ponti, gesturus bellum, qui Asiam et Achaïam occupaverat, mitteretur, Marius ei hunc honorem praecipere conatus est. Qua re Sulla commotus cum exercitu ad urbem venit. Illic contra Marium et Sulpicium dimicavit. Primus urbem Romam armatus ingressus est. Sulpicio interfecto, Mario fugato, in Asiam profectus est (86). Ibi pluribus proeliis Mithridatem devicit eique tandem ea conditione pacem dedit, ut, relictis iis, quas occupaverat, terris, intra regni sui fines se contineret.

48. Sed dum Sulla in Graecia atque Asia Mithridatem vincit, (86) Marius, qui fugatus erat, et, Cornelius Cinna, unus ex consulibus, bellum in Italia repararunt et, ingressi urbem Romam, nobilissimos ex senatu et consulares viros interfecerunt; multos proscripserunt; ipsius Sullae domo eversa, filios et uxorem ad

fugam compulerunt. Universus reliquus senatus, ex urbe fugiens, ad Sullam in Graeciam venit, orans, ut patriae subveniret. Sulla in Italiam trajecit et, adversariorum hostibus victis, mox etiam urbem ingressus est (82), quam caede et sanguine civium replevit. LXX milia hostium in proelio contra Sullam fuisse dicuntur; XII milia se Sullae dederunt, ceteri in acie, in castris, in fuga insatiabili ira victoris consumpti sunt.

49. Sertorius, qui partium Marianarum fuerat, timens fortunam ceterorum, qui interempti erant, ad bellum commovit Hispanias. Missus est contra hunc virum fortissimum Q. Caecilius Metellus, filius ejus, qui Jugurtham regem vicit. Postea, quum impar pugnae solus Metellus putaretur, Cn. Pompeius in Hispanias missus est. Ita duobus ducibus adversis Sertorius fortuna varia saepe pugnavit. Octavo demum anno a suis occisus est (72). Omnes prope Hispaniae partes in ditionem populi Romani redactae sunt.

50. Mithridates, pace rupta, Bithyniam et Asiam rursus voluit invadere (74). Adversus eum ambo consules missi variam habere fortunam. Cotta, apud Chalcedonem victus ab eo acie, etiam intra oppidum coactus est et obsessus. Sed quum se inde Mithridates Cyzicum transtulisset, ut, Cyzico capta, totam Asiam invaderet, Lucullus ei alter consul occurrit; ac, dum Mithridates in obsidione Cyzici commoratur, ipse eum a tergo obsedit fameque consumsit, et multis proeliis vicit; postremo Byzantium (quae nunc Constantinopolis est) fugavit, navali quoque proelio duces ejus Lucullus oppressit. Ita una hieme et aestate a Lucullo centum fere milia regis extincta sunt.

51. Duobus annis post in Italia novum bellum subito commotum est. (71). Septuaginta enim quattuor gladiatores, ducibus Spartaco, Crixo et Oenomao effracto Capuae ludo, effugerunt et per Italiam vagantes paene non levius bellum in ea, quam Hannibal moverat, paraverunt. Nam, multis ducibus et duobus simul Romanorum consulibus victis, sexaginta fere milium armatorum exercitum congregaverunt; victique sunt in Apulia a M. Licinio Crasso proconsule, et post multas calamitates Italiae tertio anno huic bello finis impositus (70).

52. Eodem tempore L. Lucullus Mithridatis, qui rursus arma contra Romanos moverat, regnum ingressus, regem proelio apud Cabira civitatem, quo ingentes copias ex omni regno adduxerat Mithridates, superatum fugavit et castra ejus diripuit. Armenia quoque minor, quam tenuerat, eidem sublata est. Susceptus tamen est Mithridates post fugam a Tigrane, Armeniae rege, qui tunc ingenti gloria imperabat. Lucullus, repetens hostem fugatum, etiam regnum Tigranis ingressus est: Tigranocerta, civitatem nobilissimam Armeniae, cepit (68); ipsum regem, cum

ingenti exercitu venientem, ita vicit, ut magnam partem Armeniorum deleverit.

53. Anno post (67) piratae omnia maria infestabant ita, ut Romanis, toto orbe victoribus, sola navigatio tuta non esset. Quare id bellum Cn. Pompeio decretum est; quod intra paucos menses ingenti et felicitate et celeritate confecit. Mox (66) ei delatum bellum etiam contra regem Mithridatem et Tigranem: quo suscepto, Mithridatem in Armenia minore nocturno proelio vicit, castra diripuit: quadragintamilibus ejus occisis, viginti tantum de exercitu suo perdidit, et duos centuriones. Mithridates cum uxore fugit et duobus comitibus. Neque multo post, quum in suos saeviret, Pharnācis, filii sui, orta apud milites seditione, ad mortem coactus, venenum hausit. Hunc finem habuit Mithridates, vir ingentis industriae consiliique. Regnavit annos sexaginta, vixit septuaginta duo; contra Romanos bellum habuit annos quadraginta.

54. Tigrani deinde Pompeius bellum intulit (65). Ille se ei dedit et in castra Pompeii venit ac diadēma suum quum procubisset ad genua Pompeii, in manibus ei collocavit; quod ei Pompeius reposuit, honorificeque eum habitum, regni tamen parte multavit et grandi pecunia. At is deinde, regibus ac populis subactis, inde in Judeam transgressus, Hierosolyma caput gentis, tertio mense cepit (63), duodecim milibus Judaeorum occisis, ceteris in fidem acceptis. His rebus gestis, in Asiam se recepit et finem antiquissimo bello imposuit.

55. M. Tullio Cicerone oratore et C. Antonio consulibus (63), L. Sergius Catilina, nobilissimi generis vir, sed ingenii pravissimi, ad delendam patriam conjuravit cum quibusdam, claris illis quidem, sed audacibus viris. A Cicerone urbe expulsus est: socii ejus deprehensi in carcere strangulati sunt. Ab Antonio, altero consule, Catilina ipse proelio victus est et interfectus (62).

56. Anno urbis conditae DCXCIII (59) C. Julius Caesar, qui postea imperavit, cum L. Bibulo consul est factus. Decreta est ei Gallia et Illyricum cum legionibus decem. Is primo vicit Helvetios, qui nunc Sequani appellantur. Deinde vincendo per bella gravissima usque ad Oceanum Britannicum processit. Domuit autem annis novem fere omnem Galliam, quae inter Alpes, flumen Rhodanum, Rhenum et Oceanum est et circuitu patet ad bis et tricies centena milia passuum. Britannis mox bellum intulit (54), quibus ante eum ne nomen quidem Romanorum cognitum erat, eosque vicit; Germanos quoque trans Rhenum aggressus cruentis proeliis vicit.

57. Iisdem fere temporibus (52) M. Licinius Crassus contra Parthos missus est et, quum circa Carras contra omnia et auspicia dimicasset, a Surēna, Orodis regis duce, victus, ad postremum

interfectus est cum filio, clarissimo et praestantissimo juvene (50). Reliquiae exercitus per C. Cassium quaestorem servatae sunt, qui singulari animo perditas res tanta virtute restituit, ut Persas, rediens trans Euphrâtem, crebris proeliis vinceret.

58. Hinc jam bellum civile successit, quo praeter calamitates, quae in proeliis acciderunt, etiam populi Romani fortuna mutata est. Caesar enim, rediens ex Gallia victor, coepit poscere alterum consulatum: qui quum ab aliis ei deferretur, oblocuti sunt Marcellus consul, Bibŭlus, Pompeius, Cato, jussusque, dimissis exercitibus, ad urbem redire (49). Propter quam injuriam ab Arimino, ubi milites congregatos habebat, adversum patriam cum exercitu venit. Consules cum Pompeio, senatusque omnis atque universa nobilitas ex urbe fugit et in Graeciam transiit.

59. Dum senatus contra Caesarem bellum parat, hic, vacuum urbem ingressus, dictatorem se fecit (49). Inde Hispanias petiit. Ibi Pompeii exercitus validissimos et fortissimos cum tribus ducibus, L. Afranio, M. Petrœio, M. Varrône, superavit. Inde regressus in Graeciam transiit et adversum Pompeium dimicavit. Primo proelio victus est et fugatus; evasit tamen, quia nocte interveniente Pompeius sequi noluit; dixitque Caesar, nec Pompeium scire vincere, et illo tantum die se potuisse superari. Deinde in Thessalia apud Pharsalum, productis utrinque ingentibus copiis, dimicaverunt.

60. Nunquam adhuc Romanae copiae in unum neque majores, neque melioribus ducibus convenerant. Pugnatum est ingenti contentione, victusque ad postremum Pompeius, et castra ejus direpta sunt. Ipse fugatus Alexandriam petiit, ut a rege Aegypti, cui tutor a senatu datus fuerat propter juvenilem ejus aetatem, acciperet auxilia: qui, fortunam magis, quam amicitiam secutus, occidit Pompeium; caput ejus et anulum Caesari misit. Quo conspecto, Caesar etiam lacrimas fudisse dicitur, tanti viri intuens caput, et generi quondam sui (48).

61. Mox Caesar Alexandriam venit. Ei quoque Ptolemaeus parare voluit insidias: qua causa regi bellum illatum est. Victus in Nilo periit, inventumque est corpus ejus cum lorica aurea. Caesar, Alexandria potitus, regnum Cleopätrae dedit, Ptolemaei sorori. Romam regressus tertio se consulem fecit cum M. Aemilio Lepido (46). Inde in Africam profectus est, ubi infinita nobilitas cum Juba Mauritaniae rege, bellum reparaverat. Contra hos, comisso proelio, post multas dimicationes victor fuit Caesar.

62. Post annum (45) Caesar, Romam regressus, quarto se consulem fecit et statim in Hispanias est profectus, ubi Pompeii filii, Gnaeus et Sextus, ingens bellum reparaverant. Multa proelia fuerunt; ultimum apud Mundam, Hispaniae urbem, quo adeo

Caesar paene victus est, ut, fugientibus suis, se voluerit occidere, ne post tantam rei militaris gloriam in potestatem adolescentium, natus annos sex et quinquaginta, veniret. Denique, reparatis suis, vicit; ex Pompeii filii major occisus est, minor fugit (45).

63. Inde Caesar, bellis civilibus toto orbe compositis, Romam rediit; agere insolentius coepit et contra consuetudinem Romanae libertatis. Quum ergo et honores ex sua voluntate praestaret, qui a populo antea deferebantur, nec senatui ad se venienti assurgeret aliaque regia ac paene tyrannica faceret, conjuratum est in eum a LX vel amplius senatoribus equitibusque Romanis. Praecipui fuerunt inter conjuratos duo Bruti ex eo genere Bruti, qui primus Romae consul fuerat et reges expulerat, C. Cassius et Servilius Casca. Ergo Caesar, quum senatus die inter ceteros venisset ad curiam, XXIII vulneribus confossus est (44).

64. Interfecto Caesare, bella civilia reparata sunt. Percussoribus enim Caesaris senatus favebat. Antonius consul, qui a Caesaris partibus stabat, civilibus bellis opprimere eos conabatur. Ergo, turbata republica, multa Antonius scelera committens, a senatu hostis judicatus est. Missi (43) ad eum persequendum duo consules, Pansa et Hirtius, et Octavianus adolescens, annos X et VIII natus, Caesaris nepos, quem ille testamento heredem reliquerat et nomen suum ferre jusserat. Hic est, qui postea Augustus est dictus et rerum potitus. Quare profecti contra Antonium tres duces vicerunt eum. Evenit tamen, ut victores consules ambo morentur. Quare tres exercitus uni Caesari Augusto paruerunt.

65. Fugatus Antonius, amisso exercitu, confugit ad Lepidum, qui Caesaris magister equitum fuerat et tunc copias militum grandes habebat: a quo susceptus est. Mox, Lepido operam dante, Caesar cum Antonio pacem fecit et, quasi vindicturus patris sui mortem, a quo per testamentum fuerat adoptatus, Romam cum exercitu profectus, extorsit, ut sibi XX anno consulatus daretur. Senatum proscripsit cum Antonio et Lepido et republicam armis tenere coepit. Per hos etiam Cicero orator occisus est, multique alii nobiles.

66. Interea Brutus et Cassius, interfectores Caesaris, ingens bellum moverunt (42); erant enim per Macedoniam et Orientem multi exercitus, quos occupaverant. Profecti sunt igitur contra eos Caesar Octavianus Augustus et M. Antonius; (remanserat enim ad defendendam Italiam Lepidus;) apud Philippos, Macedoniae urbem, contra eos pugnauerunt. Primo proelio victi sunt Antonius et Caesar; periit tamen dux nobilitatis Cassius: secundo Brutum et infinitam nobilitatem, quae cum illis bellum gesserat, victam interfecerunt. Ac sic inter eos divisa est respublica, ut Augustus Hispanias, Gallias et Italiam teneret; Antonius Asiam, Pontum, Orientem.

67. Paulo post Antonius, qui Asiam Orientemque tenebat, repudiata sorore Caesaris Augusti Octaviani, Cleopatram, reginam Aegypti, duxit uxorem (36). Is ingens bellum civile commovit (32), cogente uxore Cleopatra, regina Aegypti, dum cupiditate muliebri cupit etiam Romae regnare. Victus est (31) ab Augusto navali pugna clara et illustri apud Actium, qui locus in Epiro est ex qua fugit in Aegyptum; et desperatis rebus, quum omnes ad Augustum transirent, ipse se interemit: Cleopatra sibi aspidem admisit et veneno ejus exstincta est.

68. Ita bellis toto orbe confectis, Octavianus Augustus Romam rediit, XII anno, quam consul fuerat (29). Ex eo rempublicam per quadraginta et quatuor annos solus obtinuit. Antea enim XII annos cum Antonio et Lepido tenuerat. Ita ab initio principatus ejus usque ad finem LVI anni fuere. Obiit autem LXXVI anno (13 p. Chr.) in oppido Campaniae, Atella: vir, quo nullus facile aut in bellis felicior fuit, aut in pace moderatior. XLIV annos, quibus solus gessit imperium, civilissime vixit: in cunctos liberalissimus, in amicos fidissimus.

IV. NARRATIVES.

1. *Simonides.*

Simonidem Ceum primum ferunt artem memoriae protulisse. Dicunt enim, quum coenaret, Cranone in Thessalia Simonides apud Scopam, fortunatum hominem et nobilem, cecinissetque id carmen, quod in eum scripsisset, in quo multa ornandi causa poetarum more in Castorem scripta et Pollucem fuissent, nimis illum sordide Simonidi dixisse, se dimidium ejus ei, quod pactus esset, pro illo carmine daturum; reliquum a suis Tyndaridis, quos aequae laudasset, peteret, si ei videtur. Paulo post esse ferunt nuntiatum Simonidi, ut prodiret: juvenes stare ad januam duos quosdam, qui eum magno opere evocarent: surrexisse illum, prodisse, vidisse neminem. Hoc interim spatio conclave illud, ubi epularetur Scopas, concidisse: ea ruina ipsum oppressum cum suis interisse. Quos quum humare vellent sui neque possent obtritos internoscere ullo modo; Simonides dicitur ex eo, quod meminisset, quo eorum loco quisque cubuisset, demonstrator uniuscujusque sepeliendi fuisse. Hac tum re admonitus invenisse fertur, ordinem esse maxime, qui memoriae lumen afferret. Itaque iis, qui hanc partem ingenii exercerent, locos esse capiendos, et ea, quae memoria tenere vellent, effingenda animo atque in his locis collocanda:

sic fore, ut ordinem rerum locorum ordo conservaret, res autem ipsas rerum effigies notaret, atque ut locis pro cera, simulacris pro literis uteremur. — Cic. de Orat. 2. 86, 352—354.

2. *Piso orator et servus.*

Marcus Piso, orator Romanus, servis preceperat, ut tantum ad interrogata responderent, neve quicquam praeterea dicerent. Evénit, ut Clodium ad coenam invitari juberet. Hora coenae instabat; adérant ceteri convivae omnes, solus Clodius expectabatur. Piso servum, qui solebat convivas vocare, aliquoties emisit, ut videret, veniretne. Quum tandem jam desperaretur ejus adventus, Piso servo: Dic, inquit, num forte non invitasti Clodium? Invitavi, respondit ille. — Cur ergo non venit? — Quia venturum se negavit. Tum Piso: Cur id non statim dixisti? Respondit servus: Quia non sum a te interrogatus.

3. *Canis fidelis.*

Pyrrhus rex in itinere incídit in canem, qui interfecti hominis corpus custodiebat. Quum audisset, eum jam tres dies cibi expertem assidère, nec a cadavere discedere, mortuum jussit humari, canem vero deduci et curari diligenter. Paucis post diebus militum lustratio habetur. Transeunt singuli, sedente rege. Aderat canis. Is quum ante quietus et tacitus fuisset, simulac vidit domini sui percussores transire, procurrit furens eosque allatravit, saepius se ad Pyrrhum convertens, ita quidem, ut non modo rex, sed omnes, qui aderant, suspicionem de iis conciperent. Ergo comprehensi et examinati, levibus quibusdam signis aliunde accedentibus, fassi caedem poenas dederunt.

4. *Archimēdis mors.*

Captis Syracusis, quas Archimedes machinationibus suis mirificis diu defenderat, Marcellus, imperator Romanus, gravissime edixit, ne quis Archimedi vim faceret. At is, dum animo et oculis in terra defixis, formas in pulvere describit, militi Romano, qui praedandi caussa in domum irruerat strictoque gladio, quisnam esset, interrogabat, propter nimium ardorem studii nihil respondet, nisi hoc: *Noli turbare circulos meos!* A milite igitur, ignaro, quis esset, interficitur.

5. *Amicus infidēlis.*

Duo amici unā iter faciunt atque, solitudinem peragrantes, ursum ingentem vident advenientem. Alter celeriter in abrorem

adscendit; alter recordatus, illam bestiam cadavera non attingere, nisi fame efferatum, humi se prosternit animamque continet, simulans se esse mortuum. Accedit ursus, contrectat jacentem, os suum ad hominis os et aures admōvet et cadāver esse ratus discedit. Tum ambo metu liberati inceptum iter persequuntur. Inter eundem interrogat is, qui in arborem adscenderat, alterum, quidnam ursus ei in aurem insusurrasset. Multa, inquit ille, quae non recordor; sed imprimis hoc praeceptum dedit, ne quem pro amico haberem, cujus fidem adverso tempore non essem expertus.

6. *Demosthēnes.*

Demosthenes caussam orans quum iudices parum attentos videret: Paullisper, inquit, aures mihi praebete: rem vobis novam et jucundam narrabo. Quum aures arrexissent: Juvenis, inquit, quispiam asinum conduxerat, quo Athenis Megāram profecturus uteretur. In itinere quum sol flagraret, neque esset umbraculum, deposuit clitellas et sub asino consēdit, cujus umbrā tegetetur. Id vero agāso vetabat, clamans, asinum locatum esse, non umbram asini. Alter quum contra contenderet, tandem in jus ambulat. Haec locutus Demosthenes, ubi homines diligenter auscultantes vidit, abiit. Tum revocatus a iudicibus rogatusque, ut reliquam fabulam enarraret: Quid? inquit. De asini umbra libet audire? caussam hominis de vita periclitantis non audietis?

7. *Cyri mors.*

Postquam Asiam Cyrus subegit, Scythis bellum intulit, quibus eo tempore Tomŷris regina praeērat. Rex aliquantum in Scythia progressus, quasi refugiens, castra deseruit atque in iis vini affātum et quae epulis erant necessaria reliquit. Tum regina filium adolescentem tertia parte copiarum ad hostes insequendos misit; is vero, rei militaris ignarus, omissis hostibus milites in castris Cyri vino se onerare patitur. Cyrus autem noctu redit omnesque Scythas cum ipso reginae filio in castris interficit. Sed Tomŷris, poenam meditata, hostes, recenti victoria exsultantes, pari fraude decipit. Quippe simulato timore refugiens Cyrum ad angustias pertraxit ibique in insidiis regem cum innumerabilibus Persarum copiis occidit. Tum caput Cyri amputatum in utrem, sanguine humano repletum, conjecit, crudelitatem his verbis exprōbrans: Satia te sanguine, quem sitisti, et quo nunquam satiari potuisti!

8. *Andrōcli leo.* — (Cf. Gell. N. A. 5. 14, 5—30.)

Romae in circo maximo venationis amplissimae pugna populo

dabatur. Multae ibi saevientes ferae erant; sed praeter alia omnia leonum immanitas admirationi fuit, praeterque ceteros eminebat unus. Is leo corporis impetu et ingenti magnitudine terribilique fremĭtu, toris comisque cervicum fluctuantibus, animos oculosque omnium in sese converterat. Introductus erat inter complures ceteros ad pugnam bestiarum servus viri consularis. Ei servo Andrōclus nomen fuit. Hunc ille leo ubi vidit procul, repente, quasi admirans, stetit; ac deinde sensim atque placide tanquam exploraturus ad hominem accedit; tum caudam more adulantium canum clementer et blande movet hominisque fere corpori adjungit cruraque ejus et manus prope jam exanimati metu linguā leniter demulcet. Homo Androclus inter illa tam atrocis ferae blandimenta amissum animum receperat; paullatim oculos ad contuendum leonem refert. Tum, quasi mutua recognitione factā, laetos et gratulabundos videres hominem et leonem. Eā re prorsus admirabili maximi a populo clamores excitantur, arcessiturque a Caesare Androclus, quaeriturque ex eo, cur ille atrocissimus leonem uni perpercisset.

Hic Androclus rem mirificam narrat. Quum provinciam, inquit, Africam proconsulari imperio meus dominus obtineret, ego ibi iniquis ejus et quotidianis verberibus ad fugam sum coactus; et, ut mihi a domino, terrae illius praeside, tutiores latēbrae essent, in camporum et arenarum solitudines concessi, ac, si defuisset cibus, consilium fuit mortem aliquo pacto quaerere. Tum, sole flagrante, specum quendam nactus remotum latebrosūque, in eum me recondo. Neque multo post ad eundem specum venit hic leo, debili uno et cruento pede, gemĭtus edens et murmura, dolorem cruciatumque vulneris indicantia. Ac primum quidem conspectu advenientis leonis animus meus summo terrore impletur; sed postquam leo, introgressus in latibulum illud suum, vidit me procul delitescentem, mitis et mansuētus accessit ac sublatus pedem ostendere et porrigere, quasi opis petendae gratia, visus est.

Ibi ego stirpem ingentem, vestigio pedis ejus haerentem, revelli conceptamque saniem vulnere intimo expressi accuratiusque sine magna jam formidine siccavi penĭtus atque deterſi cruōrem. Ille tum meā operā et medicinā levatus, pede in manibus meis posito, recubuit et quievit. Atque ex eo die triennium totum ego et leo in eodem specu eodemque victu viximus. Nam, quas venabatur feras, membra opimiora ad specum mihi suggerebat: quae ego, ignis copiam non habens, sole meridiano torrens edebam. Sed ubi me vitae illius ferinae jam pertaesum est, leone in venatum profecto, reliqui specum et, viam fere tridui permensus, a militibus visus comprehensusque sum et ad dominum ex Africa Romam deductus. Is me statim rei capitalis

damnandum dandumque ad bestias curavit. Intelligo autem hunc quoque leonem, me tunc separato, captum esse gratiamque mihi nunc etiam beneficii et medicinae referre. Itaque, cunctis pententibus, dimissus est Androclus et poenâ solutus, leoque ei suffragiis populi donatus.

9. *Somnium mirum.*

Quum duo quidam Arcâdes familiares iter unâ facerent et Megaram venissent; alter ad cauponem devertit, ad hospitem alter. Qui ut coenati quieverunt, concubiâ nocte visus est in somnis ei, qui erat in hospitio, ille alter orare, ut subveniret, quod sibi a caupone interitus pararetur: is primo perterritus somnio surrexit; dein, quum se collegisset idque visum pro nihilo habendum esse duxisset, recubuit; tum ei dormienti idem ille visus est rogare, ut quoniam sibi vivo non subvenisset, mortem suam ne inultam esse pateretur; se interfectum; in plaustrum a caupone esse coniectum, et supra sterces injectum; petere, ut mane ad portam adesset, priusquam plaustrum ex oppido exiret. Hoc vero somnio is commotus mane bubulco praesto ad portam fuit; quae-sivit ex eo quid esset in plastro; ille perterritus fugit; mortuus erutus est; caupo, re patefacta, poenas dedit.—C. Div. 1. 27, 57.

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY.

The numbers 1, 2, 3, 4 written after the verbs, denote the conjugation which they follow: the numerals, which are introduced in § 33, and the prepositions which are introduced in § 34, are omitted. The adjectives of three endings in *us, a, um*, instead of their endings have the figure 3 after them.

<p>A.</p> <p>Abdo, ði, itum 3. to conceal.</p> <p>abdūco, xi, etum 3. to lead away, draw away.</p> <p>abĕo, ii, itum 4. to go away, depart.</p> <p>abhinc, adv. ago, henceforth.</p> <p>abhorrĕo, ūi 2. ab. c. abl. to shun, to have a strong aversion (to something).</p> <p>abĭgo, ĕgi, actum 3. to drive away.</p> <p>abjĭcio, jĕci, jectum 3. to cast down.</p> <p>abomiĭnor 1. to execrate.</p> <p>abrĭpio, ripui, reptum 3. to take away, carry off.</p> <p>absens, tis, absent.</p> <p>absolvo, vi, lŭtum 3. to complete, 2) to discharge.</p> <p>abstergeo, si, sum 2. to wipe off, take away, remove.</p> <p>abstĭnens, tis, temperate.</p> <p>abstĭnĕo, tinŭi, tentum 2. to keep off; 2) c. abl. to abstain (from something).</p> <p>absum, fŭi, esse, to be absent to be removed.</p> <p>nihil abest, (non mul-</p>	<p>tum) abest, quin, it wants nothing (not much), that.</p> <p>absŭmo, sumpsi, sump-tum 3. to consume.</p> <p>abundo 1. c. abl. to have an abundance of, abound in (something).</p> <p>abŭtor, ŭsus, sum 3. c. abl. to use up; 2) abuse.</p> <p>Abŭdus, i. f. city in Asia Minor.</p> <p>ac, conj. (never before a vowel or h), and; as.</p> <p>Academĭa, f. Academy.</p> <p>accĕdo, cessi, cessum 3. to approach, to come to.</p> <p>accelĕro 1. to hasten.</p> <p>accendo, di, sum 3. to enkindle, inflame.</p> <p>acceptus 3. received.</p> <p>accĭdit 3. it happens.</p> <p>accĭpio, cĕpi, ceptum 3. to take, receive.</p> <p>accĭpĭter, tris, m. hawk.</p> <p>acclāmo 1. to cry out to.</p> <p>accommodātus 3. c. dat. fitted to, suited to.</p> <p>accresco, ĕvi, ĕtum 3. to increase, to augment.</p> <p>accŭbo, bŭi, bĭtum 1. to recline by, to sit (at table).</p> <p>accurāte, adv. accurately, fully.</p>	<p>accurātus 3. exact.</p> <p>acurro, cucurri, cursum 3. to run up, to hasten up.</p> <p>accŭso 1. to complain of, accuse.</p> <p>acer, ĕris, n. maple-tree.</p> <p>acer, cris, cre, sharp, zealous, fierce.</p> <p>acerbus 3. bitter, pungent.</p> <p>Achilles, is, m. Achilles.</p> <p>acies, ĕi, f. edge; 2) line-of-battle.</p> <p>acrĭter, adv. spiritedly.</p> <p>actio, ōnis, f. action.</p> <p>acŭo, ūi, ŭtum 3. to sharpen.</p> <p>acus, ŭs, f. needle.</p> <p>acŭte, adv. sharply, acutely.</p> <p>acŭtus 3. sharp, pointed, acute.</p> <p>adaequo 1. to level to.</p> <p>adāmas, antis, m. diamond.</p> <p>addictus 3. devoted to.</p> <p>addo, dĭdi, dĭtum 3. to join to, add.</p> <p>addŭco, xi, etum 3. to bring to, induce.</p> <p>adĕo, ii, itum 4. to come to, approach.</p> <p>adhĭbĕo 2. to apply, bestow, give.</p> <p>adhuc, adv. as yet, still.</p>
--	--	---

- adjácĕo, ūi 2. c. dat. *to lie upon, by, near* (a thing).
- adjungo, xi, ctum 3. *to join to.*
- adĭmo, ĕmi, emtum 3. *to take, take away.*
- adipiscor, adeptus sum 3. *to obtain.*
- aditus, ūs, *m. approach.*
- adjutor, oris, *m. assistant.*
- adjuvo, ūvi, ūtum 1. c. acc. *to aid, assist, support.*
- administro 1. *to manage, conduct.*
- admirabilis, e, *admirable.*
- admiratio, onis, *f. admiration.*
- admĭror 1. *to admire.*
- admiscĕo, iscuĭ, istum or ixtum 2. *intermingle.*
- admitto misi, missum, 3. *to allow; sibi aspidem, to press a viper to one's self.*
- admōdum, *adv. very.*
- admōnĕo 2. *to admonish.*
- admōvēo, mōvi, mōtum 2. c. dat. *to bring up to.*
- adnitor, nixus or nĭsus sum 3. *to endeavor.*
- adolescens, tis, *m. young man, youth, young.*
- adolescentŭlus, i. *m. young man, youth.*
- adoleseo, adolĕvi, adultum 3. *to grow up.*
- adopto 1. *to adopt.*
- ador, oris, *n. wheat.*
- adorior, ortus sum 4. *to attack, undertake.*
- adorno 1. *to put in order, adorn.*
- adscendo, di, sum 3. *to ascend.*
- adseisco, ūvi, ĭtum 3. *to adopt, receive.*
- adspĭcio, exi, ectum 3. *to look upon, discover.*
- adsto, ĭti, atum 1. *to stand by.*
- adstringo, inxi, ictum 3. *to draw up tight; 2) to bind, make binding.*
- adsum, fŭi, esse, c. dat. *to be present at* (something), *to be present.*
- adulatio, onis, *f. flattery.*
- adŭlor 1. c. dat. *to flatter.*
- adulterĭnus 3. *false, counterfeit.*
- adŭro, ussi, ustum 3. *to set on fire, burn.*
- advĕnio, vĕni, ventum 4. *to come to, arrive.*
- advento 1. *to approach.*
- adventus, ūs, *m. arrival.*
- adversarius i. *m. opponent.*
- adversus, 3. *placed against, contrary, opposite; res adversae, adversity.*
- adverto, ti, sum 3. *to turn to.*
- advolo 1. *to hasten to.*
- aedes, is, *f. temple; pl. house.*
- aedificium, i. *n. edifice.*
- aedifico 1. *to build.*
- aedilis, is, *m. Edile.*
- aeger, gra, grum, *sick.*
- aegritudo, ĭnis, *f. sickness, sorrow.*
- aegre, *adv. reluctantly, with difficulty; aegre fero, to be dissatisfied.*
- aegrōtus, 3. *sick.*
- aemŭlor 1. c. acc. *to emulate.*
- Aenĕas, ae, *m. Aeneas.*
- aenigma, atis, *n. enigma.*
- aequālis, e, equal.
- aeque, *adv. in like manner; aeque—atque (ac), in like manner—as.*
- aequipāro 1. *to equal.*
- aequitas, atis, *f. equity.*
- aequo 1. *to equal.*
- aequor, oris, *n. surface, espec.: surface of the sea.*
- aequus 3. *just, equal; aequus animus, equanimity.*
- aerumna, ae. *f. hardship.*
- aes, aeris, *n. brass.*
- Aeschĭnes, is, *m. Aeschines.*
- aestas, atis, *f. summer.*
- aestĭmo 1. *to value, esteem.*
- aestĭvus 3. *pertaining to summer; aestivum tempus, summer season.*
- aetas, atis, *f. age, period.*
- aeternitas, atis, *f. eternity.*
- aeternus 3. *eternal.*
- affabilitas, atis, *f. affability.*
- affatim, *adv. abundantly.*
- affĕro, attŭli, allatum 3. *to bear to, bring.*
- affĭcio, ĕci, ectum 3. *to affect; Part. affectus 3. affected.*
- affinitas, atis, *f. relationship.*
- afflicto 1. *to afflict.*
- affluenter, *adv. abundantly.*
- affluentia, ae, *f. abundance.*
- afflŭo, uxi, uxum 3. *to flow to, overflow, have an abundance.*
- affulgeo, si 2. *to shine.*
- Afranĭus, i. *m. Afranius.*
- Africanus, i. *m. Africanus.*
- Agamemno, onis, *m. Agamemnon.*
- agāso, onis, *m. hostler.*
- ager, gri, *m. field, land.*
- Agésilāus, i, *m. Agesilaus.*
- agrestis, e, *rustic, rude.*
- agger, ĕris, *m. rampart.*
- aggrĕdior, gressus sum 3. rem, *to approach, begin something; 2) attack.*
- agmen, ĭnis, *n. band, flock.*
- agnosco, nōvi, nĭtum 3. *recognize.*
- ago, ĕgi, actum 3. *drive, make, do, pass, attend to; agere annum, to*

- be in the year; age, come on.*
 agricōla, ae, *m. husbandman, farmer.*
 ain' for aisne; ain' tu? *sayest thou? meanest thou?*
 Ajax, ācis, *m. Ajax.*
 aio, *I say, say yes, assert, affirm.*
 ala, ae, *f. wing.*
 alācer, cris, cre, *spirited, lively.*
 alacritas, ātis, *f. alacrity, spirit.*
 Albānus, i, *m. inhabitant of Alba.*
 albeo (without perf. and sup.) 2. *to be white or clean.*
 Albis, is, *m. the Elbe.*
 albus 3. *white.*
 Alcibiādes, is, *m. Alcibiades.*
 ales, itis, *c. bird (of the larger kinds.)*
 Alexander, dri, *m. Alexander.*
 Alexandriā, ae, *Alexandria.*
 algeo, si 2. *to feel cold, freeze.*
 alias, adv. *at another time.*
 alicunde, adv. *from some place or other.*
 alienigēna, ae, *m. stranger, from another country.*
 aliēnus 3. *foreign, another's.*
 aliōqui, adv. *otherwise.*
 aliquamdū, adv. *a long time.*
 aliquando, adv. *some time.*
 aliquantum, adv. *some-what.*
 alīquis, a, id, or alīqui, a, od, *some one.*
 alīquot (indecl.), *some.*
 aliquoties, adv. *many times.*
 aliter, adv. *otherwise.*
 aliunde, adv. *from another source, place.*
 alius, a, ud, *another; alius—alius, one-another.*
 allātro 1. *to bark at.*
 allūcio, exi, ectum 3. *to allure.*
 allīgo 1. *to fasten, tie up.*
 Allobrōges, um, *m. Allobroges.*
 allōquor, cūtus sum 3. *to address.*
 alo, alūi, altum (alītum) 3. *to nourish.*
 aloe, es, *f. the aloe.*
 Alpes, ium, *f. Alpes.*
 alter, ēra, ērum, *the one or other of two.*
 altercor 1. *to quarrel.*
 alternus 3. *alternate.*
 alterūter, ūtra, ūtrum, *one of the two.*
 altitūdo, īnis, *f. height, depth.*
 altus 3. *high, deep.*
 alvus, i, *f. belly.*
 amabilis, e, *amiable.*
 amārus 3. *bitter.*
 ambio, ivi, itum 4. *to go around (something), surround.*
 ambo, ae, o, *both.*
 ambulatio, ōnis, *f. a walk.*
 ambūlo 1. *to go to walk, to stroll.*
 amicitia, ae, *f. friendship.*
 amīcus, i, *m. friend.*
 amitto, mīsi, missum 3. *to lose.*
 amnis, is, *m. river.*
 amo 1. *to love.*
 amoenus 3. *pleasant (of countries), agreeable.*
 amor, ōris, *m. love.*
 amplexor 1. *to embrace, cherish.*
 amplitūdo, īnis, *f. authority, dignity.*
 amplius, adv. *more, further.*
 amplus 3. *broad, liberal, magnificent.*
 anpūto 1. *to cut off.*
 amussis, is, *f. a rule (of mechanics).*
 an (in questions), or. *anas, ātis, f. a duck.*
 anceps, cipītis, *twofold, double, doubtful.*
 Anchises, ae, *m. Anchises.*
 ancilla, ae, *f. a maid.*
 ancillaris, e, *pertaining to a maid, servile.*
 ango, xi, 3. *to trouble.*
 angor, ōris, *m. vexation.*
 angūlus, i, *m. an angle.*
 angustiae, arum, *f. narrow pass.*
 angustus 3. *narrow.*
 anima, ae, *f. breath.*
 animadverto, ti, sum 3. *to observe, perceive.*
 animal, ālis, *n. animal.*
 animus, i, *m. soul, spirit, mind, heart, courage.*
 Anio, iēnis, *m. the Anio.*
 annūlus, i, *m. a ring.*
 annus, i, *m. a year.*
 annuus 3. *annual.*
 anser, ēris, *m. a goose.*
 ante, adv. *before.*
 antēa, adv. *before.*
 antecēdo, cessi, cessum 3. *c. dat. or acc. to go before, be superior to (some one).*
 antepōno, posūi, posītum 3. *to prefer.*
 antēquam, conj. *before that, ere, before.*
 Antiochiā, ae, *f. Antioch.*
 antiquitas, ātis, adv. *anciently, formerly.*
 antiquitus, adv. *anciently, formerly.*
 antīquus, 3. *ancient.*
 Antistīus, i, *m. Antistius.*
 Antonius, i, *m. Antony.*
 anus, ūs, *f. old woman.*
 anxie, adv. *anxiously.*
 aper, pri, *m. boar, wild boar.*
 apērio, rūi, rtum 4. *to open, (caput) to uncover; apertus 3. open.*
 aperte, adv. *openly.*
 apex, īcis, *m. summit.*
 apis, is, *f. a bee.*
 Apollo, īnis, *m. Apollo.*
 Apolloniā, ae, *f. Apollonia.*
 apparatus, us, *m. apparatus, fitting out.*

- appāreo 2. to appear, be evident.
 appello 1. to call.
 appello, pūli, pulsum 3. to force up to, to land.
 appēto, ivi, itum 3. to strive to obtain.
 appētens, ntis, c. gen. eager for something.
 appetitus, ūs, m. desire.
 applaudo, si, sum 3. c. dat. to applaud.
 applico 1. to rest upon; se applicāre, to approach, join one's self to (some one), apply one's self to (something).
 appōno, posui, positum 3. to place by, before.
 approbo 1. to approve.
 appropēro 1. to approach.
 appropinquo 1. to approach.
 Aprīlis, is, m. April.
 aptus 3. c. dat. or ad c. acc., fit, fitted.
 aqua, ae, f. water.
 aquatio, ōnis, f. watering.
 ara, ae, f. altar.
 arātrum, i, n. a plough.
 arbitror, 1. to think, to account (one something).
 arbor, ōris, f. a tree.
 arcānum, i, n. a secret.
 Arcas, ādis, m. an Arcadian.
 arcēo, ūi 2. to keep off.
 arcesso, ivi, itum 3. to send for, bring.
 Archīas, ae, m. Archias.
 Archimēdes, is, m. Archimedes.
 arcus, ūs m. a bow.
 ardentē, adv. glowingly, ardently.
 ardeo, si, sum 2. to burn, glow. [sire.
 ardor, ōris, m. heat, de-
 arĕa, ae, f. open space.
 arĕna, ae, f. sand.
 argentēus 3. of silver.
 argentum, i, n. silver; arg. vivum, quicksilver.
 Argi, orum, m. Argos.
 Argiūs 3. Argive.
 Argo, ūs, f. the Argo.
 argumentum, i, n. con- tents.
 Aristagōras, ae, m. Aris- tagoras.
 Arimīnum, i, n. city of Umbria.
 Aristīdes, is, m. Aristi- des.
 Aristotēles, is, m. Aris- totle.
 arma, ōrum, n. arms.
 armo 1. to arm.
 aro 1. to plough.
 Arpīnas, ātis, m. inhabi- tant of Arpinum.
 arrēpo, psi, ptum, 3. to creep up to.
 arrīdeo, si, sum 2. c. dat. to smile upon.
 arrīgo, rexi, rectum 3. to erect, excite.
 arrōgans, ntis arrogant.
 ars, tis, f. art.
 Artaphernes, is, m. Ar- taphernes.
 articulātim, adv. articu- lated.
 artīfex, īcis, skilful; subst. artist.
 artus, ūs, m. joint, limb.
 arundo, īnis, f. a reed.
 Aruns, ntis, m. Aruns.
 arvum, i, n. a ploughed field.
 arx, cis, f. citadel.
 as, assis, m. an as (a Roman copper coin).
 ascendo, di, sum 3. to ascend, mount.
 ascensus, ūs, m. ascent.
 asīnus, i, m. an ass.
 asper, ĕra, ĕrum, rough.
 aspērnor 1. to spurn.
 aspis, īdis, f. viper.
 asporto 1. to carry away.
 assentior, sensus sum 4. c. dat. to assent to.
 assēquor, secūtus sum 3. to attain.
 assīdeo, sēdi, 2. to sit by.
 assīdo. ēdi, essum 3. to sit down.
 assīdue, adv. assiduously.
 assidūus 3. unremitting, persevering.
 asso 1. to roast.
 assuefācio, fēcī, factum 3. c. dat. to accustom to.
 assuesco, evi, ētum 3, c. dat. or abl. to accustom one's self to, be accus- tomed to (something).
 assurgo (see surgo), to rise up.
 Assyriā, ac, f. Assyria.
 astūtus, 3. cunning.
 asyllum, i, n. retreat.
 at, conj. but, yet.
 Athēnae, ārum, f. Athens.
 Atheniensis, e, Atheni- ian; subst. an Athe- nian.
 Atlas, antis, m. Atlas.
 atque, conj. and, as.
 atramentarium, i, n. ink- stand.
 atramentum, i, n. ink.
 atrox, ōcis, fierce, violent, frightful, bloody.
 attendo, di, tum 3. to attend to, give atten- tion.
 attente, adv. attentively.
 attentus 3. attentive.
 atterō, trivi, tritum 3. to impair, exhaust.
 Attīca, ae, f. Attica.
 Atticus 3. Attic, inhabi- tant of Attica.
 Atticus, i, m. Atticus.
 attingo, Igi, actum 3. to touch.
 auceps, ūpis, m. fowler.
 auctor, ōris, m. author, adviser; me auctōre, upon my advice.
 auctoritas, ātis, f. au- thority.
 audaciā, ae, f. self-con- fidence.
 audacter, adv. boldly.
 audax, ācis, confident, bold.
 audēo, ausus sum 2. to dare, venture.

- audio 4. *to hear.*
 auditor, ōris, *m. hearer.*
 aufēro, abstūli, ablātum
 3. *to take away, bear*
 away.
 augēo, xi, ctum 2. *to*
 increase, enrich.
 augurium, i, *n. augury,*
 divination.
 augūror 1. *to divine, pre-*
 dict.
 Augustus, i, *m. Augus-*
 aula, ae, f. court.
 aureūs, 3. *golden.*
 Aurēus i, *m. Aureus*
 (mountain).
 auricūla, ae, *f. ear lap.*
 aūris, is, *f. the ear.*
 aurum i, *n. gold.*
 ausculto 1. *to listen.*
 auspiciūm, i, *n. auspice,*
 divination.
 auspīcor 1. *to commence.*
 aut, conj. *or; aut—aut,*
 either—or.
 autem conj. *but (takes*
 the second place in
 its sentence).
 autumnus, i, *m. autumn.*
 auxiliares, *auxiliary*
 troops.
 auxiliūm, i, *n. aid; pl.*
 auxiliary troops.
 avaritiā, ae, *f. avarice.*
 avārus 3. *c. gen. ava-*
 ricious, covetous, greedy.
 aversor 1. *to shun.*
 avertō, ti, sum 3. *to*
 turn away, to avert.
 avidus 3. *c. gen. desi-*
 rous, greedy.
 avis, is, *f. a bird.*
 avōco 1. *to call off.*
 avōlo 1. *to fly away.*
 avus, i, *m. a grandfa-*
 ther.
 axis, is, *m. an axle.*
- B.**
- Bahylon, ōnis, *f. Baby-*
 lon.
 bacillūm, i, *n. stick.*
 Bactra, ōrum, *n. Bactra.*
 barba, ae, *f. beard.*
 barbārus 3. *barbarian.*
 barbātulus 3. *slightly*
 barbed.
 basis, is, *f. foundation,*
 pedestal.
 beāte, adv. *peacefully.*
 beātus 3. *peaceful, happy.*
 belle, adv. *finely.*
 bellicōsus 3. *warlike.*
 bellum, i, *n. war.*
 bellus 3. *beautiful, neat.*
 bene, adv. *well, rightly.*
 benedīco 3. *c. dat. to*
 praise.
 beneficentiā, ae, *f. be-*
 neficence.
 beneficium, i, *n. kind-*
 ness, favor.
 beneficus 3. *beneficent.*
 benevōle, adv. *kindly.*
 benevolentīa, ae, *f. be-*
 nevolence.
 benigne, adv. *kindly.*
 benignus 3. *kind.*
 bestia, ae, *f. beast.*
 bestiōla, ae, *f. a little*
 animal.
 bibliothēca, ae, *f. libra-*
 ry.
 bibo, bibi, bibītum 3. *to*
 drink.
 bicorpor, ōris, *double-*
 bodied.
 bidens, ntis, *m. mattock,*
 grubbing-hoe.
 bidūm, i, *n. the space*
 of two days.
 bilis, is, *f. the gall.*
 blande, adv. *gently.*
 blandimentum, i, *n. ca-*
 ressing.
 blandior, itus sum 4.
 to flatter.
 bombyx, ŷcis, *m. the*
 silk worm.
 bonitas, ātis, *f. goodness.*
 bonus 3. *good; bonum,*
 i, n. the good, good.
 Borēas, ae, *m. Boreas,*
 north wind.
 bos, ovis, *c. ox, cow.*
 brachium, i, *n. arm.*
 brevis, e, *short; brevi*
 (sc. tempore), in a
 short time, soon.
 Britannīcus, 3. *British.*
- C.**
- Cachinnatiō, ōnis, *f.*
 loud, unrestrained
 laugh.
 cacūmen, īnis, *n. top.*
 cadāver, ēris, *n. carcass,*
 corpse.
 cado, cecīdi, cāsūm 3.
 to fall, happen.
 cadūcus 3. *ready to fall,*
 falling.
 caecus 3. *blind.*
 caedes, is, *f. slaughter.*
 caedo, cecīdi, caesūm 3.
 to fell, to kill.
 caerimoniā, ae, *f. cere-*
 mony.
 Caesar, āris, *m. Caesar;*
 2) *an emperor.*
 Caius Marius, Caius
 Marius.
 calamitas, ātis, *f. calam-*
 ity, loss, misfortune.
 calāmus, i, *m. stalk, quill.*
 calcar, āris, *n. a spur.*
 calcūlus, i, *m. pebble.*
 calēo 2. *to be warm.*
 calīgo, īnis, *f. darkness.*
 calix, īcis, *m. a cup.*
 callīdus 3. *cunning.*
 callis, is, *m. foot-path,*
 path.
 Callisthēnes, is, *m. Cal-*
 listhenes.
 calor, ōris, *m. heat.*
 calyx, ŷcis, *m. the bud.*
 camēlus, i, *m. camel.*
 campus, i, *m. a plain.*
 canālis, is, *m. a canal.*
 canis, is, *c. a dog.*
 cannābis, is, *f. hemp.*
 cano, cecīni, cantum
 3. *to sing.*
 cantio, ōnis, *f. song.*
 canto 1. *to sing.*

- cantus, ūs, *m. song.*
 Canusium, i, *n. Canusium.*
 capesso, īvi, itum 3. *to seize; proelium, to commence battle.*
 capillus, i, *m. the hair.*
 capio, cēpi, captum 3. *to take, seize, capture.*
 capitalis, e; res capitalis, *capital offence.*
 capitulum, i, *n. capitol.*
 capra, ae, *f. she-goat.*
 captivus, i, *m. captive.*
 capto 1. *to catch, strive to catch.*
 caput, itis, *n. head, chapter, chief city.*
 carhāsus, i, *f. flax.*
 carcer, ēris, *m. a prison.*
 cardo, inis, *m. hinge.*
 careo 2. *c. abl. to want.*
 Caria, ae, *f. Caria.*
 caritas, atis, *f. love.*
 carmen, inis, *f. poem.*
 caro, carnis, *f. flesh.*
 Carolus, i, *m. Charles.*
 carpentarius, i, *m. wheelwright.*
 Carrae, arum, *f. city in Mesopotamia.*
 Carthāgo, inis, *f. Carthage.*
 Carthaginiensis, is, *m. a Carthaginian.*
 carus 3. *beloved, dear.*
 casa, ae, *f. a hut.*
 cassis, idis, *f. helmet.*
 cassis, is (commonly pl. casses, ium), *m. hunter's net.*
 Cassius, i, *m. Cassius.*
 castigo 1. *to reprove.*
 Castor, ōris, *m. Castor.*
 castra, ōrum, *n. camp.*
 casus, ūs, *m. fall, misfortune, chance.*
 catēna, ae, *f. chain.*
 caterva, ae, *f. troop.*
 Catilina, ae, *m. Catiline.*
 caulis, is, *m. cabbage.*
 Cato, ōnis, *m. Cato.*
 cauda, ae, *f. tail.*
 caudex, icis, *m. trunk of a tree.*
 caula, ae, *f. sheep-cote.*
 caupo, ōnis, *m. inn-keeper.*
 caussa, ae, *f. ground, cause, civil process; (with a gen. preceding) on account of.*
 cautus 3. *cautious, careful.*
 cavēo, cāvi, cautum 2. *to be on one's guard, ab aliquo, before some one; 2) establish, provide.*
 cēdo, cessi, cessum 3. *to give way.*
 celēber, bris, bre, *frequented.*
 celebrātas, ātis, *f. great number, great multitude.*
 celēbro 1. *to celebrate.*
 celer, ēris, ēre, *swift.*
 celeritas, atis, *f. celerity, swiftness.*
 celeriter, *adv. swiftly.*
 celo 1. *c. dupl. acc. to conceal.*
 censeo, sūi, sum 2. *to value, account, think.*
 census, ūs, *m. valuation.*
 Centaurus, i, *m. a Centaur.*
 centuriō, ōnis, *m. centurion.*
 cera, ae, *f. wax; 2) wax-tablet.*
 cerāsium, i, *n. cherry.*
 cerāsus, i, *f. cherry-tree.*
 Ceres, ēris, *f. Ceres.*
 cerno, crēvi, crētum 3. *to see, judge.*
 certāmen, inis, *n. contest.*
 certātim, *adv. emulously.*
 certe, *adv. surely.*
 certo, 1. *to contend.*
 certo, *adv. surely.*
 certus 3. *sure, certain, definite, positive.*
 cervix, icis, *f. neck.*
 cervus, i, *m. stag.*
 cesso 1. *to cease, neglect, omit.* [ers.
 cetēri, ae, a, *the rest, others.*
 Ceus 3. *from the island of Ceus in the Aegean sea.*
 chalybs, ŷbis, *m. steel.*
 charta, ae, *f. paper.*
 chorda, ae, *f. string.*
 Christus, i, *m. Christ.*
 cibus, i, *m. food.*
 cicer, ēris, *n. chick-pea.*
 Cicēro, ōnis, *m. Cicero.*
 ciconia, ae, *f. stork.*
 cicur, ūris, *tame.*
 ciēo, īvi, itum 2. *to raise.*
 Cimber, bri, *m. a Cimbrian.*
 Cinēas, ae, *m. Cineas.*
 cingo, xi, ctum 3. *to gird, surround.*
 cinis, ēris, *m. ashes.*
 Circe, ēs, *f. Circe.*
 circiter, *adv. about.*
 circuitus, ūs, *m. circuit, extent.*
 circūlus, i, *m. circle, circuit.*
 circumdo, dēdi, dātum, *dāre, to place around, surround, (c. dat. of pers. and acc. of thing, or c. acc. of pers. and abl. of thing).*
 circumēo (circuēo), īi, itum 4. *to go around.*
 circumfēro, tūli, latum 3. *to carry around.*
 circumsedēo, sedi, sessum 2. *to sit around, besiege.*
 circumspicio, spexi, spectum 3. (c. acc.) *to look around (after something).*
 circumsto, ēti 1. *to stand around.*
 circumvenio, vēni, ventum 3. *to go around, surround.*
 circus, i, *m. circus, race-course.*
 citātus 3. *swift.*
 cito, *adv. quickly.*
 civilis, e, *civil; bellum civile, civil war.*
 civis, is, *c. citizen, subject.*
 civitas, atis, *f. citizenship, state; 2) right of citizenship.*

- clades, is, *f. defeat.*
clamāto 1, *to cry out after.*
clamo 1. *to cry out.*
clamor, ōris, *m. a cry.*
clandestinus 3. *secret.*
clare, *adv. clearly, evidently.*
clarus 3. *clear, renowned.*
classis, is, *f. fleet.*
claudio, si, sum 3. *to close.*
classus 3. *closed.*
clavis, is, *f. key.*
clavus, i. *m. nail.*
Clazomēnae, arum, *f. a city in Ionia.*
clemens, tis, *mild.*
Clemens, ntis, *m. Clement.*
clementer, *adv. mildly.*
Cleomēnes, is, *m. Cleomenes.*
clitellae, arum, *f. pack-saddle.*
Clitus, i, *m. Clitus.*
cloāca, ae, *f. drain (for streets).*
Clodius, i. *m. Clodius.*
clypēus, i, *m. shield.*
coactor, ōris, *m. collector.*
coalesco, lūi, litum 3. *to grow together, to coalesce.*
coaxo 1. *to croak.*
cocyx, ygis, *m. cuckoo.*
cochlēa, ae, *f. a snail.*
Cocles, itis, *m. Cocles.*
codex, icis, *m. book.*
codicilli, ōrum, *m. writing tablet.*
coelestis, e, *heavenly.*
coelum, i, *n. heaven.*
coena, ae, *f. a meal.*
coeno 1. *to partake of food; coenatus 3. having eaten.*
coenūla, ae, *f. a spare meal.*
coepi, pisse, *to have begun; coērcēo 2. to restrain.*
cogitatio, ōnis, *f. reflection.*
cogitāto, *adv. with reflection.*
cogito 1. *to think, consider.*
cognātus, i, *m. a relation.*
cognitio, ōnis, *f. knowledge.*
cognitus 3. *known.*
cognōmen, inis, *n. family name.*
cognosco, nōvi, nītum 3. *to become acquainted with, perceive, understand.*
cogo, cōegi, coactum 3. *to compel.*
cohaereo, si, sum 2. *to hold together.*
cohors, tis, *f. cohort.*
cohortor 1. *to encourage, incite.*
collēga, ae, *m. colleague.*
colligo 1. *to bind together.*
colligo, ēgi, ectum 3. *to collect.*
collis, is, *m. a hill.*
collōco 1. *in c. abl. to place in, bestow upon something.*
colloquium, i, *n. conference.*
collōquor, locūtus sum 3. *to converse.*
collum, i, *n. neck.*
collustro 1. *to illuminate.*
colo, colūi, cultum 3. *to attend to, cultivate, revere, honor.*
colonia, ae, *f. colony.*
color, ōris, *m. color.*
columba, ae, *f. dove.*
colus, i, *f. distaff.*
coma, ae, *f. hair of the head; 2) mane.*
combūro, ussi, ustum 3. *to burn up, burn.*
comēdo, ēdi, ēsum 3. *to eat, consume.*
comes, itis, *m. companion.*
comētes, ae, *m. comet.*
comīcus, 3. *comic; poëta comīcus, comic poet.*
comis, e, *courteous.*
comītas, ātis, *f. kindness.*
comitia, ōrum, *n. assembly of the people.*
comītor 1. *to accompany.*
commemōro 1. *to mention.*
commendatio, ōnis, *f. commendation.*
commendo 1. *to recommend.*
committo, mīsi, missum 3. *to commit to; 2) to commit.*
commoditas, ātis, *f. convenience.*
commōdum, i, *n. advantage, use.*
commōdus 3. *convenient.*
commonefācio, fēci, factum 3. *to remind.*
commōneo 2. *to remind, admonish.*
commōveo 2. *to move.*
commūnis, e, *common, known by all.*
commutātio, ōnis, *f. change.*
como, compsi, compitum 3. *to comb, adorn.*
comoedia, ae, *f. comedy.*
compāreo, ui 2. *to appear.*
compāro 1. *to prepare, acquire.*
compello, pūli, pulsum 3. *to drive together, drive.*
compenso 1. *to make up.*
compērio, pēri, pertum 1. *to ascertain.*
compes, ēdis, *f. a fetter.*
compesco, cūi 3. *to curb, check.*
complector, exus sum 3. *to embrace.*
complēo, ēvi, ētum 2. *to fill.*
complexus, ūs, *m. embrace.*
complicō, āvi, ātum 1. *to fold together; complicātus 3. involved.*
complūres, a or ia, gen. ium, *very many.*
compōno, sūi, sītum 3. *to put together, dispose;*

- pacem, *to establish peace*; se comp. in aliquid, *to set one's self right*.
- compos, ōtis, c. gen. *powerful, possessed of*. compositus 3. *composed*.
- comprehendo, di, sum 3. *to seize*.
- compungo, xi, ctum 3. *to prick*.
- concēdo, essi, essum 3. *to allow, confess*; 2) *to surrender one's self*.
- concīdo, cīdi 3. *to fall together*.
- concilio 1. *to conciliate, unite*.
- concīno, inūi, entum 3. *to sing together, sound together*.
- conciōnor 1. *to harangue the people*.
- concipio, cēpi, ceptum 3. *to conceive, receive*; suspiciōnem, *conceive a suspicion*.
- conciito 1. *to excite, raise*.
- conciitor, ōris, m. *exciter*.
- conclāmo 1. *to call out*.
- conclāve, is, n. *room, chamber*.
- conclūdo, si, sum 3. *to include*.
- concordiā, ae, f. *harmony*.
- concors, rdis, *united*.
- concreresco, crēvi, crētum 3. *to grow together*.
- concupisco, pīvi, pītum 3. *to desire*.
- condemno 1. *to condemn*; captis, *to death*.
- condimentum, i. n. *seasoning*.
- condiō 4. *to season*.
- condiscipulus, i, m. *felllow-student*.
- conditio, ōnis, f. *condition*.
- condo. īdi, itum 3. *to preserve, conceal, found*.
- condūco, xi, ctum 3. *to bring together*; 2) *to hire*.
- confabūlor 1. *to chat with*.
- confectio, ōnis, f. *making, composing*.
- confēro, contūli, collātum 3. *to bring together, join, compare*; 2) *to confer* (e. g. favors); se conferre, *to betake one's self*.
- conficio, fēci, factum 3. *to perform, conclude*; 2) *to impair, consume*.
- confido, īsus sum 3, c. dat. or abl. *to trust to, confide in*.
- confirmo 1. *to confirm*.
- confitēor, fessus sum 2. *to acknowledge, confess*.
- confligo, xi, ctum 3. *to fight*.
- conflūo, xi, xum 3. *to flow together*.
- confodio, ōdi, ossum 3. *to stab*.
- conformo 1. *to form*.
- confringo, frēgi, fractum 3. *to break in pieces*.
- confugio, ūgi, ugītum 3. *to take refuge*.
- congēro, essi, estum 3. *to collect together*.
- congerro, ōnis, m. *concomrade, play-fellow*.
- congrēdiōr, gressus sum 3. *to meet* (with one), *fight*.
- congrēgo 1. *to assemble*.
- congressio, ōnis, f. *meeting, engagement*.
- conjiicio, jēci, jectum 3. *to throw*; in pudorem conjiici, *to be disgraced*.
- conjūgo, 1. *to unite*.
- conjungo, nxi, nctum 3. *to join*.
- conjuratiō, ōnis, f. *conspiracy*.
- conjurātus 3. *conspired, a conspirator*.
- conjux, ūgis, f. *wife*.
- connecto, exui, exum 3. *to connect*.
- Cono, ōnis, m. *Conon*.
- conor 1. *to undertake, venture, try*.
- conquiesco, ēvi, ētum 3. in c. abl. *to find consolation in something*.
- consanesco, nūi 3. *to become well*.
- conscendo, di, sum, 3. *to mount up, to ascend*.
- conscientiā, ae, f. *consciousness, conscience*.
- consciūs 3. c. gen. *conscious of*.
- consector 1. *to pursue*.
- consenesco, nūi 3. *to grow old*.
- consensus, ūs, m. *agreement*.
- consentanēus 3. *suited to*.
- consentiō, nsi, nsum 4. *to agree with*.
- consequor, secūtus sum 3. *to follow, to attain*.
- consēro, rūi, rtum 3. *to join together*; manum cum aliquo, *to be hand to hand with some one*.
- consēro, sēvi, sītum 3. *to set with plants*.
- conservatiō, ōnis, f. *preservation*.
- conservātor, ōris, m; conservātrix, icis f. *preserver*.
- conservo 1. *to preserve*.
- consessus, ūs, m. *assembly*.
- considero 1. *to consider*.
- consido, ēdi, essum 3. *to sit down*.
- consigno 1. *to note, point out*.
- consilium i, n. *counsel, deliberation, purpose, plan, wisdom*.
- consolatiō, ōnis, f. *consoling, consolation*.
- consolōr 1. *to console*.
- consors, tis c. gen. *partaking of*.
- conspectus, ūs, m. *sight*.

- conspergo, rsi, rsum 3. *to besprinkle, strew.*
 conspicio, ěxi, ectum 3. *to discover.* [sec.
 conspicio 1. *to discover,*
 conspicuus 3 *conspicuous.*
 conspiratio, ōnis, *conspiracy.*
 constanter, *adv. with constancy, constantly.*
 constantia, ae, *f. steadfastness.*
 consterno, strāvi, stratum 3 *to strew.*
 constituo, ūi, utum 3. *to establish, determine, constitute.*
 consto, iti, atum 1. c. *abl. or ex c. abl. to consist of; to cost; constat, it is known.*
 constringo, inxi, ictum 3. *to draw together, bind together.*
 consuesco, ěvi, etum 3. *to accustom one's self, be accustomed.*
 consuetudo, inis, *f. habit, intercourse.*
 consul, ūlis, *m. consul.*
 consularis, is, *m. one who has been a consul.*
 consulatus, ūs, *m. consulship.*
 consulo, lūi, ltum 3. *to deliberate; c. acc. to consult some one; c. dat. to consult for some one.*
 consulto, *adv. designedly.*
 consultus 3. c. gen. *acquainted with.*
 consumo, mpsi, mptum 3. *to consume.*
 consurgo, rexi, rectum 3. *to arise together.*
 contamino 1. *to contaminate.*
 contemno, mpsi, mptum 3 *to despise.*
 contemplor 1. *to consider.*
 contemptus, ūs, *m. contempt.*
 contendo, di, tum 3. *to stretch, stretch one's self; strive after something; in locum, to march; to contend; ab aliquo, to demand.*
 contentio, ōnis, *f. contention, struggle.*
 contentus 3. c. *abl. contented.*
 contēro, trāvi, tritum 3. *to break in pieces, wear out; contritus 3. threshed.*
 conticesco, ticui 3. *to be silent.*
 contineo, inui, entum 2. *to hold together; an- imam, to stop the breath, abstain.*
 contingo, tigi, tactum 3. *to fall to one's lot.*
 continuo, *adv. forthwith.*
 continuus 3. *continuous.*
 contorquēo, rsi, rtum 2. *to hurl, shoot.*
 contra, *adv. on the contrary.*
 contrāho, axi, actum 3. *to draw together.*
 contrarius 3. *opposite.*
 contrecto 1. *to handle.*
 contremisco, tremui 3. *to tremble.*
 contuēor, tuitus sum 2. *to consider.*
 contundo, ūdi, ūsum 3. *to crush, bring to naught.*
 convalesco, lūi 3. *to recover.*
 convēho, exi, ectum 3. *to bring together, carry together.*
 covello, velli, vulsum 3. *to rend, convulse.*
 convēnio, vēni, ventum 4. *to come together; c. acc. to visit.*
 converto, rti, rsum 3. *to turn around, turn to, turn.*
 conviva, ae, *m. guest.*
 convivium, i, *n. entertainment.*
 convivor 1. *to eat with.*
 convoco 1. *to call together.*
 convolo 1. *to fly, hasten together.*
 coorior, ortus sum 4. *to arise, burst forth.*
 copia, ae, *f. abundance, multitude; opportunitate; pl. troops.*
 copiosus 3. *abundant; 2) rich in expression, fluent.*
 copulo 1. *to join.*
 coqua, ae, *f. a cook.*
 coquo, xi, ctum 3. *to cook.*
 coquus, i, *m. man cook.*
 cor, cordis, *n. heart.*
 Corinthius 3. *Corinthian.*
 Corinthus, i, *f. Corinth.*
 cornus 3. *of horn.*
 cornu, ūs, *n. horn.*
 corona, ae, *f. garland.*
 corporēus 3. *corporeal.*
 corpus, ōris, *n. body.*
 corrādo, si, sum 3. *to scrape together.*
 correctio, ōnis, *f. correction.*
 corrigo, rexi, rectum 3. *to correct, improve.*
 corripio, ripui, reptum 3. *to seize.*
 corrugatus 3. *wrinkled.*
 corrumpo, rūpi, ruptum 3. *to waste, destroy, corrupt.*
 corrūo, ūi 3. *to rush together.*
 cortex, icis, *m. rind, bark.*
 corvus, i, *m. a crow.*
 cos, cotis, *f. whetstone, grindstone.*
 crambe, es, *f. cabbage.*
 cras, *adv. to-morrow.*
 creber, bra, brum, *frequent.*
 crebro, *adv. frequently.*
 credo, didi, ditum 3. *to believe, to trust.*
 credulus 3. *credulous.*
 Cremēra, ae, *f. river in Etruria.*

- cremo 1. *to burn.*
 creo 1. *to create, choose.*
 crepo. ūi, itum 1. *to crack.*
 cresco, crēvi, crētum 3. *to increase, grow.*
 Creta, ae, *f. Crete.*
 crimen, īnis, *n. crime.*
 crinis, is, *m. hair.*
 crinītus 3. *hairly.*
 Croto, ōnis, *m. Croton.*
 cruciātus, ūs, *m. torture.*
 cruciō 1. *to torment, torture.*
 crudēlis, e, *cruel.*
 crudelītās, ātis, *f. cruelty.*
 cruentus 3. *bloody.*
 cruor, ōris, *m. blood.*
 crus, uris, *n. shin, leg.*
 crux, ucis, *f. cross.*
 cubo, ūi, itum 1. *to recline.*
 cucūlo 1. *to coo.*
 cucūlus, i, *m. cuckoo.*
 cucūmis, ēris, *m. cucumber.*
 culīna, ae, *f. kitchen.*
 culmen, īnis, *n. top.*
 culpa, ae, *f. guilt, fault.*
 cultus, ūs, *m. attention to, clothing, worship.*
 cumūlo 1. *to heap up, load.*
 cunae, arum, *f. a cradle.*
 cunctor 1. *to delay.*
 cunctus 3. *the whole; pl. all, all together.*
 cunicūlus, i, *m. rabbit.*
 cupide, *adv. eagerly.*
 cupidītās, ātis, *f. desire.*
 cupīdus 3. *c. gen. desirous.*
 cupīo, pīvi, pītum 3. *to desire, wish.*
 cur, *adv. why?*
 cura, ae, *f. care; currae mihi est, I am anxious.*
 cureculiō, ōnis, *m. the corn-worm.*
 Cures, īum, *f. chief city of the Sabines.*
 curīa, ae, *f. senate-house.*
 Curīus, i, *m. Curius.*
 curo 1. *to care; c. acc. to be concerned, to look out for something; c. gerundivo, to cause.*
 curricūlum, i, *n. race-course, course.*
 curro, cucurri, cursum 3. *to run.*
 currus, ūs, *m. chariot.*
 cursus, ūs, *m. a course.*
 cuspis, īdis, *f. point.*
 custodia, ae, *f. watch.*
 custodiō 4. *to guard, watch, keep.*
 custos, ōdis, *m. keeper.*
 cymba, ae, *f. boat.*
 Cynīcus, i, *n. the Cynic.*
 Cynoscephālae, arum, *f. a hill in Thessaly.*
 Cyrus, i, *m. Cyrus.*
 Cyrenaeus, i, *m. Cyrenian.*
 Cyprus, i, *f. Cyprus.*

D.

- Damno 1. *to condemn.*
 damnum, i, *n. injury.*
 Darius, i, *m. Darius.*
 Datis, is, *m. Datis.*
 deā, ae, *f. goddess.*
 deambūlo 1. *to go to walk.*
 debēo 2. *to owe, ought, must.*
 debīlis, e, *weak.*
 debilīto 1. *to weaken.*
 decēdo, cessi, cessum 3. *to go away, die.*
 December, bris, *m. December.*
 decemvīri, orum, *m. decemvirs, ten magistrates.*
 decerno, crēvi, crētum 3. *to determine, discern.*
 decerpo, psi, ptum 3. *to pluck off, break off, take from.*
 decerto 1. *to contend.*
 decēt 2. *c. acc. it is proper.*
 decipiō, cēpi, ceptum 3. *to deceive.*
 d clāro 1. *to declare.*
 decōrus. 3. *becoming; cecōrum, propriety.*
 decresco, crēvi, crētum 3. *to decrease.*
 decus, ōris, *n. honor.*
 dedēcet 2. *c. acc. it is not proper.*
 dedēcus, ōris, *n. disgrace.*
 dedīco 1. *to dedicate.*
 deditiō, ōnis, *f. surrender.*
 dedo, īdi, itum, 3. *to deliver up.*
 dedūco, xi, ctum 3. *to lead away.*
 defatīgo 1. *to weary, to make weary; pass. to become weary.*
 defectiō, ōnis, *f. desertion.*
 defendo, di, sum 3. *to defend.*
 defensor, ōris, *m. defender.*
 defēro, detūli, delātum, deferre 3. *to offer.*
 defervesco, būi 3. *to cease boiling, cease raging.*
 defetiscor, fessus sum 3. *to become weary, be wearied. [to fail.]*
 defīcīo, fēci, factum 3. *defīgo, xi, xum 3. in c. abl. to fix firmly, fix upon something.*
 defīnio 4. *to define.*
 deflāgro 1. *to burn up.*
 deflecto, xi, xum 3. *to turn from, deviate.*
 defūgiō, ūgi, ugītum 3. *c. acc. to escape.*
 degēner, ēris, *degenerate.*
 degusto 1. *to taste.*
 deinde, *thereupon, then.*
 Deīanīra, ae, *f. Dejanira.*
 dejīcīo, jēci, jectum 3. *to cast down.*
 delecto 1. *to delight; pass. c. abl. to be delighted, to rejoice at.*
 delēo, ēvi, ētum 2. *to destroy, annihilate.*
 delibēro 1. *to deliberate, consider.*

- delicātus 3. *delicate*.
 delictum, i, n. *offence*.
 delīro, ēgi, ectum 3. *to select*.
 Delphi, ōrum, m. *Delphi*.
 Delphicus 3. *Delphic*.
 delinquo, īqui, ictum 3. *to do wrong*.
 delīro 1. *to be silly*.
 delīrus 3. *silly*.
 delitescō, litūi 3. *to conceal*.
 delūdo, si, sum 3. *to deceive*.
 Delus (os), i f. *Delos* (an island).
 demando 1. *to commit to*.
 Demarātus, i, m. *Demaratus*.
 demergo, si, sum 3. *to plunge under, sink*.
 demēto, ssūi, ssum 3. *to cut down*.
 demitto, mīsi, missum 3. *to send down, let fall*.
 demo, mpsi, mptum 3. *to take away*.
 demolior, itus sum 4. *to demolish*.
 demonstrātor, ōris, m. *shower*.
 demonstro 1. *to point out*.
 Demosthēnes, is, m. *Demosthenes*.
 demulcēo, mulsi, mulsum 2. *to soothe*; 2) *to lick*.
 demum, adv. *first, at length*.
 deīque, adv. *at last, finally*.
 dens, tis, m. *tooth*.
 densus 3. *thick*.
 dentātus 3. *toothed*.
 denuntiō 1. *to announce*.
 denūo, adv. *anew*.
 depasco, pāvi, pastum 3. *to feed down*.
 dependō, di 2. *to hang down*.
 depōno, pōsui, pōsitum 3. *to lay down, lay aside*.
 depopulor 1. *to lay waste*.
 deprecātiō, ōnis, f. *entreaty*.
 deprehendo, di, sum 3. *to seize, catch*.
 deprīmo, pressi, pressum 3. *to depress*.
 depugno 1. *to fight* (for life or death).
 deridēo, isi, isum 2. *to deride*.
 descendo, di, sum 3. *to descend*.
 describo, psi, ptum 3. *to describe, note*.
 desēco, cūi, ctum 1. *to cut off*.
 desēro, rui, rtum 3. *to desert*.
 desiderium, i, n. *longing, earnest desire*.
 desidēro 1. *to long for, feel the want of something*.
 desido, ēdi 3. *to fall down*.
 designo 1. *to designate*.
 desīno, sīi, situm 3. *to cease*.
 desisto, stīti, stitum 3. *to desist, cease*.
 desperātiō, ōnis, f. *despair*.
 despēro 1. *to despair of*.
 despīcō, spexi, spectrum 3. *to despise*.
 destitūo, ūi, ūtum 3. *to desert, leave behind*.
 destrūo, uxi, uctum 3. *to destroy*.
 desum, fūi, esse, *to be wanting*; c. dat. rei, *to neglect*.
 detēgo, xi, ctum 3. *to detect*.
 detergēo, rsi, rsum 2. *to wipe off*.
 deterrēo 2. *to frighten from, deter*.
 detestābilis, e, *detestable*.
 detinēo, tinui, tentum 2. *to hold back, detain*.
 detrahō, axi, actum 3. *to draw from, remove*.
 detrimentum, i, n. *injury*.
 detrūdō, si, sum 3. *to thrust down*.
 dēus, i, m. *God*.
 devasto 1. *to lay waste*.
 devortor, ti 3. *to turn in, put up*.
 devinco 3. *to conquer*.
 devōco 1. *to call down*.
 devōlo 1. *to fly forth, hasten away*.
 devōro 1. *to devour*.
 dexter, tra, trum, *right*.
 diadēma, ātis, n. *crown*.
 dialectica, ae, f. *logic*.
 dialectus, i, f. *dialect*.
 Diāna, ae, f. *Diana*.
 dico, xi, ctum 3. *to say, call*.
 dictātor, ōris, m. *dictator*.
 dictātō 1. *to say often*.
 dicto 1. *to dictate*.
 dies, ēi, m. *day*.
 diffēro, distūli, dilatatum, differe 3. *to put off, defer*.
 difficilis, e, *difficult*.
 difficultas, ātis, f. *difficultly*.
 difficulter, adv. *with difficulty*.
 diffīdo, īsus sum 3. *to distrust*.
 diffīdo, fīdi, fissum 3. *to split*.
 diffūgiō, ūgi, ugītum 3. *to flee asunder* (from each other).
 diffundo, fūdi, fūsum 3. *to diffuse, disperse*.
 digēro, essi, estum 3. *to separate, digest*.
 digītus, i, m. *finger*.
 dignitas, ātis, f. *dignity*.
 dignus 3. c. abl. *worthy deservng*.
 dijudico 1. *to distinguish*.
 dilābor, lapsus sum 3. *to glide away, disappear*.
 dilacēro 1. *to tear in pieces*.
 dilanō 1. *to tear in pieces, lacerate*.

- diligens, tis, *diligent*.
 diligentē *adv. diligently*.
 diligentia, ae, *f. diligence, exactness*.
 diligo, lexi, lectum 3. *to esteem, love*.
 dilucidus 3. *clear*.
 diluo, ūi, ūtum 3. *to dilute, weaken*.
 dimico 1. *to fight* (a general battle).
 dimidium, i, *n. half*.
 dimitto 3. *to dismiss*.
 Dionysius, i, *m. Dionysius*. [thong.
 diphthongus, i, *f. diphthirimo, ēmi, emptum 3. to separate*.
 diripio, ipui, eptum 3. *to plunder*.
 diruo, ūi, ūtum 3. *to destroy*.
 dirus 3. *horrible*.
 discedo, cessi, cessum 3. *to go away, depart*.
 descensus, ūs, *m. departure*.
 discindo, cidi, cissum 3. *to tear in pieces, rend*.
 disciplina, ae, *f. discipline*.
 discipulus, i, *m. disciple*.
 discludo, si, sum 3. *to separate*.
 disco, didici 3. *to learn*.
 discolor, oris, *party-colored, variegated*.
 discordia, ae, *f. discord*.
 discordo 1. *cum aliquo, to disagree with some one*.
 discrimen, inis, *n. distinction, danger*.
 discusso, curri, and curri, cursum 3. *to run from each other, scatter*.
 discutio, ussi, ussum 3. *to disperse, to dispel*.
 disertus 3. *eloquent*.
 disjicio, jeci, jectum 3. *to scatter*.
 dispar, aris, *unequal, diverse*.
 dispello, pui, pulsum 3. *to drive asunder, to dispel*. [perish.
 disperco, ii, itum 4. *to disperse, scatter*.
 dispergo, rsi, rsum 3. *to disperse, scatter*.
 dispicio, exi, ectum 3. *to open the eyes*.
 displiceo 2. *to displease*.
 dissensio, onis, *f. dissension*.
 dissero, rui, rtum 3. *to discuss, discourse*.
 dissiduum, i, *n. disagreement*.
 dissimilis, e, *dissimilar*.
 dissipio 1. *to scatter*.
 dissolvo, vi, lutum 3. *to dissolve*.
 dissuadeo, si, sum 2. *to dissuade*.
 distincte, *adv. plainly*.
 distineo, inui, entum 2. *to hold from each other, occupy, detain*.
 distingo, nxi, netum 3. *to distinguish*.
 distraho, axi, actum 3. *to draw asunder, dissolve, waste*.
 distribuo, ūi, ūtum 3. *c. dat. to distribute*.
 ditio, onis, *f. rule, power*.
 diu, *adv. a long time*;
 diutius, *longer*.
 diuturnitas, atis, *f. long-continuance*.
 diuturnus 3. *long-continued*.
 diversus 3. *different*.
 dives, itis, *rich*.
 divido, isi, isum 3. *to divide*.
 divinus 3. *divine*.
 divitiae, arum, *f. riches*.
 do, dedi, datum, dare 1. *to give, attribute*; *litteras dare, to write a letter*.
 doceo, cui, ctum 2. *to teach, inform*.
 docilis, e, *teachable*.
 doctor, oris, *m. teacher*.
 doctrina, ae, *f. doctrine, instruction, science*.
 doctus 3. *learned, versed in*.
 documentum, i, *n. proof*.
 dolere 2. *to grieve, feel pain*.
 doliarium, i, *n. cellar*.
 dolor, oris, *m. pain, grief*.
 dolus, i, *m. fraud*.
 domesticus 3. *domestic*.
 domicilium, i, *n. residence*.
 dominatio, onis, *f. dominion*.
 dominor 1. *to reign*.
 dominus, i, *m. lord, master*.
 domo, ūi, itum 1. *to subdue*.
 domus, ūs, *f. house, palace*; *domi, at home*; *domo, from home*.
 donec, *conj. until, until that, even until*.
 dono 1. *to give, present*.
 donum, i, *n. present*.
 dormio 4. *to sleep*.
 dos, dotis, *f. dowry, portion*.
 dubito 1. *to doubt*.
 dubios 3. *doubtful*.
 duco, xi, ctum 3. *to lead, draw, lead away*; 2) *to consider, regard as something*.
 dulcedo, inis, *f. sweetness, pleasantness*.
 dulcis, e, *sweet, lovely*.
 dum, *conj. while, so long as*; *with subj. until, until that, so (as) long as*; *provided that*.
 dumetum, i, *n. a thicket*.
 dummodo, *conj. with subj. provided that*.
 duplico 1. *to double*.
 duro 1. *to last, endure*.
 durus 3. *hard*.
 dux, ucis, *c. leader, general*.
 Dyrrhachium, i, *n. Dyrrhachium*.

E.

Eblandior, itus sum 4. *to gain by flattery*.

- eburneus 3. *of ivory, ivory.*
ecclesia, ae, *f. church.*
echo, ūs, *f. echo.*
edico, xi, ctum 3. *to give out, command.*
edisco, didici 3. *to commit to memory.*
ēdo, ēdi, ēsum 3. *to eat.*
ēdo, idi, itum, 3. *to put forth, proclaim, perform.*
edocēo, cūi, ctum 2. *to instruct, inform.*
edolo 1. *to hew properly, to square.*
edūco 1. *to bring up.*
edūco, xi, ctum 3. *to lead forth.*
effector, ōris, *m. maker.*
effeminatus 3. *effeminate.*
effēro 1. *to render fierce.*
effēro, extūli, elatum 3. *to carry forth, bury.*
efficax, ācis, *effectual.*
efficio, feci, factum 3. *to effect, make.*
effigies, ei, *f. figure.*
effingo, finxi, fictum 3. *to figure, conceive of.*
effloresco, rūi 3. *to flourish.*
effodio, ōdi, ossum 3. *to dig up.*
effringo, frēgi, fractum 3. *to break open, break up.*
effūgio, fūgi, fūgitum 3. *c. acc. to flee away.*
effundo, ūdi, ūsum 3. *to pour forth, throw off.*
effusus 3. *unrestrained.*
egēo, ūi 2. *to want, be in want.*
Egeria, ae, *f. a nymph.*
egestas, ātis, *f. want.*
ego, *pron. I.*
egredior, gressus sum 3. *to depart.*
ejicio, eci, ctum 3. *to cast forth.*
ejūlo 1. *to complain.*
ejusmodi. *of this kind, of like kind.*
- elabor, lapsus sum 3. *to glide away.*
elaboro 1. *to bestow pains upon; in c. abl. to occupy one's self with something.*
elēgans, tis, *elegant.*
elegantia, ae, *f. elegance.*
elementum, i, *n. element, beginning, elementary principle, letter (of the alphabet).*
elephantus, i, *m. elephant.*
elēvo 1. *to take away; 2) to disparage.*
elicio, ūi, itum 3. *to draw out, elicit.*
elido, isi, isum 3. *to dash, break, weaken.*
eligo, egi, ctum 3. *to select out, elect, choose.*
eloquentia, ae, *f. eloquence.*
eloquor, cūtus sum 3. *to pronounce. [forth.*
elūceo, xi 2. *to shine*
elūdo, ūsi, ūsum 3. *to elude, deride.*
emendo 1. *to improve.*
ementior, itus sum 4. *to state falsely.*
emergo, rsi, rsum 3. *to emerge, to work one's self out.*
emetior, emensus sum 4. *to measure off; travel through.*
emīco, ūi, ātum 1. *to gush forth.*
emīgro 1. *to move out.*
emīnēo, ūi 2. *to be eminent.*
emitto, mīsi, missum 3. *to send forth, thrust out.*
emo, emi, emptum 3. *to purchase.*
emollio 4. *to soften.*
emolumentum, i, *n. advantage. [to die.*
emōrior, ortūus sum 3. *to purchase.*
emptio, ōnis, *f. purchase.*
en, *adv. behold!*
ennaro 1. *to relate through.*
- enāto 1. *to swim out.*
Endymio, ōnis, *m. Endymion.*
enēco, cūi, ctum 1. *to kill by inches, vex to death.*
enim, *for (§ 102. 2. d).*
enītor, isus or ixus sum 3. *to exert one's self, strive.*
ensis, is, *m. sword.*
enumero 1. *to enumerate.*
eo, *adv. thither, so far.*
ēo, ivi, itum, ire, *to go.*
Epaminondas, ae, *m. Epaminondas.*
Ephesius 3. *Ephesian.*
Ephesus, i, *f. Ephesus.*
ephippium, i, *n. horse-cloth.*
Epicurus, i, *m. Epicurus,*
epigramma, ātis, *n. epigram.*
epilōgus, i, *m. epilogue.*
epistola, ae, *f. letter.*
epūlae, arum, *f. a meal, feast.*
epūlor 1. *to feast, entertain.*
eques, itis, *m. horseman; cavalry, knight.*
equidem, *adv. indeed.*
equitatus, ūs, *m. horsemanship, cavalry.*
equito 1. *to ride.*
equus, i, *m. horse, steed.*
Erechtheus, ei, *m. Erechtheus.*
ergo, *conj. therefore.*
Eretria, ae, *f. Eretria.*
Eretriensis, is, *m. an Eretrian.*
erigo, exi, ctum 3. *to elevate; erectus, elevated, lofty.*
eripio, ipui, eptum 3. *to snatch from.*
erraticus 3. *wandering.*
erro 1. *to wander, err.*
error, ōris, *m. error; pl. wanderings.*
erūdō 4. *to instruct.*
erumpo, rūpi, ruptum 3. *to break forth.*
erūo, ūi, ūtum 3. *to dig up.*

- esca, ae, *f.* food, bait.
 esūrio 4. to be hungry.
 et, conj. and; et — et, both — and, so (as) well — as also.
 etiā, conj. also.
 etiamsi, conj. even if.
 Etrurīa, ae, *f.* Etruria.
 etsi, conj. even if, although.
 Euboea, ae, *f.* Euboea.
 Eurōpa, ae, *f.* Europe.
 Eurōtas, ae, *m.* river at Sparta.
 evādo, āsi, āsum 3. to go away, become.
 evanesco, nūi 3. to disappear.
 evello, velli, vulsum 3. to pluck out.
 evēnit 4. it happens.
 eventus, ūs, *m.* event, result.
 everto. ti, sum 3. to overturn, prostrate, destroy.
 evīto 1. to avoid.
 evōco 1. to call forth.
 evōlo 1. to fly forth.
 evolvo, lvi, lūtum 3. to unfold, bring out.
 evōmo, ūi, itum 3. to belch forth, send forth.
 exacūo, ūi, ūtum 3. to sharpen.
 exaedifīco 1. to build.
 exagīto 1. to harass.
 axāmen, īnis, *n.* swarm.
 examīno 1. to examine.
 exanīmo 1. to deprive of life, to kill.
 exardesco, arsi, arsum 3. to take fire.
 exaresco, rui 3. to become dry.
 exascīo 1. to heat, fashion.
 exaudīo 4. to listen to.
 excēdo, cessi, cessum 3. c. abl. or ex c. abl. to go forth, depart.
 excello, ūi 3. to excel.
 excelsus 3. elevated.
 excerpo, psi, ptum 3. to take out, extract.
 excessus, ūs, *m.* departure.
 excidīum, i, *n.* destruction. [destroy.
 excīdo, idi, īsum 3. to excite, arouse.
 exciēo, īvi, itum 2. or excīo, īvi, itum 4. to excite, arouse.
 excīpio, cēpi, ceptum 3. to receive.
 excīto 1. to excite, raise.
 exclāmo 1. to cry out.
 exclūdo, ūsi, ūsum 3. to shut out, hatch.
 excōlo, olūi, ultum 3. to cultivate.
 excors, rdis, *senseless.*
 excrucīo 1. to torment.
 excusatīo, ōnis, *f.* excuse.
 exēdo, ēdi, ēsum 3. to consume, corrode.
 exemplar, āris, *n.* model, pattern.
 exemplum, i, *n.* example, instance.
 exēo, īi, itum, īre, to go out, go forth.
 exercēo 2. to exercise.
 exercitatio, ōnis, *f.* exercise, practice.
 exercītus, ūs, *m.* army.
 exhaurīo, si, stum 4. to exhaust.
 exhilarāo 1. to exhilarate.
 exīgo, ēgi, actum 3. to pass (time).
 exigūus 3. little, paltry.
 eximīus 3. distinguished, excellent.
 existimatīo, ōnis, *f.* estimation, opinion, judgment.
 existīmo 1. to esteem, consider one something.
 exitīum, i, *n.* destruction.
 exitūs, ūs, *m.* departure.
 exordior, orsus sum 4. to begin.
 exordīum, i, *n.* beginning, origin.
 exorior, ortus sum 4. to appear, arise.
 exōro 1. to entreat earnestly, obtain by entreaty.
 expavesco, vūi 3. c. acc. to shrink from.
 expēdiō 4. to disengage; se exp. to get ready.
 expēditīo, ōnis, *f.* expedition.
 expello, pūli, pulsum 3. to expel.
 expergefāciō, fēci, factum 3. to arouse (from sleep).
 expergiscor, perrectus sum 3. to wake up.
 experior, pertus sum 4. to ascertain, learn, try.
 expers, rtis, c. gen. desitute of.
 expēto, īvi. itum 3. to strive to obtain.
 expingo, nxi, ctum 3. to paint out.
 explēo, ēvi, ētum 2. to fill up, fulfil.
 explīco 1. to explain.
 explōdo, si, sum 3. to clap off, drive off.
 explorātor, ōris, *m.* spy.
 explōro 1. to search out, explore.
 expōno, pōsui, positum 3. to explain.
 exposco, poposci 3. to demand, request.
 exprīmo, pressi, pressum 3. to express.
 exprōbro 1. to reproach.
 expugno 1. to take.
 exquīro, isīvi, isītum 3. to examine.
 exsīleo, silui, sultum 4. to leap forth, spring up.
 exsilīum, i, *n.* banishment.
 existo, stīti 3. to arise, become, be.
 exsors, rtis, c. gen. desitute of. [pectation.
 expectatīo, onis, *f.* expectation.
 exspecto 1. to expect, await, wait.
 exsto, stīti 1. to stand out, project.
 exstinguo, nxi, netum 3. to extinguish, obliterate, kill.
 extrūo, uxi, uctum 3. to erect, construct.

- exsul, ūlis, *c. an exile.*
 exsūlo 1. *to be an exile;*
 exulatum ire or abire,
 to go into exile.
 exsulto 1. *to leap up,*
 exult.
 extemplo, *adv. immediately.*
 extenŭo 1. *to lessen.*
 exterminio 1. *to exterminate.*
 externus 3. *external.*
 extērus 3. *foreign.*
 extimesco, mūi 3. *c.*
 acc. to be afraid of
 something.
 extollo, tūli, tollere, *to*
 raise up, lift up.
 extrāho, xi, ctum 3. *to*
 protract.
 extorquēo, rsi, rtum 2.
 to wrest from, extort.
 extrēmus 3. *outermost,*
 last.
 extrīnsēcus, *adv. from*
 without.
 extrūdo, ūsi, ūsum 3. *to*
 thrust from, out.
 exulcēro 1. *to make sore,*
 render worse.
 exūo, ūi, ūtum 3. *to*
 draw off, take off.
- F.
- Faber, bri, *m. artisan*
 (of each art); faber
 lignariŭs, carpenter.
 Fabiŭs 3. *Fabian.*
 fabricātor, ōris, *m. mak-*
 er. framer.
 Fabriciŭs, i, *m. Fabri-*
 cius.
 fabricor 1. *to fashion,*
 make.
 fabŭla, ae, *f. fable.*
 facesso, ssivi, ssitum 3.
 to make; negotium,
 to make trouble, vex;
 2) *to take one's self*
 off.
 facētus 3. *delicate, witty.*
 facile, *adv. easily.*
 faciliŭs, e, *easy.*
 facinŭs, ōris, *n. deed,*
 foul deed.
 facio, feci, factum 3. *to*
- make, to esteem; vim*
facere, to inflict vio-
lence.
 factum, i, *n. deed.*
 facultas, ātis, *f. faculty,*
 power. [*of speech.*
 facundia, ae, *f. fluency*
 facundus 3. *eloquent.*
 fagus, i, *f. beech tree.*
 Falisci, ōrum, *m. a city*
 of Etruria.
 fallax, ācis, *deceptive.*
 fallo, fefelli, falsum 3. *to*
 deceive.
 falsus 3. *false.*
 fama, ae, *f. fame, re-*
 noun, rumor.
 fames, is, *f. hunger.*
 familia, ae, *f. family.*
 familiāris, e, *belonging to*
 a family; res famil-
 āris, property; famil-
 iāris, subst. friend.
 famŭlus, i, *m. servant.*
 fanum, i, *n. temple.*
 fas, indec. *n. right.*
 fasciŭlus, i, *m. bundle.*
 fascis, is, *m. bundle.*
 fastidiŭo 4. *c. acc. to*
 loathe, spurn.
 fataliter, *adv. according*
 to fate.
 fatēor, fassus sum 2. *to*
 acknowledge, allow.
 fatigo 1. *to weary.*
 fatum, i, *n. fate.*
 faux, cis, *f. throat.*
 faveo, āvi, autum 2. *c.*
 dat. to be favorable to,
 favor some one.
 febris, is, *f. fever.*
 fecundus 3. *fruitful.*
 felicitas, ātis, *f. happi-*
 ness.
 felix, icis, *happy.*
 Felix, icis, *m. Felix.*
 femina, ae, *f. woman.*
 fenestra, ae, *f. window.*
 fera, ae, *f. wild beast.*
 ferax, ācis. *c. gen. pro-*
 ductive of.
 fere, *adv. almost.*
 feriāe, arum, *f. holidays.*
 ferinus 3. *wild.*
 ferio, ire, *to thrust, strike.*
 ferme, *adv. almost.*
- fero, tuli, latum, ferre,
 to bear, bring, relate.
 ferociter, *adv. fiercely.*
 ferox, ōcis, *fierce.*
 ferrēus 3. *of iron.*
 ferrum i, *n. iron, sword.*
 fertilis, e, *c. gen. fertile.*
 ferus 3. *wild; ferae,*
 arum, f. wild beasts.
 fervēo, vi 2. *to glow.*
 fessus 3. *wearied, fa-*
 tigued.
 festivitas, ātis, *f. pleas-*
 antness.
 festivus 3. *fine, sprightly.*
 ficus, i and ūs, *f. fig-*
 tree.
 fidelis, e, *faithful.*
 fideliter, *adv. faithfully.*
 Fidenas, ātis, *m. belong-*
 ing to Fidenae.
 fides, ēi, *f. fidelity; fi-*
 dem habere, c. dat. to
 trust, have confidence
 in some one.
 fides, is, *f. string; fidi-*
 bus canere, to play on
 a stringed instrument.
 fido, fisus sum 3. *to*
 trust.
 fidus 3. *faithful, true.*
 figurā, ae, *f. figure,*
 form.
 filia, ae, *f. daughter.*
 filiŭlus, i, *m. little son.*
 filius, i, *m. son.*
 fingo, finxi, fictum 3. *to*
 form, feign.
 finio 4. *to finish.*
 finis, is, *m. end.*
 finitimus 3. *neighboring.*
 fio, factus sum, fieri, *to*
 be made, become, hap-
 pen; fieri non potest,
 quin, it is not possible,
 but that.
 firmitas, ātis, *f. firmness.*
 firmiter, *adv. firmly.*
 firmo 1. *to render firm,*
 strengthen, to harden.
 fistŭla, ae, *f. pipe.*
 flagitiŭsus 3. *disgraceful.*
 firmus 3. *firm.*
 flagitium, i, *n. foul deed.*
 flagito 1. *to demand.*
 flagro 1. *to burn.*

- flamma, ae, *f. flame.*
 flavus 3. *yellow, fair.*
 fleo, ēvi, ētum 2. *to weep.*
 flecto, exi, exum 3. *to bend.*
 flētus, ūs, *m. weeping.*
 flexuōsus 3. *winding.*
 flo 1. *to blow, wave.*
 flocci facere, *to consider of no account.* (§ 88.10.)
 florēo, ūi 2. *to bloom.*
 flos, floris, *m. a flower.*
 fluctuor 1. *to name.*
 flumen, inis, *n. river.*
 fluvius, i, *m. river.*
 foculus, i, *m. little hearth.*
 fodio, ōdi, ossum 3. *to dig, scratch.*
 foede, *adv. basely, in a base manner.*
 foeditas, ātis, *f. foulness, baseness.*
 foedus 3. *base, foul.*
 foedus, ēris, *n. league.*
 foenum, i, *m. hay.*
 folium, i, *n. leaf.*
 follis, is, *m. bellows.*
 fons, ntis, *m. fountain.*
 foris, is, *f. in plur. folding-doors.*
 foris, *adv. without.*
 forma, ae, *f. form.*
 formica, ae, *f. ant.*
 formido, inis, *f. fear.*
 fornix, icis, *m. vault, arch.*
 fortasse, *adv. perchance.*
 forte, *adv. by chance, perhaps.*
 fortis, e, *strong, bold.*
 fortiter, *adv. bravely*
 fortitudo, inis, *f. bravery.*
 fortuito, *adv. fortuitously.* [tune.
 fortuna, ae, *f. fate, fortune.*
 fortunatus 3. *fortunate.*
 forum, i, *n. market, market place.*
 fossa, ae, *f. ditch.*
 fovēo, ōvi, ōtum 2. *to warm, cherish, attend to.*
 fragilis, e, *frail.*
 frango, ēgi, actum 3. *to break. break in pieces; molis frangere, to grind.*
 frater, tris, *m. brother.*
 fraus, dis, *f. fraud.*
 fremitus, ūs, *m. noise.*
 frenum, i, *n. (plur. freni and frena) bit, rein.*
 frequento 1. *to frequent.*
 fretus 3. c. *abl. relying upon something.*
 frigidus 3. *cold.*
 frigo, xii, ictum 3. *to roast, dry.*
 frigus, ōris, *n. cold.*
 frondosus 3. *leafy.*
 frons, ntis, *f. forehead.*
 fructus, ūs, *m. advantage.*
 fruges, um, *f. fruit (of field and trees).*
 frugifer, ěra, ěrum, *fruitful.*
 frumentum, i, *n. grain.*
 fruor, fructus or fructus sum 3. c. *abl. to enjoy.*
 frustra, *adv. in vain.*
 frustum, i, *n. piece, bit.*
 frutex, icis, *m. shrub; pl. bushes, shrubbery.*
 fuga, ae, *f. flight.*
 fugio, gi, gitum 3. c. *acc. to flee.*
 fugitivus 3. *runaway.*
 fugo 1. *to put to flight.*
 fulcio, lsi, ltum 4. *to support.*
 fulgur, ūris, *n. a flash of lightning.*
 fulmen, inis, *n. lightning.*
 funambulus, i, *m. rope-dancer.*
 fundamentum, i, *n. foundation.*
 funditus, *adv. from the foundation, wholly.*
 fundo 1. *to found.*
 fundo, fudi, fūsum 3. (of an army), *to rout.*
 fungor, nctus sum 3. c. *abl. to discharge.*
 funis, is, *m. a rope.*
 Fureulæ Caudinae, *Caudine pass.*
 furfur, ūris, *n. bran.*
 furiōsus 3. *raving.*
 furo, ūi 3 *to rage.*
 furor, ōris, *m. rage.*
 furor, 1. *to steal.*
 fustis, is, *m. a cudgel.*
 futilis, e, *useless.*
 futurus 3. *future.*
 G.
 Gallia, ae, *f. Gaul.*
 Gallus, i, *m. a Gaul.*
 gallina, ae, *f. a hen, fowl.*
 garrō, 4. *to chatter.*
 garrulus 3. *loquacious.*
 gaudēo, gravis sum, gaudere c. *abl. or de c. abl. to rejoice*
 gaudium, i, *n. joy.*
 gelidus 3. *ice-cold, cold.*
 geminus 3. *double; g. frater, twin brother.*
 gemitus, ūs, *m. groan.*
 gener, ěri, *m. son-in-law.*
 genēro 1. *to produce.*
 gens, ntis, *f. a people.*
 genu, ūs, *n. knee.*
 genus, ěris, *n. race, kind.*
 geometricus 3. *geometrical.*
 Germania, ae, *f. German.*
 gero, gessi, gestum 3. *to carry, carry on.*
 gestio 4. *to make gestures, be transported.*
 gesto 1. *to bear.*
 gestus, ūs, *m. gesture; gestus agere, to make gestures.*
 gigas, antis, *m. giant.*
 gigno, genui, genitum 3 *to beget, bring forth, to bear, produce.*
 glacies, ěi, *f. ice.*
 gladiator, ōris, *m. fencer, gladiator.*
 gladius, i, *m. sword.*
 glis, iris, *m. a dormouse.*
 globosus 3. *globular.*
 gloria, ae, *f. glory.*
 glorior 1. *to glory.*
 gnarus 3. c. *gen. acquainted with.*
 gnaviter, *adv. zealously.*
 Gordius, i, *m. Gordius.*
 Gottingensis, e, *of Gottingen.*
 gradus, ūs, *m. step.*

- Graece, *adv. in Greek.*
 Graecia, *ae, f. Greece.*
 Graecus, *i, m. a Greek.*
 Graecus 3. *Greek.*
 grammaticus 3. *grammatical; grammaticus, i, m. grammarian.*
 grandis, *e, great; natu grandis, aged.*
 granum, *i, m. a grain.*
 grassor 1. *to walk; in aliquid, to rage against something.*
 grate, *adv. gratefully.*
 gratia, *ae, f. favor, thank; gratias agere, to thank, give thanks; gratiam referre, to return a favor; gratia (with a foregoing gen.), on account of.*
 gratiosus 3. *beloved.*
 gratulabundas 3. *congratulating.*
 gratulor 1. *to congratulate.*
 gratus 3. *agreeable; 2) grateful.*
 gravate, *adv. unwillingly.*
 gravis, *e, heavy, difficult; serious.*
 gravitas, *atis, f. seriousness, dignity.*
 graviter, *adv. heavily, violently, forcibly; graviter ferre, to be displeased.*
 grex, *gis, m. herd, flock.*
 gubernator, *oris, m. pilot.*
 gubernare 1. *to govern, rule.*
 gusto 1. *to taste, relish.*
- H.**
- Habeo 2. *to have, hold; consider; sese habere, to be; bene habet, it is well.*
 habito 1. *to dwell.*
 habitus, *us, m. habit, bearing, condition.*
 habitus 3. *fleshy.*
 haerere, *haesi, haesum 2. to adhere, to stick.*
 haesito 1. *to hesitate.*
 Halicarnassus, *i, f. a city of Caria.*
 hamus, *i, m. fishing-hook.*
 Hannibal, *alis, m. Hannibal.*
 harpago, *onis, m. hook.*
 harpago, *onis, m. grappling-iron.*
 haruspex, *icis, m. soothsayer.*
 hasta, *ae, f. spear.*
 haud, *adv. not.*
 haurio, *hausi, haustum 4. to draw.*
 hebdomas, *adis, f. a week.*
 hebes, *etis, blunt, dull, obtuse.*
 hebesco 3. *to become dull, torpid.*
 hebeto 1. *to stupify, weaken.*
 Hector, *oris, m. Hector.*
 Helvetius, *i, m. a Swiss.*
 hem, *interj. hem! ah!*
 herba, *ae, f. herb.*
 Hercules, *is, m. Hercules.*
 hereditas, *atis, f. inheritance.*
 heres, *edis, m. heir.*
 heri, *adv. yesterday.*
 herilis, *e, of or pertaining to a master.*
 Herodotus, *i, m. Herodotus.*
 herus, *i, m. master.*
 hesternus 3. *of yesterday.*
 heus, *adv. ho there!*
 hibernus 3. *belonging to winter.*
 hic, haec, hoc, *this; hic, adv. here; upon this occasion.*
 hiemo 1. *to pass the winter.*
 hiems, *emis, f. winter.*
 Hierosolyma, *orum, n. Jerusalem.*
 hilaris, *e, cheerful.*
 hilaritas, *atis, f. hilarity.*
 hilariter, *adv. cheerfully, joyfully.*
 hinc, *adv. from here, hence, since then.*
 hinnio 4. *to neigh.*
 Hippias, *ae, m. Hippias.*
 hirundo, *inis, f. swallow.*
 Hispania, *ae, f. Spain.*
 Hispanus, *i, m. a Spaniard.*
 Histiaeus, *i, m. Histiaeus.*
 historia, *ae, f. history.*
 historicus, *i, m. historian.*
 histrio, *onis, m. actor.*
 hodie, *adv. to-day.*
 Homerus, *i, m. Homer.*
 homo, *inis, m. man.*
 honestas, *atis, f. integrity.*
 honeste, *adv. decently, honorably, virtuously.*
 honestus 3. *honest, upright, honorable, virtuous.*
 honorifice, *adv. honorably.*
 honoro 1. *to honor.*
 honos, *oris, m. honor, post of honor, mark of honor.*
 hora, *ae, f. hour.*
 Horatius, *i, m. Horace.*
 hordium, *i, n. barley.*
 horno, *adv. of this year.*
 horrendus 3. *dreadful.*
 horreum, *i, n. granary.*
 horribilis, *e, horrible.*
 hortor 1. *to exhort.*
 hortulus, *i, m. a little garden; 2) a small farm.*
 hortus, *i, m. garden.*
 hospes, *itis, m. a guest.*
 hospitium, *i, n. hospitality.*
 hostilis, *e, hostile.*
 hostis, *is, m. enemy.*
 huc, *adv. hither.*
 hui, *interj. O! alas!*
 humanitas, *atis, f. humanity.*
 humanus 3. *human.*
 humerus, *i, m. shoulder.*
 humidus, *moist.*
 humilis, *e, low.*
 humo 1. *to bury.*
 humus, *i, f. ground, earth.*
 hydrops, *opis, m. dropsy.*
 Hypanis, *i, m. the Hypanis.*

I.

- Ibi**, *adv.* at that place, there.
- ibidem**, *adv.* in the same place.
- ico, ici, ictum** 3. to strike; (of a league), to conclude.
- idcirco**, *adv.* on that account.
- idem, eādem, idem**, *pron.* the very same, same.
- identidem**, *adv.* repeatedly.
- idonēus** 3. fit, fitted.
- igitur**, *conj.* therefore, hence.
- ignārus** 3. c. gen. unacquainted with.
- ignāvīa**, *ae, f.* indolence, cowardice.
- ignāvus** 3. indolent, inactive, sluggish, cowardly.
- ignēus** 3. fiery.
- ignis**, *is, m.* fire.
- ignobilis**, *e,* unknown.
- ignominīa**, *ae, f.* disgrace.
- ignōro** 1. not to know; non ignorare, to know perfectly well.
- ignosco, nōvi, nōtum** 3. to pardon.
- ille, a, ud**, *that.*
- illicēbra**, *ae, f.* enticement.
- illuc**, *adv.* thither.
- illucesco, luxi** 3. to become light, dawn.
- illustris**, *e,* distinguished.
- imāgo, inis, f. image.**
- imbecillus** 3. weak.
- imber, bris, m. shower, rain.**
- imberbis**, *e,* beardless.
- imbūo, ūi, ūtum** 3. to immerse; *c. abl.* to fill with, imbue.
- imitatiō, ōnis, f. imitation.**
- imitātor, ōris, m. imitator.**
- imitor** 1. *c. acc.* to imitate.
- immānis**, *e,* vast, cruel.
- immanītas, ātis, f. hugeness.**
- immatūrus** 3. unripe, immature, untimely.
- immēmor, ōris, c. gen. unmindful.**
- immerīto**, *adv.* undeservedly.
- immīnēo**, 2. to threaten.
- immitto, isi, issum** 3. to send in, place in.
- immo**, *adv.* yes rather, nay rather, on the contrary.
- immoderātus** 3. intemperate.
- immodestus** 3. immodest.
- immodicus** 3. excessive.
- immortalis, e, immortal.**
- immortalitas, ātis, f.** immortality.
- immortaliter**, *adv.* infinitely.
- impar, āris, unlike, unequal.**
- impatiens, ntis, impatient; impatientia, ac, f.** impatience.
- impedimentum, i, n.** hindrance.
- impēdiō** 4. to hinder.
- impello, pūli, pulsum** 3. to impel.
- impēndēo** 2. to impend.
- impēdo, pēdi, pēnsum** 3. to bestow.
- imperātor, ōris, m.** general, emperor.
- imperatorius** 3. belonging to a general.
- imperītus** 3. inexperienced.
- imperīum, i, n.** command, reign, power.
- impēro**, 1. *c. dat.* to reign, reign over, command.
- impētro** 1. to obtain.
- impētus, ūs, m.** attack; 2) vast extent.
- impīus** 3. impious.
- implēo, ēvi, ētum** 2. to fill.
- implīco, āvi, ātum** 1. to involve.
- implōro** 1. to implore.
- impōno, posui, positum** 3. to impose upon, lay upon; with *dat.* of person, to deceive.
- importo** 1. to import.
- importūnus** 3. troublesome.
- impōtens, ntis, c. gen.** not master of.
- imprēcōr** 1. to imprecate.
- imprīmīs, adv.** especially.
- imprīmo, pressi, pressum** 3. to press into, impress.
- improbītas, ātis, f.** wickedness.
- imprōbo** 1. to disapprove.
- imprōbus** 3. wicked.
- improvīso, adv.** unexpectedly.
- imprūdēns, ntis, not foreseeing, not knowing; c. gen.** unacquainted with.
- impūbes, ēris, youthful, immature.**
- impūdēns, ntis, impudent, shameless.**
- impūrus** 3. impure.
- inānis, e, empty, vain.**
- incantamentum, i, n.** magic influence.
- incēdo, cessi, cessum** 3. to walk upon.
- incendium, i, n.** conflagration.
- incendo, di, sum** 3. to enkindle, inflame.
- incertus** 3. uncertain.
- incesso, ivi, itum** 3. to attack.
- inchōo** 1. to begin.
- incīdo, īdi** 3. to fall upon.
- incīpiō, cēpi, ceptum** 3. to begin.
- incīto** 1. to spur on, incite.
- incognītus** 3. unknown.
- incōla, ae, m.** inhabitant.
- incolūmis, e, unhurt.**
- incondītus** 3. unarranged. [ted.]
- in corruptus** 3. uncorrupted.
- incredibīlis, e, incredible.**

- incrépo, ūi, ĭtum 1. c. acc. to berate, reproach.
 incumbo, cubŭi, cubĭtum 3. in aliquid, to lay one's self upon, attend to something.
 indāgo 1. to trace out.
 inde, adv. thence.
 indecōrus 3. unbecoming.
 Indĭa, ae, f. India.
 indĭco 1. to indicate.
 indĭco, xi, ctum 3. to announce, declare.
 indĭgēo, ūi 2. c. gen. et abl. to be in want.
 indignatio, ōnis f. indignation. [nant.
 indignor 1. to be indignant.
 indignus 3. c. abl. unworthy.
 indōles, is, f. natural disposition.
 indūco, xi, ctum 3. to bring in, induce.
 indulgentĭa, ae, f. indulgence.
 indulgēo, lsi, ltum 2. c. dat. to give one's self to, be indulgent.
 indŭo, ūi, ūtum 3. to put on, clothe.
 Indus, i, m. an Indian; 2) the Indus (a river).
 industriā, ae, f. industry.
 industriŭs 3. active, industrious.
 indutiāe, arum f. a tunic.
 inēo, ĭvi, ĭtum, ĭre, to go in, enter.
 inepte, adv. foolishly.
 inermis, e, unarmed, defenceless.
 iners, rtis, unskilled, inactive.
 inertĭa, ae, f. inactivity.
 infamĭa, ae, f. infamy, shame.
 infāmĭs, e, infamous, shameful.
 infans, ntis, c. a child, minor.
 infēlix, ĭcis, unfortunate, unhappy; subst. unhappy man.
 infēro, intŭli, illātum, inferre, to bring; bellum inferre alicui, to make war upon one.
 infērus 3. being below, low, inferior; infēri, the dead in the lower world.
 infesto 1. to infest, disturb; infestus 3. hostile.
 infidelĭs, e, unfaithful.
 infĭdus 3. unfaithful.
 infĭmus 3. the lowest, meanest.
 infinĭtus 3. infinite.
 infirmĭtas, ātis, f. infirmity.
 infirmus 3. weak.
 inflĭgo, xi, ctum 3. c. dat. to strike upon, inflict.
 inflo 1. to inflate.
 informo 1. to instruct.
 infringo, frēgi, fractum 3. to break, infringe.
 infundo, fŭdi, fŭsum 3. to pour in, infuse.
 ingenĭum, i, n. genius, spirit.
 ingens, ntis, immense, very great.
 ingenŭe, adv. nobly, respectably.
 ingenŭus, 3. free-born, noble.
 ingigno, genŭi, genĭtum 3. to implant.
 ingrātus 3. ungrateful; 2. disagreeable.
 ingrēdiōr, gressus sum 3. c. acc. to go into, enter upon.
 inhaerēo, haesi, haesum 2. in c. abl. to inhere.
 inhumānus 3. inhuman.
 inhumātus 3. unburied.
 inimicitĭa, ae, f. hostility.
 inimĭcus 3. hostile; inimĭcus, i, m. enemy.
 inĭque, adv. unjustly.
 inĭquus 3. unjust.
 inĭtĭum, i, n. beginning.
 injĭcĭo, jĕci, jectum 3. to throw into; laquēos, to lay snares.
 injucundus 3. unpleasant, disagreeable.
 injuriā, ae, f. injustice, injury.
 injuste, adv. unjustly.
 innascor, nātus sum 3. to be implanted.
 innōcens, ntis, innocent.
 innocentĭa, ae, f. innocence.
 innoxĭus 3. harmless.
 innumerabilis, e, innumerable.
 inopĭa, ae, f. helplessness, need, want, indigence.
 inops, ōpis, helpless, poor, destitute, needy.
 inquam, I say.
 insānus 3. insane.
 insatiabilis, e, insatiable.
 insciŭs 3. c. gen. not knowing, not acquainted with.
 inscribo, psi, ptum 3. c. dat. to write in, or upon something, inscribe.
 insculpo, psi, ptum 3. to engrave.
 insectum, i, n. insect.
 insēquor, secŭtus sum, to pursue.
 insēro, sēvi, sĭtum 3. c. dat. to sow in, ingraft.
 insidiāe, arum, f. ambush, snares.
 insidiōr 1. to lie in wait.
 insignis, e, distinguished; subst. insigne, is, n. badge.
 insipiēns, ntis, unwise.
 insĭtus 3. implanted, in-born.
 insōlens, ntis, insolent.
 insolenter, adv. insolently.
 inspērans, tis, not expecting, contrary to expectation.
 inspicĭo, exi, ectum 3. to look into, inspect.
 instabilis, e, unstable.
 institŭo, ūi, ūtum 3. to instruct.
 institutiō, ōnis, f. instruction; inst. scho-

- lastica, *scholastic instruction.*
 insto, stiti 1. *to threaten, press upon, compel (some one).*
 instruo, xi, ctum 3. *to furnish; aciem instruere, to arrange the line of battle; bellum instr., to prepare for war.* [brians.
 Insuēbres, ium, m. *Insuē-
 insula, ae, f. island.*
 insurro 1. *to whisper into.*
 intactus 3. *untouched.*
 intēger, gra, grum, sound.
 intelligo, exi, ectum 2. *to understand.*
 intēpestive, adv. *untimely.*
 intentus 3. *stretched; c. dat. or in c. acc. attentive, fixed upon something.*
 interdum, adv. *sometimes.*
 interclūdo, ūsi, ūsum 3. *to hem in, cut off.*
 interēa, adv. *in the mean time.*
 interēo, ii, itum, ire, *to decay, come to naught.*
 interfector, ōris, m. *murderer.*
 interficiō, ēci, ectum 3. *to kill.* [time.
 intērim, adv. *in the mean-*
 interitus, ūs, m. *destruction.*
 intermiscēo, scūi, stum, or xtum 2. *to inter-*
 mingle.
 interjicio, jēci, jectum 3. *to place between, intro-*
 duce; anno interjec-
 to, *after the lapse of a year.*
 intermitto, misi, missum 3. *to intermit.*
 internecto, ōnis, f. *utter destruction.*
 internosco, nōvi, nōtum 3. *to distinguish.*
 interpellator, ōris, m. *disturber.*
 interprētor 1. *to inter-*
 pret, explain.
 interpungo, nxi, nctum, *to distinguish.*
 interrīmo, rēmi, rem-
 tum 3. *to destroy.*
 interrōgo 1. *to ask.*
 interrumpo, rūpi, rup-
 tum 3. *to break down.*
 intersum, fūi, esse c. *dat. to be in, to be pre-*
 sented at; interest,
there is a difference;
 c. gen. *it concerns one*
 (§ 89, 11).
 intervēnio, vēni, ven-
 tum 4. *to intervene, come between.*
 intīmus 3. *inmost.* [ble.
 intolerabilis, e, *intolera-*
 intro 1. c. acc. *to go in-*
 to, to enter.
 introdūco, uxi, ctum 3. *to introduce.*
 introgrēdiōr, gressus
 sum, *to enter.*
 introitus, ūs, m. *entrance.*
 intuēor, tuitus sum 2. *to look upon, consider.*
 intus, adv. *within, in the house.*
 inultus 3. *unrevenged.*
 inundo 1. *to overflow.*
 inutilis, e, *useless.*
 invādo, āsi, āsum 3. *to invade, fall upon.*
 invēnio, vēni, ventum
 4. *to find, find out.*
 investigo 1. *to trace out, investigate.*
 invictus 3. *invincible.*
 invīdēo, vīdi, vīsum 2. *c. dat. to envy.* [tred.
 invidiā, ae, f. *envy, ha-*
 invīdus 3. *envious.*
 inviolātus 3. *uninjured.*
 invīso, īsi, tsum 3. *to visit.*
 invīto 1. *to invite.*
 invītus 3. *unwilling.*
 involvo, vi, ūtum 3. *to involve; involūtus 3. difficult to understand.*
 Iōnēs, um, m. *Ionians.*
 Iphicrātes, is, m. *Iphi-*
 crates.
 ipse, a, um, pron. *self.*
 ira, ae, f. *anger.*
 iracundiā, ae, f. *anger, irascibility.*
 irascor, irātus sum 3. c. *dat. to be enraged.*
 irātus 3. *enraged, angry.*
 irrīdēo, si, sum 2. *to mock, deride.*
 irrumpo, rūpi, ruptum
 3. *to burst in.*
 is, ea, id, pron. *he, she, it; that one; the same.*
 Isocrātes, is, m. *Isocrates.*
 iste, a, ud, pron. *that.*
 ita, adv. *so, thus.*
 Italiā, ae, f. *Italy.*
 itāque, conj. *therefore.*
 item, adv. *likewise.*
 iter, itinēris, n. *course, way, journey, march.*
 itērum, adv. *again, the second time.*

J.

 Jacēo 2. *to lie low.*
 jacto 1. *to throw hither and thither, extol.*
 jactūra, ae, f. *loss; jac-*
 turam facere, *to suf-*
 fer loss.
 jactus, ūs, m. *a throw.*
 jaculum, i, n. *javelin, dart.*
 jam, adv. *now, already.*
 jamjam, even now, *al-*
 ready.
 jam pridem, *long since.*
 janua, ae, f. *gate.*
 jecur, jecinōris, n. *the liver.*
 jenjunium, i, n. *fast;*
 jen junia colere, *to keep a fast.*
 jecor, 1. *to jest.*
 jocōsus 3. *sportive.*
 jocus, i, m. *a jest.*
 juba, ae, f. *m. mane.*
 jubēo, jussi, jussum 2. *to bid, order.*
 jucunde, adv. *pleasantly, agreeably.*
 jucunditas, ātis, f. *pleas-*
 antness, agreeableness.
 jucundus 3. *pleasant, agreeable.*

- judex, ĩcis, *m. judge.*
 iudicium, *i, n. judgment.*
 iudicio 1. *to judge; c. dupl. acc. to consider one something.*
 jugerum, *i, n. acre of land.*
 juglans, *ndis, f. walnut.*
 jugum, *i, n. yoke, top, ridge (of a mountain).*
 Julius (i) Caesar (aris) *m. Julius Caesar.*
 jumentum, *i, n. beast of burden.*
 jungo, *nxi, nctum 3. to join, unite.*
 Junius, *i, m. June.*
 Juno, *onis, f. Juno.*
 Juppiter, Jovis, *m. Jupiter.*
 juro 1. *to swear.*
 jus, juris, *n. right.*
 jus, juris, *n. broth, soup.*
 jussum, *i, n. command.*
 jussus, *us, m. command.*
 justitia, *ae, f. justice.*
 justus 3. *just.*
 Juvenalis, *is, m. Juvenal.*
 juvenilis, *e, youthful.*
 juvenis, *is, m. a youth, young man.*
 juvenus, *utis, f. youth.*
 juvo, juvi, jutum 1. *c. acc. to assist.*
- L.**
- Labefacto 1. *to cause to totter, shake.*
 labor, lapsus sum 3. *to fall.*
 labor, oris, *m. labor, toil.*
 laboro 1. *to labor; c. abl. to suffer from.*
 labrum, *i, n. lip.*
 lac, ctis, *n. milk.*
 Lacaena, *ae, f. Lacedaemonian woman.*
 Lacedaemon, onis, *f. Lacedaemon, Sparta.*
 Lacedaemonius, *i, m. a Lacedaemonian.*
 lacero 1. *to lacerate, tear in pieces.*
 lacesso, ivi, itum 3. *to provoke.*
 lacrima, *ae, f. tear.*
 lacus, us, *m. lake, pond.*
 laedo, si, sum 3. *to hurt.*
 Laelius, *m. Laelius.*
 laetitia, *ae, f. joy.*
 laetor 1. *c. abl. to rejoice.*
 laetus 3. *joyful, delighted.*
 Lampsacus, *i, f. city in Mysia.*
 laniatus, us, *m. a tearing.*
 lapideus 3. *of stone.*
 lapis, idis, *m. a stone.*
 laqueus, *i, m. noose, snare.*
 largior, itus sum 4. *to bestow largely.*
 late, *adv. widely.*
 latetbrae, arum, *f. lurking place.*
 latebrosus 3. *full of lurking places.*
 latro, ui 2. *to be concealed.*
 latibulum, *i, n. den, retreat.*
 Latinus 3. *Latin.*
 latito 1. *to lie hid, lurk.*
 Latmus, *i, m. Latmus (mountain in Caria.)*
 latro, onis, *m. robber.*
 latus, eris, *n. side.*
 latus 3. *broad.*
 laudabilis, *e, praise-worthy.*
 laudo 1. *to praise.*
 laurus, *i, or us, f. the laurel.*
 laus, dis, *f. praise.*
 lautus 3. *dainty.*
 lavo, lavi, lavatum 1. *to wash.*
 lectus, *i, m. bed.*
 legatus, *i, m. ambassador; 2) lieutenant general.*
 lector, oris, *m. reader.*
 legio, onis, *f. legion.*
 lego, gi, ctum 3. *to read.*
 lenio 4. *to soothe.*
 leniter, *adv. mildly.*
 lentus 3. *slow.*
 leo, onis, *m. lion.*
 lepidus 3. *elegant, neat.*
 lepor, oris, *m. agreeableness, jest.*
 lepus, oris, *m. a hare.*
 Lesbus, *i, f. Lesbos.*
 levir, iri, *m. brother-in-law.*
 levis, *e, light.*
 levitas, atis, *f. levity.*
 levo 1. *to lighten, relieve; c. abl. to free from.*
 lex, egis, *f. law, condition.*
 libens, ntis, *willing.*
 libenter, *adv. willingly, with delight.*
 liber, bri, *m. book.*
 liber, era, erum, *free.*
 liberalis, *e, free.*
 liberalitas, atis, *f. liberality.*
 liberaliter, *adv. liberally.*
 libere, *adv. freely.*
 liberi, orum, *m. children (in relation to their parents).*
 libero 1. *to liberate.*
 libertas, atis, *f. liberty.*
 libet, ut 2. *it pleases.*
 libido, inis, *f. desire, passion, lust.*
 libra, *ae, f. a pound.*
 licet, ut 2. *it is allowed.*
 lien, enis, *m. (old form of spleen), the spleen.*
 ligneus 3. *wooden, of wood.*
 lignum, *i, n. wood.*
 ligo, onis, *m. hoe, mattock.*
 limpidus 3. *limpid, clear.*
 lingua, *ae, f. tongue, language.*
 linter, tris, *f. boat, skiff.*
 Lipsia, *ae, f. Leipsic.*
 liquefacio, feci, factum 3. *to melt. [strife.]*
 lis, litis, *f. civil process.*
 littera, *ae, f. letter (of alphabet); litterae, arum, f. letter, literature.*
 littus, oris, *n. sea-shore.*
 loco 1. *to place, set.*
 locuples, etis, *wealthy, rich.*
 locuplento 1. *to enrich.*
 locus, *i, m. place, situation, room; pl. loca.*
 locusta, *ae, f. locust.*
 longe, *adv. far, widely.*

- longinquitās, ātis, *f.* length, extent.
 longinquus 3. remote, distant; e longinquo, from afar.
 longus 3. long.
 loquacitas, ātis, *f.* loquacity.
 loquax, ācis, loquacious.
 loquor, locūtus 3. to speak.
 lorica, ae, coat of mail.
 Luceria, ae, *f.* Luceria.
 Lucrētius, i, m. Lucretius.
 lucrum, i, n. gain, advantage.
 luctus, ūs, m. grief.
 ludibriūm i, n. sport.
 ludimaster, tri, m. school-master.
 ludo, si, sum 3. to play.
 Ludovicus, i, m. Lewis.
 ludus, i, m. play, game.
 lugēo, xi 2. to grieve, lament.
 lumbricus, i, m. earth-worm.
 lumen, īnis, n. light.
 luna, ae, *f.* moon.
 lupus, i, m. wolf.
 lusciniā, ae, *f.* nightingale.
 lustratio, ōnis, *f.* review.
 lusus, ūs, m. sport.
 lutulentus 3. muddy.
 lux, lucis, *f.* light.
 luxuria, ae, *f.* luxury.
 Lycurgus, i, m. Lycurgus.
 Lysis, is, m. Lysis.
- M.
- Macēdo, ōnis, m. a Macedonian.
 Macedoniā, ae, *f.* Macedonia.
 macer, cra, crum, lean.
 macēro 1. to soak.
 machinatio, ōnis, *f.* machine; device, artifice.
 macies, ēi, *f.* leanness.
 magis, adv. more.
 magister, tri, m. teacher.
 magistrātus, ūs, m. ma-
- gistracy, authority; magistrate.
 magnificē, adv. magnificently.
 magnificus 3. magnificent.
 magnitudo, īnis, *f.* magnitude.
 magnopere, adv. greatly.
 magnus 3. great; comp. major, us, greater, older.
 majores, um, m. ancestors.
 male, adv. badly.
 maledico 3. c. dat. to reproach.
 maledicus 3. slanderous.
 maleficus 3. doing evil, evil, wicked; subst. evil-doer.
 malevolus 3. ill-disposed, malicious.
 malitia, ae, *f.* malice, wickedness.
 malo, malui, malle, to wish rather, prefer.
 malum, i, n. apple.
 malum, i, n. evil, misfortune
 malus, i, *f.* apple-tree.
 malus 3. evil, bad.
 mando 1. to commit to.
 mando, di, sum 3. to chew. [ing.
 mane, adv. in the morning.
 maneo, nsi, nsum 2. to remain; c. acc. to await.
 mansuetus 3. tame.
 mantica, ae, *f.* portmantau.
 Mantinea, ae, *f.* Mantinea.
 manumitto, isi, issum 3. to make free.
 manus, ūs, *f.* hand; 2) a company.
 Marathonius 3. of Marathon.
 Marcellus, i, m. Marcellus.
 Mardonius, i, m. Mardonius.
 mare, is, n. sea.
 margo, īnis, n. margin.
- Marianus 3. Marian.
 maritimus 3. belonging to the sea, maritime; praedo mar. pirate.
 maritus, i, husband.
 Marius, i, m. Marius.
 marmor, ōris, n. marble.
 marmorosus 3. of marble, marble.
 Mars, rtis, m. Mars.
 Martius, i, m. Mars.
 mater, tris, *f.* mother.
 maternus 3. a mother's.
 mathematicus, i, m. mathematician.
 matrōna, ae, *f.* matron.
 matūre, adv. speedily, in season.
 matūro 1. to hasten.
 matūrus 3. ripe.
 Mauritius, i, Maurice.
 medeor 2. c. dat. to cure.
 medicina, ae, *f.* medicine, remedy.
 medicus, i, m. physician.
 mediocris, e, middling.
 Mediolanum, i, n. Milan.
 meditatio, ōnis, *f.* meditation.
 meditor 1. to reflect upon, study into.
 Medus, i, m. a Medea.
 Mēgara, ae, *f.* Megara.
 mehercule, adv. by Hercules, indeed.
 mel, mellis, n. honey.
 membrāna, ae, *f.* membrane.
 membrum, i, n. limb.
 meminī, isse, c. gen. or acc. to remember.
 mēmor, ōris, c. gen. mindful of.
 memoria, ae, *f.* memory, remembrance, time; memoriā tenēre, to hold in remembrance.
 memoriter, adv. from memory, by heart.
 memoro 1. to mention, relate.
 Menander, dri, m. Menander.
 mendax, ācis, lying; subst. liar.
 mens, tis, *f.* sense, mind,

- understanding, spirit, state of mind.*
 mensa, ae, *f. table.*
 mensis, is, *m. month.*
 mentio, ōnis, *f. mention.*
 mentior 4. *to lie.*
 mercator, ōris, *m. trader.*
 mercatus, ūs, *m. a fair.*
 merces, ēdis, *f. recompense.*
 merēor, meritus sum 2. *to deserve; de aliqua re mereri, to deserve of something.*
 merges, itis, *f. sheaf of grain.*
 mergo, rsi, rsum 3. *to sink.*
 meridianus sol, *mid-day sun.*
 meridies, ēi, *m. mid-day.*
 meritum, i, *n. desert.*
 merx, rcis, *f. wares.*
 messis, is, *f. crop.*
 Metellus, i, *m. Metellus.*
 metior, mensus sum 4. *to measure.*
 metuo, ūi 3. *to fear.*
 metus, ūs, *m. apprehension, fear.*
 mēus 3. *mine.*
 mico, ūi 1. *to glitter.*
 migratio, ōnis, *f. migration.*
 migro 1. *to migrate; c. acc. to transgress.*
 miles, itis, *m. warrior, soldier.*
 militaris, e, *military; res mil. warfare.*
 militia, ae, *f. military service.*
 milito 1. *to do military service.*
 miliarium, i, *n. mile-stone (measure of a thousand paces).*
 Miltiades, is, *m. Miltiades.*
 mina, ae, *f. a mina (a piece of money worth about 17 dollars).*
 minax, ācis, *threatening.*
 Minerva, ae, *f. Minerva.*
 minime, *adv. least, not at all.*
 iniutor 1. *to threaten.*
 minor 1. *to threaten.*
 minuō, ūi, ūtum, *to lessen, diminish.*
 minus, *adv. less.*
 mirifice, *adv. wonderfully.*
 mirificus 3. *wonderful.*
 miror 1. *to wonder; 2) to admire.*
 mirus 3. *wonderful, extraordinary.*
 miscēo, scūi, stum or xtum 2. *to mix, to disturb.*
 miser, ěra, ěrum, *wretched.*
 miserandus 3. *pitiable.*
 misere, *adv. wretchedly.*
 miserēor, misertus or miseritus sum 2. *c. gen. to pity.*
 miseret me alicujus rei, *it excites my pity for something.*
 miseria, ae, *f. misery, want.*
 misericordia, ae, *f. pity.*
 mitesco 3. *to render soft, tame.*
 mitigo 1. *to soften, mitigate.*
 mitis, e, *soft, mild.*
 mitto, misi, missum 3. *to send.*
 mobilis, e, *movable.*
 moderator, ōris, *m. governor.*
 moderatio, ōnis, *moderation.*
 moderatus 3. *temperate.*
 modēror 1. *c. acc. to govern, rule.*
 modestia, ae, *f. modesty.*
 modestus 3. *modest.*
 modice, *adv. temperately.*
 modius, i, *m. bushel.*
 modo, *adv. only, now; conj. c. Subj if only.*
 modo — modo, *now — now.*
 modus, i, *m. manner, way.*
 moenia, ūm, *n. walls (as defence).*
 moeror, ōris, *m, grief, sorrow.*
 Moesia, ae, *f. Moesia.*
 mola, ae, *f. a mill.*
 moles, is, *f. mass.*
 moleste, *adv. grievously;*
 mol. fero, *I take it ill.*
 molestia, ae, *f. annoyance.*
 molestus 3. *troublesome.*
 molior, itus sum 4. *to prepare, get ready.*
 mollio 4. *to soften, make soft, alleviate.*
 mollis, e, *soft.*
 mollitia, ae, *f. softness.*
 Molo, ōnis, *m. Molon.*
 momentum, i, *n. circumstance.*
 monēo 2. *to admonish.*
 monitum, i, *n. admonition, instruction.*
 mons, ntis, *m. mountain.*
 monumentum, i, *n. monument.*
 mora, ae, *f. delay.*
 morbus, i, *m. disease.*
 mordax, ācis, *biting.*
 mordēo, momordi, mortum 2. *to bite, to backbite.*
 mōrior, mortuus sum, mori, *to die.*
 moror 1. *to delay, remain; c. acc. to make nothing of.*
 morosus 3. *morose.*
 mors, tis, *f. death.*
 morsus, ūs, *m. bite.*
 mortalis, e, *mortal.*
 mos, oris, *m. custom, manner; plur. character.*
 motus, ūs, *m. movement;*
 motus terrae, *earthquake.*
 movēo, vi, tum 2. *to move.*
 mox, *adv. thereupon, afterwards.*
 muliēbris, e, *effeminate.*
 mulier, ěris, *f. woman, wife.*
 Mullerus, i, *m. Müller.*
 multiplex, icis, *manifold.*

- multitūdo, īnis, *f.* multi-
 tude.
 multo 1. *to fine, punish.*
 multus 3. *much, many.*
 mundus, i, *m.* world.
 municeps, īpis, *m.* citi-
 zen of a free city; 2)
 fellow-citizen.
 magnificentia, ae, *f.* mu-
 nificence.
 munificus 3. *munificent.*
 munio 4. *to fortify.*
 munus, ēris, *n.* service;
 2) present.
 murex, īcis, *m.* a purple
 fish, purple.
 murmur, ūris, *n.* mur-
 mur.
 murmuro 1. *to mutter.*
 murus, i, *m.* wall (as a
 structure).
 mus, muris, *m.* mouse.
 musca, ae, *f.* a fly.
 musicus, i, *m.* musi-
 cian.
 muto 1. *to change, ex-
 change.*
 mutus 3. *dumb.*
 mutuus 3. *reciprocal;*
 mutuum rogare, *to*
borrow.
 Mycāle, es, *f.* promonto-
 ry and city of Ionia.
- N.
- Nabis, īdis, *m.* Nabis.
 Nam, namque, *conj.* for.
 nanciscor, nactus sum
 3. *to obtain.*
 narratio, ōnis, *f.* narra-
 tion, narrative.
 narro 1. *to relate.*
 nascor, natus sum 3. *to*
be born, to spring.
 natalis, is, *m.* birth-day.
 natio, ōnis, *f.* nation,
 tribe.
 nato 1. *to swim.*
 natūra, ae, *f.* nature.
 naturālis, e, *natural.*
 natus, ūs, *m.* birth; ma-
 jor natus, *older;* mi-
 nor natus, *younger.*
 natus 3. *born;* post
 Christum natum, *af-
 ter the birth of Christ;*
- old (when the year
 has been specified,
 which in this case
 stands in the acc.)
 naufragium, i, *n.* ship-
 wreck; naufr. facere,
to suffer shipwreck.
 nauta, ae, *m.* sailor.
 navālis, e, *naval, per-
 taining to a ship;* pug-
 na navalis, *sea-fight;*
 bellum navāle, *naval-
 war.*
 navigatio, ōnis, *f.* navi-
 gation.
 navigo 1. *to navigate.*
 navis, is, *f.* ship; navis
 longa, *war-ship.*
 ne, *adv.* not (with Im-
 perat. and Subj. of
 exhorting).
 ne, *conj.* that not; that
 (§ 107, 1 and 3).
 ne, *interrogative particle,*
 (§ 116. 3. b. a.).
 ne — quidem, *not even,
 not also,* (has the word
 on which the empha-
 sis rests between its
 parts).
 nebūla, ae, *f.* mist.
 nec (neque), *and not,
 also not;* nec (neque)
 — nec (neque), *nei-
 ther — nor.*
 necdum, *and not yet.*
 necessarius 3. *necessa-
 ry; related;* in
 necessarius, *friend.*
 necesse est, *it is necessa-
 ry* (§ 106. R. 3).
 necessitas, ātis, *f.* neces-
 sity.
 neco 1. *to kill.*
 nectar, āris, *n.* nectar.
 necto, xūi, xum 3. *to*
join together, weave.
 nefarius 3. *infamous.*
 nefas, (indecl.) *n.* wrong.
 negligo, lexi, lectum 3.
to neglect.
 nego 1. *to deny, say no.*
 negotior 1. *to pursue*
business, trade.
 negotium, i. *n.* business.
 nemo (īnis) *c.* nobody, no
- one, (gen. and abl. not
 used).
 nepos, ōtis, *m.* grandson,
 nephew.
 neptis, is, *f.* granddaugh-
 ter.
 Neptūnus, i, *m.* Neptune.
 nequēo, īvi, itum, ire,
not to be able.
 nequicquam, *adv.* in
 vain, to no effect.
 nervus, i, *m.* nerve, sin-
 ew.
 nescio 4. *not to know.*
 nescius 3. *not knowing;*
 non sum nescius, *I*
know full well.
 neu, *conj.* and not, nei-
 ther.
 neuter, tra, trum, *neither*
of two.
 ni (nisi), *conj.* if not, un-
 less.
 nidifico 1. *to build a nest.*
 nidus, i, *m.* nest.
 niger, gra, grum, *black.*
 nihil (indecl.) *n.* nothing.
 nihilum, i, *n.* nothing.
 nimium, *adv.* too much.
 nimis, *adv.* too much,
too very.
 ningo, xi, 3. *to snow.*
 nisi, *conj.* if not; except.
 nitidus 3. *shining, splen-
 did.*
 nitōr, nisus or nixus
 sum 3. *c.* abl. *to rely*
upon something; ad
 aliquid, *to strive after*
something; in aliquid
*to strive against some-
 thing.*
 nix, nivis, *f.* snow.
 nobilis, e, *known, re-
 nowned.*
 nobilito 1. *to make known,*
renowned.
 nocēo 2. *to injure.*
 noctu, *adv.* by night.
 nocturnus 3. *nocturnal.*
 nodus, i, *m.* knot.
 nōlo, nōlūi, nolle, *to be*
unwilling.
 nomen, īnis, *n.* name.
 nomino 1. *to name.*

- non, *adv.* not (stands before its verb); non solum (tantum, modo) — sed etiam, *not only* — but also.
- nonndum, *adv.* not yet.
- nonne? *not? not indeed? whether not.*
- nonnunquam, *adv.* sometimes.
- nosco, novi, notum 3. *to become acquainted with.*
- noster, tra, trum, *our.*
- nostras, ātis, *m. of our country, fellow-countryman.*
- nota, ae, *f. mark, sign.*
- notio, ōnis, *f. notion.*
- notitiā, ae, *f. knowledge.*
- noto 1. *to mark, brand.*
- notus 3. *known.*
- November, bris, *m. November.*
- novi, isse, *to know.*
- novus 3. *new.*
- nox, noctis, *f. night.*
- nubes, is, *f. cloud.*
- nubo, psi, ptum 3. c. *dat. to marry (of the woman).*
- nullus 3. *no one, no;* nullus non, *every one.*
- num, *interrogative word* (§ 116, 3, b, c).
- Numa, ae, *m. Numa.*
- Numantiā, ae, *f. Numantia.*
- numēro 1. *to number, reckon.*
- numērus, i, *m. number, multitude, rhythm.*
- Numīda, ae, *m. a Numidian.*
- Numidiā, ae, *f. Numidia.*
- nummus, i, *m. money, a sesterce.*
- numquis, numqua, numquid, *is it possible that any one? any thing?*
- nunc, *adv. now.*
- nundīnae, ārum, *f. market.*
- nunquam, *adv. never.*
- nuntio 1. *to announce.*
- nuntiūs, i, *m. message, news; messenger.*
- nuper, *adv. lately.*
- nurus, ūs, *f. daughter-in-law.*
- nusquam, *adv. no-where.*
- nutriō 4. *to nourish.*
- nutrix, icis, *f. nurse.*
- nutus, ūs, *m. nod, command.*
- nux, nucis, *f. a nut.*
- nympha, ae, *f. a nymph.*
- O.
- Obdormisco, mīvi, mītum 3. *to fall asleep.*
- obdūco, xi, ctum 3. *to overspread, cover.*
- obēdiō 4. *to obey.*
- obēo, ii, itum, ire, *to die.*
- obēsus 3. *fat.*
- obitus, ūs, *m. departure, death.*
- oblecto 1. *to delight.*
- oblīno, ēvi, itum 3. *to besmear, contaminate.*
- obliviō, ōnis, *f. oblivion.*
- obliviscor, oblītus sum 3. c. *gen. or acc. to forget.*
- oblōquor, qui, cūtus sum 3. *to oppose, gain-say.*
- obrēpo, repsi, reptum 3. c. *dat. to creep upon, steal upon, surprise some one.*
- obrūo, ūi, ūtum 3. *to cover over, overwhelm.*
- obsēuro 1. *to obscure.*
- obsēurus 3. *obscure.*
- obsequium, i, *n. submission, obedience.*
- obsēquor, secūtus sum 3. c. *dat. to obey, comply with.*
- obseruo 1. *to observe.*
- obses, idis, *m. hostage.*
- obsessiō, ōnis, *f. blockade, siege.*
- obsīdēo, sēdi, sessum 2. *to besiege.*
- obsidiō, ōnis, *f. siege.*
- obsolesco, lēvi 3. *to pass away, become antiquated.*
- obsto, stīti, stātum 1. c. *dat. to stand against, in the way of, to be a hindrance, hinder.*
- obsum, fūi, esse c. *dat. to be against, injure.*
- obtempēro 1. *to obey.*
- obtēro, trīvi, trītum 3. *to bruise, grind.*
- obtestor 1. *to conjure, implore.*
- obtīnēo 2. *to maintain.*
- obtingo, īgi 3. *to fall to one's lot.*
- obtrectatiō, ōnis, *f. detraction.*
- obtrecto 1. c. *dat. to disparage.*
- obtrunco 1. *to kill.*
- obtūsus 3. *blunt, dull.*
- obviam, *adv. against, to meet.*
- occasio, ōnis, *f. opportunity.*
- occāsus, ūs, *m. setting, downfall.*
- Occidens, ntis, *m. setting sun, western regions, west.*
- occidiō, ōnis, *f. destruction.*
- occīdo, cīdi, cāsus 3. *to fall.*
- occīdo, eīdi, cīsus 3. *to kill.*
- occo 1. *to harrow.*
- occūlo, ulūi, ultum 3. *to conceal.*
- occulto 1. *to conceal.*
- occultus 3. *concealed.*
- occumbo, eubūi, cubitum 3. *to fall, die.*
- occūpo 1. *to take possession of, fall upon, to surprise.*
- occurro, curri and curri. cursum 3. *to meet, come up.*
- ocrea, ae, *f. greave (corresponding to our boot).*
- Octōber, bris, *m. October.*
- ocūlus, i, *m. eye.*

- odi, isse, *to hate*.
odiōse, *adv. odiously*.
odiōsus 3. *hateful, hated*.
odiūm, i, *n. hatred*.
Odofrēdus, i, *m. Otfried*.
offendo, di, sum 3. *to offend*.
offēro, obtūli, oblātum, 3. *to offer*.
officiō, fēci, fectum 3. *to hinder, prevent*.
officiūm, i, *n. duty, service*.
offundo, fūdi, fūsum 3. *c. dat. to flow against; pass. to spread one's self upon, surround something; c. acc. to cover*.
olēum, i, *n. oil*.
olim, *adv. formerly*.
omen, minis, *n. omen, prognostic*.
omitto, mīsi, missum 3. *to let go, pass over, postpone*.
omniū, *adv. wholly, altogether*.
omnis, e, each; whole; plur. *all*.
onēro 1. *to load, burden*.
onus, ēris, *n. load*.
onustus 3. *loaded*.
onyx, ŷchis, *m. onyx*.
opēra ae, *f. service rendered, labor; opēram dare, navare c. dat. to occupy one's self with*.
opes, um, *f. power, property, goods, treasures*.
opilō, ōnis, *m. shepherd*.
opīmus 3. *fat, rich*.
opinio, ōnis, *f. opinion, belief*.
opīnor 1. *to think*.
opipāre *adv. splendidly*.
opitūlor 1. *to lend aid*.
oportet 2. *it is necessary* [§ 106. R. 3.].
opperior, pertus sum 4. *to await, expect*.
oppidum, i, *n. town*.
opplēo, ēvi, ētum 2. *to fill up, fill*.
oppōno 3. *to oppose*.
opportūne, *adv. opportunely*.
opprīmo, pressi, pressum 3. *to oppress*.
oppugno 1. *to attack*.
ops (not used), *gen. opis, f. aid*.
optabilis, e, *desirable*.
optīmas, ātis *m. chief man*.
opto 1. *to wish*.
opulentia, ae, *f. splendor, wealth*.
opulentus 3. *powerful, rich*.
opus, ēris, *n. work*.
opus est, *it is necessary*, [§ 91, 1, b.]
oracūlum, i, *n. oracle*.
oratio, ōnis, *f. speech*.
orator, ōris, *m. orator*.
orbis, is, *m. circle*.
ordīno 1. *to order, arrange*.
ordior, orsus sum 4. *to begin*.
ordo, īnis, *m. order, succession, rank*.
Orestes, ae, *m. Orestes*.
Oriēns, ntis, *m. sunrising, east, eastern regions*.
origo, īnis, *f. origin*.
oriōr, ortus sum 4. *to rise, spring from*.
ornamentum, i, *n. ornament, jewel*.
ornātus, ūs, *m. ornament*.
orno 1. *to adorn*.
oro 1. *to speak; caussam orare, to plead; 2) to entreat*.
oryx, ŷgis, *m. gazelle*.
ōs, ōris, *n. face*.
ōs, ossis, *n. bone; pl. ossa, bones*.
ostendo, ndi, nsum 3. *to show*.
ostium, i, *n. door*.
otium, i, *n. leisure*.
otior 1. *to be at ease*.
ovis, is, *f. sheep*.
ovum, i, *n. egg*.
- P.
- Paciscor, pactus sum 3. *to make a bargain*.
- pactum, i, *n. bargain; nullo pacto, in no way*.
paedagōgus, i, *m. private tutor*.
paene, *adv. nearly, almost*.
palātum, i, *n. the palate*.
pallidus 3. *pale, livid*.
pallium, i, *n. cloak*.
pallor, ōris, *m. paleness*.
palumbes, is, *m. wood-pigeon*.
palus ūdis, *f. marsh, pool*.
pando, andi, assum, 3. *to open*.
pango, pepigī, pactum 3. *to fix in, to fasten, bargain, agree to on condition*.
panis, is, *m. bread*.
pannus, i, *m. ray*.
papāver, ēris, *n. poppy*.
papilio, ōnis, *m. a butterfly*.
par, aris, *equal; par sum c. dat. I am a match for some one*.
par, aris, *n. a pair*.
Parapomīsus, i, *m. Parapomīsus*.
parātus 3. *prepared, ready*.
parco, peperci, parsum 3. *c. dat. to spare, forbear*.
parens, ntis, *c. father or mother; plur. parents*.
paréo 2. *to obey*.
paries, ētis, *f. wall (of a house)*.
pario, pepēri, partum 3. *to bear, produce; ova parere, to lay eggs*.
paro 1. *to prepare*.
parričićium, i, *n. parricide, wicked deed*.
pars, rtis, *f. part, side, plur. the characters in a play*.
parsimonia, ae, *f. frugality*.
particeps, cīpis, *participating in*.
particūla, ae, *f. a particle*.

- partim, *adv. partly.*
 partior 4. *to divide.*
 parum, *adv. too little.*
 parvus 3. *small.*
 pasco, pavi, pastum 3. *to pasture (of herds-
 men), to feed; pascor,
 pastus sum, pasci, to
 be fed, pastured (of
 herds).*
 paseūm, i, *n. pasture.*
 passim, *adv. far and wide.*
 passus, ūs, *m. step, pace.*
 pastor, ōris, *m. herds-
 man.*
 patefācio, fēci, factum
 3. *to make known.*
 patēo, ūi 2. *to stand open.*
 pater, tris, *m. father.*
 patienter, *adv. patiently.*
 patīna, ae, *f. a dish.*
 patiōr, passus sum 3. *to
 suffer, allow.*
 patria, ae, *f. native coun-
 try.*
 patrocīnor 1. c. dat. *to
 protect.*
 paucitas, ātis, *f. fewness.*
 pauci, ae, *a few.*
 paullātim, *adv. gradual-
 ly.*
 paullipser, *adv. a little
 while.*
 paullūlum, *adv. a little.*
 paullus 3. *little; paulo
 post, a little after.*
 pauper ēris, *poor.*
 paupertas, ātis, *f. pover-
 ty.*
 Pausanias, ae, *Pausa-
 nias.*
 pavīdus 3. *fearful.*
 pavo, ōnis, *m. peacock.*
 pavor, ōris, *m. fear,
 fright.*
 pax, pacis, *f. peace; 2)
 permission.*
 peccātum, i, *n. sin, fault.*
 pecco 1. *to sin, do wrong.*
 pecten, īnis, *m. comb.*
 pecto, xi, xum 3. *to
 comb.*
 pectus, ōris, *n. breast.*
 pecunīa, ae, *f. money.*
 pedes, ītis, *m. footman,
 foot-soldier.*
 pedester tris, tre, *on foot.*
 pejëro 1. *to swear falsely.*
 pellīcio, lexi, lectum 3. *to
 allure, mislead.*
 pellis, is, *f. skin; pel. le-
 onīna, lion's skin.*
 pello pepūli, pulsum 3. *to
 drive.*
 Pelopīdas, ae, *m. Pelo-
 pidas.*
 pelvis, is, *f. basin, bowl.*
 penātes īum, *m. penates,
 household gods.*
 pendēo, pependi, (*sup.*
 wanting) 2. *to hang.*
 pendo, pependi, pen-
 sum 3. *to pay for, va-
 lue.*
 penītus, *adv. wholly.*
 penna, ae, *f. feather.*
 pensum, i, *n. thread.*
 peracerbus 3. *very bitter,
 severe,*
 perāgo, ēgi, actum 3. *to
 accomplish.*
 perāgro 1. *to pass through.*
 percello, cūli, culsum 3. *to
 strike through, shat-
 ter.*
 percipīo, cēpi, ceptum
 3. *to perceive.*
 percrebesco, crebūi 2 *to
 become known.*
 percrēpo, ūi, ītum 1. *to
 resound.*
 percurro cucurri or cur-
 ri, cursum 3. *to run
 through.*
 percussor, ōris, *m. mur-
 derer.*
 perdo, dīdi, dītum 3. *to
 ruin, destroy, lose.*
 perdōmo, ūi, ītum 1. *to
 tame, subdue.*
 perdūco, uxi, uctum 3. *to
 carry through, con-
 duct to.*
 perēgre, *adv. abroad.*
 perēo, īi, ītum, ire, *to go
 to ruin, perish.*
 perfectus 3. *perfect.*
 perfēro, tūli, lātum 3. *to
 bear through, endure.*
 perfīcio, fēci, factum 3
to finish, effect.
 perfīdus 3. *faithless.*
 perflūo, xi, xum 3. *to
 flow through.*
 perfringo, frēgi, fractum
 3. *to break through.*
 perfūga, ae, *m. deserter.*
 perfugīum, i, *n. refuge.*
 perfundo, fūdi, fūsum 3. *to
 meet.*
 pergo, perrexi, perrec-
 tum 3. *to go, proceed.*
 periclitōr 1. *to be in dan-
 ger.*
 pericūlum, i, *n. danger.*
 perīmo, rēmi, remptum
 3. *to destroy.*
 periōdus, i, *f. period.*
 perītus 3. c. gen. *expe-
 rienced, skilled in.*
 permānēo, mansi, man-
 sum 2. *to continue, hold
 out.*
 permāno 1. *to flow
 through.*
 permēo 1. *to pass
 through.*
 permetīor, mensus sum
 4. *to pass over.*
 permitto, īsi, issum 3. *to
 permit.*
 permōvēo, mōvi, mō-
 tum 2. *to move, stir up.*
 permulcēo, lsi, lsum 2. *to
 stroke, please, charm,
 soothe.*
 permultus 3. *very many.*
 permutatīo, ōnis, *f. ex-
 change.*
 pernīcies, ēi, *f. destruc-
 tion.*
 pernīciōsus 3. *pernicious,
 destructive.*
 pernosco, nōvi, nōtum
 3. *to become thoroughly
 acquainted with.*
 perōsus 3. *hating greatly.*
 perpētior, pessus sum 3. *to
 endure.*
 perpētro 1. *to perform.*
 perpetuitas, ātis, *f. per-
 petuity, duration.*
 perpetūo, *adv. continual-
 ly.*
 perpetūus 3. *continued,
 constant.*
 perrodō, ōsi, ōsum 3. *to
 eat through.*

- perrumpo, rūpi, ruptum
3. to break through
- Persa, ae, m. a Persian.
- persaepe, adv. very often
- persāno 1. to cure wholly.
- persēquor, secūtus sum
3. to follow up, pursue.
- Perses, ae, m. a Persian;
adj. Persian.
- persevēro 1. to hold out.
- persolvo, vi, ūtum 3. to pay.
- persōna, ae, f. person.
- persto, ūti, ātum 1. to persist.
- perstringo, inxi, ictum
3. to draw through, censure.
- persuādēo, āsi, āsum 2.
c. dat. to persuade, convince.
- pertaedet, pertaesum est
2. it wears me (see § 88, 1.)
- perterrēo 2. to frighten,
put in fear.
- pertīnax, ācis, obstinate.
- Pertīnax, ācis, m. Pertinax.
- pertīnēo, 2. to extend; ad
aliquem, to pertain to
some one.
- pertraho, axi, actum 3.
to draw through.
- perturbatio, ōnis, f. disturbance.
- perturbo 1. to disturb.
- perungo, unxi, unctum
3. to anoint.
- pervēhor, vectus sum 3.
to be conveyed off.
- perverse, adv. perversely.
- perversitas, ātis, f. perversity.
- pervīdēo, ūdi, ūsum 2. to
consider, examine.
- pes, pēdis, m. foot.
- pestilentia, ae, f. pestilence.
- pestis, is, f. pest, destruction.
- peto, ūvi, ūtum 3. c. acc.
to strive to obtain, strive
after, attack, fetch.
- petūlans, tis, wanton.
- petulantia, ae, f. wanton-
ness, licentiousness.
- Pharnāces, is, m. Pharnaces.
- Phidias, ae, m. Phidias.
- philosophia, ae, f. philosophy.
- philosophor 1. to philosophize.
- philosophus, i, m. philosopher.
- Picens, ntis, m. belonging
to Picenum.
- Picenum i, n. Picenum.
- pie, adv. tenderly, piously.
- pietas, ātis, f. piety, filial
love.
- piger, gra, grum, sloth-
ful, dull.
- piget, ūit, me alicujus
rei. it irks me of some-
thing, (§ 88, 1.)
- pigritia, ae, f. inactivity.
- pilōsus 3. hairy, covered
with hair.
- pingo, inxi, ictum 3. to
paint; acu pingere, to
embroider.
- pinus, ūs, f. pine.
- piper, ēris, n. pepper.
- pirum, i, n. pear.
- pirus, i, f. pear-tree.
- piscātor, ōris, m. fisher-
man.
- piscatoria navis, fishing
vessel.
- piscis, is, m. fish.
- piscor 1. to fish.
- pious 3. pious, grateful.
- placēo 2. to please.
- placide, adv. gently.
- placidus 3. gentle.
- placo 1. to appease.
- plane, adv. wholly; plain-
ly.
- planētes, ae, m. planet.
- planities, ēi, f. a plain.
- planta, ae, f. plant.
- Plataeae, arum, f. Plataea, a city in Bœotia.
- Plataeensis, e, from Plataea.
- Plato, ōnis, m. Plato.
- plaustrum, i, n. draught-
wagon.
- plausus, ūs, m. applause.
- Plautus, i, m. Plautus.
- plebes, bis, f. the common
people.
- plenus 3. c. gen. full.
- plerique, aeque, aequae,
very many, most.
- plerumque, adv. commonly.
- Plinius, i, m. Pliny.
- ploratus, ūs, m. com-
plaint.
- plures, a, gen. ūm, more,
many.
- plurimus 3. most.
- plus, ūris, n. more.
- pluvia, ae, f. rain.
- pluviōsus 3. rainy.
- poēma, ātis, n. poem.
- poena, ae, f. punishment;
poenas dare, to be pun-
ished; 2) revenge.
- poenitentia, ae, f. repen-
tance.
- poenitet me alicujus rei,
it repents me of some-
thing.
- Poenus, i, m. a Cartha-
ginian.
- poeta, ae, m. poet.
- polite, adv. elegantly.
- pollex, ūcis, m. thumb.
- pollicēor, cītus sum 2.
to promise.
- Pollux, ūcis, m. Pollux.
- Pompēii, ōrum, m. Pom-
peii (a city).
- Pompēius, i, m. Pompey.
- Pompilius, i, m. Pom-
pilius.
- pomum, i, n. plur. eat-
able fruit.
- pondēro 1. to ponder.
- pondus, dēris, n. weight.
- pono, sūi, sītum 3. to
lay, place; ponere in
aliqua re, to set, place
upon something.
- pons, tis, m. bridge.
- popūlor 1. to lay waste.
- pōpūlus, i, m. people.
- pōpūlus, i, f. poplar.
- porrigo, rexi, rectum 3.
to extend.
- porro, adv. moreover.
- porta, ae, f. gate.
- porticus, ūs, f. portico.

- porto 1. *to bear.*
 portus. ūs, *m. haven.*
 posco, poposci 3. *to demand.*
 possessio, ōnis, *f. possession, possessing.*
 possidēo, sēdi, sessum 3. *to possess.*
 possum, potūi, posse, *to be able (can).*
 postēa, *adv. afterwards.*
 postquam, *conj. after that.*
 postēro die, *on the following day; in posterum diem, till the following day.*
 postis, is, *m. post.*
 postquam, *conj. after that.*
 postrēmus 3. *last; ad postremum, lastly.*
 postūlo 1. *to demand.*
 potens, tis, *c. gen. powerful, master of.*
 potentia, ae, *f. power.*
 potestas. ātis, *f. power.*
 potio, ōnis, *f. drinking, drink.*
 potior, tītus sum 4. *c. abl. to possess one's self of.*
 potissimum, *adv. especially, principally.*
 potius, *adv. much more, rather.*
 potus, ūs, *m. drink.*
 praealtus 3. *very deep.*
 praebēo 2. *to afford, lend; se praebēre, to prove, show one's self.*
 praebibo, ibi 3. *to drink to.*
 praiceps, cipītis, *inclining, rugged, steep; precipitous.*
 praeceptor, ōris, *m. teacher.*
 praeceptum, i, *n. precept, principle.*
 praecipio, cēpi, ceptum 3. *to anticipate; 2) to direct.*
 praecipito 1. *to hasten.*
 praecipuus 3. *distinguished, excellent.*
 praecclare, *adv. nobly.*
 praecclarus 3. *noble.*
 praeccludo 3. *to shut.*
 praeco, ōnis, *m. encomiast.*
 praecordia, ōrum, *n. diaphragm.*
 praecox, cōcis, *precocious.*
 praeda, ae, *f. booty.*
 praedico 1. *to extol.*
 praedico 3. *to predict.*
 praeditus 3. *c. abl. endowed with.*
 praedium, i, *n. farm.*
 praedo, ōnis, *m. robber.*
 praedor 1. *to make booty.*
 praefectus, i, *m. prefect.*
 praefero, tūli, lātum ferre 3. *to prefer.*
 praeficio, fēci, fectum, 3. *to place over.*
 praefor 1. *to premise; praefatus honorem, having promised, "with your leave be it said;" praefari veniam, to first ask permission.*
 praeloquor, locūtus sum 3. *to speak before.*
 praemium, i, *n. reward.*
 praemonēo, ui 2. *to admonish.*
 Praeneste, is, *n. city of Latium.*
 praeparatio, ōnis, *f. preparation.*
 praeparo 1. *to prepare.*
 praepōno, ōsui, ōsitum 3. *to prefer.*
 praepopere, *adv. hastily.*
 praescribo, psi, ptum 3. *to prescribe.*
 praesens, tis, *present.*
 praesertim, *adv. especially.*
 praeses, idis, *m. president.*
 praesidium, i, *n. aid, protection, support.*
 praestabilis, e, *excellent, superior.*
 praestans, tis, *excellent.*
 praesto, iti, ātum 1. *to be distinguished; aliquid, to surpass; to be better; to bestow; to pay; se praestare, to show one's self.*
 praesto, *adv. present, at hand.*
 praesum, fūi, esse, *to be placed before, preside over.*
 praeterēa, *adv. besides.*
 praeterēo, ii, itum, ire, *to pass by before.*
 praeteritas 3. *past.*
 praetexta toga, *f. a purple bordered outer garment.*
 praetor, ōris, *m. praetor.*
 praetorium, i, *n. general's tent.*
 praetorius, i, *m. a man of praetorian rank.*
 prandēo, di, sum 2. *to breakfast.*
 pratum, i, *n. meadow.*
 pravitās, ātis, *f. depravity.*
 pravus 3. *perverted, bad.*
 precatio, ōnis, *f. prayer.*
 preces, um, *f. entreaties.*
 precor 1. *to entreat; bene pr. aliquid, to wish well to one.*
 premo, pressi, pressum 3. *to press.*
 pretiosus 3. *precious.*
 pretium, i, *n. price, value.*
 pridem, *adv. long ago; jam pridem, long since.*
 Priēne, es, *f. Priēne (a city of Ionia).*
 primo, *adv. in the first place. [place.*
 primum, *adv. in the first princeps, ipis, m. first; the first.*
 princepātus, ūs, *m. sovereignty, dominion.*
 principium, i, *n. beginning; principio, in the beginning.*
 priscus 3. *old.*
 pristinus 3. *former.*
 prius, *adv. sooner.*
 priusquam, *conj. before that, ere, before.*
 privatus 3. *private.*

- probe, *adv. excellently, suitably, uprightly.*
 probitas, atis, *f. uprightness.*
 probro 1. *to approve; probari alicui, to please some one.*
 probrum, i. *n. disgrace.*
 probus 3. *upright, excellent.*
 Probus, i, *m. Probus.*
 procēdo, cessi, cessum 3. *to proceed, advance.*
 procella, ae, *f. storm.*
 procēres, um, *m. the nobles.*
 procērus 3. *slim, tall.*
 proconsul, ūlis, *m. pro-consul.*
 proconsulāre imperium, *proconsular command or authority.*
 procūdo, di, sum 3. *(of money) to coin.*
 procul, *adv. far off, from a distance.*
 procumbo, cubūi, cubitum 3. *to fall down.*
 procūro 1. *to take care of.*
 procurro, curri and curcui, cursum 3. *to rush forth.*
 prodēo, īi, itum, ire, *to go forth, depart.*
 prodigiōsus 3. *wonderful.*
 proditiō, ōnis, *f. treachery.*
 proditor, ōris, *m. traitor.*
 prodo, didi, ditum 3. *to deliver up, betray.*
 prodūco, xi, etum 3. *to lead forth, produce.*
 proeliōr 1. *to fight, contend.*
 proelium, i, *n. encounter.*
 profānus 3. *profane.*
 profecto, *adv. indeed, truly.*
 profēro, tūli, lātum, ferre 3. *to bring forward.*
 professor, ōris, *m. professor.*
 proficiō, feci, fectum 3. *to profit, accomplish.*
 proficiscor, fectus sum 3. *to set out (on a journey), march, depart.*
 profitēor, fessus sum 2. *to acknowledge freely, promise, offer freely.*
 profundo, fūdi, fūsum 3. *to pour forth; profusus, profuse, unrestrained.*
 profusus 3. *unrestrained.*
 progrēdiōr, gressus sum 3. *to step forth, advance.*
 prohibēo, būi, bitum 2. *to prevent, keep off.*
 proinde, *adv. therefore; proinde quasi, just as if.*
 projiciō, jēci, jectum 3. *to cast forth.*
 promitto, mīsi, missum 3. *to promise.*
 promontorium, i, *n. promontory.*
 promptu, in promptu esse, *to be ready.*
 promptus 3. *ready.*
 pronuntiō 1. *to pronounce.*
 prope, *adv. near; 2) nearly, almost.*
 propemōdum, *adv. almost.*
 propere, *adv. hastily.*
 propitiūs 3. *propitious, favorable.*
 propositum, i, *n. purpose, design.*
 proprius 3. *own, peculiar.*
 propterea, *adv. on this account.*
 propugnator, ōris, *m. champion, defender.*
 propulso 1. *to drive back.*
 prorēpo 3. *to creep forth.*
 prorsus, *adv. entirely.*
 proscribo, psi, ptum 3. *to proscribe, banish.*
 prosiliō, lūi 4. *to spring forth.*
 prospecto 1. *to look forth.*
 prospere, *adv. prosperously.*
 prosperitas, atis, *f. prosperity.*
 prospicio, spexi, spectum 3. *to see before one's self.*
 prosterno, strāvi, stratum 3. *to prostrate.*
 prosum, fūi, desse c. dat. *to be useful, benefit.*
 protervus 3. *shameless.*
 protinus, *adv. immediately.*
 proverbium, i, *n. proverb.*
 providentiā, ae, *f. foresight, providence.*
 providēo, vīdi, vīsum 2. *to foresee; c. dat. to provide for something; 2) to be on one's guard, look out.*
 provinciā, ae, *f. province.*
 provocatiō, ōnis, *f. provocation.*
 provoco 1. *to provoke.*
 proxime, *adv. next.*
 proximus 3. *next.*
 prudens, tis, *wise, prudent, skilful.*
 prudenter, *adv. wisely, prudently.*
 prudentia, ae, *f. wisdom, prudence.*
 prunum, i, *n. a plum.*
 prunus, i, *f. plumtree.*
 Prusias, ae, *m. Prusias.*
 pubes, ēris, *grown up.*
 publice, *adv. publicly, on behalf of the State, at the cost of the State.*
 publico 1. *to make public.*
 publicus 3. *public; in publico, in a public street.*
 pudet, dūit me alicujus rei, *I am ashamed of something.*
 pudicitia, ae, *f. modesty.*
 pudicus 3. *modest.*
 pudor, ōris, *m. shame.*
 puella, ae, *f. maid.*
 puer, ēri, *m. boy; puēri, children.*
 puerilis, e, *childish.*
 pueritia, ae, *f. childhood.*
 puerulus, i, *m. little boy.*
 pugna, ae, *f. fight, battle.*
 pugno 1. *to fight.*

- pulcher, chra, chrum, *quamdū, how long, so beautiful, fair. long as.*
- pulchre, *adv. beautifully.*
- pulchritūdo, īnis, *f. beauty.*
- pulex, īcis, *m. a flea.*
- pullus, i, *m. the young (of animals), chicken.*
- pulso 1. *to beat.*
- pulvis, ēris, *m. sand, dust.*
- pungo, pupūgi, punctum 3. *to sting, to harass.*
- Puniūcus 3. *Punic.*
- puniō 4. *to punish, correct.*
- puppis, is, *f. the stern of a ship.*
- purgo 1. *to purify, justify.*
- purpurātus, i, *m. a high office at court, courtier (wearing a purple bordered toga).*
- purus 3. *pure.*
- putesco, tūi 3. *to rot.*
- puto 1. *to think, believe, consider.*
- Pydna, ae, *f. city of Macedonia.*
- Pylādes, ae, *m. Pylades.*
- Pyraeneus, i, *m. the Pyrenees.*
- Pythagōras, ae, *m. Pythagoras.*
- Q.**
- Quadriennium, i, *n. the space of four years.*
- quaero, sivi, situm 3. *to seek, ab or ex aliquo, to ask of one.*
- quaeso, I pray, beseech.
- quaestio, omis, *f. question.*
- quaestor. oris, *m. questor, public treasurer.*
- qualis, e, *of what sort, character; as.*
- qualiscunque, *of whatever sort, character.*
- quam, *adv. how, as; conj. (with the comparative) than.*
- quamvis, *conj. with the subj. how much soever, although.*
- quando, *adv. when.*
- quanquam, *conj. with indic. though, although.*
- quanto, (with comp.) *the.*
- quantopere, *how greatly.*
- quantus 3. *how great; quantum, how much.*
- quantuscunque, *how great soever.*
- quare, *adv. on which account, wherefore.*
- quarto, *for the fourth time.*
- quasi, *as it were, as if, as though.*
- que, *conj. and (always attached to its word).*
- quemadmodum, *adv. in what manner, as.*
- quēo ivi, itum, ire, *to be able (can).*
- quercus, ūs, *f. oak.*
- querēla, ae, *f. complaint, plaintive cry.*
- queror, questus sum 3. *to complain.*
- qui, quae, quod, *who.*
- quī, *how, whence, whereby.*
- quia, *conj. because.*
- quicunque, quaecunque, quodcunque, *whosoever.*
- quidam, quaedam, quiddam and quoddam. [§ 31. 5.]
- quidem, *indeed (is placed after its word.)*
- quidni, *why not?*
- quies, ētis, *f. quiet.*
- quiesco, ēvi, ētum 3. *to rest.*
- quiētus 3. *quiet.*
- quin, [§ 108. 3.]
- quinam? *who then?*
- quinto, *adv. for the fifth time.*
- quingennium, i, *n. for the space of five years.*
- quippe, *adv. indeed, namely.*
- quis? quid? *who? what?*
- quis, qua, quid and qui, quae, quod [§ 31, 1]] *any one.*
- quisnam, quenam, quidnam, *who, what then?*
- quispiam, quaequam, quidpiam and quodpiam [§ 31, 2]].
- quisquam, quicquam and quodquam, (scarcely) *any one,* [§ 31, 3]].
- quisque, quaeque, quidque and quodque [§ 31, 6]].
- quisquis, quicquid, *whoever.* (§ 30, R. 2).
- quo, *adv. whither; quo—eo, (in comp.) the—so much the.*
- quoad, *so long as, until, until that, even until.*
- quocunque, *adv. whithersoever.*
- quod, *conj. that, because.*
- quodsi, *if now, but if.*
- quominus, *that,* (§ 108, 2).
- quomodo, *adv. how.*
- quondam, *adv. once, formerly.*
- quoniam, *conj. because.*
- quoque, *adv. also.*
- quot? *how many?*
- quotannis, *adv. yearly.*
- quotcunque, *however many.*
- quotidianus 3. *daily.*
- quotidie, *adv. daily.*
- quoties, *adv. how often.*
- quotiescunque, *adv. however often.*
- quotquot, *however many.*
- quotus 3. *what one in order.*
- quum, *conj. when; as, since; quum—tum, both—and.*
- R.**
- Rabidus 3. *mad.*
- rabies, ēi, *f. madness.*
- rabiōsus 3. *mad.*
- radix, icis, *f. root.*

- ramulus, i, m. *trig.*
 rana, ae, f. *frog.*
 rapidus 3. *tearing away, rapid.*
 rapiō, pūi, ptum 3. *to snatch, carry off.*
 raro, adv. *rarely.*
 rarus 3 *seldom.*
 ratiō, ōnis, f. *reason; manner.*
 ravis, is, f. *hoarseness.*
 rebello 1. *to renew war, rebel.*
 recēdo, cessi, cessum 3. *to go back, retire.*
 recens, ntis. *recent.*
 recipiō, cēpi, ceptum 3. *to take back, receive; se recipere, to betake one's self back.*
 recito 1. *to read to.*
 recognitiō, ōnis, f. *recognition.*
 recognosco, nōvi, nītum 3. *to recognize.*
 recondo, idi, itum 3. *to conceal.*
 recordatiō, ōnis, f. *recollection.*
 recordor 1. c. acc. *to remember, call to mind.*
 recreō 1. *to renew, refresh.*
 recrudescō, dūi 3. *to break open afresh.*
 recte, adv. *rightly, correctly.*
 rector, ōris, m. *governor.*
 rectus 3. *straight, direct, right; recta consciētia, a good conscience.*
 recumbo, cubūi, cubitum 3. *to lie down again.*
 recupero 1. *to recover.*
 recuso 1. *to refuse.*
 redāmo 1. *to love in return.*
 redargūo, ūi, ūtum 3. *to refute.*
 reddo, idi, itum 3. *to give back again, give, make.* [turn.]
 redēo, ii, itum 4. *to redēmo, dēmi, demptum 3. to redem.*
 redigo, dēgi, dactum 3. *to bring back, bring.*
 recitus, ūs, m. *return.*
 redūco, xi, ctum 3. *to lead back.*
 redundo 1. *to redound.*
 refello, elli 3. *to refute.*
 referciō, rsi, rtum 3. *to stuff, fill up.*
 refēro, tūi, lātum, ferre 3. *to bring back, return again; requite; refer to.*
 refert 3. c. gen. *it concerns.* (§ 88, 10).
 refertus 3. *full, stuffed.*
 reformido 1. c. acc. *to fear something.*
 reflo 1. *to flow against.*
 refrico, cūi, cātum 1. *to rub again, renew.*
 refugio, fūgi, fugitum 3. *to flee back.*
 regālis, e, royal.
 regīna, ae, f. *queen.*
 regiō, ōnis, f. *region.*
 regius 3. *royal.*
 regno 1. *to reign.*
 regnum, i, n. *reign, kingdom.*
 rego, xi, ctum 3. *to govern, guide, rule.*
 regrēdior, gressus sum 3. *to go back, return.*
 rejicio, jēci, jectum 3. *to throw away, reject.*
 religio, ōnis, f. *religion, conscientiousness.*
 religiōse, adv. *scrupulously.*
 relinquo, liqui, lictum 3. *to leave behind, desert.*
 reliquiae, arum, f. *remains.*
 reliquus 3. *remaining.*
 remāneo, nsi, nsum 2. *to remain behind, remain.*
 reminiscor (without the perf.) 3. c. gen. or acc. *to remember.*
 removēo, ōvi, ōtum 2. *to remove.*
 Remus, i, m. *Remus.*
 ren, (commonly plur. renes, um, m.) *kidneys.*
 renuntio 1. *to report.*
 reor, ratus sum, reri, 2. *to be persuaded, think.*
 repāro 1. *to repair.*
 repente, adv. *suddenly.*
 repēriō, pēri, pertum 4. *to find, find out.*
 repēto, ivi, itum 3. *to call back, retrace.*
 replēo, ēvi, ētum 2. *to fill up.*
 repūto 1. *to repeat.*
 repōno, pōsi, pōsitum 3. *to replace.*
 reporto 1. *to bear off.*
 repugno 1. *to contend against.*
 repūto 1. *to weigh, consider.*
 requies, ētis, (acc. requiem), f. *rest, relaxation.*
 requiesco, ēvi, ētum 3. (ex) c. abl. *to repose.*
 requiro, quisivi, quisitum 3. *to search after, inquire for.*
 res, rei, f. *affair, thing.*
 rescindo, idi, issum 3. *to tear off, break off.*
 rescisco, ivi or ii, itum 3. *to ascertain.*
 resēco, cūi, ctum 2. *to cut off.*
 reservo 1. *to reserve.*
 residēo, ēdi, essum 2. *to remain behind.*
 resisto, stiti, stitum 3. *to resist.*
 reso 1. *to resound.*
 reso 3. *resounding, echoing.*
 respiro 1. *to breathe.*
 respondēo, di, sum 2. *to answer, reply.*
 responsio, ōnis, f. *answer.*
 responsum, i, n. *answer.*
 republica, gen. rei publicae, f. *state.*
 respūo, ūi, ūtum 3. *to reject.*
 restinguo, nxi, netum 3. *to smother, to extinguish.*
 restis, is, f. *rope.*
 restitūo, ūi, ūtum 3. *to restore.*

- resto, stīti 1. *to be left*; rugīo 4. *to roar*.
 2) *resist*. ruīna, ae, *f. ruin*.
 rete, is, *n. net, toil*. rumpo, rupi, ruptum 3.
 retinēo, inūi, entum 2. *to break, tear*.
to hold back, retain. rūo, rūi, rūtum 3. *to*
rush.
 rēus, i, *m. defendant*. rupes, is, *f. rock, cliff*.
 revello, vellī, vulsum 3. rursus, *adv. again*.
to tear out. rus, ruris, *n. country*.
 revēra, *adv. in reality*. rusticus 3. *rustic*; subst.
 reverētia, ae, *f. reverence*. *countryman, boor*.
 revertor, Perf.: reverti 3. *to return*. rutilus 3. *fiery red*.
- S.
- Sacer, cra, crum, *sacred*;
 sacra, ōrum, *n. sacred*
 rites.
 sacerdos, ōtis, *c. priest, priestess*.
 sacrificium, i, *n. sacrifice*.
 sacrum, i, *n. a sacred thing*.
 saecūlum, i, *n. a hundred years*.
 saepe, *adv. often*.
 saevio 4. *to rage*.
 saevitia, ae, *f. cruelty*.
 saevus 3. *fierce*.
 sagitta, ae, *f. arrow*.
 sal, salis, *m. salt*; *wit*.
 Salaminium (i) fretum, *n. bay of Salamis*.
 salio, lūi, ltum 4. *to leap*.
 Sallustius, i, *m. Sallust*.
 saltem, *adv. at least*.
 salto 1. *to dance*.
 salus, ūtis, *f. prosperity, welfare, safety*.
 salutāris, e, *salutary*.
 salūto 1. *to salute*.
 salve, hail! (Imper. of salvēo 2. *to be well*).
 salvus 3. *safe, well*.
 Samnis, itis, *m. a Samnite*.
 sancio, nxi, nctum 4. *to sanction*.
 sancte, *adv. sacredly, conscientiously*.
 sanctus 3. *sacred*.
 sane, *adv. truly*.
 sanguis, īnis, *m. blood*.
 sanies, ēi, *f. bloody matter*.
 sano 1. *to heal, cure*.
- sanus 3. *sound*.
 sapiens, tis, *wise*; subst. *wise man*.
 sapientia, ae, *f. wisdom*.
 sapio, ūi 3. *to be wise*.
 sarcio, rsi, rtam 4. *to make good again, repair*.
 Sardes, dīnm, *f. Sardis*.
 Sardus, i, *m. a Sardinian*.
 sarmentum, i, *n. shoot, branch*.
 sat, *adv. sufficiently, sufficient*.
 satiētas, ātis, *f. satiety*.
 satio 1. *to satiate*.
 satira, ae, *f. satire*.
 satis, *adv. sufficiently*.
 satisfācio, feci, factum 3. *to make satisfaction, satisfy*.
 Saturnus, i, *m. Saturn*.
 saxum, i, *n. rock*.
 scabo, bi 3. *to scratch*.
 scalmus, i, *m. thowl pin*;
 2) *boat*.
 scalprum (i) librarium (i), *n. penknife*.
 scatēo, ēre, e, abl *to be full of something*.
 scaturigo, īnis, *f. spring*.
 secleratus 3. *wicked*.
 scelus, ēris, *n. crime, transgression*.
 schola, ae, *f. school*.
 scholasticus 3. *of or pertaining to a school*.
 scilicet, *adv. truly, to wit*.
 scindo, idi, issum 3. *to tear*.
 scintilla, ae, *f. spark*.
 scio 4. *to know*.
 scipio, ōnis, *m. staff*.
 Scipio, ōnis, *m. Scipio*.
 sciscitor 1. *to inquire*.
 scite, *adv. skilfully*.
 Scopas, ae, *m. Scopas*.
 scriba, ae, *m. scribe, secretary*.
 scribo, psi, ptum 3. *to write*.
 scriptor, ōris, *m. writer*.
 scrobis, is, *m. hole, ditch*.
 scrupulus, i, *m. scruple*.
 Scythia, ae, *m. a Scythian*.

- secēdo, essi, essum 3. to retire, separate from.
- secerno, crēvi, crētum 3. to sunder, separate.
- seco, cūi, ctum 1. to cut.
- sector 1. c. acc. to pursue, strive after.
- secundus 3. favorable, fortunate; res secundae, prosperity.
- secūris, is, f. axe. hatchet.
- secūrus 3. secure, safe.
- sed. conj. but.
- sēdēo, sēdi, sessum 2. to sit.
- sedes, is, f. seat.
- seditio, ōnis, f. sedition.
- sedo 1. to quiet.
- sedūlo, adv. busily.
- seges, ēris, f. crop.
- semen, īnis, n. seed.
- semper, adv. always.
- sempiternus 3. ever-during, eternal.
- senātor, ōris, m. senator.
- senāctus, ūs, m. senate.
- senectus. ūtis, f. age, old age.
- senex, senis, old; subst. old man.
- senilis, e, belonging to old age; aetas senilis, f. old age.
- senior, ius, older.
- Senōnes, Num, m. a people of Gaul.
- sensim, adv. by degrees.
- sensus, ūs, m. sense, feeling.
- sententiā, ae, f. sentiment, opinion.
- sentio, nsi, nsum 4. to feel, think, judge.
- sentis, is, m. (commonly plur. sentes), thorn-bush.
- sepāro 1. to separate, disjoin.
- sepēllo, pelivi, pultum 4. to inter, bury.
- sepio, sepsi, septum 4. to hedge in, inclose.
- sepōno, pōsui, pōsitum 3. to lay aside.
- September, bris, m. September.
- sepulcrum, i, n. grave, burial.
- sequor, secutus sum 3. c. acc. to follow.
- serēnus 3. clear, bright.
- serius 3. grave.
- sermo, ōnis, m. conversation, discourse.
- sēro, sēvi, sātum 3. to sow, plant.
- serpens, ntis, c. serpent.
- serus 3. too late.
- servio 4. to serve.
- servitus, ūtis, f. servitude.
- servo 1. to preserve.
- servus, i, m. slave
- seu, conj. see sive.
- severitas, ātis, f. severity.
- si, conj. if, if also.
- sic, adv. so, thus.
- sica, ae, f. dagger.
- sicarius, i, m. assassin.
- siccine, adv. is it so?
- siccitas, ātis, f. dryness.
- sicco 1. to dry.
- Sicilia, ae, f. Sicily.
- sicuti, adv. just as.
- Sicyonius, i, m. a Sicyonian (from Sicyon, in Achaia).
- signum, i, n. sign.
- silentium, i, n. silence.
- siler, ēris, n. willow.
- silva, ae, f. a wood.
- similis, e, like.
- similitudo, īnis, f. likeness.
- Simonides, is, m. Simonides.
- simplex, icis, simple.
- simul, adv. at the same time.
- simulac, conj. (never before a vowel or h) as soon as.
- simulacrum, i, n. image.
- simulatio, ōnis, f. pretence.
- simulatque = simulac.
- simulo 1. to liken one's self to; to feign.
- sin, conj. but if.
- sinapis, is, f. mustard.
- singularis, e, single.
- singuli, ae, a, single.
- sinister, tra, trum, left, unfavorable.
- sino, sivi, situm 3. to permit, allow.
- siquidem, conj. if indeed.
- siser, ēris, n. carrol.
- sitio 4. to thirst; c. acc. to thirst after something.
- sitis, is, f. thirst.
- situla, ae, f. pail.
- situs, ūs, m. situation; 2) mould, filth.
- situs 3. placed; situm esse, to be placed, buried.
- sive, or; sive — sive, conj. whether — or, either — or.
- soccus, i, m. sock, shoe.
- socer, ēri, m. father-in-law.
- societas, ātis, f. union, league, alliance, association.
- socius, i, m. ally.
- Socrates, is, m. Socrates.
- soerus, ūs, f. mother-in-law.
- sodalis, is, m. companion.
- sol, solis, m. sun.
- solatium, i, n. solace.
- solēa, ae, f. sole; solēa equi, horseshoe.
- solennis, e, usual; 2) solemn. [be wont.
- solēo, solitus sum 2. to solitude, īnis, f. solitude.
- sollers, tis, dextrous, skillful.
- sollicito 1. to disquiet.
- sollicitudo, īnis, f. solicitude, anxiety.
- sollicitus 3. anxious.
- solum, i, n. ground.
- solus 3. alone.
- solutus 3. unbound.
- solvo, vi, utum 3. to loose, free.
- somnio 1. to dream.
- somnium, i, n. dream.
- somnus, i, m. sleep.
- sonitus, ūs, m. sound.
- sono, ūi, itum 1. to sound.
- sonus, i, m. tone.
- sophista, ae, m. sophist.

- Sophocles, is, *m. Sophocles.*
- sordide, *adv. basely, meanly.*
- sordidus 3. *mean.*
- sorex, icis, *m. a field-mouse.*
- sorix, icis, *m. an owl.*
- soror, oris, *f. sister.*
- sors, tis, *f. lot.*
- sospes, itis, *safe, sound.*
- spargo, rsi, rsum 3. *to strow, scatter, spread.*
- spatium, i, *n. space, length of time.*
- species, ei, *f. form.*
- specimen, inis, *n. specimen.*
- speciosus 3. *striking, beautiful.*
- spectaculum, i, *n. show.*
- spectator, oris, *m. spectator.*
- specto 1. *c. acc. to look at, behold, have something in view.*
- specus, us, *m. cave.*
- sperno, sprēvi, spretum 3. *to spurn.*
- spero 1. *to hope.*
- spes, ei, *f. hope.*
- spinther, eris, *n. bracelet.*
- spiritus, us, *m. breath.*
- splen, enis, *m. the spleen.*
- splendēo, ūi 2. *to shine.*
- splendidus 3. *splendid.*
- splendor, oris, *m. magnificence, splendor.*
- spolio 1. *to deprive, rob.*
- spolium, i, *n. booty.*
- spondeo, sponodi, sponsum 2. *to be responsible for.*
- spurius 3. *spurious.*
- stabilis, e, *stable, firm.*
- stabilitas, atis, *f. stability.*
- stabulum, i, *n. stall.*
- statim, *adv. immediately.*
- statio, onis, *station.*
- statua, ae, *f. statue.*
- statuo, ūi, utum 3. *to determine.*
- status, us, *m. posture.*
- stātus 3. *stated.*
- stella, ae, *f. star.*
- stercus, oris, *n. dung.*
- sterno, strāvi, stratum 3. *to prostrate.*
- stimulo 1. *to goad.*
- stipendium, i, *n. pay.*
- stirps, pis, *f. stem, origin.*
- sto, stēti, statum 1. *to stand, be gained by, cost.*
- stomachor 1. *to be indignant.*
- strangulo 1. *to strangle.*
- strenue, *adv. vigorously.*
- stridēo di, 2. *to whistle.*
- strigōsus 3. *lank.*
- stringo, inxi, ictum 3. *to graze, draw (sword).*
- strix, igis, *f. horned owl.*
- studēo, ūi 2. *to strive, exert one's self, endeavor; c. dat. to occupy one's self zealously with, favor some one.*
- studiōse, *adv. zealously.*
- studiosus 3. *c. gen. devoted to; stud. esse c. gen. to occupy one's self zealously with, to apply one's self to something.*
- studium, i, *n. effort, zeal, study.*
- stultitia, ae, *f. folly.*
- stultus 3. *foolish, silly.*
- suadēo, āsi, āsum 2. *to advise, persuade.*
- suapte manu, *with his own hand.*
- suavis, e, *lovely, agreeable.*
- suavitas, atis, *f. sweetness, loveliness of character.*
- suaviter, *adv. sweetly, agreeably.*
- subduco, xi, ctum 3. *to withdraw.*
- suber, eris, *n. cork-tree.*
- subhumidus 3. *slightly moist.*
- subigo, ēgi, actum 3. *to work; subjugate.*
- subito, *adv. suddenly.*
- subitus 3. *sudden.*
- subiicio, jēci, jectum 3. *to subject.*
- sublime, *adv. aloft, in the air.*
- subridēo, rīsi, risum 2. *to smile.*
- subsēquor, secutus sum 3. *to follow.*
- substerno, strāvi, stratum 3. *to spread under.*
- subterfugio, ūgi, ūgitum 3. *to escape.*
- subtrahō, traxi, tractum 3. *to withdraw.*
- subvēnio, vēni, ventum 4. *to come to help.*
- succēdo, essi, essum 3. *to succeed.*
- succensēo, ūi 2. *to be enraged.*
- succumbo, cubui, cubitum 3. *to sink under.*
- succurro, curri, cursum 3. *c. dat. to aid, assist.*
- sudo 1. *to sweat.*
- sudor, oris, *m. sweat.*
- suffragium, i, *n. pot-herd; 2) vote, voice.*
- suggēro, gessi, gestum 3. *to bring, present.*
- sugo, xi, ctum 3. *to suck.*
- sui, *pron. of him (her, it) self.*
- Sulla, ae, *m. Sulla.*
- sum, fui, esse, *to be, be peculiar, belong, pertain to; c. gen. or dat. to possess; cum dupl. dat. to tend to, serve for something, some one.*
- summa, ae, *f. sum.*
- summa aqua, *surface of the water.*
- summus 3. *greatest, highest.*
- sumo, mpsi, mptum 3. *to take.*
- sūo, sūi, sūtum 3. *to sew.*
- supellex, ectilis, *f. furniture, utensils.*
- superbia, ae, *f. pride.*
- superbus 3. *proud, magnificent.*
- superior, us, *higher; subst. conqueror.*
- supēro 1. *to overcome, surpass.*

- superstes, Itis, c. dat. *talentum, i, n. talent* surviving.
 superstitio, ōnis, f. *superstition.*
 supersum, esse, fui, to *remain, to be left.*
 sup̄erus 3. *above; sup̄eri, the gods.*
 supervēnio, vēni, ventum 4. c. dat. *to surprise.*
 suppedīto 1. *to furnish.*
 supplex, icis, *suppliant.*
 supplicium, i, n. *punishment.*
 supplico 1. c. dat. *to entreat.*
 suppressio, pressi, pressum 3. *to suppress; navem, to sink a vessel.*
 supra, adv. *above, upon.*
 supr̄emus 3. *last.*
 surgo, surrexi, surrectum 3. *to arise.*
 sus, suis, f. *sow, swine.*
 suscipio, cēpi, ceptum 3. *to undertake, receive.*
 suscito 1. *to arouse.*
 suspicio, ōnis, f. *suspicion.*
 suspicor 1. *to suspect, imagine.*
 sustento 1. *to support.*
 sustinēo, inūi, entum 2. *to sustain; sust. partes, to act a part.*
 sūus 3. *his (her, its), his own.*
 symbōla, de symbōlis edere, *to eat at common expense.*
 Syphax, ācis, m. *Syphax.*
 Syracūsae, arum, f. *Syracuse.*
 Syrus, i, m. *a Syrian.*
- T.
- Tabūla, ae, f. *board, table.*
 tacēo 2. *to be silent.*
 tacitus 3. *silent.*
 taedet me alicujus rei, *it excites disgust in me at something.*
 talentum, i, n. *talent* (sum of money).
 talis, e, *of such sort, character; such.*
 talus, i, m. *ankle.*
 tam, so; tam — quam, *so — as.*
 tamdiu, adv. *so long.*
 tamen, conj. *yet, still.*
 Tamēsis, is, m. *Thames.*
 tandem, adv. *finally, then.*
 tango, tetigi, tactum 3. *to touch; tangi de coelo, to be struck by lightning.*
 tanquam, adv. *just as, as, as if, as though, as it were.*
 Tantālus, i, m. *Tantalus.*
 tanto (in comp.), *so much the.*
 tantopere, adv. *so greatly.*
 tantum, only.
 tantus 3. *so great.*
 tantusdem, tādem, tundem, *just so great (much, long).*
 tarditas, ātis, f. *slowness.*
 tardus 3. *slow.*
 Tarentum, i, n. *Tarentum (a city).*
 Tarquinii, orum, m. *Tarquinii (a city).*
 Tarquinius, i, m. *Tarquinius.*
 tectum, i, n. *house, roof.*
 teges, gītis, f. *covering, mat.*
 tego, xi, ctum 3. *to cover.*
 tegumentum, i, n. *covering.*
 tellus, ūris, f. *the earth.*
 telum, i, n. *arrow, dart.*
 temere, adv. *rashly, without reason.*
 temeritas, ātis, f. *rashness, hastiness.*
 temperantia, ae, f. *temperance.*
 temp̄ero 1. *to moderate; non temp. mihi quin, I cannot refrain from.*
 tempestas, ātis, f. *time; 2) weather, storm.*
 templum, i, n. *temple.*
 tempus, ōris, n. *time; tempore, at the right time.*
 tenax, ācis, c. gen. *persevering, tenacious.*
 tendo, tetendi, tensum and tentum 3. *to extend, distend; ad aliquid, to strive after something.* [ness.
 tenēbrae, arum, f. *darkness.*
 tenēo, nūi, ntum 2. *to hold, hold fast, occupy, restrain.*
 tener, ēra, ērum, *tender.*
 tento 1. *to try.*
 tenūis, e, *slender, small, slight.*
 tergum, i, n. *back.*
 terminus, i, m. *boundary, end.*
 terra, ae, f. *earth, land.*
 terrēo 2. *to frighten.*
 terrestris, e, *earthly; proelium terrestre, land-fight,*
 terribilis, e, *terrible.*
 territorium, i, n. *territory, dominion.*
 territo (without perf. or sup.) 1. *to frighten.*
 terror, ōris, m. *terror.*
 tertio, adv. *for the third time.*
 testamentum, i, n. *testament, will.*
 testis, is, c. *witness.*
 teter, tra, trum, *foul, hideous.*
 Teutōnus, i, m. *Teutonic.*
 texo, xūi, xtum 3. *to weave, braid.*
 thalērus, i, m. *dollar.*
 theatrum, i, n. *theatre.*
 Thebanus, i, m. *a Theban.*
 Themistocles, is, m. *Themistocles.*
 Theophrastus, i, m. *Theophrastus.*
 Thermopylae, arum, f. *a town in Boeotia.*
 Thespiāe, arum, f. *a town in Boeotia.*
 Thracia, ae, f. *Thrace.*
 Tibēris, is, n. *Tiber.*

- tibia, ae, *f.* shin-bone, pipe, flute.
- Tigris, is, *f.* Tigris.
- timēo, ūi 2. to fear.
- timiditas, atis, *f.* timidity.
- timidus 3. timid.
- timor, oris, *m.* fear.
- Timotheus, i, *m.* Timotheus.
- tingo, nxi, nctum 3. to color.
- toga, ae, *f.* outer garment.
- toleranter, *adv.* patiently.
- tolero 1. to endure.
- tollo, sustuli, sublatum 3. to raise up, bear away.
- Tomyris, idis, *f.* Tomyris.
- tondeo, totondi, tonsum 2. to shear.
- tonitru, us, *n.* thunder.
- tono, ūi 1. to thunder.
- tonsor, oris, *m.* barber.
- tonstricula, ae, *f.* a female barber.
- tormentum, i, *n.* torture.
- torpeo, ūi 2. to be torpid, inactive.
- torqueo, torsi, tortum 2. to torment, torture.
- torques, is, *m.* neck-chain.
- torrens, tis, *m.* torrent.
- torreo, torrui, tostum 2. to dry, roast.
- tortus 3. twisted.
- torus, i, *m.* protuberance; 2) muscle.
- torvus, 3. stern.
- tot, so many.
- totidem, just so many.
- totus 3. the whole.
- tractatio, onis, *f.* handling, pursuit.
- tracto 1. to handle, pursue, perform.
- trado, didi, ditum 3. to deliver over, give, surrender, relate.
- tradux, ucis, *m.* a vine branch, vine-layer.
- tragoedia, ae, *f.* tragedy.
- traho, traxi, tractum 3. to draw.
- trahico, jeci, jectum 3. to throw over, place.
- transduco, duxi, ductum 3. to lead over.
- transseo, ii, itum, ire, to pass by, pass over.
- transfero, tuli, latum 3. to transfer, change to another place.
- transfigo, xi, xum 3. to transfix, stab.
- transgredior, gressus sum 3. to pass over.
- transigo, egi, actum 3. to bring about, transact.
- transilio, silui, sultum 4. to leap over.
- transitus, us, *m.* passage over.
- transno 1. to swim over.
- transmitto, missi, missum 3. to let through.
- Trasimenus, i, *m.* Trasimenus (a lake).
- tremo, ūi 3. to tremble.
- trepidatio, onis, *f.* trepidation, haste.
- trepidus 3. trembling, agitated.
- tribunal, alis, *m.* tribunal.
- tribuo, ūi, utum 3. to distribute, give, impute.
- tribunus, i, *m.* tribune.
- tribus, us, *f.* tribe, company.
- tributum, i, *n.* tribute.
- tridens, tis, *m.* trident.
- triduum, i, *n.* space of three days.
- triennium, i, *n.* the space of three years.
- trigemini fratres, three brothers by the same birth.
- tristis, e, *sad, lowering.*
- triticus 3. of wheat.
- tritium, i, *n.* wheat.
- triumpho 1. to triumph.
- tropaeum, i, *n.* trophy.
- truncus 3. mutilated.
- trux, ucis, *wild, fierce.*
- tu, *pron.* thou.
- tuba, ae, *f.* trumpet.
- tuber, eris, *n.* lump.
- tuor, tuitus sum 2. to behold, keep, protect, defend.
- tum, *adv.* thereupon, then; at that time.
- tumeo, ūi 2. to swell.
- tumultus, us, *m.* tumult.
- tunc, *adv.* at that time, then, there.
- tundo, tutudi, tunsum 3. to beat, stun. [*ment.*]
- tunica, ae, *f.* under-garment.
- turba, ae, *f.* crowd.
- turbo 1. to cause confusion, disturb.
- turgidus 3. swollen.
- turpis, e, *disgraceful, base.*
- turpitudō, inis, *f.* baseness.
- turris, is, *f.* tower.
- turtur, uris, *m.* turtle dove.
- tussis, is, *f.* cough.
- tutor, oris, *m.* teacher.
- tutus 3. safe.
- tuus 3. thy, thine.
- Tyndaridae, arum, *m.* Castor and Pollux (sons of Tyndarus, king of Sparta, and Leda).
- tyrannus, i, *m.* tyrant.
- Tyrius, i, *m.* Tyrian.

U.

- Uber, uberis, *abounding in, rich.*
- uber, eris, *n.* udder.
- ubertas, atis, *f.* richness, copiousness.
- ubi, *adv.* where; 2) *conj.* as soon as, when.
- ubicunque, wherever;
- ubicunque gentium, where in all the world.
- ubiam, *adv.* where then.
- Ubius, i, *n.* a Ubian.
- ubivis, *adv.* where you will.
- ulciscor, ultus sum 3. *c.* acc. to take revenge upon some one.
- ullus 3. any one.
- ulmus, i, *f.* elm.
- ultimus 3. last; ultima Italia, the remotest part of Italia.
- ultor, oris, *m.* avenger.
- umbra, ae, *f.* shade.

- umbracŭlum, i, n. *shade*.
 umbrŭsus 3. *shady*.
 una, adv. *at the same time, together*.
 unda, ae, f. *wave*.
 unde, adv. *whence*.
 undique, adv. *from all sides*.
 ungo (unguo), nxi, nctum 3. *to anoint*.
 unguis, is, m. *nail, claw*.
 universus 3. *whole*.
 unquam, adv. *ever*.
 unus 3. *one; only, alone*.
 unusquisque, unaquaque, unumquidque and unumquodque, each one (§ 31, 7).
 urbānus 3. *belonging to the city, city-like*.
 urbs, bis, f. *city*.
 urgĕo, rsi 2. *to press, oppress*.
 ursus, i, m. *a bear*.
 usque, adv. *until*.
 usus, ūs, m. *use*.
 ut, adv. *as, even as*.
 ut, conj. *that, in order that, that not (§106); as [§ 111, 1. b)]; ut primum, as soon as*.
 utcunque, adv. *however*.
 uter, tris, m. *leathern bag*.
 uter, tra, trum, which of the two.
 uterque, utrāque, utrumque, each (of the two), both.
 utilis, e, *useful*.
 utilitas, ātis, f. *use, advantage*.
 utinam, conj. *with subj. O that*.
 utor, ūsus sum 3. c. abl. *to use*. [side.
 utrinque, adv. *on each*
 utrum, interrogative word [§ 116, 3, b. d)].
 uva, ae, f. *grape*.
 uvidŭlus 3. *slightly moist*.
- V.
- Vacca, ae, f. *cow*.
 vacillo 1. *to rock, waver*.
 vacŭus 3. c. abl. *free from, empty*.
 vae, a'as!
 vagor 1. *to wander*.
 valde, adv. *very much*.
 valĕo 2. *to be well; be sound, strong, able; valeat, valĕant, adieu to something; 2) to avail*.
 valetŭdo, inis, f. *health*.
 validus 3. *strong*.
 valles, is, f. *valley*.
 vannus, i, f. *corn-fan*.
 vanus 3. *vain*.
 vario 1. *to vary*.
 varius 3. *various*.
 varix, icis, m. *swollen vein*.
 vas, vāsis, n. (plur. vasa, ōrum, n.) *vessel, vase*.
 vasto 1. *to lay waste*.
 vates, is, *prophet*.
 vectigal, ālis, n. *toll, tax, income*.
 vectis, is, m. *lever, bolt*.
 vehĕmens, tis, *vehement*.
 vehementer, adv. *vehemently, violently, greatly*.
 veho, vexe, vectum 3. *to carry, bring, equo vehi, to ride, be borne off*.
 Vejens, ntis, m. *a Vejentian*.
 vel, conj. *or; even; vel — vel, either — or*.
 velox, ōcis, *swift*.
 velum, i, n. *sail*.
 velut, adv. *even as, as*.
 vena, ae, f. *vein*.
 venabŭlum, i, n. *hunting-spear*.
 venālis, e, *venal, for sale*.
 venatio, ōnis, f. *a hunt*.
 venātus, ūs, m. *a hunt*.
 venātor, ōris, m. *hunter*.
 vendo, dīdi, dītum 3. *to sell*.
 venĕnum, i, n. *poison*.
 venĕo, iī, ire, *to be for sale*.
 venĕror 1. *to revere*.
 vĕnĭo, vĕni, ventum 4. *to come*.
 venor 1. *to hunt*.
 venter, tris, m. *the belly*.
 ventus, i, m. *wind*.
 Venus, ĕris, f. *Venus*.
- venustas, ātis, f. *gracefulness*.
 vepres, is, m. *thorn-bush, bramble*.
 ver, veris, n. *spring*.
 verber, ĕris, n. (commonly plur. verbĕra), blous.
 verbĕro 1. *to beat*.
 verbum, i, n. *word*.
 verecundia, ae, f. *respect*.
 verecundus 3. *respectful, modest*.
 verĕor, verĭtus sum 2. *to reverence, have respect for, to fear*.
 veritas, ātis, f. *truth*.
 vermĭs, is, m. *worm*.
 vernus 3. *vernal; vernus dies, a spring day*.
 vero, conj. *but; 2) adv. (as an answer) yes*.
 Verres, is, m. *Verres*.
 versor, i, in c. abl. *to be occupied in a thing*.
 versus, ūs, m. *a verse*.
 verto, rti, rsum 3. *to turn; v. in fugam, to put to flight*.
 verum, conj. *yet, but*.
 verus 3. *true*.
 vervex, ĕcis, m. *a wether*.
 vescor (without perf.) 3. c. abl. *to eat*.
 vesper, ĕri and ĕris, m. *evening; vespĕri, at evening*.
 Vestālis virgo, *vestal virgin*.
 vester, tra, trum, *your*.
 vestigium, i, n. *footstep*.
 vestio 4. *to clothe, attire*.
 vestis, is, f. *a garment, cloth*.
 Vesuvius, i, m. *Vesuvius*.
 veto, ūi, itum 1. *to forbid*.
 vetus, ĕris, *old*.
 vetustas, ātis, f. *age*.
 vetustus 3. *old*.
 vexo 1. *to vex, annoy*.
 via, ae, f. *way*.
 viātor, ōris, m. *traveller*.
 vicinus, i, m. *neighbor*.
 victor, ōris, *victorious; subst. conqueror*.

victoria, ae, <i>f.</i> victory.	Virgilius, i, <i>m.</i> Virgil.	volito 1. to fly, flutter.
victus, ūs, <i>m.</i> food.	virgo, ōnis, <i>f.</i> virgin.	volo 1. to fly.
vicus, i, <i>m.</i> village.	viridis, e, <i>green.</i>	volo, volūi, velle, to wish
vīdeo, vīdi, vīsum 2. to see; pass. seem, appear.	virītim, <i>adv.</i> man by man.	(would). [sci.]
vigēo, ūi 2. to be vigorous.	virtus, ūtis, <i>f.</i> virtue, bravery.	Volsci, orum, <i>m.</i> the Vol-
vigil, ūlis, <i>m.</i> watchman.	virus, i, <i>n.</i> poison.	volūceris, is, <i>f.</i> bird.
vigilantia, ae, <i>f.</i> watchfulness.	vis, (<i>gen.</i> and <i>dat.</i> wanting; plur. vires, ium), <i>f.</i> power, force, multitude.	voluntas, ātis, <i>f.</i> will.
vigilia, ae, <i>f.</i> watch, night-watch.	viscus, ěris, <i>n.</i> (commonly plur.) inwards.	voluptas, ātis, <i>f.</i> pleasure, sensuality.
vigīlo 1. to watch.	visum, i, <i>n.</i> appearance.	volvo, vi, ūtum 3. to roll.
vigor, ōris, <i>m.</i> power.	Visurgis, is, <i>m.</i> the Weser.	voŭeo, voŭi, votum 2. to vow.
vilis, e, <i>vile, evil.</i>	vita, ae, <i>f.</i> life.	vox, vocis, <i>f.</i> voice.
villa, ae, <i>f.</i> country seat.	vitiositas, ātis, <i>f.</i> vice, viciousness.	Vulcanus, i, <i>m.</i> Vulcan.
vincio, nxi, netum 4. to bind, restrain.	vitiōsus 3. defective.	vulgāris, e, <i>common.</i>
vinco, vici, victum 3. to conquer, vanquish, overcome.	vitis, is, <i>f.</i> vine.	vulgus, i, <i>n.</i> people, the common people.
vinculum, i, <i>n.</i> bond, chain.	vitium, i, <i>n.</i> fault, vice.	vulnĕro 1. to wound.
vendex, dīcis, <i>m.</i> defender, avenger.	vito 1. to avoid.	vulnus, ěris, <i>n.</i> wound.
vindico 1. to claim; avenge.	vitulinus 3. of calf.	vulpes, is, <i>f.</i> fox.
vinĕa, ae, <i>a</i> vine.	vitulus, i, <i>m.</i> calf.	vultur, ūris, <i>m.</i> vulture.
vinum, i, <i>n.</i> wine.	vitupĕro, 1. to censure.	vultus, ūs, <i>m.</i> expression, feature, countenance.
violō 1. to violate.	vivo, vixi, victum 3. to live.	
vipĕra, ae, <i>f.</i> viper.	vivus 3. living.	X.
vir, vīri, <i>m.</i> man.	vix, <i>adv.</i> scarcely.	Xenophon, ontis, <i>m.</i> Xenophon.
virĕo, ūi 2. to flourish.	vociferor 1. to cry out, screech.	Xerxes, is, <i>m.</i> Xerxes.
	voco 1. to call, invite.	Z.
		Zama, ae, <i>f.</i> Zama.
		Zeno, ōnis, <i>m.</i> Zeno.
		zingiber, ěris, <i>n.</i> ginger.

II. ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY.

<p>A.</p> <p>Abate, mollire.</p> <p>Ability, facultas, ātis, <i>f.</i></p> <p>Able (to be), posse, quire, valere; not able, nequire.</p> <p>Abode, domicilium, i, <i>n.</i></p> <p>Abounding in, abundare, locuples, ětis.</p> <p>About, circiter.</p> <p>Above, superus.</p> <p>Abroad, peregre.</p> <p>Absent, absens, tis.</p> <p>Absent (to be), abesse.</p>	<p>Absolve, absolvĕre.</p> <p>Abstain, abstinĕre.</p> <p>Abundance, abundantia, ae, <i>f.</i> copia, ae, <i>f.</i>; to have — abundare c. abl.</p> <p>Accompany, comitari.</p> <p>Accomplished, eruditus 3.</p> <p>Accounted (to be), existimari, haberi.</p> <p>Accuse, accusari</p> <p>Accustomed (to be), solere, consuescere.</p>	<p>Acknowledge, confiteri, fateri; — freely, profiteri.</p> <p>Acorn, glans, dis, <i>f.</i></p> <p>Acquainted with, peritus 3. consultus 3. gnarus 3. c. gen.</p> <p>Acquainted with, (to be), novisse [§ 76, 3]; — thoroughly, pernoscere.</p> <p>Acquire, parare, comparrare (sibi).</p> <p>Acre, jugerum, i, <i>n.</i></p>
--	---	---

- Act*, agĕre.
Actor, histriō, ōnis, *m.*
Acute, acūtus 3. subtīlis, *e.*
Adapted to, accommodātus 3. *c. dat. or ad c. acc.*
Add, addĕre.
Address, allōqui.
Adherbal, Adherbal, ālis, *m.*
Admirable, admirābilis, *e.*
Admiration, admiratio, ōnis, *f.*
Admire, admīrari.
Admonish, mōnĕre, admōnĕre.
Admonition, admonitio, ōnis, *f.*
Adopt, adsciscĕre.
Adorn, ornāre, adornāre, comāre.
Advantage, lucrū, *i, n.* commōdum, *i, n.* emolumentum, *i, n.* fructus, ūs, *m.*
Adversity, res adversae.
Advise, suadĕre.
Æduan, Ædūus, *i, m.*
Ægypt, Ægyptus.
Ægyptian, Ægypticus 3.
Æmilius, Æmīlius, *i, m.*
Æneas, Ænĕas, *ae, m.*
Affair, res, rĕi, *f.*
Affected, affectus 3.
Affirm, aio.
Afford, praeberĕ.
Africa, Africa, *f.*
After that, postquam, *c. ind. perf.*
Against (prep.), adversus.
Age, aetas, ātis, *f.*
Agesilaus, Agesilaus, *i, m.*
Agree to (on condition), pangĕre.
Agreeable, gratus 3. jucundus 3. suavis, *e.*
Agricola, Agricōla, *ae, m.*
Agriculture, agricultūra, *ae, f.*
Aid, auxilium, *i, n.* praesidium, *i, n.*
Aid, adjŭvāre *c. acc. succurrĕre c. dat.; to*
- lend aid*, opitulāri *c. dat.*
Alas! vae!
Alcibiades, Alcibiādes, is, *m.*
Alexander, Alexander, dri, *m.* [ae, *f.*
Alexandria, Alexandria,
All, omnes, *ia.*
Alliance, sociĕtas, ātis, *f.* foedus, ĕris, *n.*
Allobroges, Allobrōges, um, *m.*
Allow, jubĕre.
Ally, socius, *i, m.*
Almost, fere, ferme, paene, prope.
Aloe, alĕe, *es, f.*
Alone, solus 3. unus 3.
Alps, Alpes, ium, *f.*
Already, jam.
Also, etiā, quoque.
Although, quamvis.
Always, semper.
Amazon, Amāzon, ōnis, *f.*
Ambassador, legātus, *i, m.*
Ambuscade, insidiāe, arum, *f.*
Amiable, amābilis, *e.*
Ample, amplus 3.
Anaxagoras, Anaxagōras, *ae, m.*
Ancestors, majores, um.
Ancient, antiqūus 3. vetus, ĕris, priscus 3.
Anciently, antiquitus.
Ancus Martius, Ancus Martius, *i, m.*
And, et, ac, atque, que.
And not, neque (nec).
Anger, ira, *ae, f.* iracundia, *ae, f.*
Angry, irātus 3.
Announce, annuntīare.
Annoy, vexāre.
Announcement, oraculum, *i, n.*
Another (of several), alius, *a, ud.*
Another's, aliĕnus 3.
Answer, respondĕre.
Antiochus, Antiōchus, *i, m.*
Antiquity, antiquitas,
- ātis, *f.* (= ancientness), vetustas, ātis, *f.*
Anvil, incus, ūdis, *f.*
Anxious (am), curae mihi est.
Anxiously, anxīĕ.
Any, ullus 3.
Ape, simia, *ae, f.*
Apollo, Apollo, ĩnis, *m.*
Appear, apparĕre, vidĕri.
Appease, placāre.
Applaud, applaudĕre *c. dat.*
Apple, malum, *i, n.*
Apple-tree, malus, *i, f.*
Apply one's self to something, incumbĕre *in or ad aliquid.*
Apprehend, verĕri, metuĕre.
Apprehension, metus, ūs, *m.*
Approach, appropinquāre, adventāre.
Approach, aditus, ūs, *m.*
Approbation, approbatio, ōnis, *f.*
Approve, apprōbare, probare.
Arch, fornix, ĩcis, *m.*
Archimedes, Archimĕdes, is, *m.*
Ardea, Ardea, *ae, f.*
Ardor, ardor, ōris, *m.*
Ariovistus, Ariovistus, *i, m.*
Arise, surgĕre, cooriri, exoriri.
Aristides, Aristīdes, is, *m.*
Aristotle, Aristotĕles, is, *m.*
Arms, arma, ōrum, *n.*
Army, exercitus, ūs, *m.*
Arpinum, Arpīnum, *i, n.*
Arpinum (of), *subst. Arpīnas, ātis, m.*
Artist, artifĕx, ĩcis, *m. and f.*
Arrange (line of battle), aciem instruĕre.
Arrival, adventus, ūs, *m.*
Arrogance, arrogantia, *ae, f.*
Arrow, sagitta, *ae, f.*

- Art, ars, tis, f.*
Artaxerxes, Artaxerxes, is, m.
Artificer, artifex, icis, m. and f.
As, ut, quum, velut, quomodo, quemadmodum, ac (atque).
As if, quasi, ac si, tanquam.
As often as, quoties.
As soon as, ubi, simul atque, [§ 111, 2]
As well—as (also), et—et.
Ascend, ascendere.
Ascertain, experiri, resciscere, compere.
Ashes, cinis, eris, m.
Asia, Asia, ae, f.
Ask, quaerere (ex, ab, aliquo), interrogare, rogare (aliquem).
Ass, asinus, i, m.
Assassin, sicarius, i, m.
Assault, oppugnare.
Assemble (transit.), convocare; (intransit.) congregare, confluere.
Assembly, coetus, us, m.
Assent to, assentiri.
Assiduously, assidue.
Assign, tribuere.
Assist, juvare, adjuvare c. acc.; succurrere, auxiliari c. dat.
Assyria, Assyria, ae, f.
Athenian (a. and s.) Atheniensis, is, m.
Attach one's self to some one, se applicare ad aliquem.
Attack, impetus, us, m.
Attack, aggradi, adoriri.
Attacking, oppugnatio, onis, f.
Attain, assequi.
Attalus, Attalus, i, m.
Attempt, conari, moliri, suscipere.
Attend to, attendere.
Attention to, cultus, us, m.
Attentive, attentus 3.
Attentively, attente.
Atticus, Atticus, i, m.
Attic, Atticus 3.
- Augustus, Augustus, i, m.*
Autumn, autumnus, i, m.
Avail, valere.
Avarice, avaritia, ae, f.
Avaricious, avarus 3. c. gen.
Avenge (one's self on one), ulcisci.
Avert, avertere.
Avoid, vitare, evitare.
Await, opperiri.
Axe, securis, is, f.
Axle, axis, is, m.
- B.
- Babylon, Babylion, onis, f. [3]*
Babylonian, Babylonius
Bad, malus 3.
Badge, insigne, is, n.
Bake, torrere.
Band, agmen, inis, n. manus, us, f.
Banisher, expultrix, icis, f.
Bank (of a river), ripa, ae, f.
Bargain (to make), pacisci.
Bargain, pangere.
Base, foedus 3. turpis, e, sordidus, a, um.
Basely, foede.
Battle, pugna, ae, f. proelium, i, n.
Be, esse; — in something, versari in aliqua re; — present, adesse, interesse; — wanting, desse, deficere.
Bear, portare, gestare, ferre; — off, reportare.
Beard, barba, ae, f.
Beast, bestia, ae, f.
Beat, ferire.
Beautiful, pulcher, chra, chrum
Beauty, pulchritudo, inis, f.
Beautifully, pulchre.
Because, quia, quod, quoniam.
Become, fieri, evadere;
- it becomes, decet; — it does not become, dedecet (§ 89, 3).*
Becoming, decorus 3.
Before, ante, prius, antea, antequam, priusquam; — that, antequam, priusquam.
Beget, gignere.
Begin, incipere, ordiri, exordiri.
Begun (to have), cepisse.
Beginning, initium, principium, i, n.
Beggar, mendicus, i, m.
Behold, adspicere, tueri, spectare,
Belief, opinio, onis, f.
Believe, credere, putare.
Bellows, follis, is, n.
Belly, alvus, i, f.
Belong to some one, esse alicujus (§ 88, 8).
Bend, flectere.
Beneficence, beneficus.
Benefit, utilitas, atis, f.
Benefit, prodesse.
Beset, circumsehere.
Besides, porro.
Besiege, obsidere, circumsehere.
Besmeared, oblinere.
Bestow, largiri, adhibere, praestare; — upon, collocare in c. abl.
Etake one's self, se conferre; — back, se recipere.
Betraying, proditio, onis, f.
Bid, jubere.
Bind, vincire.
Binding (to make), adstringere.
Bird, avis, is, f.
Birds of passage, volucres adventitiae.
Birth day, natalis, is, m.
Bite, mordere.
Bithynia, Bithynia, ae, f.
Bitter, amarus 3. acerbus 3.
Black, niger, gra, grum.

- Blind*, coecus 3.
Blockade, obsidio, ōnis, f.
Blood, sangūis, īnis, m.
Bloody, atrox, ōcis.
Bloom, florere.
Blooming, florens, tis.
Blows, verbera, n.
Boar, aper, pri, m; — wild, aper, pri, m.
Boat, linter, tris, f.
Body, corpus, ōris, n.
Bodily powers, corpōris vires.
Boeotian (s.), Boeotus, i, m.
Bold, audax, ācis.
Boldness, audacia, ae, f.
Bolt, vectis, is, m.
Bone, os, ossis, n.
Book, liber, bri, m. co-dex, icis, m.
Booty, praeda, ae, f.
Border, finis, is, m.
Born (to be), nasci.
Born, natus 3.
Both — and, et — et.
Bow, arcus, ūs, m.
Boy, puer, ěri, m.
Bracelet, spinther ěris, n.
Bramble, sentis, is, m. vepres, is, m.
Brand, notāre.
Brass, aes, aëris, n.
Brave, fortis, e.
Bravely, fortiter.
Bravery, fortitudo, īnis, f. virtus, ūtis, f.
Bread, panis, is, m.
Break down (= overcome), frangere.
Break down, rescindere; — forth, erumpere, cooriri; — in, ir-rumpere; — break out afresh, denūo erumpere; — through, perrumpere.
Breakfast, prandere.
Breast, pectus, ōris, n.
Bridge, pons, tis, m.
Bright, (= clear), serē-nus 3.
Bring, ferre, arcessere; — about, efficere; — forward, affer-
- re; — up, edūcāre; back, referre.
Bring war upon some one, bellum inferre alicui.
Britain, Britannia, ae, f.
Broad, latus 3.
Brother, frater, tris, m.
Brutus, Brutus, i, m.
Build, aedificāre.
Building, aedificium, i, n.
Bundle, fascis, is, m.
Burn, ardere, flagrāre; — up, deflagrāre, combūrere.
Bushel, modius, i, m.
Busily, sedulo.
Business, negotium, i, n.
Business, it is the business of some one, est alicujus.
Busy, sedulus 3.
Buy, emere.
But, autem, sed, at (§ 102, 2. b).
But if, sin.
Butter, butyrum, i, n.
Butterfly, papilio, ōnis, m.
- C.
- Cabbage*, crambe, es, f. caulis, is, m.
Caesar, Caesar, āris, m.
Call, appellāre, vocāre, nomināre, dicere; — to mind, recordāri c. acc. or gen.; — together, convocāre.
Called (to be), vocāri, nomināri, appellāri. (§ 81, 2. c).
Callisthenes, Callisthēnes, is, m.
Camel, camelus, i, m.
Camillus, Camillus, i, m.
Camp, castra, pl.
Can, posse, quire.
Cannot, nequire.
Canal, canālis, is, m.
Capital punishment, supplicium, i, n.
Capitol, Capitolium, i, n.
Caprice, libido, īnis, f.
Arbitrium, i, n.
Captive (to take), capere.
- Capture*, expugnare.
Care, cura, ae, f.
Care, take care, curāre, cavere.
Care for, consulere, providere, c. dat.
Careful, diligens, tis.
Carefully, diligenter.
Carefulness, diligentia, ae, f.
Caria, Caria, ae, f.
Carpenter, faber lignarius.
Carrot, siser, ěris, n.
Carry, portare, ferre; — on, gerere; — over, trajicere; — forth, efferre.
Carthage, Carthāgo, īnis, f.
Carthaginian, Carthaginiensis, is, m.
Cassius, Cassius, i, m.
Catch, capere, deprehendere.
Catiline, Catilina, ae, m.
Cato, Cato, ōnis, m.
Cause, causa, ae, f.
Cause (to do something), curare with gerundive.
Cautious, cautus 3.
Cease, desinere, desistere.
Celebrate, celebrare.
Censure, vituperatio, ōnis, f.
Censure, vituperare.
Cerberus, Cerberus, i, m.
Ceres, Ceres, ěris, f.
Certain, certus 3. [m.
Chabrias, Chabrias, ae,
Chain, vinculum, i, n.
Chain, vincire.
Chalcis, Chalcis, idis, f.
Chance, casus, us, m.; by chance, fortuito.
Change, vicis, is, f.
Change, mutare.
Character, mores, um, m.
Charge one with something, insimulare aliquem alicujus rei.
Charles, Carolus, i, m.
Chatter, garrere.

- Check*, compesci.
Cheer, exhilārāre, delectāre.
Cheerfully, hilariter, serēne.
Cheese, casēūs, i, m.
Cherish, fovēre.
Cherry, cerāsūm, i, n.
Cherry-tree, cerāsus, i, f.
Chicken, pullus, i, m.
Chick-pea, cicer, ēris, n.
Chief-city, caput, ītis, n.
Childish, puerilis, e.
Children (in reference to their parents), libēri, ōrum, m.; — (without such reference), puēri, m.
Choice, voluntas, ātis, f.
Choose, eligēre, creāre; — rather, malle.
Christ, Christus, i, m.
Church, ecclesiā, ae, f.
Chrysogonus, Chrysogōnus, i, m.
Cicero, Cicēro, ōnis, m.
Cimon, Cimo, ōnis, m.
Cinna, Cinna, ae, m.
Circe, Circe, es, f.
Circle, orbis, is, m.
Circle of the earth, orbis terrārum.
Circuit, circuitus, ūs, m.
Citadel, arx, cis, f.
Citizen, civis, is, c.
Citizenship, civitas, ātis, f.
City, urbs, bis, f.
Civil, civīlis, e.
Civil war, bellum civīle.
Class, classis, is, f.
Claw, unguis, is, m.
Clear, limpīdus 3.
Clear (not cloudy), serēnus 3.
Cleomenes, Cleomēnes, is, m. [f.
Cleopatra, Cleopātra, ae,
Cliff, rupes, is, f.
Clitus, Clitus, i, m.
Clodius, Clodius, i, m.
Close, claudēre.
Clothe, vestire.
Cloud, nubes, is, f.
Club, fustis, is, m.
Coalesce, coalescēre.
Coelius, Coelīus, i, m.
- Coin*, procūdēre.
Colchis, Colchis, īdis, f.
Cold, frigidus 3.
Cold (s.), frigus ōris, n.
Collect, colligēre.
Colony, coloniā, ae, f.
Color, color, ōris, m.
Comb, pecten, īnis, m.
Come, venīre; desire to come, accīre; — out, evadēre, fugēre, effugēre; — to, advenīre; — together, convenīre; — to pass, fiēri, incidēre.
Command, imperāre c. dat.
Commence, aggrēdi, auspīcāri.
Commit, committēre; — to, committēre.
Common, commūnis, e.
Companion, socius, i, m.
Compare, comparāre, conferre.
Compel, cogēre.
Complain, queri; — of, accusāre.
Complain (= weep), ejulāre.
Comply with, obsēqui.
Composed, composītus, 3.
Composition, confectio, ōnis, f.
Conceal, occultāre, occultāre, celāre, c. dupl. acc. [§ 89, 7].
Concealed, occultus 3.
Concede, concēdēre.
Concern, cura, ae, f.
Conclude (of a league), icēre.
Condemn, damnāre, condemnāre; — to death, capītis.
Condescending, submissus 3.
Condition, conditio, ōnis, f.
Conduce to something, for some one, esse c. dupl. dat. [§ 90, 5. b)].
Confer, conferre.
Confess, confitēri.
Confidence (to have), fidem habēre, c. d.
- Confidently*, audacter.
Confirm, confirmāre.
Conflagration, incendiūm, i, n.
Confused, dissōnus 3.
Confusion, confusio, ōnis, f.
Confusion (to throw in to), pertubāre.
Connect, connectēre.
Conqueror, victor, ōris, m.
Conscience, conscientia, ae, f.; a good conscience, conscientia recta.
Conscious, conscius 3.
Consciousness, conscientia, ae, f.
Consider, intuēri, pervidēre, reputāre.
Consider as, existimāre, habēre, judicāre, arbitrāri, ducēre c. dupl. acc. [§ 89, 7. a.)]
Consist of (in), constāre.
Consolation, solatiūm, i, n. consolatio, ōnis, f.
Consort, uxor, ōris, f.
Conspiracy, conjuratio, ōnis, f.
Conspirator, conjurātus, i, m.
Constitute, constitūere.
Consul, consul, ūlis, m.
Consult, consultāre.
Consume, absūmēre, exēdēre, comēdēre.
Contain, continēre.
Contempt, contemptio, ōnis, f.
Contend, certāre, decertāre.
Contented, contentus 3.
Continue, pergēre.
Continuous, continūus 3.
Contracted, angustus 3.
Contrary (on the), contra.
Conversation, sermo, ōnis, m.
Convict, convincēre.
Convince, persuadēre c. dat.
Corinth, Corinthus, i, f.
Corinthian, Corinthius 3.
Cork-tree, suber, ēris, n.
Corn (a), granum, i, n.

- Cornelius Nepos*, *Corne-*
lius (i) *Nepos* (ōtis),
m.
Corn-fan, *vannus*, i, *f.*
Corpse, *cadāver*, ēris, *n.*
Correct, *corrīgēre*.
Correctly, *recte*.
Corrode, *exēdēre*.
Corrupt, *corrupēre*.
Cost, *stāre*, *constāre*.
Costly, *pretiōsus* 3.
Cover, *tegēre*; — *up*,
obruēre.
Covetous, *avārus* 3.
Cough, *tussis*, is, *f.*
Counsel, *consīlium*, i, *n.*
Countenance, *ōs*, *ōris*, *n.*
vultus, *ūs*, *m.*
Country, *terra*, *ae*, *f.* *re-*
gīo, *ōnis*, *f.* *rus*, *ruris*,
n. *ager*, *gri*, *m.*; — (as
a residence), *patrīa*,
ae, *f.*
Countryman, *rusticus*, i,
m.
Courage, *animus*, i, *m.*
Courageously, *aequo ani-*
mo.
Course, *cursus*, *ūs*, *m.*
Cow, *vacca*, *ae*, *f.* *bos*,
bovis, *c.*
Cowardice, *ignavīa*, *ae*, *f.*
Cowardly, *ignāvus* 3.
Crassus, *Crassus*, i, *m.*
Creak, *crepāre*.
Create, *creāre*.
Creator, *creātor*, *ōris*, *m.*
Crime, *scelus*, ēris, *n.*
Croak, *coaxāre*.
Croesus, *Croesus*, i, *m.*
Crop, *messis*, *īs*, *f.* *seges*,
ētis, *f.*
Croton, *Croto*, *ōnis*, *m.*
Crow, *corvus*, i, *m.*
Cruel, *saevus* 3. *imma-*
nis, *e.*
Cruelty, *crudelitas*, *ātis*, *f.*
Crush, *contundēre*.
Cry, *clamāre*.
Cry (plaintive), *quere-*
la, *ae*, *f.* [*m.*]
Cucumber, *cucūmis*, ēris,
Cultivate, *collēre*, *exco-*
lvere.
Cultivation, *culture*, *cul-*
tūs, *ūs*, *m.*
Cunning, *astutīa*, *ae*, *f.*
Cup, *calix*, *īcis*, *m.*
Curb, *continēre*, *compe-*
scēre, *perdōmāre*.
Cure, *curātio*, *ōnis*, *f.*
Cure, *sanāre*, *c.* *acc.*; *me-*
dēri *c.* *dat.*
Curious, *Curīus*, i, *m.*
Custom, *mos*, *ōris*, *m.*
Customary, *usitātus* 3.
Cut off, *resēcāre*, *desē-*
cāre.
Cyrus, *Cyrus*, i, *m.*

D.
Dagger, *sica*, *ae*, *f.*
Daily, *quotidie*.
Dance, *saltāre*.
Danger, *periculum*, i, *n.*
Dare, *audēre*.
Darius, *Darius*, i, *m.*
Darkness, *caligo*, *īnis*, *f.*
Dart, *telum*, i, *n.*
Datamas, *Datāmas*, *an-*
tis, *m.*
Daughter, *filīa*, *ae*, *f.*
Dawn, *illucescēre*.
Day, *dies*, *ēi*, *m.*; *by day*,
interdiū.
Dead body, *cadāver*, ēris,
n.
Dear, *carus* 3.; *to hold*
dear, *carum habēre*.
Death, *mors*, *tis*, *f.*
Decay, *interīre*, *occidēre*,
Deceive, *fallēre*, *delu-*
dēre.
December, *December*,
bris, *m.*
Decrease, *decrescēre*.
Dedicate, *dedicāre*.
Deed, *factum*, i, *n.*
Deep, *altus* 3.
Defend, *defendēre*.
Defender, *vindex*, *īcis*,
c.
Delay, *cunctāri*.
Deliberate, *deliberāre*,
consultāre.
Deliberately, *consulto*.
Delicate, *tenūis*, *e.*
Delight, *oblectamentum*,
i, *n.*
Delight, *delectāre*. *oblec-*
tāre, *permulcēre*.
Delight (with), *libenter*.
Delightful, *jucundus* 3.
suavis, *e.*
Delightfully, *suaviter*.
Deliver from something,
liberāre aliqua re, *le-*
vāre c. *abl.*; — *up*,
tradēre.
Delphi, *Delphi*, *orum*, *m.*
Demand, *postulāre*, *pos-*
cēre, *deposcēre*; —
back, *reposcēre*.
Demaratus, *Demarātus*,
i, *m.*
Demolish, *evertēre*.
Demosthenes, *Demos-*
thēnes, *is*, *m.*
Dense, *densus* 3.
Deny, *negāre*.
Danger, *deplōrāre*.
Deprive, *privāre*, *spoli-*
āre c. *abl.* [*dēre*.]
Deride, *deridēre*, *irri-*
Descend, *descendēre*.
Descendant, *prōles*, *is*, *f.*
Desert, *desērāre*, *relin-*
quēre.
Desert, *merītum*, i, *n.*
Deserve, *merēri*, *dignum*
esse; — *of something*,
merēri de aliqua re.
Designedly, *consulto*.
Desire, *cupīdo*, *īnis*, *f.*,
cupiditas, *ātis*, *f.*, *ap-*
petītus, *us*, *m.*, *ardor*,
ōris, *m.*; — *unre-*
strained, *libīdo*, *īnis*, *f.*
Desire, *concupiscēre*, *cu-*
pēre. [*dus* 3.]
Desirous, *avīdus* 3. *cupī-*
Despair, *despērāre*.
Despise, *contemnēre*.
Destitute, *inops*, *ōpis*,
— *of*, *expers*, *rtis*,
exsors, *rtis*, *c.* *gen.*
Destroy, *delēre*, *destrū-*
ēre, *dirūēre*, *evertēre*,
excidēre.
Destruction, *exitium*, i,
n. *perniciēs*, *ēi*, *f.* [3.]
Destructive, *perniciōsus*
Detect, *detegēre*.
Deter, *deterrēre*, *abste-*
rere.
Determine, *constitūēre*,
decernēre.
Dtraction, *obtrectatio*,

- Deviate*, deflectĕre. *Disperse*, dispergĕre. nus őris, *n.*; *it is the*
Devote one's self, se de- *Displease*, displicĕre. *duty of some one*, ali-
 dĕre. *Disprove*, redarguĕre. *cujus est.*
Devour, devorāre. *Disputation*, disputātĭo, *Dwell*, habitāre.
Dialect, dialectus, *i, f.* ōnis, *f.*
Diamond, adāmas, antis, *Disquiet*, exagitāre. E.
m. *Dissatisfied* (to be) with *Each*, omnis, e, quisque.
Diana, Diana, ae, *f.* something, indignāri c. *Each of two*, uterque,
Dictator, dictātor, őris, acc.; *I am dissatisfied* utraque, utrumque.
m. with something, poeni- *Eager*, avidus 3.
Die, mori, obĭre. [*m.* et me alicujus rei. *Eagerly*, avide, cupĭde.
Dionysius, Dionysĭus, *i,* *Dissent*, dissentĭre. *Eagle*, aquĭla. ae, *f.*
Different, diversus 3. *Dissolve*, dissolvĕre. *Ear*, auris, is, *f.*
Difficult, difficĭlis, e. *Dissuade*, dissuādĕre. *Early*, matūrus 3; *too*
 gravis, e, ardūus 3. *Distaff*, colus, *i, f.* early, praematūrus 3.
Difficulty, difficultas, *Distinction*, discrĭmen, *Early* (adv.), matūre.
 ātis, *f.* ĩnis, *n.* *Earth*, terra, ae, *f.* tellus,
Difficultly, with difficulty, *Distinguish*, dijudĭcāre, ūris, *f.* humus, *i, f.*
 difficĭliter. *distingūĕre*; — *one's* *Earthly*, terrestris, e.
Diffuse, diffundĕre. *self*, excellere. *Earthquake*, terrae mo-
Dig, defodĕre; — *out* *Distinguished*, insignis, e, tus.
 or up, effodĕre, erūĕre. *clarus* 3. *Easily*, facĭle.
Dignity, dignĭtas, ātis, *f.* *Distribute*, distribūĕre, *Easy*, facilis, e.
 amplitūdo, ĩnis, *f.* *dispartĭre*, dividĕre c. *East*, oriens, ntis, *m.*
 gravĭtas, ātis, *f.* dat. *Eat*, edĕre, vesci; —
Diligence, diligentĭa, ae, *Distrust*, diffĭdĕre. down, depascere.
f. *Disturb*, turbāre, sollici- *Echo*, echo, ūs, *f.*
Diligent, dilĭgens, tis, in- tāre. *Edifice*, aedificĭum, *i, n.*
 dustriūs 3. *Disturbance*, perturbātĭo, *Effect*, effĭcĕre, creāre.
Diligently, diligenter, *ōnis, f.* *Effectual*, effĭcax, ācis.
 studiōse. *Divine*, divĭnus 3. *Effeminate*, effeminātus
Diminish, deminūĕre, 3.
 comminūĕre, minū- *Do*, agĕre, facĕre. *Effort*, studĭum, *i, n.*
 ĕre. *Dog*, canis, is, c. *Ether* — or, aut — aut,
Diphthong, diphthongus, vel — vel.
i, f. *Domestic*, domesticus 3. *Elbe*, Albis, is, *m.*
Disadvantage, incommod- *Dominion*, dominatĭo, *Elect*, eligĕre, delĭgere.
 dum, *i, n.* damnum, *i, n.* *Door*, fores, pl. *f.* *Elegant*, eligans, tis.
Disagreeable, injucundus *Doubt*, dubitāre. *Elegantly*, eleganter.
 3. ingrātus 3. insuā- *Doubtful*, dubĭus 3. an- *Elephant*, elephantus,
 vis, e. *Dowry*, dos, dōtis, *f.* *i, m.*
Discharge, fungi. [*f.* *Draught*, potus, ūs, *m.* *Elicit*, elicĕre.
Discipline, disciplĭna, ae, *Draw*, trahĕre, ducĕre, *Elm*, ulmus, *i, f.*
Discord, discordĭa, ae, *f.* haurĭre; — *forth*, *Eloquence*, eloquentĭa,
Discover, prospicĕre. elicĕre; — *together*, ae, *f.*
Discourse, loqui. *contrahĕre.* *Eloquent*, disertus 3.
Discourse, oratĭo, ōnis, *f.* *Dream*, somnĭum, *i, n.* *Embrace*, amplecti, com-
Disease, morbus, *i, m.* *Dress*, vestĭre. plecti.
Dishonorable, inhonestus *Drink*, potus, ūs, *m.* *Embracer*, acu pingĕre.
 3. *Drink*, bibĕre. *Eminent* (to be), emĭ-
Dismiss, dimittĕre. *Drive back*, propulsāre. *nĕre.*
Disparage, obtrectāre c. *Drive off*, explōdĕre. *Emit*, evōmĕre.
 dat *Drunken*, ebrĭus 3. *Emotion*, perturbatio
Dispel, discūtĕre, ab- *Duck*, anas, ātis, *f.* ōnis, *f.*
 stergĕre. *Duty*, officĭum, *i, n.* mu- őris, *m.*

- Emulate*, aemulāri.
Encompass, cingēre.
Encounter, proelium, i, n.
Encourage, hortāri, ad-
 hortāri, cohortāri.
End, finis, is, m.
End, finire.
Endeavor, studere.
Endowed, praeditus 3.
Endure, ferre, tolerāre,
 sustinere, perferre;
 — (= last), du-
 rare.
Enemy, hostis, is, m. in-
 imicus, i, m.
Enfeeble, hebitare, di-
 lūere, elidere.
Enigma, aenigma, ātis,
 n.
Enjoy, frui, perfrui c.
 abl.
Enjoyment, fructus, ūs,
 m.
Enough, sat, satis.
Enraged, irritatus 3.
Enrich, augere.
Enter, intrare.
Enter upon, ingredi.
Enticement, illecēbra,
 ae, f.
Entreat, rogare, precari,
 petere (ab aliquo).
Entreaty (to obtain by),
 exorare.
Envy, invidia, ae, f.
Envy (to), invidere.
Epaminondas, Epami-
 nondas, ae, m.
Ephesian, Ephesius 3.
Ephesus, Ephesus, i, f.
Epicurus, Epicurus, i, m.
Epirus, Epirus, i, f.
Equal, aequalis, e, par,
 paris.
Equally, aequē.
Equanimity, aequus ani-
 mus.
Ere, antequam, prius-
 quam.
Eretheus, Erectheus,
 ei, m.
Erect, aedificare, stru-
 ere.
Err, errare.
Error, error, oris, m.
Escape, effugere c. acc.
- Establish*, cavere.
Estate, res familiaris.
Esteem, aestimare (mag-
 ni, etc.), diligere.
Estimate, aestimare, cen-
 sere.
Eternal, aeternus 3. sem-
 piternus 3.
Eternity, aeternitas, ātis,
 f.
Etruria, Etruria, ae, f.
Eumenes, Eumenes, is,
 m.
Eurystheus, Erystheus,
 ei, m.
Europe, Europa, ae, f.
Evening, vesper, eri and
 eris, m.
Even if, etiam si.
Ever, unquam.
Every, omnis, e, (§ 94,
 12).
Evidently, plane.
Evil, malus 3.
Evil (s.), malum.
Evil-doer, maleficus, i,
 m.
Examine, exquirere.
Example, exemplum, i, n.
Excel, excellere.
Excellence, praestantia,
 ae, f.
Excellent, praestabilis, e,
 eximius 3. praestans,
 tis.
Excite, excitare, exciere
 and excire.
Exercise, exercitatio,
 onis, f.
Exercise, exercere.
Exert one's self, contē-
 dere, intendere.
Exertion, contentio, o-
 nis, f. labor, oris, m.
Exhaust, exhaurire;
 — entirely, enecare.
Exhilarate, exhilarare.
Exhort, hortari, adhor-
 tari.
Exist, esse.
Expect, expectare.
Expel, exterminare. ab-
 gere, pellere. [ae. f.
Experience, experientia,
Explain, explicare, in-
 terpretari.
- Exploits*, res gestae.
Explore, explorare.
Express, exprimere.
Expression, vultus, ūs, m.
Extend, tendere.
Extirpate, extirpare.
Extinct (to become), ex-
 tingui.
Extinguish, extinguere.
Extol, praedicare.
Extracts (to make from),
 excerpere.
Exult, laetitia exultare.
Eye, oculus, i, m.
- F.
- Fabius*, Fabius, i, m.
Fable, fabula, ae, f.
Fabricius, Fabricius, i, m.
Faculty, facultas, ātis, f.
Fail, deficere.
Fair, pulcher, chra,
 chrum.
Faithful, fidus 3.
Faithless, perfidus 3.
Fall, labi; — (in war),
 occidere; — down,
 procumbere; — to
 one's lot, contingere,
 obtingere alicui.
False, falsus 3.
Far, longe.
Fate, fatum, i, n. fortu-
 na, ae, f.
Father, pater, tris, m.
Father-in-law, socer, eri,
 m.
Fault, vitium, i, n. pec-
 actum, i, n.
Fault (to commit), pec-
 care.
Faustulus, Faustulus, i,
 m.
Favor, beneficium, i, n.
 benefactum, i, n.
Favor (to do), gratiam
 facere.
Favor, favere.
Favorable (to be), favere.
Fear, metus, ūs, m. tim-
 or, oris, m. pavor,
 oris, m.
Fear, timere, vereri,
 metuere. reformidare.
Fear exceedingly, exti-
 mescere.

- Fear* (to put in), *pertere*.
Feel, *sentire*.
Feeling, *sensus*, ūs, *m.*
Fell, *caedere*.
Fencer, *gladiator*, ōris, *m.*
Fetter, *compes*, īdis, *f.*
Fever, *febris*, is, *f.*
Few, *pauci*, ae, a, *pl.*
Fidelity, *fides*, ēi, *f.*
Field, *ager*, gri, *m.*
Field-mouse, *sorex*, īcis, *m.*
Fierce, *saevus* 3.
Fiery, *igneus* 3.
Fight, *pugna*, ae, *f.*
Fight, *pugnare*, dimicare, *configere*, *congrēdi*.
Fill, *implere*, *complere*, *refecere*; — *up*, *explere*, *opplere*.
Finally, *denique*.
Find, *invēnire*, *repēre*.
Find satisfaction in, *acquiescere* c. abl. or *in* c. abl., *conquiescere* c. abl.
Finger, *digītus*, i, *m.*
Finish, *finire*.
Fire, *ignis*, is, *m.*
Firm (to make), *confirmare*. [*f.*]
Firmness, *constantia*, ae,
First, *at first*, *primum*.
Fish, *piscis*, is, *m.*
Fit, *aptus* 3. *idonēus* 3.
Fitted, *aptus* 3. *idonēus* 3.
Fitly, *apte*.
Flame, *flamma*, ae, *f.*
Flatter, *adulāri*, *blāndiri*.
Flatterer, *assentātor*, ōris, *m.*
Flax, *carbāsus*, i, *f.*
Flaxen, *flavus* 3.
Flee, *fugere* c. acc.
Fleet, *classis*, is, *f.*
Fleeting, *fluxus* 3.
Flesh, *caro*, *carnis*, *f.*
Flight (to put to), *fugare*.
Flock, *grex*, *gis*, *m.* *agmen*, īnis, *n.*
Flourish, *virere*.
Flow together, *confuere*.
Flower, *flos*, *floris*, *m.*
Fluency of speech, *facundia*, ae, *f.*
Fly, *musca*, ae, *f.*
Fly, *volare*.
Follow, *sequi*, *consequi* c. acc.
Folly, *stultitia*, ae, *f.*
Food, *cibus*, i, *m.*
Fool, *stultus*, i, *m.*
Foolish, *stultus* 3. *insipiens*, *ntis*.
Foot, *pes*, *pēdis*, *m.*
Footman, *soldier*, *pedes*, ītis, *m.*
Forbear (can not), *facere* non posse quin.
Forbid, *vetare*.
Force, *vis*, *vim*, *f.*
Forehead, *frons*, *ntis*, *f.*
For how much? (with verbs of buying and selling), *quanti*.
Foreign, *alienigena*, ae, *m.* *alienus* 3.
Foresee, *providere*.
Foresight, *providentia*, ae, *f.*
Forget, *oblivisci* c. gen. or acc.
Form, *conformare*, *finire*.
Former, *pristinus* 3; *in former times*, *antiquitus*.
Formerly, *quondam*.
Forthwith, *continuo*.
Fortify, *munire*.
Fortuitous, *fortuitus* 3.
Fortunate, *beatus* 3. *felix*, īcis, *prosper*, *erum*.
Fortunately, *feliciter*.
Fortune, *fortuna*, ae, *f.*
Fortune (gifts of), *fortuna*.
Foul, *foedus* 3. *teter*, *tra.* *trum*; — (= filthy), *sordidus* 3.
Foul deed, *flagitium*, i, *n.*
Found, *condere*.
Foundation, *fundamentum*, i, *n.* [*m.*]
Founder, *conditor*, ōris, *m.*
Fountain, *fons*, *ntis*, *m.*
Frail, *fragilis*, e.
Frailty, *fragilitas*, ātis, *f.*
Free, *liberare*.
Freedom, *libertas*, ātis, *f.*
Freely, *libere*.
Freeze, *frigere*, *algere*.
Frenchman, *Francogallus*, i, *m.*
Frequent, *frequentare*.
Frequented, *celeber*, *bris*, *bre*.
Friend, *amicus*, i, *m.*
Friendship, *amicitia*, ae, *f.*
Frighten, *terrere*, *perterrere*.
Frightful, *horribilis*, e, *atrox*, ōcis.
Frog, *rana*, ae, *f.*
Fruit, *fructus*, ūs, *m.*
Fruitful, *ferax*, ācis c. gen.
Fulfil, *explere*.
Full, *plenus* 3.
Full (to be), *scatere*.
Fulvia, *Fulvia*, ae, *f.*
Furniture, *suppellex*, *ectilis*, *f.*
Future, *futurus* 3.

G.

- Gain*, *lucrum*, i, *n.* *quaestus*, ūs, *m.*
Garden, *hortus*, i, *m.*
Garland, *corona*, ae, *f.*
Garment, *vestis*, is, *f.*
Gate, *porta*, ae, *f.*
Gaul, *Gallus*, i, *m.*
Gazelle, *oryx*, *ygis*, *m.*
General, *imperator*, ōris, *m.* *dux*, *cis*, c.
Generally, *plerumque*.
Genius, *genius*, ii, *m.* *ingenium*, i, *n.*
Gentle, *placidus* 3.
German, *Germanus*, i, *m.*
Germany, *Germania*, ae, *f.*
Get one's self ready, *expedire*.
Giant, *gigas*, *antis*, *m.*
Ginger, *zingiber*, ēris, *n.*
Give, *dare*, *tribuere*; — *attention*, *atten-*

- děre; — *one's self* *Green* (to be), virēre. *Head*, caput, ĩtis, n.
up to, indulgēre c. *Grief*, moeror, ōris, m. *Health*, valitudo, ĩnis, f.
dat.; — *way*, cē-
 dēre. *Grieve*, dolēre. *Hear*, audire.
Glide away, dilābi, elā-
 bi. *Grotto*, specus, ūs, m. *Heart*, cor, cordis, n.
Glory, gloriāri. *Ground*, solum, i, n. *Heat*, calor, ōris, m.
Go, ire, pergēre; — *Grow*, crescēre; — *Heaven*, coelum, i, n.
around, circumire; *old*, consenesce-re. *Heavenly*, coelestis, e.
 — *back*, recēdēre; *Guard*, custodire; *be on* *Heavy*, gravis, e.
 — *forth*, exire; *one's guard*, cavēre. *Hedge around*, sepire.
 — *out*, excēdēre; *Guide*, regēre. *Height*, altitudo, ĩnis, f.
 — *to*, accēdēre; *Guilt*, culpa, ae, f. *Heir*, haeres, ēdis, c.
 — *again*, redire; *Gymnastic*, gymnicus 3. *Helmet*, cassis, ĩdis, f.
 — *away*, abire. *H.* *Helplessness*, inopĭa, ae,
 f.
Goad, stimulus, i, m. *Hadrian*, Hadrianus, i, *Hen*, gallina, ae, f.
God, deus, i, m. m. *Hence*, hinc.
Gold, aurum, i, n. *Hair*, crinis, is, m. ca- *Hephaestion*, Hephaes-
Golden, aureus 3. pillus, i, m. tio, ōnis, m.
Good, bonus 3. *Hairy*, pilosus 3. *Herb*, herba, ae, f.
Good (s.), bonum, i, n. *Half*, dimidium, i, n. *Hercules*, Hercules, is, m.
Goodness, bonitas, ātis, f. *Halicarnassus*, Halicar- *Herd*, grex, gis, m.
Goose, anser, ěris, m. nassus, i, f. *Hesitate*, dubitare c. ĩnf.
Gordius, Gordius, i, m. *Hand*, manus, ūs, f. *Hew*, exasciare.
Gorgias, Gorgias, ae, m. *Hand in hand*, manum *High*, altus 3.; *very high*,
Govern, gubernare, mo- consere-re cum aliquo. praealtus 3.
 dērari. *Hannibal*, Hannibal, *Highest*, summus 3.
Governess, moderatrix, *ĥis*, m. *Hill*, collis, is, m.
 ĩcis, f. *Happen*, accidere, even- *Himself*, of himself, sui,
Government, imperium, ire, cadere; *it hap-* etc.
 i, n. pens, accidit, contin- *Hindrance*, impedimen-
Governor, moderator, git. tum, i, n.
 ōris, m. rector, ōris, m. *Happily*, feliciter. *Hindrance* (to be), ob-
Grain, frumentum, i, n. *Happy*, felix, ĩcis, beā- stare, impedimento
Grammar, grammatica, tus 3. esse.
 ae, f. *Hard*, durus 3. *Hipparchus*, Hippar-
Grand-son, nepos, ōtis, m. *Hardship*, aerumna, ae, chus, i, m.
Grand-daughter, neptis, f. *His*, her, its, suus, ejus
 is, f. (§ 94. 3-5).
Grand-father, avus, i, m. *Harrow*, occare. *Hiss off*, exhibilare.
Grape, uva, ae, f. *Hasten*, accellere; — *History*, historia, ae, f.
Grappling-iron, harpā- up, advolare, *Hoarseness*, ravis, is, f.
 go, ōnis, m. *Hastily*, propere, prae- *Hold*, tenere, obtinere;
Gravity, gravitas, ātis, f. propere. — *back*, retinere.
Great, magnus 3; — *Hate*, excludere. *Home* (at), domi (§ 92.
 very, ingens, ntis. R. 3.).
Greatly, valde, vehe- *Hated greatly*, perosus 3. *Homer*, Homerus, i, m.
 menter, admōdum. *Hating greatly*, perosus 3. *Honor*, honos, ōris, m.
Greatness, magnitudo, decus, ōris, n.
 ĩnis, f. *Hated*, odiūm, i, n. *Honor*, honorare, colere.
Greece, Graecia, ae, f. *Have*, habere, esse (§ 97. *Honorable*, honestus 3.
 4); — *in*, tenere; honorificus 3.
Greedy, avidus 3. — *in use*, uti c. *Hope*, spes, ěi, f.
Greedily, avide. abl.; — *one's self*, *Hope*, sperare.
Greek (s.), Graecus, i, m. sese habere. *Horace*, Horatius, i, m.
Greek, Graecus 3. *Haven*, portus, ūs, m. *Horn*, cornu, ūs, n.
Green, viridis, e. *He*, she, it, is, ea, id.

- Horse*, equus, i, m.
Horseman, eques, itis, m.
Hostile, hostilis, e.
Hour, hora, ae, f.
House, domus, ūs, f.
 aedes, ium, pl.
How, quī.
How long, quamdiū.
How many? quot?
How much? quantum?
How often? quoties?
However much? quamvis.
Human, humānus 3.
Humanity, humanitas, ātis, f.
Humble, humilis, e.
Hump, tuber, ěris, n.
Hunger, fames, is, f.
Hunger, esūrīre.
Hunt, venāri.
Hunter, venātor, ōris, m.
Hunter's-net, cassis, is (commonly plur.), m.
Hurt, laedāre.
Husbandman, agricōla, ae, m. rusticus. i, m.
Hut, casa, ae, f.
- I.
- I*, ego.
Ice, glaciēs, ěi, f.
Ides, Idus, ium, f.
Idle, otīōsus 3.
If, si.
If not, nisi.
If also, etsi, tametsi, etiamsi.
Ignoble, illiberālis, e, inhonestus 3.
Ignominy, ignominia, ae, f.
Ignorance, ignorantia, ae, f.
Ignorant, ignārus 3.
Ignorant (to be), ignōrare, nescire.
Ill (adv.), male.
Ill disposed, malevolus 3.
Illuminate, collustrāre.
Image, imāgo, ĩnis, f.
Imitate, imitāri c. acc. (§ 89, 3).
Imitation, imitatio, ōnis, f.
Immature, immatūrus 3.
- Immediately*, extemplo, statim, protinus.
Immense, ingens, ntis.
Immoderate, immoderātus 3.
Immodesty, immodestia, ae, f.
Immortal, immortalis, e.
Immortality, immortalitas, ātis, f.
Impious, impius 3.
Implant, igrignere.
Import, importare.
Impress, imprimere.
Improve, emendare.
Impunity, impunitas, ātis, f.
Impute, dare, ducere, vertere c. dupl. dat.
In like manner — as, aeque — atque (ac).
Inborn, insitus 3.
Incite, incitare.
Include, continere.
Income, vectigal, ālis, n.
Inconsiderateness, temeritas, ātis, f.
Inconsiderately, temere.
Inconstancy, inconstantia, ae, f.
Increase, augere, accrescere.
Incredible, incredibilis, e.
Incumbent on some one (to be), esse alicujus.
Indeed, quidem (stands after the word to which it refers.)
Indicate, indicare.
Indignant (to be), indignari.
Indolence, ignavia, ae, f. pigritia, ae, f. inertia, ae, f. segnities, ěi, f.
Indolent, piger, grum, tardus 3. ignavus 3.
Indulgent to (to be), indulgere c. dat.
Industry, industria, ae, f.
Inflame, accendere, incendere.
Inform, edocere.
Inhabitant, incolā, ae, m.
Injure, nocere, obesse.
Injurious, noxius 3. per-
- niciōsus 3. damnōsus 3.
Injury, injuria, ae, f. offensio, ōnis, f.
Inmost, intimus 3.
Innocence, innocentia, ae, f.
Insolence, temeritas, ātis, f.
Innumerable, innumerabilis, e.
Inquiry, quaestio, ōnis, f. disputatio, ōnis, f.
Institution, institutum, i, n.
Instruct, erudire, informare, edocere.
Instruction, institutio, ōnis, f.
Instructress, magistra, ae, f.
Intellect, mens, tis, f. ingenium, n.
Intelligent, prudens, tis.
Intercourse, consuetudo, ĩnis, f.
Interest, one is interested in, interest, refert (§ 88, 10).
Intermix, admiscere.
Invent, invenire, reperire.
Inventress, inventrix, icis, f.
Investigator, indagatrix, icis, f.
Invincible, invictus 3.
Invite, invitare.
Involve, complicare, implicare.
Io, Io, ūs, f.
Irascible, iracundus 3.
Irascibility, iracundia, ae, f.
Ireland, Hibernia, ae, f.
Iron, ferrum, i, n.
Iron, of iron, ferrus 3.
Irruption (to make), irrumpere.
Is it possible that? num [§ 116. 3. b. c)].
Isocrates, Isocrates is, m.
Issus, Issus, i, f.
It is the part of some one, est alicujus.
Italy, Italia, ae, f.

Ivory, of ivory, eburneus
3.

J.

Jest, lepor, ōris, m.

Join together, conjungere.

Joint, articūlus, i, m.

Journey, iter, itinēris, n.

Journey, proficiēci.

Joy, laetitīa, ae, f.

Joyful or joyous, laetus 3.

Judge, iudex, icis, m.

Judge, iudicāre, existimāre, sentire.

Judgment, iudicium, i, n.

Jugurtha, Jugurtha, ae, m.

Julia, Julia, ae, f.

Julius Caesar, Julius, i, Caesar, āris, m.

June, Junius, i, m.

Junius, Junius, i, m. [m.]

Jupiter, Juppiter, Jovis,

Just, justus 3.

Justly, recte, juste.

Just as, ut, sicut.

Just so many, totidem.

Just so much, adv. (with verbs of valuing, esteeming, buying, selling), tantidem.

Justice, jus, ūris, n.

K.

Keep, servāre.

Keep from, arcēre.

Key, clavis, ūs, f.

Kill, occidere, exanimāre, necāre; — outright, enecāre.

Kind, genus, ěris, n.

Kind, benignus 3.

Kindly, benevōle.

Kindness, beneficium, i, n. benefactum, i, n.

King, rex, regis, m.

Kingdom, regnum, i, n., imperium, i, n.

Knee, genu, ūs, n.

Knot, nodus, i, m.

Know, scire; — perfectly well, non ignorare, non esse nescius; not to know, ignōrāre, nescire.

Knowledge, peritiā, ae, f. cognitio. ōnis, f.

Known, cognitus 3; — *it is known, constat.*

L.

Labor, labor, ōris, m.

Labor (to bestow on something), operam navare alicui rei, operam collicare in aliqua re.

Labor, labōrāre, elabōrāre.

Lacedemon, Lacedaemon, ōnis, f.

Lacedemonian, Lacedaemonius, i, m.

Lake, lacus, ūs, m.

Lament, lugere.

Land, ager, i, m.; — by land and by sea, terra marique.

Language, lingua, ae, f. oratio, ōnis, f.

Lark, alauda, ae, f.

Last, extrēmus 3.

Lasting, diuturnus 3.

Later, posterior.

Latin, Latīnus 3.

Latium, Latium, i, n.

Laudable, laudabilis, e.

Laugh, ridere.

Laugh, risus, ūs, m.

Law, lex, gis, f.

Lawgiver, legislator, ōris, m.

Lay before, propōnere; — open, aperire; — waste, devastāre, populāri.

Lead, plumbum, i, n.

Lead, dūcere; — back, redūcere; — out, edūcere.

Leader, dux, cis, m.

Leafy, frondosus 3.

League, foedus, ěris, n.

Leap, salire; — down, desilire; — over, transilire.

Learn, discere.

Learned, doctus 3.

Leave behind, destitūere, relinquere.

Leg. crus, uris, n.

Legion, legio, ōnis, f.

Leisure, otium, i, n.

Length (of time), longinquitas, ātis, f.

Less (adv.), minus.

Letter (epistle), epistola, ae, f. littērae, arum, f.

Letter (of the alphabet), littēra, ae, f.

Level, adacquāre.

Liar, mendax, ācis.

Liberal, ingenūus 3.

Library, bibliothēca, ae, f.

Licentious, petulans, tis.

Licentiousness, petulantia, ae, f.

Lie, situm esse; — by, adjācere.

Lie (to state a falsehood), mentiri.

Life, vita, ae, f.

Light, lux, lucis, f.

Lightning, fulgur, ūris, n. fulmen, ĩnis, n.

Like, similis, e.

Limb, membrum, i, n. artus, ūs, m.

Line (of battle), acies, ěi, f.; to arrange in a line, aciem instruere.

Lion, leo, ōnis, m.

Listen to, exaudire.

Literature, litterae, arum, f.

Little, exigūus 3; *very little, perexigūus* 3.

Little (adv.) paullulum.

Little (to esteem), parvi aestimāre.

Live, vivere, versari.

Lively, alacer, cris, cre.

Liver, jecur, jecinoris, n.

Living being, animans, antis.

Livy, Livius, i, m.

Load, onus, ěris, n.

Loathe, I loathe something, me taedet alicujus rei.

Lofty, excelsus 3. [m.]

Loiterer, cunctator, ōris,

Long, longus 3; *of long continuance, diuturnus* 3.

Longing, desiderium, i, n.

- Look out for something*, curāre c. acc., curam habēre c. gen. prospicere, providere, consulere c. dat.
Look upon, intuēri; — into, inspicere.
Loose, solvere.
Loquacious, loquax, ācis, garrulus 3.
Loquacity, garrulitas, ātis, f.
Lose, perdere, amittere.
Loss, damnum, i, n.
Lot, sors, tis, f.
Love, amor, ōris, m. caritas, ātis, f.
Love, amāre, diligere; — in return, redāmāre.
Low, humilis, e., infērus 3.
Low state (to be in), jacere.
Lower regions, infēri, ōrum, m.
Lowery, tristis, e.
Lucilius, Lucilius, i, m.
Luxuriously, luxuriōse.
Luxury, luxuria, ae, f.
Lycurgus, Lycurgus, i, m.
Lydia, Lydia, ae, f.
Lying, mendax, ācis.
Lysander, Lysander, dri, m.
- M.
- Macedonia*, Macedonia, ae, f.
Macedonian, Macedo, ōnis, m.
Magian, magus, i, m.
Magnesia, Magnesia, ae, f.
Magnificent, magnificus 3. superbus 3.
Make, facere, reddere; — good, praestare; — war upon, inferre bellum alicui.
Malice, malitia, ae, f.
Malicious, malevolus 3.
Man, homo, inis, m. viri, m.
Man by man, viritim.
Manage, administrare.
- Mane*, juba, ae, f.
Manlius, Manlius, i, m.
Manner, modus, i, m.; — (with a moral reference), mos, ōris, m.
Many, multi, orum; very many, complures, a and ia. plures, a, gen. ium.
Maple-tree, acer, ēris, n.
Marathon, Maratho, ōnis, m.
Marble, marmor, ōris, n.
Marble, of marble, marmorēus 3. [m.
Marcellus, Marcellus, i, m.
March, iter, itinēris, n.
March, proficisci, iter facere.
Marcus Agrippa, Marcus, i, Agrippa, ae, m.
Margin, margo, inis, m.
Marsh, palus, ūdis, f.
Marry (of the woman), nubere c. dat.
Massagetes, Massagetes, ae, m.
Master, not — of, impositus, ōtis, impotens, ntis.
Matter (affair), res, rei, f.
Maturity, maturitas, ātis, f.
Means, opes, um, f. facultates, um, f.
Measure, consilium, i, n.
Measure, metiri.
Meet (adv.), obviam.
Membrane, membrana, ae, f.
Memory, memoria, ae, f.
Metal, metallum, i, n.
Metellus, Metellus, i, m.
Mid-day, meridies, ei, m.
Migrate, migrare.
Mild, mitis, e; — to become, mitescere.
Milesian, Milesius, i, m.
Milk, lac, ctis, n.
Milo, Milo, ōnis, m.
Miltiades, Miltiades, is, m.
Mind, animus, i, m.; — state of, mentis, f.
- Mindful*, mēmor, ōris.
Minerva, Minerva, ae, f.
Misfortune, calamitas, ātis, f. mālum, i, n.
Mist, nebula, ae, f.
Mistress, domina, ae, f.
Misuse, abūti c. abl.
Mithridates, Mithridates, is, m.
Mix, miscere.
Model, exemplum, i, n.
Moderately, modice.
Moderation, moderatio, ōnis, f. — without moderation, intemperanter. [dīcus 3.
Modest, modestus 3. pudestly, modeste.
Modesty, modestia, ae, f.
Molon, Molo, ōnis, m.
Money, pecunia, ae, f.
Month, mensis, is, m.
Monument, monumentum, i, n.
Moon, luna, ae, f.
More (adv.), magis.
More, plus, plures, a; gen. ium.
Mortal, mortalis, e.
Most, plurimus 3.
Most (adv.), plurime.
Mother, mater, tris, f.
Move, movere, commovere; — out, emigrare.
Mound, ager, gri, m.
Mountain, mons, ntis, m.
Mouse, mus, muris, m.
Mow, metere.
Much, multus 3; for much, (with verbs of buying and selling), magni (§ 89, 10).
Much (with verbs of valuing and esteeming), magni.
Multitude, multitudo, inis, f. copia, ae, f.
Munificent, munificus 3.
Murderer, interfector, ōris, m.
Must, debere.
- N.
- Name*, nomīnare. [m.
Napoleon, Napolēo, ōnis,

- Narrative*, narratĭo, ōnis, *f.*
Narrow pass, angustiae, arum, *f.*
Nation, natĭo, ōnis, *f.*
Natural, naturālis, *e.*
Nature, natūra, ae, *f.*
Navigate, navigāre.
Navigation, navigatĭo, ōnis, *f.*
Near, prope.
Nearly, prope, paene.
Neat, lepĭdus 3.
Necessary (it is), oportet, opus est res or re.
Neck-chain, torquis, is, *m.*
Need, indigĕre c. abl.; there is need of, opus est.
Needy, inops, ōpis.
Neglect, negligĕre.
Neigh, hinnĭre.
Neighbor, proxĭmus, i, *m.*
Neither (of two), neuter, tra, trum.
Neither — nor, nec (neque) — nec (neque).
Nero, Nero, ōnis, *m.*
Nerve, nervus, i, *m.*
Never, nunquam.
Nevertheless, tamen.
News, nuntĭus, i, *m.*
Next, proxĭmus 3.
Nicomedes, Nicomĕdes, is, *m.*
Night, nox, noctis, *f.*; by night, noctu.
Nightingale, lusciniā, ae, *f.*
No (a.) nullus 3. nemo (ĭnis) c.
No, see § 116, 5; *no*, nay, rather; (in opp.), immo (§ 116, 5).
Noble, praeclārus 3.
Noble (= noble born) ingenŭs 3.
Nobly, praeclāre.
Nobody, nemo (*gen.* and *abl.* not used).
Nocturnal, nocturnus 3.
Noise, fremĭtus, ūs, *m.*
Nola, Nola, ae, *f.*
No one, nullus 3. nemo (ĭnis) c.
- Not*, non; (with Imper. and Subj. of encouraging), ne.
Not merely — but also, non solum — sed etiam.
Not even, ne-quidem.
Not only — but also, non modo (tantum) — sed etiam.
Not yet, nondum.
Nothing, nihil.
Notion, notio, ōnis, *f.*
Nourish, nutrĭre, alĕre.
November, November, bris, *m.*
Now, nunc, jam.
Now — now, modo — modo.
Nowhere, nusquam.
Noxious, noxius, a, um.
Numa Pompilius, Numa (ae) Pompilius (i), *m.*
Numantia, Numantĭa, ae, *f.*
Number, numĕrāre.
Nurse, fovĕre.
- O.
O, O that! utĭnam c. Subj.
Obey, obĕdĭre, obsĕqui, obtempĕrāre, parĕre c. dat.
Object, res, ĕi, *f.*
Oblivion, oblivĭo, ōnis, *f.*
Obscure, obsĕrāre.
Obscure, obsĕrus 3.
Observe, observāre.
Obtain, adipisci.
Occasion, occasĭo, ōnis, *f.*
Occupy one's self zealously with something, studĭosus esse alicujus rei, studĕre alicui rei, operam navāre alicui rei.
Ocean, oceānus, i, *m.*
Offended (to be), succensĕre, irasci c. dat.
Offer, deferre.
Office, munus, ĕris, *n.*
Offspring, proles, is, *f.*
Ofstener, saepĭus; very often, saepissime.
Oil, olĕum, i, *n.*
- Old man*, senex, senis, *m.*
Old age, senectus, ūtis, *f.*
Older, major, major natu.
On account of, causā (§ 88, R. 7).
One, unus 3.
One of the two, alterŭter, ūtra, ūtrum.
One, the one — the other, alter — alter.
Onyx, onyx, ŷchis, *m.*
Open, apĕrĭre; to stand open, patĕre.
Opinion, opinĭo, ōnis, *f.* sententiā, ae, *f.* existimatĭo, ōnis, *f.*
Opposite, adversus 3. contrariŭs.
Oppress, urgĕre.
Or, aut; (in a double question), an; or not, nec ne, annon.
Oracle, oracŭlum, i, *n.*
Oration, oratĭo, ōnis, *f.*
Orator, orātor, ōris, *m.*
Order, ordo, ĭnis, *m.*; — of battle, acies, ĕi, *f.*
Order, jubĕre.
Order, in order that, ut; in order that not, ne.
Orestes, Orestes, ae, *m.*
Origin, orĭgo, ĭnis, *f.*
Ornament, ornātus, ūs, *m.*
Ornately, ornāte.
Orpheus, Orphĕus, ĕi, *m.*
Ostentation, ostentatĭo, ōnis, *f.*
Other, alius, a, um; — of two, alter, ĕra, ĕrum.
Otherwise, aliter.
Ought, debĕre, oportet.
Our, ours, noster, tra, trum.
Outliving, susperstes, ĭtis c. dat.
Overcome, supĕrāre.
Ovid, Ovidĭus, i, *m.*
Owe, debĕre.
Own, propriŭs 3. ipsius, ipsōrum, ipsārum (§ 94, 8).
Ox, bos, ovis, *c.*

- P**
- Pace*, passus, ūs, *m.*
Pain, dolor, ōris, *m.*
Paint, pingēre; —
out, expingere.
Palace, domus, ūs, *f.*
Palate, palātum, *i, n.*
Pale, pallidus 3.
Pardon, venīa, *ae, f.*
Parents, parentes, ium,
c.
Parian, Parīus 3.
Parricide (a), parricīda,
ae, c.
Parricide, parricidium,
i, n.
Part, pars, rtis, *f.*
Partaking of, particeps,
cīpis.
Partner, socius, *i, m.*
Pass over, transire, prae-
terire.
Pass (time), agere, exī-
gere.
Passion, cupiditas, ātis,
f. appetitus, ūs, m. libido, īnis, f.
Past, praeteritus 3.
Pasture, pasci.
Path, callis, *is, m.*
Patiently, patienter.
Pausanias, Pausaniās,
ae, m.
Pay, pendere, praestare.
Peace, pax, pacis, *f.*
Peace (to make), pacem,
compōnere.
Peaceful, beātus 3.
Peacefully, beāte.
Peacock, pavo, ōnis, *m.*
Pear, pȳrum, *i, n.*
Pear-tree, pyrus, *i, f.*
Peculiar, proprius 3.
Peculiarity, it is a pecu-
liarity of some one, ali-
cujus est.
Pedestal, basis, *is, f.*
Pelopidas, Pelopīdas,
ae, m.
People, pōpulus, *i, m.*
gens, ntis, f.; common
people, vulgus, i, n.
Pepper, piper, ēris, *n.*
Perceive, agnoscere.
Perform, fungi, perpe-
trare.
- Perhaps*, fortasse.
Pericles, Pericles, *is, m.*
Period, perīodus, *i, f.*
Perish, perire.
Permit, sinere.
Permitted (it is), licet.
Pernicious, perniciōsus
3.
Persevere, permānere,
perstare.
Persia, Persīa, *ae, f.*
Persian (s.), Persa, *ae,*
m.
Persian, Persicus 3.
Persian war, bellum
Persicum.
Persist, perseverare.
Pest, pestis, *is, f.*
Phaedo, Phaedo, ōnis,
m.
Philip, Philippus, *i, m.*
Philippi, Philippi, ōrum,
m.
Philosopher, philosō-
phus, i, m.
Philosophise, philosō-
phāri.
Philosophy, philosophīa,
ae, f.
Phocion, Phocīo, ōnis, *m.*
Phoenician, Phoenix.
īcis, m.
Physician, medicus, *i, m.*
Piety, piētas, ātis, *f.*
Pilot, gubernātor, ōris,
m.
Pindar, Pindārus, *i, m.*
Pine, pinus, *i, f.*
Pisistratus, Pīstrātus,
i, m.
Pitch (of a camp), po-
nere.
Pity, misericordiā, *ae, f.*
Pity (it excites my), me
miseret (alicujus).
Pity, misereri *c. gen.;*
to have pity, misereri.
Place, locus, *i, m.*
Place upon, ponere, *in*
c. abl.
Place something around
something, or surround
something with some-
thing, circumdare ali-
quid alicui, or ali-
quem aliqua re.
- Plain*, campus, *i, m.*
Plan, consilium, *i, n.*
Plant, planta, *ae, f.*
Plato, Plato, ōnis, *m.*
Play, ludere.
Pleasant, amoenus 3.
Please, placere, probare
alicui, arridere.
Pleasure, voluptas, ātis.
Plough, arare.
Pluck, evellere.
Plumtree, prunus, *i, f.*
Plunder, diripere.
Plutarch, Plutarchus, *i,*
m.
Poem, carmen, īnis, *n.*
poēma, ātis, n.
Poet, poēta, *ae, m.*
Point out, consignare,
describere.
Poison, venenum, *i, n.*
virus, i, n.
Pompey, Pompeius, *i, m.*
Pond, lacus, ūs, *m.*
Pool, palus, ūdis, *f.*
Poor, pauper, ēris, inops,
ōpis.
Poplar, pōpulus, *i, f.*
Poppy, papāver, ēris, *n.*
Portico, porticus, ūs, *f.*
Posidonius, Posidonius,
i, m.
Possess, tenere, habere;
esse c. gen.
Possess one's self of, po-
tiri c. abl.
Possessed of, compos,
ōtis c. gen.
Possession, possessio,
ōnis, f.
Possible (it is), fieri po-
test; it is not possible
but that, fieri non po-
test quin.
Post, postis, *is, m.*
Post (of honor), honos,
ōris, m.
Pound, libra, *ae, f.*
Pour forth, effundere.
Poverty, inopia, *ae, f.*
paupertas, ātis, f.
Power, vis, (nom., acc.
and abl.; plur. vires,
ium); vigor, ōris, m.
potentia, ae, f. opes,
um, f.

- Powerful**, potens c. gen. opulentus 3.
Practice, exercitatio, ōnis, f. (= habit), consuetudo, inis, f.
Prayer, laus, dis, f.
Praise, laudare, collaudare; bene dicere c. dat.
Prayers, preces, um, f.
Precede some one, praecedere alicui.
Precept, preceptum, i, n.
Precious, pretiosus 3.
Precipitately, praepröpere.
Predict, praedicere.
Preëminence, virtus, ütis, f.
Prefer, praeferre, antepönere.
Preferable, potius.
Prepare, parare.
Preparation, praeparatio, ōnis, f.
Present, praesens, tis; — to be, adesse.
Present, donum, i, n. munus, eris, n.
Present with, donare.
Preserve, servare; (= protect), conservare.
Preside over, praestare, praeesse c. dat.
Press, premere.
Pretext, simulatio, ōnis, f.
Pretor, praetor, ōris, m.
Prevail upon by entreaty, exorare.
Prevent, impedire, prohibere; obstare c. dat.
Previously, prius.
Prick, pungere.
Pride, superbia, ae, f.
Principle, preceptum, i, n. doctrina, ae, f.
Proceed, proficisci.
Produce, gignere.
Productive, fecundus 3. frugifer, era, erum, fertilis, e.
Progress (to make), proficere.
Promise, promittere, polliceri, profiteri.
- Pronounce**, pronuntiare, eloqui; — one happy, fortunatum praedicare alicquem.
Proper, it is proper for me, decet c. acc.; it is not proper, dedecet.
Properly, rite, probe.
Prophet, vates, is, m.
Propitious, propitius 3.
Proportionately, aequaliter.
Propose, propönere.
Propriety (of conduct), honestas, atis, f.
Prosperity, res secundae, fortuna, ae, f.
Prosperous, prosper, era, erum.
Prostrate, prosternere.
Protect, custodire.
Protection, tutela, ae, f. praesidium, i, n.
Proud, superbus 3.
Provided that, modo, dummodo.
Providence, providentia, ae, f.
Provident, cautus 3.
Province, provincia, ae, f.
Provoke, lacessere.
Prudence, prudentia, ae, f.
Prudent, prudens, tis.
Ptolemy, Ptolemaeus, i, m.
Pungent, acerbus 3.
Punic, Punicus 3.
Punish, punire, multare.
Punishment, poena, ae, f. supplicium, i, n.
Purple fish, murex, icis, m. [n.]
Purpose, propositum, i.
Pursue, persequi, consectari; — something earnestly, studiosum esse alicujus rei; — literature, literas tractare.
Pursuit, tractatio, ōnis, f. studium, i, n.
Pylades, Pylades, ae, m.
Pyramid, pyramis, idis, f.
- Pyrenean**, Pyrenaeus 3.
Pyrrhus, Pyrrhus, i, m.
Pythagoras, Pythagoras, ae, m.
- Q.**
Quantity, numerus, i, m. vis (gen. and dat. wanting, plur. vires, ium), f.
Queen, regina, ae, f.
Question, quaestio, ōnis, f.
Quickly, cito.
Quiet (s.), quies, etis, f.
Quiet (a.), quietus 3. tranquillus 3.
Quiet, sedare.
Quietly, quiete, tranquille.
- R.**
Race, genus, eris, n.
Rage, saevire.
Rain, imber, bris, m.
Raise, perciere or percire.
Rank, ordo, inis, m.
Rapid, rapidus 3.
Rare, rarus 3. [f.]
Rashness, temeritas, atis,
Rate, censere.
Rather, potius.
Reach to, pervenire.
Read, legere; — through, perlegere; — to, recitare.
Reading, lectio, ōnis, f.
Ready, promptus 3., paratus 3.
Readiness, promptus, us, m.
Reap, metere.
Reason, ratio, ōnis, f.
Reason, there is no reason that, non est quod, nihil est quod; without reason, temere.
Recall, revocare.
Receive, accipere, suscipere.
Received, exceptus 3.
Recently, nuper.
Recollect, recordari.
Recompense, merces, edis, f.

- Recover*, convalescere.
Red, ruber, bra, brum.
Redound, redundare.
Refer, referre.
Reflect upon, cogitare.
Reflection, cogitatio, õ-
 nis, *f*.
Refresh, recreare.
Refuge, receptus, õs, *m*.
Region, regio, õnis, *f*.
Reject, rejicere, respũ-
 re.
Reign, regnum, *i*, *n*.
Reign, regnare, domi-
 nari, imperare.
Rejoice, delectari, gau-
 dere.
Relate, narrare, memo-
 rare.
Relieve, levare.
Religion, religio, õnis, *f*.
Religiously, religiõse.
Remain, manere, remã-
 nere.
Remarkable, insignis, *e*.
Remedy, remedium, *i*, *n*.
Remedy, mederi.
Remember, reminisci,
 memini, recordari *c*.
 gen. or acc. [ae, *f*.
Remembrance, memoria,
Remind, commonere,
 commonefacere.
Remove, resẽcare.
Removed (to be), abesse.
Remus, Remus, *i*, *m*.
Renew, refricare.
Renown, fama, ae, *f*.
 gloria, ae, *f*.
Renowned, clarus 3., no-
 bilis, *e*.
Repair, sarcire.
Repel, pellere, repellere.
Repent, poenitere; *I re-
 pent of something*, poe-
 nitet me alicujus rei.
Report, fama, ae, *f*.
Repose, requies, etis, *f*.
Reproach, probrum, *i*, *n*.
 opprobrium, *i*, *n*. tur-
 pitudo, inis, *f*.
Reproach, maledicere.
Reprove, castigare.
Reputable, honestus 3.
Request, petere, rogare
 (ab aliquo).
- Resist*, resistere.
Resound, resonare.
Resounding, resonus.
Resources, opes, um.
Responsible, to become re-
 sponsible, spondere.
Rest, quies, etis, *f*.
Rest upon something, niti
c. abl.
Restore, repãrare, recu-
 pãrare.
Restrain, coercere.
Retain, retinere.
Retire, recedere, discẽ-
 dere.
Return, reditus, õs, *m*.
Return, redire, reverti,
 remeare.
Reverence, vereri.
Reville, maledicere *c. dat.*
Reward, praemium, *i*, *n*.
Rhine, Rhenus, *i*, *m*.
Rhodes, Rhodus, *i*, *f*.
Rich, dives, itis, locũ-
 ples, etis.
Riches, divitiæ, arum, *f*.
Ride, equitare.
Ridge (of mountains),
 jugum, *i*, *n*.
Ridiculous, ridiculus 3.
Right, jus, juris, *n*.
Right (a.), rectus 3.
Rightly, recte.
Ripe, maturus 3.
Rise, oriri.
Rising, ortus 3.
River, fluvius, *i*, *m*. am-
 nis, is, *m*. flumen, inis,
n.
Roar, rudere.
Rock, rupes, is, *f*, sax-
 um, *i*, *n*.
Rome, Roma, ae, *f*.
Roman (s.), Romanus,
i, *m*. [3.
Roman (a.), Romanus
Romulus, Romulus, *i*, *m*.
Roof, tectum, *i*, *n*.
Rope, restis, is, *f*.
Rough, asper, era, erum.
Round, rotundus 3.
Rout, fundere.
Royal, regius 3.
Rub off, detergere.
Rub thoroughly, perfrĩ-
 care.
- Rude (= unskilful)*, ru-
 dis, e, *c. gen.*
Ruin, to go to, dilabi.
Ruie (a carpenter's),
 amussis, is, *f*.
Rule, regere, gubernare.
Rule over, imperare *c.*
dat.
Run, currere; — into,
 diffilũere; — through,
 percurrere.
Rush in, irrũere
- S.
- Sacred rites*, sacra, õrum,
n.
Sacredly, sancte.
Sacredness, sanctitas,
 atis, *f*.
Sad, tristis, *e*.
Safe, tutus 3. sospes,
 itis.
Safety, salus, utis, *f*.
Saguntum, Saguntum, *i*,
n.
Sail, velum, *i*, *n*.
Sailor, nauta, ae, *m*.
Salt, sal, salis, *m*.
Salutary, salutaris, e.
 saluber or bris, bre.
Same, is, ea, id; very
 same, idem, eadem,
 idem; at the same time,
 simul, unã.
Samnite (s.), Samnis,
 itis, *m*.
Sanction, sancire.
Sapid, sapidus 3.
Sappho, Sappho, õs, *f*.
Satirize, perstringere.
Save, parcere *c. dat.*
Save from something, ser-
 vare ex or ab aliqua
 re.
Say, dicere, inquam
 (§ 77. Rule).
Scarcely, vix.
Scatter, disjicere.
Scholar, discipulus, *i*, *m*.
Scholastic instruction, in-
 stitutio scholastica.
School, schola, ae, *f*.
Scipio, Scipio, õnis, *m*.
Scrape together, corrã-
 dere.
Scruple, scrupulus, *i*, *m*.

- Scrupulously*, sanete, religiose.
Scythian (s), Scythia, ac, m.
Sea, mare, is, n.
Season, in season, matūre.
Seasoning, condimentum, i, n.
Seat, sedes, is, f.
Sedition, seditiō, ōnis, m.
Seditious, seditiōsus 3.
See, vidēre, conspīcārī, cernēre.
Seek, quaerēre, studēre.
Seize, deprehendēre, comprehendēre, capere, occupāre, capesere.
Self, ipse (§ 94, 7).
Self-confidence, audaciā, ae, f.
Sell, vendēre.
Senate, senātus, ūs, m.
Send, mittēre; — for, accire.
Sense, sensus, ūs, m. mens, tis, f.
Sensible, prudens, tis.
Sentiment, sententia, ae, f.
Separate, sepārāre, disciudēre, secernēre.
Sepulchre, sepulcrum, i, n.
Serious, gravis, e.
Serve, servire.
Service, officium, i, n.
Servitude, servitūs, ūtis, f.
Set out on a journey, proficisci.
Several, plures, a, complures, a and ia.
Severe, gravis, e.
Severity, severitas, ātis, f.
Shake, convellēre, labefactāre.
Shame, I am ashamed of something, me pudet alicujus rei (§ 88. 1).
Share with some one, communicāre cum aliquo.
Sharing in, particeps, ipis. consors, tis.
Shear, tondēre, radere.
- Shepherd*, pastor, ōris, m.
Shin, crus, uris, n.
Shine forth, elucere.
Ship, navis, is, f.
Shipwreck, naufragium, i, n.
Short, brevis, e; in short time, brevi (sc. tempore).
Short time, paulisper.
Should, debere.
Shout, clamor, ōris, m.
Show one's self, se praebere, se praestare.
Shun something, aversari.
Shut, claudere.
Sicily, Sicilia, ae, f.
Sick, aeger, gra, grum.
Sickness, aegritudo, ūnis, f.
Side (on the other), contra.
Siege, obsidiō, ōnis, f. obsessiō, ōnis, f.
Sight, conspectus, ūs, m.
Sign, signum, i, n.; it is the sign of some one, est alicujus.
Silence, silentia, ae, f.
Silent (to be), tacere.
Silkworm, bombyx, ūcis, m.
Silver, argentum, i, n.
Simple, simplex, ūcis, n.
Sin, peccatum, i, n.
Sin, peccare.
Since, quum.
Sing, cantare, canere.
Sink, demergere; — down, desiderare; — under, succumbere.
Sister, soror, ōris, f.
Sit, sedere; — at table, accubare.
Situation, locus, i, m.
Size, magnitudo, ūnis, f.
Skilful, peritus 3., prudens, tis c. gen.
Sky, coelum, i, n.
Slave, servus, i, m.
Slay, occidere, interficere.
Sleep, somnus, i, m.
Sleep, dormire.
Slender, gracilis, e.
Slim, procerus 3.
- Small*, parvus, 3.
Smell, olfacere.
Smile upon, arridere.
Smith, faber, bri, m. [f.
Snare, insidiae, arum,
Snow, nix, nivis, f.
So, ita; so — as, tam — quam; — great, tantus 3; — long, tamdiu; — long as, dum. quamdiu, quoad [§ 111, 4]; — many, tot, indecl.; — soon as, ubi, simulac (atque) [§ 112, 2].
Socrates, Socrates, is, m.
Soldier, miles, ūtis, m.
Solicitude, sollicitudo, ūnis, f.
Solid, solidus 3.
Solon, Solo, ōnis, m.
Some, nonnulli.
Some one, aliquis, a, id.
Sometimes, aliquando.
Sometimes, interdum.
Son, filius, i, m.
Son-in-law, gener, eri, m.
Soon, mox, brevi (tempore).
Sooner, prior; adv. prius.
Soothe, lenire.
Sophist, sophista, ae, m.
Sorrow, aegritudo, ūnis, f.
Soul, animus, i, m.
Sound, integer, gra, grum.
Sow, serere.
Spain, Hispania, ae, f.
Spaniard, Hispanus, i, m.
Spare, parcere c. dat.
Sparta, Sparta, ae, f.
Speak, dicere, loqui.
Spectator, spectator, ōris, m.
Speech, sermo, ōnis, m. oratio, ōnis, f.
Spirit, animus, i, m. mens, tis, f. ingenium, i, n.
Spirited, acer, is, e,
Spiritedly, acriter.
Splendid, splendidus 3. nitidus 3. [m.
Splendor, splendor, ōris,

- Split*, diffindere.
Sport, ludus, i, m.
Spread, pandere; — (= cover), oblinere.
Spring, oriri, nasci, exoriri.
Spurn, spernere, aspernere, fastidire.
Spy, explorator, oris, m.
Stab, confodere.
Stability, stabilitas, atis, f. perpetuitas, atis, f.
Stadium, stadium, i, n.
Staff, scipio, onis, m.
Stand, stare.
Star, stella, ae, f.
State, republica, reipublicae, f. civitas, atis; at the cost of the State, publice.
Station, statio, onis, f.
Statue, statua, ae, f.
Stature, statura, ae, f.
Stay (= large rope), rudens, tis, m.
Steel, chalybs, ybis, m.
Steep, praeceps, cipitis, arduus 3.
Step, passus, us, m.
Stern, puppis, is, f.
Stick, haerere.
Still, adhuc, porro.
Stone, lapis, idis, m. [3].
Stone, of stone, lapideus
Stork, ciconia, ae, f.
Storm, procella, ae, f. tempestas, atis, f.
Strength, see power.
Strengthen, firmare.
Stretch, tendere
Strife, lis, litis, f.
Strike, ferire.
Strive after, studere, c. dat., petere c. acc., niti ad aliquid, tendere, contendere; — against, reluctari; — against something, niti in aliquid; — to obtain, petere, expetere, sectari.
Strong, validus 3.
Study, studium, i, n.
Subdue, domare, perdomare.
Subject, civis, is, c.
- Subjugate*, subigere.
Succeed, succedere.
Such, talis, e; is, ea. id.
Sudden, subito 3.
Suddenly, subito.
Suffer, pati, perpeteri; — from, laborare c. abl. [satis.
Sufficiently, or sufficient, *Suitable*, idoneus, a, um.
Sulla, Sulla, ae, m.
Summer, aestas, atis, f.
Sun, sol, solis, m.
Superstition, superstitio, onis, f.
Suppliant, supplex, icis.
Supplicate, supplicare.
Supply, suppeditare.
Support, fulcire.
Supremacy, principatus, us, m. summum imperium.
Surely, certe, sane.
Surface, aequor, oris, n.
Surpass, praestare, c. dat.
Surprise, obrere, c. dat.
Surrender, tradere.
Surround, circumdare, cingere, ambire; of fundi alicui rei.
Surviving, superstes, itis c. dat.
Sustain, sustentare. [f.
Swallow, hirundo, inis,
Swear, jurare.
Sweat, sudare.
Sweet, dulcis, e.
Swift, celer, eris, ere, velox, ocis.
Swiftly, celeriter, cito.
Swiftness, celeritas, atis, f.
Swollen, turgidus 3.
Sword, gladius, i, m. ensis, is, m. ferrum, i, n.
Syracuse, Syracusae, arum, f.
Syria, Syria, ae, f.
Syrian, Syrus, i, m.
- Take*, capere, adimere; — away, tollere, auferre, demere, adimere; — give, exardescere; — from, eripere; — one's self off, facessere; — possession of, occupare; — up, tollere; — upon one's self, suscipere.
Talent, (sum of money), talentum, i, n.
Tame, cicur, uris.
Tame, domare.
Tanaquil, Tanquil, ilis, f. [n.
Tarentum, Tarentum, i,
Tarquin, Tarquinius, i, m.
Tarquinius Superbus, Tarquinius Superbus, m.
Tarquinius Collatinus, Tarquinius Collatinus, m.
Taste, gustare, degustare.
Teach, docere c. dupl. acc. [89, 7. b)].
Teachable, docilis 3.
Teacher, praeceptor, oris, m. magister, tri, m.
Tear in pieces, lacere, dilacere.
Tell, dicere.
Temple, templum, i, n. aedes, is, f.
Tender, tener, era, erum.
Tenderly, pie.
Terrible, terribilis, e.
Territory, finis, is, m.
Thales, Thales, is, m.
Thames, Tamesis, is, m.
Than, quam.
Thanks (to give), gratias agere.
That, ille, a, ud; is, ea, id; iste, a, ud.
That, that not, see § 106 — 109.
The — so much the (with the comparative), quo — eo, quanto — tanto.
Theban, Thebanus, i, m.
- T.
- Table*, tabula, ae, f.
Table (to sit at), accubare.

- Thebes*, Thebae, ārum, *f.*
Themistocles, Themistocles, is, *m.*
Then, tum, deinde.
Thence, illinc, inde.
Theophrastus, Theophrastus, i, *m.*
There, ibi.
There are, sunt; — is, est.
Thermopylae, Thermopylae, ārum, *f.*
Thick, crassus 3.
Thicket, frutex, ĩcis, *m.*
Thing, res, rei, *f.*
Think, putāre, arbitrāri, existimāre, cogitāre; — of, meditāri.
Thirst, sitis, is, *f.*
Thirst, sitire.
This, hic, haec, hoc.
Thornbush, sentes, ium, *m.*
Thou, tu.
Thought, cogitatio, ōnis, *f.*
Thoughtless, levis, *e.*
Threaten, mināri; — (= impend), impendēre, immīnere.
Threatening, minax, ācis.
Three-headed, triceps, cĭpĭtis.
Thrust down, detrūdere; — out, extrudere.
Thumb, pollex, ĩcis, *m.*
Thunder, tonĭtru, u, *n.*
Thunder, tonāre.
Thus, ita.
Thy or thine, tuus, a, um.
Tiberius, Tiberius, i, *m.*
Time, tempus, ōris, *n.*
Time, long time, diu.
Timid, timĭdus 3.
Timoleon, Timolēon, ntis, *m.*
Timotheus, Timothēus, i, *m.*
Tire out, defatigāre, defetisci.
Titus, Titus, i, *m.*
Together, unā.
Toil, labor, ōris, *m.* opĕra, a, *f.*
Tomi, Tomi, orum, *m.*
To-morrow, cras.
Tongue, lingua, ae, *f.*
Too much, nimium.
Tooth, dens, tis, *m.*
Torment, cruciāre, vexare, torquere.
Torrent, torrens, tis, *m.*
Torture, cruciātus, ūs, *m.* tormentum, i, *n.*
Torture, cruciāre, torquere.
Touch, tangere, attingere, contingere.
Tower, turris, is, *f.*
Trace, vestigiūm, i, *n.*
Track, vestigiūm, i, *n.*
Trader, mercator, ōris, *m.*
Traitor, proditor, ōris, *m.*
Trajan, Trajanus, i, *m.*
Transgress, migrare c. acc.
Transported (to be), gestire.
Travel through, emētiri.
Treachery, proditio, ōnis, *f.*
Treason, proditio, ōnis, *f.*
Treat, tractare.
Tree, arbor, ōris, *f.*
Tremble, contremiscere.
Trench, fossa, ae, *f.*
Tribune of the people, tribūnus plebis.
Trojan, Trojānus 3.
Troop, agmen, ĩnis, *n.*
Troops, copiae, ārum, *f.*
Trouble, molestia, ae, *f.*
Trouble, aerumna, ae, *f.*
Trouble, angere; — one's self about something, curare aliquid, opĕram dare.
Troublesome, molestus 3. importūnus 3.
Troy, Troja, ae, *f.*
Truce, indutiāe, ārum, *f.*
True, verus 3.
Trunk (of a tree), caudex, ĩcis, *m.*
Trust in, fidere c. abl.
Trust one, credere, fidere, fidem habere alicui.
Truth, veritas, ātis, *f.*
Try, tentare, conari, experiri.
Tullus Hostilius, Tullus Hostilius, *m.*
Turn out, evadere; — out well, contingere; — towards, convertere; — upon something, defigere in c. abl.
Twisted, tortus 3.
Tyrant, tyrannus, i, *m.*
Tyrian (s.), Tyrius, i, *m.*

U.

- Udder*, uber, ěris, *n.*
Ulysses, Ulixes, is, *m.*
Umbrenus, Umbrenus, i, *m.*
Unacquainted with, ignarus 3. imprudens, ntis.
Unarmed, inermis, *e.*
Uncertain, incertus 3. anceps, cipĭtis.
Uncover, detegere.
Understand, intelligere, tenere.
Understanding, mens, tis, *f.*
Undertake, suscipere, moliri.
Unexpected, inexpectatus 3.
Unfavorable, iniquus 3.
Unforeseen, improvisus 3.
Unfortunate, calamitosus 3. miser 3.
Ungrateful, ingratus 3.
Uninjured, integer, grum.
Unintelligent, imprudens, tis.
Unite, conjungere, conciliare.
Unjustly, injuste.
Unknown, incognitus.
Unless, nisi.
Unlike, dissimilis, *e.*
Unmindful of, immemor c. gen.
Unprofitable, inutilis, *e.*
Unrestrained, effusus 3.
Unripe, immaturus 3.
Unskilful, imperitus 3.
Until, donec, quoad, dum.

- Untimely* (adv.), intempestive.
Unwise, insipiens, tis.
Unworthy, indignus 3. c. abl. [estus 3.
Upright, probus 3. hon-
Uprightly, probe.
Uprightness, probitas, ātis, f. honestas, ātis, f.
Use, usus, ūs, m.
Use, uti c. abl.
Useful, utilis, e.
Useless, inutilis, e.
Utica, Utīca, ae, f.
- V.
- Vain*, irrītus 3. [quam.
Vain, in vain, nequic-
Valuable, carus 3.
Value, pretium, i, n.
Value, aestimāre, cen-
 sere (magni, etc.).
Vanish, avolāre.
Vanquish, vincere, de-
 vincere.
Vapor, vapor, ōris, m.
Variance (to be at), dis-
 cordāre.
Variogated, discolor, ōris.
Various, varius 3.
Vein (swollen), varix,
 icis, m.
Venison, caro ferīna, car-
 nis ferīnae.
Verres, Verres, is, m.
Versed in, peritus 3. con-
 sultus 3.
Very, admōdum, valde.
Very often, persaepe.
Vespasian, Vespasiānus,
 i, m.
Vessel, vas, vāsis, n.
Vesta, Vesta, ae, f.
Vesuvius, Vesuviūus, i, m.
Vex, angere, negotium
 facessere; vex to death,
 enecare.
Vexation, angor, ōris, m.
Vice (= viciousness),
 vitiositas, ātis, f.
Vice, vitium, i, m.
Vicissitude, vicis, vicis, f.
Victory, victoriā, ae, f.
View, conspectus, ūs, m.
View (= sentiment),
 sententiā, ae, f.
- Vigorously*, strenue.
Vine-branch, tradux, ū-
 cis, m.
Violate, violāre.
Violent, violentus 3. ve-
 hemens, tis, atrox,
 ōcis.
Violently, graviter.
Virgil, Virgilius, i, m.
Virgin, virgo, inis, f.
Virtue, virtus, ūtis, f.
Virtuous, honestus 3.
Voice, vox, vocis, f.
Volcanic, ignivōmus 3.
Vow, vovēre.
Vulture, vultur, ūris, m.
- W.
- Wages*, stipendium, i, n.
Wait, expectāre.
Walk (to take), ambū-
 lāre; — go to walk,
 ambulāre.
Walk upon, incedere.
Wall (of a house), pa-
 rīes, ētis, f.; — (as
 a protection), moe-
 niā, ium, n.; — (as
 a structure), murus,
 i, m.
Wander, errāre. [m.
Wandering, error, ōris,
Want, egestas, ātis, f.
 inopiā, ae, f.
Want, carere c. abl.
War, bellum, i, n.
Warfare, res militāris.
Wares, merx, reis, f.
Warlike, bellicōsus 3.
Warm, calidus 3.
Wash, lavāre. [cere.
Waste, attēre, confi-
Watch, vigilāre; keep
 watch, excubāre.
Water, aqua, ae, f.
Waver, vacillāre.
Way, viā, ae, f. iter, iti-
 neris, n.
Way (= manner), mo-
 dus, i, m.
Way (to stand in), ob-
 stare, officere c. dat.
Waywardness, petulan-
 tiā.
Weak, infirmus 3. im-
 potens, tis.
- Weaken*, diluere.
Weakness, infirmitas, ā-
 tis, f.
Wealthy, locuples, ētis.
Wearied, fessus 3.
Weary (to be), defetisci,
 defatigari.
Weather, tempestas, ātis,
 f.
Weep, flere.
Welfare, salus, ūtis, f.
Well (to be), valere.
Weser, Visurgis, is, m.
West, occidens, ntis.
Wether, vervex, ēcis, m.
What, qui, quae, quod;
 — (in number or
 order)? quotus? 3.
When, quum.
Whence, unde.
Where, ubi.
Wherewith, quā.
Whether (in indirect
 questions), num, ne,
 utrum.
Whetstone, cos, cotis, f.
Which of the two, uter,
 tra, trum.
While, dum.
Whither, quo.
Who, qui, quae, quod.
Who? inter. quis, quid?
Whoever you please, qui-
 libet.
Whole, universus 3. om-
 nis, e.
Wholly, omnino.
Why, cur.
Wicked, impius 3. sce-
 leratus 3. improbus 3.
 maleficus 3.
Wickedly, improbe.
Wickedness, pravitas,
 ātis, f.
Wide, amplus 3.
Widely, late.
Wife, uxor, ōris, f.
Wild, ferus 3.
Will, testamentum, i, n.
 voluntas, ātis, f.
Will, velle; not to will,
 nolle.
Willingly, libenter.
Willow, siler, ēris, n.
Wind, ventus, i, m.
Wine, vinum, i, n.

- Winter*, hiems, ěmis, *f.*
Wisdom, consilium, i, *n.*
Wise, sapiens, tis, prudens, tis.
Wisely, sapienter, prudenter.
Wise man, sapiens, tis, *m.*
Wish, optāre, velle, cupĕre.
Wit, sal, salis, *m.*
Without (to be), carĕre.
Wolf, lupus, i, *m.*
Woman, mulier, ěris, *f.*
 femīna, ae, *f.*
Wonder, mirāri.
Wood, lignum, i, *n.*
Wood (a.), silva, ae, *f.*
Wooden, of wood, lignĕus 3. [is, *m.*
Wood-pigeon, palumbes,
Word, verbum, i, *n.*
Work, opus, ěris, *n.*
- World*, mundus, i, *m.*
Worm, vermis, is, *m.*
Worthy, dignus 3. c. abl.
Wound, vulnus, ěris, *n.*
Wrest from, extorquĕre.
Wretched, miser, ěra, ěrum.
Wretchedness, miserīa, ae, *f.*
 aerumna, ae, *f.*
Write, scribĕre.
Writer, scriptor, ōris, *m.*
Writing, scriptum, i, *n.*
Writing-tablet, codicilli, ōrum, *m.*
Wrong, injurīa, ae, *f.*
Wrong (to do), delinquĕre.
- X.
- Xenocrates*, Xenocrātes, is, *m.* [ontis, *m.*
Xenophon, Xenophon, Xerxes, Xerxes, is, *m.*
- Y.
- Year*, annus, i, *m.* *this year* (adv.), horno.
Yes, see § 116, 5.
Yes (to say), aio, [§ 76, 1)].
Yesterday, heri.
Yet, at, tamen.
Young man, juvenis, is, *m.*
Young woman, virgo, ěnis, *f.*
Younger, natu minor.
Your, vester, tra, trum.
Youth, juvenus, ūtis, *f.*
 adolescentīa, ae, *f.*
Youth (a.), adolescens, tis, *m.*
 adolescentŭlus, i, *m.*
 juvĕnis, is, *m.*
- Z.
- Zeal*, studium, i, *n.*
Zealously, navĭter.

END.

THE UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO

PHYSICS DEPARTMENT

REPORT OF THE

COMMISSIONERS OF THE

BOARD OF PHYSICS

FOR THE YEAR 1900

CHICAGO, ILL., 1901

PRINTED BY THE UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO PRESS

1901

CHICAGO, ILL., 1901

CHICAGO, ILL., 1901

CHICAGO, ILL., 1901

CHICAGO, ILL., 1901

CHICAGO, ILL., 1901

LIBRARY EDITION
OF
STANDARD POETICAL WORKS.

IN UNIFORM STYLE.

TUPPER'S POETICAL WORKS; embracing Proverbial Philosophy, Thousand Lines, Geraldine, Haectenus, and Miscellaneous Poems. Complete in 1 vol., 12mo, muslin, fine portrait, Price \$1,00.

COWPER'S POETICAL WORKS; with Life; a new edition, 1 vol., 12mo, with portrait. Price \$1,00.

POPE'S POETICAL WORKS; new edition, containing a Life of the Author. Price \$1,00.

BYRON'S POETICAL WORKS; with a Sketch of his Life, in 1 vol., 12mo, and embellished with a portrait. Price \$1,00.

MOORE'S POETICAL WORKS; an entirely new edition, in 1 vol., with portrait. Price \$1,00.

BURNS'S POETICAL WORKS; embracing a Life of the Author, Glossary, and Notes. A new edition, 1 vol., 12mo, with fine portrait. Price \$1,00.

SCOTT'S POETICAL WORKS; with a Memoir of the Author, embellished with a portrait. Price \$1,00.

LIFE, GEMS, AND BEAUTIES OF SHAKSPEARE; all embraced in 1 vol., 12mo, containing six fine engravings and portrait. Price \$1,00.

POETICAL REMAINS OF HENRY KIRKE WHITE; containing a Memoir of the Author, with an introductory chapter on his religious and poetical development, by Rev. John Todd. Price \$1,00.

BIOGRAPHIES, &c.

Life of George Washington,

Commander-in-Chief of the American Army through the Revolutionary War, and the first President of the United States.

BY AARON BANCROFT, D. D.

Illustrated with Engravings. 12mo., Muslin, \$100.

LIFE AND CAMPAIGNS OF NAPOLEON BONAPARTE ;

Giving an account of all his engagements, from the *Siege of Toulon to the Battle of Waterloo* ; also, embracing accounts of the daring exploits of his marshals, together with his public and private life, from the commencement of his career to his final imprisonment and death on the rock of St. Helena.

Translated from the French of

M. A. ARNAULT AND C. L. F. PANCKOUCKE.

Numerous Engravings. 12mo., Muslin, \$1,00.

HEROES OF THE AMERICAN REVOLUTION ;

Comprising the Lives of Washington, and his generals and officers who were the most distinguished in the War of the Independence of the United States ; also embracing the Declaration of Independence, and Signers' Names, the Constitution of the United States, and Amendments ; together with the Inaugural, First Annual, and Farewell Addresses of Washington. Four Portraits, 12mo, Muslin, \$1,00.

PICTORIAL HISTORY OF ENGLAND,

BY HUME AND SMOLLETT.

Abridged and continued to the accession of VICTORIA.

BY JOHN ROBINSON, D. D.

Engravings, 12mo., Muslin, \$1,00.

The Life of our Blessed Lord and Saviour Jesus Christ ;

To which is added, the Lives and Sufferings of his Holy Evangelists, Apostles, and other primitive Martyrs.

BY THE REV. JOHN FLEETWOOD, D. D.

Numerous Engravings, 12mo, Muslin, \$1,00.

PILGRIM'S PROGRESS, FROM THIS WORLD TO THAT WHICH IS TO COME.

BY JOHN BUNYAN.

With Notes, and a Life of the Author,

BY THE REV. THOMAS SCOTT,

Late Chaplain to the Lock Hospital.

Illustrated, 12mo, Muslin, \$1,00.

MUSIC BOOKS.

White's Church Melodist.

A new collection of Psalm and Hymn Tunes, adapted to the wants of Choirs, Singing Schools, &c. By Edward L. White, Editor of "The Modern Harp," "Melodeon," "Sacred Chorus Book," &c.

American Collection;

OR, SONGS OF SACRED PRAISE.

BY EDWARD HAMILTON, ESQ.

The greater portion of the music in this book is *entirely new*, and of a very high order; and Choirs will find it a rich accession to their musical libraries.

Congregational Singing Book;

OR, VESTRY COMPANION.

The music in this book is composed entirely of old choice standard tunes such as will be familiar to all. They were carefully collected and edited by Asa Fitz, Esq.

Common School Song Book.

This will be found to contain a very choice collection of simple, and for the most part, familiar airs, beautifully adapted to the wants of *Juvenile Choirs*, the *Private Circle*, or the *School Room*. Edited by Asa Fitz, Esq.

Sabbath School Minstrel.

This little volume is especially adapted, in its Music and Hymns, to the service of the Sabbath School. It has been much admired wherever it has been used. Edited by Asa Fitz, Esq.

Greek Course of Studies.

Crosby's Grammar of the Greek Language.

Crosby's Xenophon's Anabasis.

Crosby's Greek Lessons; consisting of selections from Xenophon's *Anabasis* with directions for the study of the Grammar, Notes, Exercises in Translations from English into Greek, and a Vocabulary. The above are already in very extensive use in the colleges and classical schools, and are very highly recommended

Advice to Young Ladies
ON THEIR
DUTIES AND CONDUCT IN LIFE.

BY T. S. ARTHUR.

Right modes of thinking are the basis of all correct action. It is from this cause that we shall, in addressing our young friends on their duties and conduct in life, appeal at once to their rational faculty. To learn to think right is, therefore, a matter of primary concern. If there be right modes of thinking, right actions will follow as a natural consequence.—*Extract from the Author's Introduction.* Price 75 Cents.

Advice to Young Men
ON THEIR
DUTIES AND CONDUCT IN LIFE.

BY T. S. ARTHUR.

The aim of the author of this volume has been to lead young men to just conclusions, from reflections upon what they are, and what are their duties in society, as integral parts of the common body. Satisfied that those who read it as it should be read cannot fail to have their good purposes strengthened, and their minds elevated into sounder views of life than usually prevail, the writer dismisses it from his hands, and turns to other matters demanding his attention.—*Author's Preface.* Price 75 Cents

The Young Lady's Offering;
OR, GEMS OF PROSE AND POETRY.

The above is prepared especially as a gift book for *young ladies*, embracing a choice arrangement of prose and poetic combination, adapting it particularly, as its title indicates, as an acceptable offering to young ladies. Price \$1.00.

The Young Man's Offering;
COMPRISING
PROSE AND POETICAL WRITINGS
OF THE MOST EMINENT AUTHORS.

This work is intended to be, as its title indicates, a useful and entertaining companion to young men, which may cheer them in hours of languor and of sickness, and when the mind, exhausted by its efforts, seeks, in amusement, for the restoration of its wonted powers. Illustrated with numerous engravings. Price \$1.00.

Representative Men.

BY RALPH WALDO EMERSON.

1 vol., 12mo. Cloth, \$1.00.

Philo; An Evangeliad.

A TALE OF THE REAL AND IDEAL.

BY THE AUTHOR OF "MARGARET."

1 volume, 12mo. Cloth, 88 cts.; full gilt, \$1.25.

The Second Advent.

BY ALPHEUS CROSBY,

Late Professor of the Greek Language and Literature in
Dartmouth College.

1 volume, 12mo. Cloth, 50 cts.

History of the French Revolution of 1848.

BY ALPHONSE DE LAMARTINE.

Translated by Francis A. Durivage and Wm. S. Chase.

1 vol., 12mo., with a portrait. 75 cts.

Hume's History of England.

BOSTON LIBRARY EDITION.

Complete in Six Volumes, with an Index.

Price 62 cents a volume.

Macaulay's History of England.

BOSTON LIBRARY EDITION.

2 vols. Price 62 cents a volume.

Henry Kirke White's Poems.

New Edition, with an Introduction by Rev. John Todd.

1 vol., 12mo. Cloth, \$1.25; full gilt, \$1.75.

Wordsworth's Poems.

1 volume, 12mo. Cloth, \$1.25; full gilt, \$1.75

COMPLETE
LIBRARY OF NATURAL HISTORY,
ILLUSTRATED WITH
400 ENGRAVINGS.

This work was carefully compiled by A. A. Gould, M. A., from the works of Cuvier, Griffith, Richardson, Geoffrey, Lacepede, Buffon, Goldsmith, Shaw, Montague, Wilson, Lewis and Clarke, Audubon, and other eminent writers on Natural History.

It is all comprised in one imperial octavo volume of about 1000 pages, handsomely bound, and is in itself, as its title indicates, a complete library on this subject. Price \$3.00.

SHAKSPEARE'S
DRAMATIC WORKS;

Complete in seven volumes, imperial octavo, of nearly 550 pages each, forming in all nearly 4000 pages. The above edition of the great dramatist is known as the "magnificent Boston edition," being celebrated for its transcendent beauty of typography; and in this regard altogether the finest American edition extant.

PROVERBIAL PHILOSOPHY,
A BOOK OF THOUGHTS AND ARGUMENTS ORIGINALY TREATED.

BY MARTIN FARQUHAR TUPPER, M. A.

First and second series, complete in 1 vol., 12mo, with fine portrait, and bound in the various styles of plain, full gift, &c.

THE MECHANIC'S TEXT BOOK,
AND
ENGINEER'S PRACTICAL GUIDE;

Containing a concise treatise of the nature and application of mechanical forces; action of gravity; the elements of machinery; rules and tables for calculating the working effects of machinery; of the strength, resistance, and pressure of materials; with tables of the weight and cohesive strength of iron and other metals. Compiled and arranged by Thomas Kelt, of the Gloucester City Machine Company. Complete in 1 vol., 12mo.

To the careful mechanic, the above will be found a work of invaluable daily reference. Price \$1.00.

LIBRARY EDITION
OF
STANDARD POETICAL WORKS.
IN UNIFORM STYLE.

HEMANS'S POETICAL WORKS; an entire new edition, in 1 vol., and illustrated with steel engravings. Price \$1,00.

HOWITT, COOK AND LANGDON'S POETICAL WORKS; a new edition, 1 vol., 12mo, neat muslin. Price \$1,00.

MILTON AND YOUNG; containing Paradise Lost, and Young's Night Thoughts, a new edition, complete in 1 vol., 12mo, with portrait. Price \$1,00.

CROLY'S BRITISH POETS; combining the beauties of the British Poets, with introductory observations by Rev. George Croly, 1 vol., embellished with fine steel engravings. Price \$1,00.

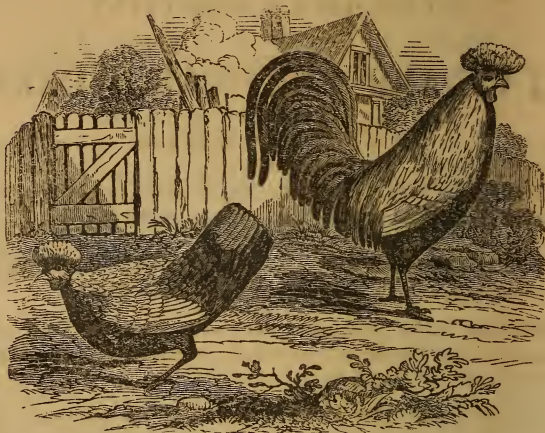
THE POEMS OF OSSIAN; a new edition, containing ten steel engravings, and printed on fine paper, 1 vol., 12mo. Price \$1,00.

THOMSON AND POLLOK; containing the Seasons, by James Thomson, and Course of Time, by Robert Pollok, complete in 1 vol., 12mo, with portrait. Price \$1,00.

WORDSWORTH'S POETICAL WORKS; an entirely new edition, from plates just stereotyped, complete in 1 vol., 12mo, with portrait. Price \$1,00.

CAMPBELL'S POETICAL WORKS; including his Pleasures of Hope, Theodoric, and Miscellaneous Poems, many of which are not contained in the former editions. Complete in 1 vol., 12mo, with portrait. Price \$1,00.

The above poetical works are uniform in size and binding, and are sold separately, or together. Their size and style considered, they are the cheapest library editions of the same authors before the American public.



Bennett's Complete Poultry-Book.

The Poultry-Book and Fowl-Breeder's Guide.

Being a Treatise on the

BREEDING, RAISING,

And General Management of Domestic Fowls ;

With numerous original descriptions and Portraits from life ;

BY JOHN C. BENNETT, M. D.

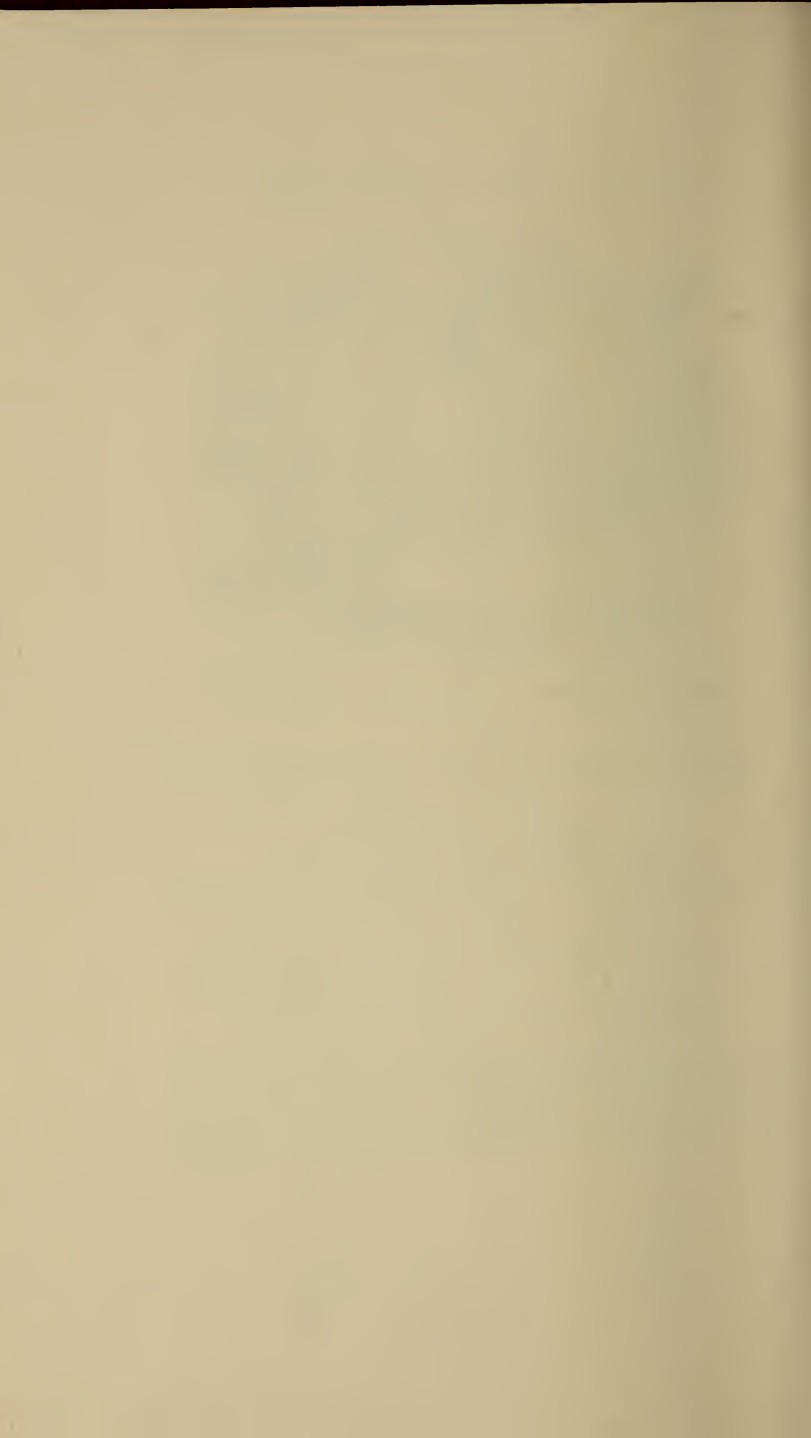
This work will be found to contain more practical and useful matter in regard to Fowl Breeding, than is contained in all other American works together. It is illustrated with nearly

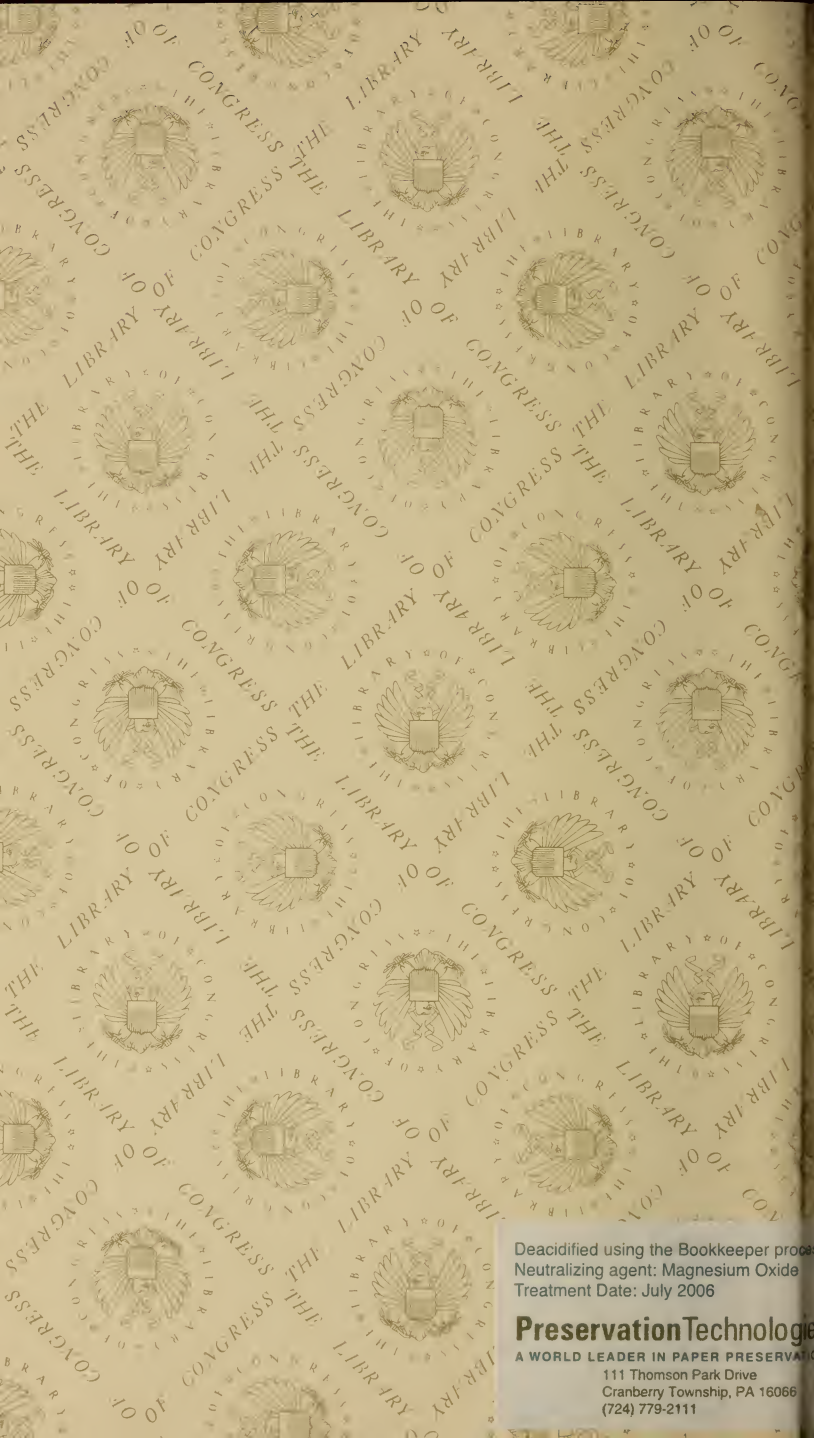
SEVENTY-FIVE PORTRAITS AND ENGRAVINGS

of the most choice varieties of American and Foreign Fowls, some forty of which are from life, from drawings taken especially for this work, of the most important breeds, and several of them from Fowls very recently imported. The publishers have spared no expense in getting up this work; the portraits of the fowls, taken from life, having been drawn and engraved by the first artists. Printed on fine paper, one handsome volume, duodecimo. Price 75 cents.

53

4006





Deacidified using the Bookkeeper process
Neutralizing agent: Magnesium Oxide
Treatment Date: July 2006

Preservation Technologies

A WORLD LEADER IN PAPER PRESERVATION

111 Thomson Park Drive
Cranberry Township, PA 16066
(724) 779-2111



